

# Introduction to Sanskrit

THOMAS EGENES

PART ONE

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS PUBLISHERS  
PRIVATE LIMITED • DELHI

*First Indian Edition: Delhi, 1994  
Second Revised Edition: Delhi, 1996  
Third Revised Edition: Delhi, 2003*

*First Published: California, 1989*

© THOMAS EGENES  
All Rights Reserved

ISBN: 81-208-1140-2

*Also available at:*

**MOTILAL BANARSIDASS**

41 U.A. Bungalow Road, Jawahar Nagar, Delhi 110 007  
8 Mahalaxmi Chamber, 22 Bhulabhai Desai Road, Mumbai 400 026  
236, 9th Main III Block, Jayanagar, Bangalore 560 011  
120 Royapettah High Road, Mylapore, Chennai 600 004  
Sanas Plaza, 1302 Baji Rao Road, Pune 411 002  
8 Camac Street, Kolkata 700 017  
Ashok Rajpath, Patna 800 004  
Chowk, Varanasi 221 001

*FOR SALE IN SOUTH AND SOUTHEAST ASIA ONLY*

Printed in India  
BY JAINENDRA PRAKASH JAIN AT SHRI JAINENDRA PRESS,  
A-45 NARAINA, PHASE-I, NEW DELHI 110 028  
AND PUBLISHED BY NARENDRA PRAKASH JAIN FOR  
MOTILAL BANARSIDASS PUBLISHERS PRIVATE LIMITED,  
BUNGALOW ROAD, DELHI 110 007

## INTRODUCTION TO SANSKRIT (Part One)

THOMAS EGENES

The *India Times* endorses this book and strongly recommends it for use by Sanskrit students . . . It is the finest textbook for beginners.

THE INDIA TIMES,  
Washington, D.C., February, 1992

Introduction  
to Sanskrit  
Part Two

## Introduction to Sanskrit Part Two

I think I have looked at most of the available Sanskrit introductory books . . . first as a student and now as a teacher. Egenes is the best that I have seen. It is clear, simple, well thought out. It uses English grammatical terms. The exercises are good, and the answers are at the back if you need them. The devanagari is big and clear . . . If you are learning or teaching Sanskrit, this is definitely the best choice.

Egenes

AMAZON.COM,  
Canberra, May 31, 1999

If you're interested in do-it-at-home learning of basic Sanskrit, this is among the best books we've seen. It is calibrated to small learning steps with appropriate exercises. The descriptions of grammatical rules is clear . . . Great place to start.

Hinduism Today,  
September, 1990

Thomas  
Egenes

*Introduction to Sanskrit*, in two volumes, is designed to open the door to India's rich spiritual literature. This self-teaching guide presents Sanskrit pronunciation, grammar, and vocabulary in simple and systematic steps, allowing students to easily master the fundamentals of this enchanting language. Each lesson includes instruction in alphabet, grammar, and vocabulary, with concise explanations and easy practice exercises. Also included in *Part One* is a reading from the Bhagavad-Gītā and Sanskrit quotations from the Rk Samhitā, Upaniṣads, Yoga Sūtras, Brahma Sūtra, and Manu Smṛti. *Part Two* uses verses from the Bhagavad-Gītā to teach principles of grammar, and includes additional essays on Sanskrit pronunciation and grammar.

THOMAS EGENES received his B.A. from the University of Notre Dame and his M.A. and Ph.D. from the University of Virginia, under the guidance of Dr. Seshagiri Rao. Dr. Egenes has published several Sanskrit teaching materials, including a workbook, flash cards, videotapes, and *Introduction to Sanskrit*, which has been translated into Dutch and German. He has also published a book of stories from the Upaniṣads, entitled *All Love Flows to the Self*. Dr. Egenes has given presentations on Sanskrit in India, Europe, Canada, and the United States. He is Associate Professor of the Science of Creative Intelligence at Maharishi University of Management in Fairfield, Iowa, U.S.A.

ISBN: 81-208-1693-5

Rs. 395



# **Introduction to Sanskrit**

**THOMAS EGENES**

**PART TWO**

**MOTILAL BANARSIDASS PUBLISHERS  
PRIVATE LIMITED • DELHI**

*First Edition: Delhi, 2000*

© MOTILAL BANARSIDASS PUBLISHERS PRIVATE LIMITED  
All Rights Reserved

ISBN: 81-208-1693-5

### MOTILAL BANARSIDASS

236 Sri Ranga, 9th Main III Block, Jayanagar, Bangalore 560 011  
41 U.A. Bungalow Road, Jawahar Nagar, Delhi 110 007  
8 Mahalaxmi Chamber, Warden Road, Mumbai 400 026  
120 Royapettah High Road, Mylapore, Chennai 600 004  
Sanas Plaza, 1302, Baji Rao Road, Pune 411 002  
8 Camac Street, Calcutta 700 017  
Ashok Rajpath, Patna 800 004  
Chowk, Varanasi 221 001

PRINTED IN INDIA  
BY JAINENDRA PRAKASH JAIN AT SHRI JAINENDRA PRESS,  
A-45 NARAINA, PHASE I, NEW DELHI 110 028  
AND PUBLISHED BY NARENDRA PRAKASH JAIN FOR  
MOTILAL BANARSIDASS PUBLISHERS PRIVATE LIMITED,  
BUNGALOW ROAD, DELHI 110 007

---

## CONTENTS

### LESSON NINETEEN

Recitation:	Bhagavad-Gītā chapter 2, verse 45	2
	Introduction to meter	3
Grammar:	Nominals ending in mat, vat	5
	The suffixes mat, vat, ya, tva	7
	The imperative	11
	The upapada compound	13
Vocabulary:	Words from chapter 2, verse 45 of the Bhagavad-Gītā	14

### LESSON TWENTY

Recitation:	Bhagavad-Gītā chapter 2, verse 48	21
	The oral tradition of teaching	22
Grammar:	Verb classes 1, 4, 6, 10	24
	Verb class 8	30
	Passive construction	34
Vocabulary:	Words from chapter 2, verse 48	39
	Verbs from class 8	39

### LESSON TWENTY-ONE

Recitation:	Bhagavad-Gītā chapter 2, verse 49	45
	Traditional methods of memorization	46
Grammar:	Nouns in as	49
	The bahuvrīhi compound	51
Vocabulary:	Words from chapter 2, verse 49	55
	Nouns ending in as	55

---

**LESSON TWENTY-TWO**

Recitation:	<b>Bhagavad-Gītā</b> chapter 2, verse 50	62
	Division of syllables	63
Grammar:	The past passive participle	66
	Verb class 3	72
	The prefixes <b>su</b> and <b>dus</b>	75
Vocabulary:	Words from chapter 2, verse 50	77

**LESSON TWENTY-THREE**

Recitation:	<b>Bhagavad-Gītā</b> chapter 2, verse 51	84
	Meter	86
Grammar:	Nouns ending in “in”	92
	More class 3 verbs	95
	Verb class 7	96
	Internal sandhi	97
Vocabulary:	Words from chapter 2, verse 51	100
	Class 3 verbs	100
	Nominals with the ending “in”	100

**LESSON TWENTY-FOUR**

Recitation:	<b>Bhagavad-Gītā</b> chapter 2, verse 52	107
	<b>Svara</b>	108
Grammar:	The periphrastic future	112
	The gerundive	116
	Verb class 5	120
Vocabulary:	Words from chapter 2, verse 52	123
	Verbs from class 5	123

**LESSON TWENTY-FIVE**

Recitation:	<b>Bhagavad-Gītā</b> chapter 2, verse 53	130
	Additional letters	132
Grammar:	Pronominal adjectives	134
	Verb class 2, 9	137
	Summary of verb classes	141
Vocabulary:	Words from chapter 2, verse 53	143
	Verbs from class 2 and 9	143

**LESSON TWENTY-SIX**

Recitation:	<b>Bhagavad-Gītā</b> chapter 2, verse 54	150
	The alphabet	152
Grammar:	The tenses and moods	155
	The perfect	156
	Interrogative pronouns	162
	Monosyllabic nouns	165
	The optative	166
Vocabulary:	Words from chapter 2, verse 54	171
	Indefinite particles	171

**LESSON TWENTY-SEVEN**

Recitation:	<b>Bhagavad-Gītā</b> chapter 2, verse 55	178
	<b>Pāṇini</b>	180
Grammar:	Nouns ending in consonants	183
	The infinitive	185
	The pronoun <b>etad</b>	191
Vocabulary:	Words from chapter 2, verse 55	193

**LESSON TWENTY-EIGHT**

Recitation:	<b>Bhagavad-Gītā</b> chapter 2, verse 56	200
Grammar:	The present participle	202
	Absolute constructions	209
Vocabulary:	Words from chapter 2, verse 56	212

**LESSON TWENTY-NINE**

Recitation:	<b>Bhagavad-Gītā</b> chapter 2, verse 57	219
Grammar:	Feminine nouns in <i>ū</i>	221
	The causative	222
	More pronouns: <i>ayam</i> , <i>idam</i> , <i>iyam</i>	228
Vocabulary:	Words from chapter 2, verse 57	234

**LESSON THIRTY**

Recitation:	<b>Bhagavad-Gītā</b> chapter 2, verse 58	241
Grammar:	Nouns in <i>is</i> , <i>us</i>	243
	Primary suffixes	245
	Secondary suffixes	247
	Adverbs	250
	The desiderative	252
Vocabulary:	Words from chapter 2, verse 58	258
	Nouns formed from primary suffixes	258
	Nouns formed from secondary suffixes	258

**LESSON THIRTY-ONE**

Recitation:	<b>Bhagavad-Gītā chapter 2, verse 59</b>	265
Grammar:	Nouns ending in o, au	267
	The intensive	269
	The denominative	269
	The conditional	270
	The aorist	270
	Future active and middle participles	271
	The past active participle	271
	Cardinal numbers	272
Vocabulary:	Words from chapter 2, verse 59	277

**TABLES**

Masculine a	292
Neuter a	293
Feminine ā	294
Masculine i, Feminine i	295
Feminine ī	296
Masculine an	297
Neuter an	298
Masculine ṛ, Feminine ṛ	299
Masculine u, Feminine u	300
mad, asmad	301
tvad,yuṣmad	302
Masculine tad	303
Neuter tad	304
Feminine tad	305
Masculine mat, vat	306
Neuter mat, vat	307
Feminine mat, vat	308
Neuter as	309
Masculine as, Feminine as	310
Masculine in	311
Neuter in	312

Feminine monosyllabic nouns <b>d̄hi</b>	313
Feminine nouns ending in consonants <b>vāc</b>	314
Masculine nouns ending in consonants <b>marut</b>	315
Feminine <b>ū</b>	316
Neuter <b>is</b>	317
Neuter <b>us</b>	318
Masculine <b>o</b> , Feminine <b>o</b>	319
Feminine <b>au</b>	320
Adjective declined like pronouns	321
Interrogative pronouns	322
<b>etad</b>	323
Present active participles	324
Masculine <b>ayam</b>	327
Neuter <b>idam</b>	328
Feminine <b>iyam</b>	329
Masculine <b>ena</b>	330
Neuter <b>ena</b>	330
Feminine <b>ena</b>	330
Cardinal numbers	332
Prefixes	336
Numerals	338
<b>sandhi</b> rules	339
 <b>VERB ROOTS</b>	347
 <b>VERB CLASSES</b>	364
 <b>VOCABULARY</b>	381
 <b>ENGLISH-SANSKRIT VOCABULARY</b>	399
 <b>INDEX OF GRAMMATICAL TERMS</b>	421

# 19

## LESSON NINETEEN

Recitation:      **Bhagavad-Gītā Chapter 2, Verse 45**  
                    Introduction to Meter

Grammar:      Nominals ending in **mat, vat**  
                    The suffixes **mat, vat, ya, tva**  
                    The imperative  
                    The **upapada** compound

Vocabulary:      Words from Chapter 2, Verse 45 of  
                    the **Bhagavad-Gītā**

BHAGAVAD-GITA

त्रैगुण्यविषया वेदा

निस्त्रैगुण्यो भवार्जुन ।

निर्द्वन्द्वो नित्यसत्त्वस्थो

निर्योगक्षेम आत्मवान् ॥४५॥

traiguṇya-viṣayā vedā  
 nistraiguṇyo bhavārjuna  
 nirdvandvo nitya-sattvastho  
 niryoga-kṣema ātmavān 45.

The Vedas' concern is with the three guṇas.  
 Be without the three guṇas, O Arjuna,  
 freed from duality, ever firm in purity,  
 independent of possessions, possessed of the Self.

trai-	(n.) three
guṇa-	(n.) quality
trai-guṇya-	(dvigu compound) three guṇas (For the dvigu compound, see Lesson 18, p. 236.) (For the suffix ya, see below.)
viṣayāḥ	(mas. nom. pl.) concern, spheres of action, object
trai-guṇya-viṣayāḥ	(tatpuruṣa compound) concern with the three guṇas, concern of the three guṇas
vedāḥ	(mas. nom. pl.) the Vedas, the texts of the Veda

<b>nis-trai-guṇyah</b>	(m. nom. sing., dvigu compound) without the three guṇas (For the prefix <b>nis</b> see Lesson 15, p. 198.)
<b>bhava</b>	(2nd per. sing. imperative act. $\sqrt{bhū}$ ) be, exist (See below for the imperative.)
<b>arjuna</b>	(mas. voc. sing.) O Arjuna
<b>nir-dvandvah</b>	(m. nom. sing.) freed from duality, without the pairs of opposites
<b>nitya-</b> <b>sattva-</b>	(adv.) ever, eternally, ever (n.) purity, goodness (See below for the suffix <b>tva</b> .)
<b>nitya-sattva-</b> <b>sthāḥ</b>	(karmadhāraya compound) eternally pure (mas. nom. sing. from $\sqrt{s}thā$ ) firm, standing in
<b>nitya-sattva-sthāḥ</b>	(upapada compound.) ever firm in purity (See Lesson 18, p.236, and see below for the upapada compound.)
<b>nir-yoga-</b> <b>kṣemah</b>	(mas.) without acquisition, without gain (mas. nom. sing.) conservation, securing possessions.
<b>nir-yoga-kṣemah</b> <b>ātma-vān</b>	(dvandva compound) without possessions. (mas. nom. sing.) possessed of the Self (See below for the vant declension.)

## INTRODUCTION TO METER

1. The section of the **Vedāṅgas** that explains meter is **Chandas**. The principle text of **Chandas** is the **Chandas Sūtra**, attributed to Piṅgala. **Chandas** is said to be the feet of the **Veda**.
2. The verses from the **Bhagavad-Gītā** are primarily in **anuṣṭubh chandas**, which is also called **śloka** meter. A few verses are in **triṣṭubh chandas**. Each verse, or each **śloka**, in **anuṣṭubh**

meter is divided into four parts or lines, each called a *pāda*, or foot. Each *pāda* is divided into eight syllables, each called *akṣara*. There is a pause or cæsura (*yati*) after each *pāda*. The triṣṭubh meter is four *pādas* of eleven *akṣaras*.

3. There are seven basic meters: *gāyatrī*, *uṣṇik*, *anuṣṭubh*, *bṛhatī*, *pañkti*, *triṣṭubh*, and *jagatī*. Each of these is divided as follows:

<u>chandas (meter)</u>	<u>pāda (lines)</u>	<u>aksara (syllables)</u>
<i>gāyatrī</i>	3	8, 8, 8
<i>uṣṇik</i>	3	8, 8, 12
<i>anuṣṭubh</i>	4	8, 8, 8, 8
<i>bṛhatī</i>	4	9, 9, 9, 9
<i>pañkti</i>	4	10, 10, 10, 10
<i>triṣṭubh</i>	4	11, 11, 11, 11
<i>jagatī</i>	4	12, 12, 12, 12

Several of these meters are found with other variations. For example, *bṛhatī* could also be 8, 8, 8, 12 or 8, 8, 12, 8; and *pañkti* could also be 8, 8, 8, 8, 8.

**GRAMMAR:**  
**NOMINALS ENDING**  
**IN MAT, VAT**

1. We will now study the declension for masculine nominals ending in mat or vat, which is sometimes listed in the dictionary as **mant** and **vant**. (**Pāṇini** used **mat** and **vat**, although some later Sanskrit grammarians used **mant** and **vant**.)

Stem: **bhagavat** (mas. adj.) possessing fortune, fortunate

prathamā	भगवान्	भगवन्तौ	भगवन्तः
dvitiyā	भगवन्तम्	भगवन्तौ	भगवतः
trtiyā	भगवता	भगवद्याम्	भगवद्धिः
caturthī	भगवते	भगवद्याम्	भगवद्यः
pañcamī	भगवतः	भगवद्याम्	भगवद्यः
śasṭhi	भगवतः	भगवतोः	भगवताम्
saptamī	भगवति	भगवतोः	भगवत्सु
sambodhana	भगवन्	भगवन्तौ	भगवन्तः
	eka	dvi	bahu

Notice that some forms, called strong forms, use **vant**: the nominative dual and plural, and the accusative singular and dual.

2. The neuter adjective for *bhagavat* differs from the masculine only in the *prathamā*, *dvitiyā*, and *sambodhana*:

<i>prathamā</i>	भगवत्	भगवती	भगवन्ति
<i>dvitiyā</i>	भगवत्	भगवती	भगवन्ति
<i>sambodhana</i>	भगवत्	भगवती	भगवन्ति

3. The feminine adjective uses *vat* and adds *ī* to form the base. It is then declined like words in *ī*. For example:

<i>prathamā</i>	भगवती	भगवत्यौ	भगवत्यः
<i>dvitiyā</i>	भगवतीम्	भगवत्यौ	भगवतीः
<i>tritiyā</i>	भगवत्या	भगवतीभ्याम्	भगवतीभिः
<i>caturthī</i>	भगवत्यै	भगवतीभ्याम्	भगवतीभ्यः
<i>pañcamī</i>	भगवत्याः	भगवतीभ्याम्	भगवतीभ्यः
<i>śaṣṭhī</i>	भगवत्याः	भगवत्योः	भगवतीनाम्
<i>saptamī</i>	भगवत्याम्	भगवत्योः	भगवतीषु
<i>sambodhana</i>	भगवति	भगवत्यौ	भगवत्यः

**THE SUFFIXES  
MAT, VAT,  
YA, TVA**

- There are considered to be five types of aggregate formations (*vṛtti*), which are complex words that can be broken into meaningful parts. They are:

<b>kṛt-vṛtti</b>	nouns formed by adding primary suffixes to verb roots
<b>taddhita-vṛtti</b>	nouns and adjectives formed by adding secondary suffixes to nouns
<b>dhātu-vṛtti</b>	complex verbs derived from verb roots. These include the causative ( <i>nijanta</i> ), desiderative ( <i>sannanta</i> ), intensive ( <i>yañanta</i> ), and denominative ( <i>nāmadhātu</i> ) forms.
<b>samāsa-vṛtti</b>	compounds, divided into four groups (See Lesson 18, p. 235, 236.)
<b>ekaśeṣa-vṛtti</b>	“one remains” formation. One member is used alone to represent the entire compound.

- We will now observe a few suffixes, which will be studied in detail in Lesson 30. Suffixes are called **pratyaya**. There are two kinds: primary suffixes (**kṛt pratyaya**) and secondary suffixes (**taddhita pratyaya**). Primary suffixes are placed at the end of verb roots to form primary nominal bases (**kṛdanta**). The root often takes its **guna** substitute. (See Lesson 13, p. 167.) For example:

**वेद** knowledge  
**veda** is from  $\sqrt{vid}$  (know) and the suffix **a**.

**योग** union

yoga is from  $\sqrt{yuj}$  (join) and the suffix **a**.

**दर्शन** vision

darśana is from  $\sqrt{drś}$  (see) and the suffix **ana**.

3. Secondary suffixes are placed at the end of nouns, called **prakṛti**, to form derivative nouns and adjectives, called **taddhitānta**. The original noun, or **prakṛti**, often takes **vṛddhi** substitute for its first vowel. The suffixes **mat** and **vat** are two of the many secondary suffixes.
4. The suffixes **mat** and **vat** are used to indicate possession (**matvartha**) (Pāṇini 5.2.94-95). These are usually adjectives. For example:

**बुद्धिमत्**

buddhimat possessed of intelligence, wise

**धनवत्**

dhanavat possessed of wealth, wealthy

These adjectives are then declined like **bhagavat**.

5. The suffix **vat**, although more common, is considered to be an aspect of **mat**. The **vat** suffix is generally used if the noun ends in a or ā. (Pāṇini 8.2.9). For example:

रूपवत्

rūpavat

having the form

रसवत्

rasavat

having the essence

स्मृतिमत्

smṛtimat

possessed of memory, wise

6. The suffix ya is also a secondary suffix (**taddhita pratyaya**). The suffix ya means “pertaining to,” “relating to,” “belonging to,” or “deriving from.” It forms adjectives and also neuter abstract nouns (**bhāvavācana**). For example, it would make “happy” into “happiness.” If there is a vowel at the end of the noun, it is dropped before adding ya. For example:

त्रिगुणा

triguna

three gunas

त्रैगुण्य

traiguṇya

pertaining to the three gunas

7. The first syllable may take its **vṛddhi** substitute, which is called lengthening or strengthening. (See Lesson 13, p. 167.) For example:

पुत्र

putra (son)

पैत्र

pautra (grandson)

जनक

janaka (a king)

जानकी

jānakī (his daughter, Sītā)

8. Often the first syllable of the noun may not take a vṛddhi substitute.  
For example:

सत्

sat (existence) becomes

सत्य

satya (truth—that which  
pertains to existence)

दन्त

danta (teeth) becomes

दन्त्य

dantya (dental)

राजन्

rājan (king) becomes

राज्य

rājya (kingdom)

9. The secondary suffix **tva** (feminine **tā**) can also be added to  
nominals to form an abstract noun. For example:

सत्

sat (existence) becomes

सत्त्व

sattva (purity, consciousness)

नित्य

nitya (eternal) becomes

नित्यत्व

nityatva (eternity)

अमृत

amṛta (immortal) becomes amṛtatva (immortality)

**THE IMPERATIVE**

1. We will now study the imperative (*loṭ*). The imperative is used as a command, demand, instruction, or injunction. It is used when one person is asking or telling another person to do something. The *uttama puruṣa, bahu vacana* imperative for “go” (*gacchāma*) could be translated as “We must go,” or “Let us go.”
2. Here is the formation of the imperative in the active and middle. It uses the present stem, but with different endings:

root: √gam (go) Imperative Active

<b>prathama</b>	गच्छतु gacchatu gaccha+tu	गच्छताम् gacchatām gaccha+tām	गच्छन्तु gacchantu gaccha-a+antu
<b>madhyama</b>	गच्छ gaccha gaccha	गच्छतम् gacchatam gaccha+tam	गच्छत gacchata gaccha+ta
<b>uttama</b>	गच्छानि gacchāni gaccha+āni	गच्छाव gacchāva gaccha+āva	गच्छाम gacchāma gaccha+āma
	eka	dvi	bahu

root: √labh (obtain) Imperative Middle

prathama	लभताम् labhatām labha+tām	लभेताम् labhētām labha+itām	लभन्ताम् labhantām labha-a+antām
madhyama	लभस्व labhasva labha+sva	लभेथाम् labhethām labha+ithām	लभध्वम् labhadhvam labha+dhvam
uttama	लभै labhai labha+ai	लभावहै labhāvahai labha+āvahai	लभामहै labhāmahai labha+āmahai
	eka	dvi	bahu

3. The imperative verb is negated by mā, rather than na. For example:

मा विद्विषावहै ।

Never shall we denounce anyone.

4. Here is the imperative for √as:

Root: √as (be) Imperative

prathama	अस्तु	स्ताम्	सन्तु
madhyama	एधि	स्तम्	स्त
uttama	असानि	असाव	असाम

## THE UPAPADA COMPOUND

1. Now we will study the **upapada** compound (*samāsa*), or “subordinate word” compound. (See Lesson 18, p. 236.) In this type of **tatpuruṣa** compound, the last member is formed from a verb root, but is declined like a noun. The first member is considered the subordinate (**upa**) word (**pada**), and thus the name **upapada**, Pāṇini 3.1.92. For example:

**सत्त्वस्थ**

**sattva-stha** (*stha* is from the root  $\sqrt{sthā}$ .)  
established in **sattva**, firm in purity

2. The verbal root may lose its last letter, may change a long vowel to its short vowel (ā to a), or may add t. For example:

**गृहस्थ**

**gr̥ha-stha** (*stha* is from the root  $\sqrt{sthā}$ .)  
holding the house, a householder

**आत्मवित्**

**ātma-vit** (*vit* is the root  $\sqrt{vid}$ .)  
knower of the Self

**इन्द्रजित्**

**indra-jit** (*jit* is from the root  $\sqrt{ji}$ .)  
conqueror of Indra (Rāvana's son Meghanāda)

**तंरति शोकमात्मवित्**

**tarati śokam ātma-vit**  
The knower of the Self overcomes sorrow.  
(Chāndogya Upaniṣad 7.1.3)

## VOCABULARY

## SANSKRIT

## ENGLISH

**अर्जुनः** (mas.)

Arjuna

**द्वेषः** (mas.)

security, prosperity, comforts

**गुणः** (mas.)

quality, attribute, strand

**द्वन्द्वम्** (n.)

“two-by-two,” pairs of opposites

**नित्य** mf(ā)n (adj.)

eternal, continual, perpetual

**नित्यम्** (adv.)

eternally, ever, always

**भगवत्** mfn (adj.)

fortunate, glorious

**भगवत्** (mas.)

the honorable one, sir

**योगः** (mas.)

union, acquisition

**राज्यम्** (n.)

kingdom, realm

**विषयः** (mas.)

concern, sphere of action, territory, object

**वेदः** (mas.)

knowledge

**सत्त्वम्** (n.)

purity

**सत्य** mf(ā)n (adj.)

true

**सत्यम्** (n.)

truth

**EXERCISES**

1. Learn to recite Chapter 2, Verse 45 from the **Bhagavad-Gītā** first for pronunciation only. Then pronounce each word out loud and be able to give its grammatical analysis and definition. Finally, be able to recite the verse with the meaning in mind.

**त्रैगुरायविषया वेदा**

**निखैगुरायो भवार्जुन ।**

**निर्द्वन्द्वो नित्यसत्त्वस्थो**

**निर्योगक्षेम आत्मवान् ॥४५॥**

2. Begin practice of the **Bhagavad-Gītā** slowly and distinctly. The best way is repeat after a good Sanskrit speaker.
3. Memorize the declension for **bhagavat**.
4. Mémorize the conjugation of the imperative and the vocabulary from this lesson.
5. Translate the following sentences. (Notice that we will go from the Sanskrit to the English for all exercises.)

a. वनं गच्छ फलानि च म आनयेति बाला

**वदति ।१।**

b. यदार्जुनः सत्यं पश्यति तदा सुखवान् ।२।

c. वेदस्य शास्त्राणि पठेमेत्याचार्यस्तस्य  
शिष्यानवदत् ।३।

d. नित्यसत्त्वस्थ आत्मस्थः ।४।

e. यत आत्मवान्ततः सूर्यं चन्द्रं च लभते ।५।

f. सत्यवन्तोऽसामेति पिता तस्य पुत्रान्वदति ।६।

g. सत्यं वेदविषय इत्याचार्योऽभाषत ।७।

h. अर्जुनस्य गुणौ सत्त्वं च सत्यं च ।८।

6. Translate the following sentences:

a. योगक्रोमं त्रैगुरुयविषयेऽस्ति ।१।

b. भगवत्रामस्य कथां पठतु ।२।

c. रामराज्यं सुखवदासीत् ।३।

d. यत्र राजा वसति तत्र नित्यं स्मराणि ।४।

e. योगविषयो निर्द्वन्द्वोऽस्ति ।५।

f. वेदानां सूक्तानि स्परेमेत्याचार्यो वदति ।६।

g. तव कुलं योगज्ञानं लभतामिति सीतावदत् ।७।

h. सीतया विना कुत्र गमिष्यामीति रामः पृच्छति ।८।

#### ANSWERS

5. a. "Go to the forest and bring me fruit," the girl says.
- b. Arjuna is possessed of happiness when he sees the truth.
- c. "Let us read the scriptures of the Veda," said the teacher to his students.
- d. One established in the Self is eternally established in purity.
- e. Since he is possessed of the Self, he obtains the sun and the moon.
- f. "Let us be truthful," the father says to his sons.
- g. "The sphere of the Veda is truth," spoke the teacher.

- h. The qualities of Arjuna are purity and truth.
- 6. a. Acquisition and prosperity are in the sphere of the three gunas.
- b. May the honorable one read the story of Rāma. (Notice that as a form of address, **bhagavan** is used with the third person imperative.)
- c. The kingdom of Rāma was possessed of happiness (happy).
- d. Let me always remember where the king dwells.
- e. The sphere of yoga is without the pairs of opposites. (Here “without the pairs of opposites” is an adjective.)
- f. “Let us remember the hymns of the Vedas,” the teacher says.
- g. “Your family must obtain knowledge of yoga,” Sītā said.
- h. “Where will I go without Sītā?” Rāma asks.

# 20

## LESSON TWENTY

Recitation: **Bhagavad-Gītā Chapter 2, Verse 48**  
**The Oral Tradition of Teaching**

Grammar: **Verb Classes 1, 4, 6, 10**  
**Verb Class 8**  
**Passive Construction**

Vocabulary: **Words from Chapter 2, Verse 48**  
**Verbs from Class 8**

BHAGAVAD-GITĀ

योगस्थः कुरु कर्माणि

सञ्ज त्यक्त्वा धनञ्जय ।

सिद्ध्यसिद्ध्योः समो भूत्वा

समत्वं योग उच्यते ॥४८॥

yogasthaḥ kuru karmāṇi  
 saṅgam tyaktvā dhanāñjaya  
 siddhy-asiddhyoh samo bhūtvā  
 samatvam yoga ucyate 48

Established in Yoga, O winner of wealth, perform actions  
 having abandoned attachment  
 and having become balanced in success and failure,  
 for balance of mind is called Yoga.

yoga-	(mas.) union
sthāḥ	(mas. nom. sing. √sthā) established, fixed in
yoga-sthāḥ	established in Yoga (upapada compound)
kuru	(2nd per. sing. imperative act. √kr) perform, do (This verb stem does not end in a. See below.)
karmāṇi	(n. acc. pl.) actions
saṅgam	(mas. acc. sing.) attachment, clinging
tyaktvā	(gerund √tyaj) having abandoned (For the gerund, see Lesson 12, pp. 161, 162)
dhanam-	(n.) wealth
jaya	(mas. √ji) winner, conqueror

<b>dhanañ-jaya</b>	(mas. voc. sing. <b>tatpuruṣa</b> compound) O winner of wealth ( <b>Arjuna</b> ) (Notice that the first member of this compound is in the accusative. Occasionally a compound, called <b>aluk samāsa</b> , will not lose the endings of the prior member. See Lesson 16, p.210.)
<b>siddhi-</b>	(fem.) success, perfection
<b>a-siddhi</b>	(fem.) non-success, failure
<b>siddhy-a-siddhyoh</b>	(fem. loc. dual <b>dvandva</b> compound) in success and failure (See Lesson 16, pp. 210-213.)
<b>samah</b>	(mas. nom. sing. adj.) balanced, even
<b>bhūtvā</b>	(gerund √ <b>bhū</b> ) having become
<b>samatvam</b>	(n. nom. sing.) the state of balance, equanimity, evenness
<b>yogah</b>	(mas. nom. sing.) yoga, union
<b>ucyate</b>	(3rd per. sing. pres. indic. passive √ <b>vac</b> ) is called, is said (For the passive, see below.)

### THE ORAL TRADITION OF TEACHING

1. Youth in ancient India, after the **upanayana** ceremony, lived in their teacher's house (**gurukula**) for twelve years, to the age of 25. Sanskrit lessons, completely oral, emphasized recitation and memorization. According to the **Rk Samhitā** 7.103, "Education is hearing and repeating another's speech." The teacher would pronounce the verse with the proper accents, and the students, seated on the ground, repeated.
2. Recitation of Sanskrit verses is traditionally divided into three speeds (**vṛtti**). Learning verses was traditionally done at the slowest speed:

<b>druta</b>	quick, melted, indistinct
<b>madhya</b>	medium
<b>vilambita</b>	slow

3. The Sanskrit literature was passed down from teacher to student primarily through an oral tradition, which is still lively today. Secondarily, manuscripts were used for the preservation of the literature. Manuscripts were made from palm leaves or inner birch bark (in the north), and trimmed in a narrow, horizontal shape. They were bound at the top, and secured with painted wooden covers.
4. The palm leaves (palmyra palm, *tālapattra*, or talipot palm) were prepared by drying them in the sun, smoothing them, and then applying oil. Incisions were made in the leaves with an iron stylus (style). Then black paint, made from a mixture of lampblack or charcoal powder and oil, was applied to the surface of the leaf. When the excess paint was wiped off, the incisions made by the stylus appeared in black. Some leaves were painted, instead of using a stylus. Small designs and pictures were painted around the script. Later on, other materials were used, such as cotton, silk, wood, bamboo, copper, and paper.
5. The first person to design and use a printing type for *devanāgari* was Charles Wilkins (1749–1836).

**VERB CLASSES**  
1, 4, 6, 10

1. Now we will study in more depth the ten classes (**daśa-gana**) of verbs. Almost all Sanskrit roots are divided into ten classes, according to how the present stem is formed from the root. (Sometimes one root may appear in more than one class, because it forms its present stem in more than one way.) The present stem is used for verbs in the present indicative (*lat*), imperfect (*lañ*), imperative (*lot*), and optative (*liñ*). The present stem is also used for the present participle (*vartamāne kṛdanta*). (We have not studied the optative or present participle yet.) These forms compose the present system. Some of the following is review, and much is for observation only.
  
2. All of the verbs that we have studied (except *√as*) have stems which end in **a** and stay the same throughout the conjugation. They come from classes 1, 4, 6, and 10. Let's look at how these stems are formed.
  
3. Each class is named after one root from its class, usually the first root listed in that class in the *Dhātu Paṭha* of Pāṇini. The first class is called the **bhvādi-gana** (*bhū ādi gana*), which means “bhū, etc. class,” or “the class beginning with bhū.”
  
4. **Class One.** *√bhū gana*. (*√bhū* be, become) Most of the verbs that we have studied so far are in this class, and about half of all roots belong to this class. Verbs in this class form their stem by:

**guna** of root + **a**

Here are some examples of how the stem is formed:

The **guna** of *√smṛ* is **smar**.

**smar** + **a** = **smara** (remember)

(*smarati*, he remembers)

The **guna** of *√vad* is **vad**.

vad + a = vada (speak)

(vadati, he speaks)

5. The root only takes **guna** if its vowel (most roots have one vowel) is a final vowel or is a short vowel followed by one consonant. For example:

The **guna** of  $\sqrt{s}ubh$  is  $sobh$ .

$sobh$  + a = **sobha** (shines)

(**sobhate**, he shines)

The **guna** of  $\sqrt{b}udh$  is **bodh**.

**bodh** + a = **bodha** (know)

(**bodhati**, he knows)

$\sqrt{j}i$  and  $\sqrt{bh}ā$  do not take **guna**.

This rule is a general rule, true of other classes that add **guna** to the root vowel.

6. If the **guna** of the root is e or o, then the e appears as ay (from a + i), and the o appears as av (from a + u). The a is then added. For example:

The **guna** of  $\sqrt{ji}$  is **je**.

**je** + a = **jaya** (conquer)

(**jayati**, he conquers)

The **guna** of  $\sqrt{bh}ū$  is **bho**.

**bho** + a = **bhava** (be)

(**bhavati**, he is)

The **guna** of  $\sqrt{n}i$  is **ne**.

**ne** + a = **naya** (lead)

(**nayati**, he leads)

7. Some stems are formed from the *vṛddhi* of the root, and there are also irregular formations of the present stem. For example:

$\sqrt{gam} + a = gaccha$  (go)  
(*gacchati*, he goes)

$\sqrt{sthā} + a = tiṣṭha$  (stand)  
(*tiṣṭhati*, he stands)

$\sqrt{pā} + a = piba$  (drink)  
(*pibati*, he drinks)

8. As we learned in Lessons 1, 2, and 3, the present stem takes endings to form a verb. Here are the endings for the present indicative active verbs (for all classes):

prathama	ति	तस्	अन्ति
madhyama	सि	थस्	थ
uttama	मि	वस्	मस्
	eka	dvi	bahu

Note that final s becomes a *visarga* once a verb is formed.

9. Here is the conjugation of  $\sqrt{bhū}$ . It is class 1 and *parasmaipada* and so noted as 1P:

Root:  $\sqrt{bhū}$  1P (be, become) Present Indicative

<b>prathama</b>	<b>भवति</b>	<b>भवतः</b>	<b>भवन्ति</b>
	<b>bhavati</b>	<b>bhavataḥ</b>	<b>bhavanti</b>
	<b>bhava+ti</b>	<b>bhava+tas</b>	<b>bhava-a+anti</b>
<b>madhyama</b>	<b>भवसि</b>	<b>भवथः</b>	<b>भवथ</b>
	<b>bhavasi</b>	<b>bhavathah</b>	<b>bhavatha</b>
	<b>bhava+si</b>	<b>bhava+thas</b>	<b>bhava+tha</b>
<b>uttama</b>	<b>भवामि</b>	<b>भवावः</b>	<b>भवामः</b>
	<b>bhavāmi</b>	<b>bhavāvah</b>	<b>bhavāmah</b>
	<b>bhava+a+mi</b>	<b>bhava+a+vas</b>	<b>bhava+a+mas</b>
	<b>eka</b>	<b>dvi</b>	<b>bahu</b>

Notice that when the ending begins with v or m, an a is added before the ending. Before anti, the a is taken away. (These changes were presented in Lesson 1, p. 5; Lesson 2, p. 13; and Lesson 3, p. 24.)

10. The ātmanepada endings for classes 1, 4, 6, and 10 are:

<b>prathama</b>	<b>ते</b>	<b>इते</b>	<b>अन्ते</b>
<b>madhyama</b>	<b>से</b>	<b>इथे</b>	<b>ध्वे</b>
<b>uttama</b>	<b>इ</b>	<b>वहे</b>	<b>महे</b>
	<b>eka</b>	<b>dvi</b>	<b>bahu</b>

11. Here is the conjugation of  $\sqrt{bhāṣ}$ :

Root:  $\sqrt{bhāṣ}$  1Ā (speak) Present Indicative

prathama	भाषते	भाषेते	भाषन्ते
	bhāṣate	bhāṣete	bhāṣante
	bhāṣa+te	bhāṣa+ite	bhāṣa-a+ante
madhyama	भाषसे	भाषेथे	भाषध्वे
	bhāṣase	bhāṣethē	bhāṣadhve
	bhāṣa+se	bhāṣa+ithe	bhāṣa+dhve
uttama	भाषे	भाषावहे	भाषामहे
	bhāṣe	bhāṣāvahē	bhāṣāmahe
	bhāṣa+i	bhāṣa+a+vahe	bhāṣa+a+mahe
	eka	dvi	bahu

Like the **parasmaipāda**, notice that when the ending begins with v or m, an a is added before the ending. Before **ante**, the a is taken away.

12. **Class Four.**  $\sqrt{div}$  gaṇa. ( $\sqrt{div}$  play, increase, shine) This stem is formed by:

root + ya

Here is an example of how the stem is formed ( $\sqrt{div}$  is irregular):

$\sqrt{man} + ya = manya$  (think)  
(manyate, he thinks)

Notice that  $\sqrt{man}$  always takes ātmānepāda endings, although other roots in this class take parasmaipāda endings.

13. Class Six.  $\sqrt{tud}$  **gana**. ( $\sqrt{tud}$  push, strike) This stem is formed by:

root + a

Here is an example of how the stem is formed:

$\sqrt{tud} + a = tuda$  (push)  
(*tudati*, he pushes)

Notice that this root does not take **guna** as in Class One.

14. Some of these roots add a nasal before the final consonant of the stem. For example:

$\sqrt{vid} + a = vinda$  (find)  
(*vindati*, he finds)

$\sqrt{muc} + a = muñca$  (release)  
(*muñcati*, he releases)

15. Class Ten.  $\sqrt{cur}$  **gana**. ( $\sqrt{cur}$  steal) This stem is formed by:

**guna** of root + aya

Here are some examples of how the stem is formed:

$\sqrt{cur} + aya = coraya$  (steal)  
(*corayati*, he steals)

$\sqrt{cint} + aya = cintaya$  (think)  
(*cintayati*, he thinks)

Notice that the i in **cint** does not take **guna** because there are two consonants following the vowel. See above #5

**VERB CLASS 8**

1. Now we will study Verb Class 8. The class only has eight roots in it. Observe the various formations of this verb.
2. All of the verb classes that we have not yet studied—classes 2, 3, 5, 7, 8, and 9—have stems which do not end in **a**. These stems do not stay the same throughout the conjugation, but have “strong forms” and “weak forms.” Let’s look at how stems from Class 8 are formed.
3. **Class Eight.**  $\sqrt{\text{tan}} \text{ gaṇa}$  ( $\sqrt{\text{tan}}$  stretch) This stem is formed by:

root + **u** for weak forms (dual and plural)

root + **o** for strong forms (singular)

4. The **u** takes **guṇa** (which makes it **o**) in singular forms of the present **parasmaipada**. These forms are called the strong forms and the others are called the weak forms. For example:

$\sqrt{\text{tan}} + \text{o} = \text{tano}$  (strong form)  
(**tanoti**, he stretches)

$\sqrt{\text{tan}} + \text{u} = \text{tanu}$  (weak form)  
(**tanvanti**, they stretch)

5. Here is an example of a conjugation from Class Eight:

Root:  $\sqrt{\text{tan}}$  8U\* (stretch) Present Indicative

prathama	<b>तनोति</b>	<b>तनुतः</b>	<b>तन्वन्ति</b>
	<u>tanoti</u>	tanutah	tanvanti
	tan+o+ti	tan+u+tas	tan+u+anti
madhyama	<b>तनोषि</b>	<b>तनुथः</b>	<b>तनुथ</b>
	<u>tanosi</u>	tanuthah	tanutha
	tan+o+si	tan+u+thas	tan+u+tha
uttama	<b>तनोमि</b>	<b>तनुवः</b>	<b>तनुमः</b>
	<u>tanomi</u>	tanuvah	tanumah
	tan+o+mi	tan+u+vas	tan+u+mas
	_____	_____	_____
	eka	dvi	bahu

\*The U indicates that this verb is **ubhayapada**, which means that it is regularly used with **parasmaipada** and **ātmanepada** endings. (See Lesson 3, p. 25.)

Notice that the strong forms are underlined. Notice that the endings are the same. Notice that in the second person singular, the ending si turns into ū because of the vowel o. (See Lesson 11, p. 142.) The ending anti turns the previous u into v.

6. In the dual and plural, the u may be optionally deleted before v or m. For example:

**tanumah** or **tanmaḥ**  
**tanuvah** or **tanvah**

7. While the present indicative, imperfect and imperative endings are the same for all classes in **parasmaipada** endings, the **ātmanepada** endings are different. We have learned the **ātmanepada** endings for classes 1, 4, 6, and 10. For the other classes (2, 3, 5, 7, 8, and 9), the endings are slightly different:

<u>Classes 1, 4, 6, and 10</u>	<u>Classes 2, 3, 5, 7, 8, and 9</u>
Present Indicative <b>parasmaipada</b>	Same
Imperfect <b>parasmaipada</b>	Same
Imperative <b>parasmaipada</b>	Same (except the 2nd per.sing. is hi in classes 2, 3, 7, and 9)
Present Indicative <b>ātmanepada</b>	Different
Imperfect <b>ātmanepada</b>	Different
Imperative <b>ātmanepada</b>	Different

8. The **ātmanepada** endings for classes 2, 3, 5, 7, 8, and 9 are listed in the tables in the back of the book. Several examples are given there.
9. The strong forms are underlined in the tables for each class. For the imperfect, the strong forms are the same as the present. For the imperative active, the strong forms are the 3rd person singular and all first person forms. For the imperative middle, the strong forms are all first person forms.
10. One of the most important verbs comes from Class Eight, and that is  $\sqrt{kṛ}$  (do, make, perform). Its conjugation is irregular. The strong stem is **karo** and the weak stem is **kuru**. The **u** of the stem must be deleted before **v** and **m**. Here is the conjugation for the present **parasmaipada**:

Root: √kr 8U (do) Present Indicative

prathama	करोति <u>karoti</u> kar+o+ti	कुरुतः kurutah kur+u+tas	कुर्वन्ति kurvanti kur+v+anti
madhyama	करोषि <u>karosi</u> kar+o+si	कुरुथः kuruthah kur+u+thas	कुरुथ kurutha kur+u+tha
uttama	करोमि <u>karomi</u> kar+o+mi	कुर्वः kurvah kur-u+vas	कुर्मः kurmah kur-u+mas
		eka                    dvi	bahu

10. Other forms for this verb are listed in the tables in the back of the book.

11. When the root √kr is prefixed by sam or pari, the kr becomes skr. For example, samskṛta, “put together.”

## PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION

1. In Lesson 4, p. 34, #6, we learned that the **kartari prayoga** is the agent construction, or active construction. For example:

The boy reads the book.

Here the verb relates directly to the agent of action, the **kartr̥**. In Sanskrit, the agent of action (the boy) is put in the nominative and the object of action (the book) is put in the accusative. The object of action is called the **karman**.

2. In a passive construction, the verb relates directly to the object. For example:

The book is read by the boy.

If this sentence were translated into Sanskrit, the object of action (the book) would be in the nominative, and the agent of action (the boy) would be in the instrumental (or sometimes in the genitive). This construction is called **karmani prayoga**, or passive construction. The verb relates directly to the **karman**, or object.

3. There is another related construction, called the **bhāve prayoga**, or abstract construction. In it, the verb is passive, but the direct object is missing, or abstract. For example:

**मया गम्यते ।**

It is gone by me. (I go.)

This construction is not usually found in English.

4. In the **karmani prayoga**, the verb becomes a passive verb (**karmani**). This is how the passive verb is formed:

root + ya + ātmanepada endings

Every *gaṇa* forms the passive in this way. The passive may take present, imperfect, and imperative endings. All classes take the *ātmanepada* endings as in class 4.

5. For example, the root  $\sqrt{\text{paṭh}}$  1P (read) forms the passive like this:

$\text{paṭh} + \text{ya} + \text{te} = \text{paṭhyate}$  (is read)

6. Here are the two constructions:

**बालः पुस्तकं पठति ।** (active construction)

The boy reads the book.

**पुस्तकं बालेन पठयते ।** (passive construction)

The book is read by the boy. (Here **pustakam** is nominative.)

7. Here is the conjugation for the passive verb:

$\sqrt{\text{paṭh}}$  1P (read) passive

prathama	पठ्यते	पठ्येते	पठ्यन्ते
	paṭhyate	paṭhyete	paṭhyante
	paṭh+ya+te	paṭh+ya+ite	paṭh+ya-a+ante
madhyama	पठ्यसे	पठ्येथे	पठ्यध्वे
	paṭhyase	paṭhyethē	paṭhyadhve
	paṭh+ya+se	paṭh+ya+ithe	paṭh+ya+dhve
uttama	पठ्ये	पठ्यावहे	पठ्यामहे
	paṭhye	paṭhyāvahē	paṭhyāmahe
	paṭh+ya+i	paṭh+ya+a+vahē	paṭh+ya+a+mahe
	eka	dvi	bahu

8. Observe some additional rules for the formation of the passive:

a. A final **i** or **u** in the root is lengthened. For example:

$\sqrt{ji}$	jayati	jīyate
conquer	he conquers	is conquered

b. Final **ā** or a complex vowel usually becomes **ī**. For example:

$\sqrt{sthā}$	tiṣṭhati	sthīyate
stand	he stands	is stood

c. Final **r** after one consonant becomes **ri**. For example:

$\sqrt{kṛ}$	karoti	kriyate
make	he makes	is made

If preceded by two consonants, **r** becomes **ar**. For example:

$\sqrt{smṛ}$	smarati	smaryate
remember	he remembers	is remembered

d. Some roots take **samprasāraṇa**. (See Lesson 8, p. 91.) For example, the **va** becomes **u**, and the **ya** becomes **i**. Therefore  $\sqrt{vac}$  becomes **ucyate** (is called). This is often called the weak form. Other examples are:

$\sqrt{vad}$	vadati	udyate
speak	he speaks	is spoken

e. Roots that add **aya** lose **aya** before adding **ya**. For example:

$\sqrt{cint}$	cintayati	cintyate
think	he thinks	is thought

9. Here are some of the verbs we have studied so far and will study in this lesson. Included are their passive forms:

ROOT	PRESENT	PASSIVE	ENGLISH PASSIVE
√kr̥ (8U) *	karoti, kurute	kriyate	is made
√gam (1P)	gacchati	gamyate	is gone
√gup (1P)	gopāyati	gupyate	is protected
√cint (10U)	cintayati -te	cintyate	is thought
√cur (10U)	corayati -te	coryate	is stolen
√ji (1P)	jayati	jīyate	is conquered
√tan (8U)	tanoti, tanute	tanyate	is stretched
√tud (6U)	tudati -te	tudyate	is pushed
√tyaj (1P)	tyajati	tyajyate	is abandoned
√div (4P)	dīvyati	dīvylate	is played
√dr̥ś (√paś)(1P)	paśyati	dr̥śyate	is seen
√nī (1U)	nayati -te	nīyate	is lead
√paṭh (1P)	paṭhati	paṭhyate	is read
√pā (1P)	pibati	pīyate	is drunk
√prach (6P)	pr̥cchati	pr̥cchylate	is asked

$\sqrt{b}udh$ (1U)	bodhati -te	budhyate	is known
$\sqrt{bhā}s$ (1Ā)	bhāsate	bhāsyate	is spoken
$\sqrt{bhū}$ (1P)	bhavati	bhūyate	is
$\sqrt{m}an$ (4Ā)	manyate	manyate	is thought
$\sqrt{ram}$ (1Ā)	ramate	ramyate	is enjoyed
$\sqrt{l}abha$ (1Ā)	labhate	labhyate	is obtained
$\sqrt{v}ad$ (1P)	vadati	udyate	is spoken
$\sqrt{v}as$ (1P)	vasati	uşyate	is lived
$\sqrt{s}ev$ (1Ā)	sevate	sevyate	is served
$\sqrt{sthā}$ (1P)	tiş̄hati	sthiyate	is stood
$\sqrt{s}mi$ (1Ā)	smayate	smīyate	is smiled
$\sqrt{s}mr̄$ (1P)	smarati	smaryate	is remembered
$\sqrt{h}as$ (1P)	hasati	hasyate	is laughed

\*After each root is the class (1, 4, 6, 8, or 10) and the traditional way of listing endings: P for verbs usually ending in **parasmaipada**, Ā for verbs usually ending in **ātmanepada**, and U for verbs usually ending in **ubhyapada**. (See Lesson 3, p.25.)

VOCABULARY	SANSKRIT	ENGLISH
कृ (8U)	करोति कुरुते	he makes, does, performs
चुर् (10U)	चोरयति चोरयते	he steals
तन् (8U)	तनोति तनुते	he stretches, spreads, goes
तुद् (6U)	तुदति तुदते	he pushes, strikes
त्यज् (1P)	त्यजति	he abandons
दिव् (4P)	दीव्यति	he plays, shines, increases
सङ्गः (mas.)		attachment, clinging
सम् mf(ā)n (adj.)		balanced, equal, same
समत्वम् (n.)		balance, equanimity

**EXERCISES**

- Learn to recite Chapter 2, Verse 48 from the **Bhagavad-Gītā** for pronunciation and then with word meaning. Be able to give the grammatical analysis of each word.

योगस्थः कुरु कर्मणि  
 सङ्गं त्यक्त्वा धनञ्जय ॥  
 सिद्ध्यसिद्ध्योः समो भूत्वा  
 समत्वं योग उच्यते ॥४८॥

- Memorize the conjugation for  $\sqrt{tan}$  and for  $\sqrt{kṛ}$ .
- Memorize the passive forms for the verbs we have studied.
- Learn the vocabulary from this lesson.
- Translate the following sentences:
  - वापी नद्या जलेन क्रियते ।१।
  - सङ्गं त्यक्त्वर्षिः समत्वमलभत ।२।
  - धार्मिकेण बालेन फलानि न चोर्यन्ते ।३।

- d. बालाः सुन्दरीं शुक्लां मालां कुर्वन्ति । ४।
- e. यदा नित्यो वेदस्त्यज्यते तदा सत्यं नावगम्यते । ५।
- f. यदा वीरोऽश्वं तुदति तदाश्वं उत्तिष्ठति । ६।
- g. रामो राजा भूम्यां शत्रुणा विना भवति । ७।
- h. तस्याः प्रियया पुत्रिकया माता दीव्यति । ८।
6. Translate the following sentences:
- a. सत्यवान्नामः सुखदुःखे सज्जाङ्गुप्यते । १।
- b. नर्दी गच्छ जलेन च प्रतिगच्छेति माताल्पं  
बालमवदत् ।
- c. स्मित्वा सीता तस्याः पितरं राजानं वदति । ३।

- d. रामराज्ये सुन्दरा ग्रामाः सेनया गुप्यन्ते ।४।
- e. चन्द्रस्य छाया गजान्मृगं तनोति ।५।
- f. योगस्थः समो भवेत्याचार्यः शिष्यं वदति ।६।
- g. यदा स तस्य राज्यं प्रतिगच्छति तदा रामो नृपः  
भवति ।७।
- h. नित्यं वेदं पृच्छेति पिता तस्य पुत्रमवदत् ।८।

## ANSWERS

5. a. The pond is made by water from the river.
- b. Having abandoned attachment, the seer obtained balance.  
(The final **ā** in the second word joins with **r** to form **ar**.)
- c. The fruit is not stolen by the virtuous boy.
- d. The girls make a beautiful white garland.

- e. When eternal knowledge is abandoned, then truth is not understood.
  - f. When the hero pushes the horse, the horse stands up.
  - g. Rāma, the king, is without an enemy on earth.
  - h. The mother plays with her dear daughter.
- 6.
- a. Possessing the truth, Rāma is protected from attachment to pleasure and pain. (The word "attachment" is used with the locative—"attachment in pleasure and pain.")
  - b. "Go to the river and return with water," the mother said to the little boy.
  - c. Having smiled, Sītā speaks to her father, the king.
  - d. In the kingdom of Rāma, the beautiful villages are protected by the army.
  - e. The shadow of the moon stretches from the elephant to the deer.
  - f. "Established in yoga, become balanced," the teacher tells the student.
  - g. When he returns to his kingdom, then Rāma becomes the king.
  - h. "Ask about eternal knowledge," the father said to his son.

# 21

## LESSON TWENTY-ONE

Recitation:	<b>Bhagavad-Gītā Chapter 2, Verse 49</b> Traditional Methods of Memorization
Grammar:	Nouns ending in <b>as</b> The <b>bahuvrīhi</b> compound
Vocabulary:	Words from Chapter 2, Verse 49 Nouns ending in <b>as</b>

BHAGAVAD-GITA

दूरेण ह्यवरं कर्म

बुद्धियोगाद्वन्नज्ञय ।

बुद्धौ शरणमन्विच्छ

कृपणः फलहेतवः ॥४६॥

dūreṇa hy avaraṁ karma  
 buddhi-yogād dhanañjaya  
 buddhau śaraṇam anviccha  
 kṛpaṇāḥ phala-hetavāḥ 49

Far away, indeed, from the balanced intellect  
 is the action devoid of greatness, O winner of wealth.  
 Take refuge in the intellect.  
 Pitiful are those who live for the fruits (of action).

<b>dūreṇa</b>	(ind.) far away, far (Although this word takes an instrumental ending, it is an adverb and not declined.)
<b>hi</b>	(ind.) indeed, for, because
<b>a-varaṁ</b>	(n. nom. sing.) (from <b>a</b> + <b>vara</b> , better, boon) devoid of greatness, inferior
<b>karma</b>	(n. nom. sing.) action, performance
<b>buddhi-</b>	(fem.) intellect, intelligence
<b>yogaṭ</b>	(mas. abl. sing.) from balance
<b>buddhi-yogaṭ</b>	(tatpuruṣa compound) from the balanced intellect, from the balance of intelligence
<b>dhanaṁ-</b>	(n.) wealth

jaya	(mas. $\sqrt{ji}$ 1P) winner, conqueror
dhanañ-jaya	(mas. voc. sing. tatpuruṣa compound) O winner of wealth (Arjuna)
buddhau	(fem. loc. sing.) in the intellect, in intelligence
śaraṇam	(n. acc. sing.) refuge
anu-iccha	(2nd per. imperative anu $\sqrt{iṣ}$ 6P) take, seek
kṛpaṇāḥ	(mas. nom. pl.) pitiable
phala-	(n.) fruit
hetavaḥ	(mas. nom. pl.) causes, motives
phala-hetavaḥ	(bahuvrīhi compound) those whose motives are the fruits, those who live for the fruits (of action)

### TRADITIONAL METHODS OF MEMORIZATION

1. Thorough memorization allowed the verses of Sanskrit to be preserved accurately as an oral tradition. There are five traditional ways of memorizing Sanskrit verses. Each way of memorizing is called a pāṭha, or reading:

samhitā-pāṭha	Collected reading
pada-pāṭha	word reading
krama-pāṭha	step reading
jaṭā-pāṭha	twisted reading
ghana-pāṭha	"killer" reading

2. The samhitā-pāṭha is the recitation of the verse as it was cognized. The sandhi is included, creating the smooth flow of sound. Here is the verse from the Bhagavad-Gītā in samhitā-pāṭha:

दूरेण ह्यवरं कर्म  
 बुद्धियोगाद्वनजय ।  
 बुद्धौ शरणमन्विच्छ  
 कृपणाः फलहेतवः ॥४६॥

dūreṇa hy avaram karma  
 buddhi-yogād dhanañjaya  
 buddhau śaraṇam anviccha  
 kṛpaṇāḥ phala-hetavah 49

3. The **pada-pāṭha** is the recitation of the verse as individual words (**pada**). Each individual word or part of a word, including prefixes, takes **sandhi** as it would at the end of a line. Notice that an **avagrāha** is used between members of a compound and after prefixes. (Breaking the word for **pada-pāṭha** is called **carcā**.) Here is the verse from the **Bhagavad-Gītā** in **pada-pāṭha**:

दूरेण हि अऽवरम् कर्म  
 बुद्धिऽयोगात् धनम् इजय ।  
 बुद्धौ शरणम् अनुऽइच्छ  
 कृपणाः फलऽहेतवः ॥४६॥

dūreṇa hi a-varam karma  
 buddhi-yogāt dhanam-jaya  
 buddhau śaraṇam anu-iccha  
 kṛpaṇāḥ phala-hetavah

Notice that this is approximately the way the words are broken when they are given in the gloss, or word-by-word analysis at the end of each verse.

4. The **krama-pāṭha** is the recitation of the words in steps. Each word is recited twice. Here is the sequence:

1, 2; 2, 3; 3, 4; 4, 5;

5. The **jatā-pāṭha** is the recitation with a twist. It goes forwards and backwards. Here is the sequence:

1, 2; 2, 1; 1, 2, 3;  
2, 3; 3, 2; 2, 3, 4;  
3, 4; 4, 3; 3, 4, 5

6. The **ghana-pāṭha** is the recitation that is forwards and backwards with three elements:

1, 2; 2, 1; 1, 2, 3;  
1, 2, 3; 3, 2, 1; 1, 2, 3, 4;  
2, 3, 4; 4, 3, 2; 2, 3, 4, 5;

## NOUNS IN AS

1. Here is the declension for neuter nouns ending in as:

Stem: **manas** (neuter) mind

<b>prathamā</b>	मनः	मनसी	मनांसि
<b>dvitiyā</b>	मनः	मनसी	मनांसि
<b>trtiyā</b>	मनसा	मनोभ्याम्	मनोभिः
<b>caturthī</b>	मनसे	मनोभ्याम्	मनोभ्यः
<b>pañcamī</b>	मनसः	मनोभ्याम्	मनोभ्यः
<b>śaṣṭhī</b>	मनसः	मनसोः	मनसाम्
<b>saptami</b>	मनसि	मनसोः	मनःसु
<b>sambodhana</b>	मनः	मनसी	मनांसि
	[ ] eka	[ ] dvi	[ ] bahu

2. For nouns ending in **as**, the masculine and feminine are the same. They differ from the neuter in the **prathamā** and **dvitiyā** only.

Stem: **añgiras** (masculine) **añgiras** (feminine)

<b>prathamā</b>	<b>अञ्जिरा:</b>	<b>अञ्जिरसौ</b>	<b>अञ्जिरसः</b>
<b>dvitiyā</b>	<b>अञ्जिरसम्</b>	<b>अञ्जिरसौ</b>	<b>अञ्जिरसः</b>
<b>trtiyā</b>	<b>अञ्जिरसा</b>	<b>अञ्जिरोभ्याम्</b>	<b>अञ्जिरोभिः</b>
<b>caturthī</b>	<b>अञ्जिरसे</b>	<b>अञ्जिरोभ्याम्</b>	<b>अञ्जिरोभ्यः</b>
<b>pañcamī</b>	<b>अञ्जिरसः</b>	<b>अञ्जिरोभ्याम्</b>	<b>अञ्जिरोभ्यः</b>
<b>śaṣṭhī</b>	<b>अञ्जिरसः</b>	<b>अञ्जिरसोः</b>	<b>अञ्जिरसाम्</b>
<b>saptamī</b>	<b>अञ्जिरसि</b>	<b>अञ्जिरसोः</b>	<b>अञ्जिरःसु</b>
<b>sambodhana</b>	<b>अञ्जिरः</b>	<b>अञ्जिरसी</b>	<b>अञ्जिरांसि</b>
	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
	<b>eka</b>	<b>dvi</b>	<b>bahu</b>

## THE BAHUVRĪHI COMPOUND

- Now we will study the **bahuvrīhi** compound. Begin by reviewing the four types of compounds described in Lesson 18, pp. 235, 236. Notice that compounds can be classified according to which member is principal (**pradhāna**), or has an independent purpose of its own.
- In a **dvandva** compound, both members are considered principal. The compound is an aggregate. For example:

**सीतारामौ गच्छतः ।**

Sītā-Rāma (Sītā and Rāma) are going. (**dvandva**)

Because both members are considered principal, they are connected by “and” if the compound is dissolved. The compound functions as an aggregate of equal members.

- In all types of **tatpuruṣa** compounds, the second member is considered to be principal. For example:

**रामपुत्रो गच्छति ।**

Rāma-son (the son of Rāma) is going. (**tatpuruṣa**)

The first member is considered subordinate (**upasarjana**), further qualifying the principal member. The second member could stand alone. For example:

**पुत्रो गच्छति ।**

The son is going.

- In a **bahuvrīhi** compound, both members are considered subordinate. The principal, whether implied or expressed, lies

outside the compound. Observe the following English sentence:

The redcoats are coming.

The subject refers to “the men whose coats are red.” It would not make sense to say, “The coats are coming.” The **bahuvrīhi** compound is sometimes called an “exocentric compound” because the principal, whether expressed or unexpressed, lies outside the compound. The compound cannot be understood merely by analysing its parts. Here are some more examples in English:

She reads the paperback.

He sees the Redwing.

These sentences are about a book and a bird, not just about a back or a wing.

5. The word “bahuvrīhi” is an example of a **bahuvrīhi** compound. The word “bahuvrīhi” means “much rice.” It refers to a substantive, a principal (**pradhāna**) outside itself—“a person whose rice (**vṛīhi**) is much (**bahu**).”
6. Even though the final member must be a noun, the **bahuvrīhi** compound acts like an adjective, describing something else. Like an adjective, it takes the person, case and number of what it is describing.
7. The **bahuvrīhi** compound is sometimes called a “possessive compound” because it often has the sense that something outside the compound possesses the characteristics in the compound. This can be seen by putting “having” in front of the compound. For example:

**bahuvrīhi**

much-rice      having much rice

red-coat      having a red coat

paper-back      having a paper back

8. The possessive relationship can be understood as “whose B is A.” For example:

much-rice      whose rice is much  
A      B      whose B is Ared-wing      whose wing is red  
paper-back      whose back is paper

9. In Sanskrit the analysis (**vigraha**) uses a form of **yad**, often **yasya** (or the feminine **yasyāḥ**). For example:

**बहुव्रीहिः**bahu-vrīhiḥ      **vigraha:**

“much-rice”      analysis:

**बहुवर्गीहिर्यस्य स बहुव्रीहिः**

bahur vrīhir yasya sa bahu-vrīhiḥ

he whose rice is much is “much-rice”

**विश्वरूपः**viśva-rūpaḥ      **vigraha:**

“all-form”      analysis:

**विश्वो रूपो यस्य स विश्वरूपः**

viśvo rūpo yasya sa viśva-rūpaḥ

he whose form is all is “all-form”

**स्थितप्रज्ञः**

sthita-prajñah vigraha:

“steady-intellect” analysis:

**स्थिता प्रज्ञा यस्य स स्थितप्रज्ञः**

sthitā prajñā yasya sa sthita-prajñah

he whose intellect is steady is “steady-intellect”

11. Notice that in the last example, the gender of the last member changes to agree with the principal, which is “he.” This is a helpful way to spot a **bahuvrīhi** compound.

## VOCABULARY

## SANSKRIT

## ENGLISH

**अङ्गिरस्** (mas.)

Aṅgiras (a ṛṣi) (given in stem form)

**इष्** (6P) **इच्छति**

he wishes, desires, seeks

**चेतस्** (n.)

mind, thought (stem form)

**तपस्** (n.)

austerity, increasing heat

**तमस्** (n.)

darkness, dullness

**तेजस्** (n.)

light, splendor

**दूरम्** (n.)

distance, duration

**दूरे** (ind.)

far, in a distance (used as an indeclinable)

**दूरेण** (ind.)

far, by a distance

**नमस्** (n.)

reverence, homage

**बुद्धिः** (fem.)

intellect, intelligence

**मनस्** (n.)

mind

**महा** (in comp.)

great (**mahā** is used in compounds

for **mahat**—great)

**शरणम्** (n.)

refuge, shelter

**हि** (ind.)

indeed, certainly, for (not first in a sentence)

**EXERCISES**

1. Learn to recite Chapter 2, Verse 49 from the **Bhagavad-Gītā** for pronunciation and then with word meaning. Be able to give the grammatical analysis of each word.

दूरेण ह्यवरं कर्म  
 बुद्धियोगाद्वन्नजय ।  
 बुद्धौ शरणमन्विच्छ  
 कृपणाः फलहेतवः ॥४६॥

2. Memorize the declension for nouns ending in **as**.
3. Learn to recognize and analyze **bahuvrīhi** compounds.
4. Learn the vocabulary from this lesson.
5. Translate the following sentences:

- a. समबुद्धिमिच्छेति पितावदत् ।१।
- b. आचार्याय नमः शिष्यैः क्रियते ।२।
- c. महात्मा शान्त्यै कुपितानि कुलान्यपृच्छत् ।३।

- d. यदा तव मनो जयसि तदा तमो जेष्यसीत्याचार्यो  
वदति । ४।
- e. यत्र गजा भवन्ति तत्र मा गच्छेति माता  
तस्याः पुत्रमवदत् । ५।
- f. भगवानृषिर्बुद्धिमानस्ति कर्मफलं च नेच्छति । ६।
- g. एवमस्त्विति राजा मन्यते । ७।
- h. अश्वगजमृगा महानद्या जलमिच्छन्ति । ८।
- i. यदा चन्द्रस्य तेजो ग्रामे शोभते तदा दूरे मृगा  
दृश्यन्ते । ९।

6. Translate the following sentences:

- a. प्रजा राजो विषये वसन्ति । १।

- b. अङ्गिरा ऋषिर्वने तपांस्यकरोत् ।२।
- c. आत्मनस्तेजः सत्त्वेन मनसा बुध्यते ।३।
- d. अल्पो मृगो बालेन दूरे दृश्यते ।४।
- e. महाराजः सत्यस्य तेजो लब्ध्वा तमस्त्यजति ।५।
- f. कुत्र भवाव इति महागजः पुत्रमपृच्छत् ।६।
- g. बहुप्रजो भार्यायै वनात्कलानि लभते ।७।
- h. बुद्धिसमत्वं सत्त्वमृषिभिरुद्यते ।८।
- i. महाराजः सत्त्ववान्वने तपांसि करोति ।९।

**ANSWERS**

5. a. "Desire a balanced intellect," the father said.
- b. Homage for the teacher is performed by the students.
- c. The great soul asked the angry families for peace.
- d. "If you conquer your mind, then you will conquer dullness," the teacher says.
- e. You must not go where the elephants are, the mother told her son.
- f. The glorious ṛṣi is wise (possessed of intelligence) and does not desire the fruit of action.
- g. "OK (thus it must be)," the king thinks.
- h. The horses, elephants, and deer desire water from the great river.
- i. When the light of the moon shines on the village, then deer are seen in the distance.
6. a. The subjects live in the territory of the king.
- b. Aṅgirās, the ṛṣi, performed austerities in the forest.

- c. The light of the Self is known by the mind with purity.
- d. The little deer is seen in the distance by the boy.
- e. The great king, having obtained the light of truth, abandons dullness.
- f. The man whose elephant is great asked his son, "Where are we?" (Notice that "his" is often understood in Sanskrit.)
- g. The man with many children obtains fruits from the forest for his wife.
- h. Balance of intellect is called purity by the ṛsis.
- i. The great king, possessed of purity, performs austerities in the forest.

# 22

## LESSON TWENTY-TWO

Recitation: **Bhagavad-Gītā Chapter 2, Verse 50**  
Division of Syllables

Grammar: **The Past Passive Participle**  
**Verb Class 3**  
**The Prefixes su and dus**

Vocabulary: **Words from Chapter 2, Verse 50**

BHAGAVAD-GITA

बुद्धियुक्तो जहातीह

उभे सुकृतदुष्कृते ।

तस्माद्योगाय युज्यस्व

योगः कर्मसु कौशलम् ॥५०॥

buddhi-yukto jahātiha

ubhe sukrta-duṣkṛte

tasmād yogāya yujyasva

yogaḥ karmasu kauśalam 50

He whose intellect is united (with the Self)  
casts off both good and evil even here.

Therefore, devote yourself to Yoga.

Yoga is skill in action.

<b>buddhi-</b>	(fem.) intellect, intelligence
<b>yuktaḥ</b>	(mas. nom. sing. p.p.p. $\sqrt{yuj}$ 7P) united (See below for the past passive participle—p.p.p.)
<b>buddhi-yuktaḥ</b>	(tatpuruṣa compound) united in intellect
<b>jahāti</b>	(3rd per. sing. pres. indicat. act. $\sqrt{hā}$ 3P) he casts off, abandons (See below for class 3.)
<b>iha</b>	(ind.) here, in this world, in this place
<b>ubhe</b>	(n. acc. dual adj.) both
<b>su-</b>	(ind.) good (See below for <b>su</b> , a prefix.)
<b>kṛta-</b>	(neuter p.p.p. $\sqrt{kṛ}$ 8P) action
<b>dus-</b>	(ind.) bad
<b>kṛte</b>	(n. acc. dual of p.p.p.) actions

<b>su-kṛta-dus-kṛte</b>	(dvandva compound) good and evil, good and bad actions
<b>tasmāt</b>	(ind. from mas. abl. sing. of <b>tad</b> ) from that, therefore
<b>yogāya</b>	(mas. dat. sing.) to yoga
<b>yujyasya</b>	(2nd. per. sing. imperative middle $\sqrt{yuj}$ 4Ā) devote yourself to, give yourself to (See below for class 7.) (This root can be found in several classes.)
<b>yogah</b>	(mas. nom. sing.) yoga, union
<b>karmasu</b>	(n. loc. pl.) in action, in deeds
<b>kauśalam</b>	(n. nom. sing.) skill, good fortune, prosperity

## DIVISION OF SYLLABLES

1. Now we will study how syllables are divided in Sanskrit. The word **akṣara** means syllable (See Lesson 1, p. 3.), and it also means "imperishable," or "indivisible." An **akṣara** is considered an irreducible unit—it cannot be furthered divided. The word **akṣara** also means vowel, or letter. The alphabet is called **akṣara-samāmnāya**, or the enumeration of letters, each of which is a syllable. Traditionally it is said that the alphabet was revealed to **Pāṇini** from the drum beats accompanying **Śiva**'s dance. It is recorded in 14 **sūtras**, called **Śiva-Sūtras** or **Maheśvara-Sūtras**, which are found at the beginning of **Pāṇini**'s **Aṣṭādhyāyī**.
2. The nucleus of each syllable is the vowel. One or more consonants may be attached to it, or it may stand alone. Vowels are independent, and consonants are dependent, because consonants may not stand alone as a syllable. A syllable may not have more than one vowel.

3. If a consonant begins a pāda, it goes with the following vowel.

If several consonants begin a pāda, they all go with the following vowel. For example:

rāma	rā + ma
prajā	pra + jā

4. If a consonant is at the end of a pāda, it goes with the preceding vowel. For example:

vāk

5. The **anusvāra** and **visarga** always go with the preceding vowel.
6. If there is more than one consonant between vowels, the first consonant goes with the previous vowel. For example:

dharma      dhar + ma

According to the **Rk Pratiśākhya**, the first consonant in a group may go either way. For example:

dha + rma or dhar + ma

In practice, there isn't much difference between the two, because one consonant onglides onto the next without interruption.

7. When there is a non-nasal **sparśa** followed by a sibilant or semi-vowel, they both go with the following syllable. For example:

vatsa	va + tsa
iṣetvā	i + ṣe + tvā

8. Observe the division of syllables in the following verse:

traigunya-viṣayā vedā  
nistraigunyo bhavārjuna  
nirdvandvo nitya-sattvastho  
niryoga-kṣema ātmavān

trai gun ya vi ṣa yā ve dā  
nis trai gun yo bha vār ju na  
nir dvan dvo ni tya sat tvas tho  
nir yo ga kṣe ma āt ma vān

### PAST PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

1. In English, participles are formed from verbs and function as adjectives or verbs. There are many types of participles in English, such as future participles, present participles and past participles. Some are active and some are passive. In English, present participles are usually formed by adding “-ing” to a verb. For example, “glowing” and “being” are present participles. Past participles in English are usually formed by adding “-ed” or “-en” to a verb. (Some verbs are irregular.) For example, “satisfied” and “spoken” are past participles.

2. In English, participles may act as adjectives. For example:

the satisfied customer  
the spoken word

3. In English, participles may also, with the help of an auxiliary verb, act as verbal forms. For example:

The customer was satisfied.  
The word was spoken.

4. In Sanskrit, there are many types of participles (called **kṛdanta** by **Pāṇini**):

present active	present middle	present passive
future active	future middle	future passive
		(gerundive)
past active		past passive
perfect active	perfect middle	
gerund (conjunctive, absolute)		
infinitive		

5. In Sanskrit, participles take **kṛt** endings, primary nominal endings. (See Lesson 19.) Participles add primary endings to verb roots to form nominals—nouns and adjectives. Most participles are declined, except for some participles, such as the gerund.
6. We will now study the past passive participle (p. pass. part., or p.p.p.). The past passive participle (**bhūte kṛdanta**) is formed by taking the root or a weak form of the root (See Lesson 19 on **samprasārana**) and adding the **kṛt** ending **-ta** (or sometimes **-ita**, **-īta**, or **-na**). Here is the past passive participle for verbs we have studied or will study in this lesson:

ROOT	PRESENT	P.P.P.	ENGLISH
√ <b>iṣ</b> (6P)	icchati	iṣṭa	desired
√ <b>kṛ</b> (8U)	karoti, kurute	kṛta	done, made
√ <b>gam</b> (1P)	gacchati	gata	gone
√ <b>gup</b> (1P)	gopāyati	gupta	protected
√ <b>cint</b> (10U)	cintayati -te	cintita	thought
√ <b>cur</b> (10U)	corayati -te	corita	stolen
√ <b>ji</b> (1P)	jayati	jita	conquered
√ <b>tan</b> (8U)	tanoti, tanute	tata	stretched
√ <b>tud</b> (6U)	tudati -te	tunna	pushed
√ <b>tyaj</b> (1P)	tyajati	tyakta	abandoned

$\sqrt{d}iv$ (4P)	<b>dīvya</b> ti	<b>dyūta</b>	played
$\sqrt{dr}ś(\sqrt{pa}ś)(1P)$ paśyati		<b>drṣṭa</b>	seen
$\sqrt{n}i$ (1U)	<b>nayati</b> -te	<b>nīta</b>	lead
$\sqrt{pa}th$ (1P)	<b>paṭhati</b>	<b>paṭhita</b>	read
$\sqrt{pā}$ (1P)	<b>pibati</b>	<b>pīta</b>	drunk
$\sqrt{pr}ach$ (6P)	<b>pr̥cchati</b>	<b>pr̥ṣṭa</b>	asked
$\sqrt{bu}dh$ (1U)	<b>bodhati</b> -te	<b>buddha</b>	known, awakened
$\sqrt{bhā}ś$ (1Ā)	<b>bhāṣate</b>	<b>bhāṣita</b>	spoken
$\sqrt{bhū}$ (1P)	<b>bhavati</b>	<b>bhūta</b>	been
$\sqrt{ma}n$ (4Ā)	<b>manyate</b>	<b>mata</b>	thought
$\sqrt{ra}m$ (1Ā)	<b>ramate</b>	<b>rata</b>	enjoyed
$\sqrt{lab}h$ (1Ā)	<b>labhate</b>	<b>labdha</b>	obtained
$\sqrt{va}d$ (1P)	<b>vadati</b>	<b>udita</b>	spoken
$\sqrt{va}s$ (1P)	<b>vasati</b>	<b>uṣita</b>	lived
$\sqrt{śub}h$ (1Ā)	<b>śobhate</b>	<b>śobhita</b>	shined
$\sqrt{se}v$ (1Ā)	<b>sevate</b>	<b>sevita</b>	served
$\sqrt{sthā}$ (1P)	<b>tiṣṭhati</b>	<b>sthita</b>	established

$\sqrt{s}mi$ (1Ā)	smayate	smita	smiled
$\sqrt{s}mr̥$ (1P)	smarati	smṛta	remembered
$\sqrt{has}$ (1P)	hasati	hasita	laughed
$\sqrt{hā}$ (3P)	jahāti	hīna	abandoned
$\sqrt{hu}$ (3P)	juhoti	huta	offered

7. Past passive participles are adjectives, and so must agree with a nominal. Since past passive participles end in **a**, they are declined like masculine **a**, neuter **a**, or feminine **ā**, depending on the gender of the word they modify.
8. Past passive participles often function as a verb. When used as a verb, a past passive participle usually appears in the nominative case, agreeing with the nominative, or grammatical subject of the sentence. A past passive participle may be used in a past passive sense. If so, then it agrees with the direct object, which would be in the nominative. For example:

**अश्वे बालेन लब्धः ।**

The horse was obtained by the boy.

9. The past passive participle can also take a present passive sense:

**अश्वे बालेन लब्धः ।**

The horse is obtained by the boy.

10. For intransitive verbs (verbs that usually do not take a direct object) past passive participles sometimes take an active sense. In

this case, the participle will agree with the agent of action, which is in the nominative. For example:

**रामो वनं गतः ।**

Rāma went to the forest.

**सीता वनं गता ।**

Sītā went to the forest.

11. Past passive participles may take a verbal prefix and may also be negated by **a** or **an**. For example:

<b>anudita</b>	not spoken
<b>anāgata</b>	not come

12. A past passive participle may act as an adjective alone or as part of a compound. For example:

<b>iṣṭam̄ phalam</b>	desired reward, desired fruit
<b>iṣṭa-phalam</b>	desired reward, desired fruit (karmadhāraya)

<b>sṭhitā prajñā</b>	established intellect
<b>sṭhita-prajñā</b>	established intellect (karmadhāraya)

Note that when the first member of a compound is an adjective, it is used in its base form, without any gender. The gender is established by the final member.

13. A past passive participle may be the basis of an adjective or a noun (often a neuter noun). For example:

ROOT	ADJECTIVE	NOUN
√kr̥ do, make	kr̥ta (m.f.n.) done	kr̥ta (n.) action
√gai sing	gīta (m.f.n.) sung	gītā (fem.) song
√budh awake	buddha (m.f.n.) awakened	buddha (mas.) sage
sam + √dhā together + put	samhita (m.f.n.) collected	samhitā (fem.) collectedness, unity
sam + √kr̥ together + make	samskr̥ta (m.f.n.) perfected	samskr̥ta (n.) Sanskrit language

**VERB CLASS 3**

- Class Three.**  $\sqrt{hu}$  **gāṇa** ( $\sqrt{hu}$  offer) Now we will study the third class, which forms its present stem in an unusual way. The present stem is formed by **abhyāsa**, which means "doubling." The root is repeated. This repetition is referred to as "reduplication." The first syllable is considered to be the **abhyāsa** syllable, followed by the root (which is in **guna** for strong forms). The formation of class 3 stems is:

**abhyāsa + root (weak forms)**  
**abhyāsa + guna of root (strong forms)**

- In forming the stem from the root, there are several general rules for reduplication. The vowel and first consonant of the root are repeated. The first syllable usually appears in a weaker form. For example:

$\sqrt{dā}$  (give)      **dadā**

- An aspirated syllable becomes unaspirated. For example:

$\sqrt{dhā}$  (put)      **dadhā**

- The vowel **r̥** is changed to **i** in reduplication. For example

$\sqrt{bhr̥}$  (carry)      **bibhr̥**

- A general rule of reduplication is that usually only the first consonant of a conjunct is repeated. For example:

$\sqrt{tyaj}$  (abandon) **tatyāja**

- Another general rule is that if the root begins with **s** followed by a stop (**sparśa**), only the stop is repeated. For example:

$\sqrt{sthā}$  (stand)      **tiṣṭha**

7. Another general rule is that a velar turns into a palatal. For example:

$\sqrt{kṛ}$  (do)      cakāra

8. Another general rule is that an **h** turns into **j**. For example:

$\sqrt{hā}$  (abandon)    jahā

9. Here is an example of a conjugation from class 3. Strong forms are underlined.

Root:  $\sqrt{hu}$  (offer) 3P Present Indicative

prathama	जुहोति <u>juhoti</u> juho+ti	जुहृतः <u>juhutah</u> juhu+tas	जुहृति <u>juhvati</u> juhv+ati
madhyama	जुहोषि <u>juhosī</u> juho+si	जुहृथः <u>juhuthah</u> juhu+thas	जुहृथ <u>juhutha</u> juhu+tha
uttama	जुहोमि <u>juhomī</u> juho+mi	जुहृवः <u>juhuvah</u> juhu+vas	जुहृमः <u>juhumah</u> juhu+mas
	eka	dvi	bahu

Note that the third person plural adds the ending **-ati** rather than **-anti**.

8. Here is the imperative.

Root:  $\sqrt{hu}$  (offer) 3P Imperative

prathama	<b>जुहोतु</b> <u>juhotu</u> juho+tu	<b>जुहुताम्</b> <u>juhutām</u> juhu+tām	<b>जुहृतु</b> <u>juhvatu</u> juhv+atu
madhyama	<b>जुहृधि</b> <u>juhudhi</u> juhu+dhi	<b>जुहुतम्</b> <u>juhutam</u> juhu+tam	<b>जुहृत</b> <u>juhuta</u> juhu+ta
uttama	<b>जुहवानि</b> <u>juhavāni</u> juho+āni	<b>जुहवाव</b> <u>juhayāva</u> juho+āva	<b>जुहवाम</b> <u>juhavāma</u> juho+āma
	eka	dvi	bahu

Notice that the second person singular has a different ending, and the third person plural has no **n**.

9. The root  $\sqrt{hā}$  is slightly different, as it is reduplicated as **jahā** in strong forms, **jahī** in weak forms, and **jah** before vowels:

Root:  $\sqrt{hā}$  (abandon) 3P Present Indicative

<b>prathama</b>	<b>जहाति</b>	<b>जहीतः</b>	<b>जहति</b>
	<b><u>jahāti</u></b>	<b><u>jahītaḥ</u></b>	<b><u>jahati</u></b>
	<b>jahā+ti</b>	<b>jahī+tas</b>	<b>jah+ati</b>
<b>madhyama</b>	<b>जहासि</b>	<b>जहीथः</b>	<b>जहीथ</b>
	<b><u>jahāsi</u></b>	<b><u>jahīthaḥ</u></b>	<b><u>jahītha</u></b>
	<b>jahā+si</b>	<b>jahī+thas</b>	<b>jahī+tha</b>
<b>uttama</b>	<b>जहामि</b>	<b>जहीवः</b>	<b>जहीमः</b>
	<b><u>jahāmi</u></b>	<b><u>jahīvah</u></b>	<b><u>jahīmah</u></b>
	<b>jahā+mi</b>	<b>jahī+vas</b>	<b>jahī+mas</b>
	<u>eka</u>	<u>dvi</u>	<u>bahu</u>

### PREFIXES SU AND DUS

1. There are some prefixes which are rarely used before verbs (*tiñanta*), but are more often used before nouns, adjectives, and participles. One of these we have already studied—a (which becomes an before vowels). Two more are: **su** and **dus**. These have opposite meanings:

<b>su</b>	well, very, good, right, easy
<b>dus</b>	ill, bad, difficult, hard

2. These form *karmadhāraya* compounds. For example:

<b>sukṛta</b>	well-done
<b>sugīta</b>	well-sung

3. The **dus** prefix becomes **duṣ** before **ka**, **kha**, **pa**, and **pha**. It becomes **dū** before **ra**. Otherwise, it takes regular external **sandhi**. For example:

**duṣkrta** bad-action  
**durjaya** difficult to conquer

4. The noun which follows the prefix may take the **guna** form of its vowel. For example:

**subodha** easy to understand

VOCABULARY	SANSKRIT	ENGLISH
	इह (ind.)	here, in this world
	उभ (mfn adj.)	both (used in the dual)
	कौशलम् (n.)	skill, good fortune, prosperity
	दुस् (prefix)	ill, bad, difficult, hard
	सु (prefix)	well, very, good, right, easy
हा (3P)	जहाति	he abandons
हु (3P)	जुहोति	he offers

**EXERCISES**

- Learn to recite Chapter 2, Verse 50 from the **Bhagavad-Gītā** for pronunciation and then with word meaning. Be able to give the grammatical analysis of each word.

बुद्धियुक्तो जहातीह  
 उभे सुकृतदुष्कृते ।  
 तस्माद्योगाय युज्यस्व  
 योगः कर्मसु कौशलम् ॥५०॥

- Learn the past passive participles for verbs we have studied.
- Memorize the conjugations for verbs from class 3.
- Learn the vocabulary from this lesson.
- Translate the following sentences:

- बालस्त्यक्तया धेन्वा शीघ्राया नद्याः प्रतिगच्छति ।१।
- अङ्गिरा दुर्वनं जहाति ।२।
- यदातिथय आगच्छन्ति तंदा तेभ्यो जलं जुहुमः ।३।

d. सीता रामश्च दूरे वनं गतौ । ४।

e. उभावश्चो मृगश्च कन्यया गुप्तौ । ५।

f. धार्मिका पुत्रिका महाकविनेष्टा । ६।

g. कथमिह दुःखं जहामीति कन्या स्वसारमपृच्छत्  
। ७।

h. दुःखं सुखस्य दात्रा हीनमिति स्वसावदत् । ८।

i. यत्र शुक्लोऽश्चो गतस्तत्रापि राज्ञः सेना गता । ९।

j. कर्मकौशलमिह स्थितबुद्धिना लभ्यते । १०।

6. Translate the following sentences:

a. सत्त्वमना उभे कौशलं च सुखं च लभते ।१।

b. बालः कृष्णो नाम महातेजा उदभवत् ।२।

c. आचार्याय नमः कृत्वा शिष्या उत्तिष्ठन्ति ।३।

d. अग्नये राजा जलं जुहोति ।४।

e. ज्ञानेनास्माकं मनांसि गोपायाम इति शिष्या  
वदन्ति ।५।

f. सुखहेतुश्वेतःसत्त्वम् ।६।

g. अजितो वीरः प्रियां तस्य भार्या प्रतिगच्छति ।७।

h. सुकृतानि च दुष्कृतानि च बुद्धिनेष्टानि ।८।

i. भगवान्नामस्तस्य राज्यं जहाति दुर्वनं च तस्य  
भार्या सह सीतया गच्छति ।६।

## ANSWERS

5. a. The boy returns from the swift river with the abandoned cow.
- b. Aṅgiras abandons the difficult forest.
- c. We offer water to the guests when they come.
- d. Sītā and Rāma have gone to the forest in the distance.
- e. Both the horse and deer were protected by the girl.
- f. A virtuous daughter is desired by the great poet.
- g. “How do I abandon suffering in this world?” the girl asked her sister. (Note that “her” is sometimes implied in Sanskrit. It is not always necessary to write **tasyāḥ** when referring to the subject, “girl.”)
- h. “Suffering is abandoned by the giver of happiness,” the sister said.
- i. Where the white horse goes, there also goes the army of the king.

- j. Skill in action is obtained in this world by the established intellect.
6. a. He whose mind is pure obtains both prosperity and happiness.
- b. A boy named Kṛṣṇa, having great splendor, was born.
- c. Having made reverence to the teacher, the students stand up.
- d. The king offers water to the fire.
- e. "We protect our minds by means of knowledge," the students say.
- f. Purity of mind is the cause of happiness.
- g. The unconquered hero returns to his dear wife.
- h. Good actions and bad actions are desired by the intellect.
- i. The glorious Rāma abandons his kingdom and goes to the difficult forest with his wife, Sītā.

# 23

## LESSON TWENTY-THREE

Recitation: **Bhagavad-Gītā Chapter 2, Verse 51**  
Meter

Grammar: **Nominals with the ending “in”**  
**More Class 3 Verbs**  
**Verb Class 7**  
**Internal sandhi, more examples**

Vocabulary: **Words from Chapter 2, Verse 51**  
**Class 3 Verbs**  
**Nominals with the ending “in”**

BHAGAVAD-GĪTĀ

कर्मजं बुद्धियुक्ता हि

फलं त्यक्त्वा मनीषिणः ।

जन्मबन्धविनिर्मुक्ताः

पदं गच्छन्त्यनामयम् ॥५१॥

karmajam buddhi-yuktā hi  
 phalam tyaktvā manīṣināḥ  
 janma-bandha-vinirmuktāḥ  
 padam gacchanty anāmayam 51

The wise, their intellect truly united with the Self,  
 having renounced the fruits born of their actions  
 and being liberated from the bonds of birth,  
 arrive at a state devoid of suffering.

<b>karma-</b>	(n.) action
<b>jam</b>	(n. acc. sing. from √jan 4Ā) born, produced by
<b>karma-jam</b>	(upapada compound) born of action
<b>buddhi-</b>	(fem.) intellect
<b>yuktāḥ</b>	(mas. nom. pl. p.p.p. √yuj 7P) united
<b>buddhi-yuktāḥ</b>	(tatpuruṣa compound) united in intellect
<b>hi</b>	(ind.) truly, for

<b>phalam</b>	(n. acc. sing.) fruit
<b>tyaktvā</b>	(gerund $\sqrt{tyaj}$ 1P) having renounced
<b>maniṣinah</b>	(mas. nom. pl.) the wise (This is from <b>maniṣin</b> . See below for the in declension.)
<b>janma-</b>	(n.) birth
<b>bandha-</b>	(m.) bondage, bond
<b>janma-bandha-</b>	( <b>tatpuruṣa</b> compound) bonds of birth
<b>vi-nir-muktāḥ</b>	(mas. nom. pl. p.p.p. <b>vi</b> <b>nir</b> $\sqrt{muc}$ 6P) liberated, released from
<b>janma-bandha-vi-nir-muktāḥ</b>	( <b>tatpuruṣa</b> compound) liberated from the bonds of birth
<b>padam</b>	(n. acc. sing.) place, state
<b>gacchanti</b>	(3rd pe. pl. pres. active $\sqrt{gam}$ 1P) they go, arrive, reach
<b>an-āmayam</b>	(n. acc. sing.) devoid of suffering, without sickness, without <b>āma</b> . ( <b>āma</b> —raw, uncooked, undigested)

**METER**

- Now we will study how Sanskrit meter is formed. This will help you in your pronunciation of Sanskrit verses. Sanskrit vowels are divided by **mātrā**, which means "count," "measure," "quantity," or "duration." It is directly related to the English word "meter." (See Lesson 1, p. 2.) The length of time for one **mātrā** is said to be the twinkling of the eye, a flash of lightening, or a note of the woodcock. A vowel having one **mātrā** is called **hrasva**. A vowel having two **mātrās** is called **dīrgha**, the length of time traditionally of the calling of the crow. A vowel of three counts is **pluta**, the length of time traditionally of the note of the peacock.
- Based upon **mātrā**, syllables are considered light (**laghu**) or heavy (**guru**). A syllable ending with a short vowel (a, i, u, r, or l) is light. If the syllable ends in a consonant, it is heavy. A syllable with a long vowel is heavy. A syllable with a vowel followed by **anusvāra** or **visarga** is heavy. Notice the markings for light and heavy. For example:

rā	mā	ya	na
heavy	heavy	light	light
—	—	~	~

ma	hā	bhā	ra	tam
~	—	—	~	—

- Thinking of it in terms of the division of syllables, a conjunct consonant moves the first consonant to the previous syllable. (For simplicity, think of all conjuncts as moving their first consonant to the previous syllable.) Since it takes some time to pronounce the consonant, the previous syllable becomes heavy even if the vowel is short.
- Analyze one line from the **Bhagavad-Gītā**:

त्रै गुरु य वि ष या: वे दा:

trai gun̄ ya vi ṣa yāḥ ve dāḥ

Notice that the first syllable (*trai*) is heavy because *ai* is long; the second (*gun̄*) is heavy because it ends in a consonant; the third, fourth, and fifth (*ya, vi, ṣa*) are light because they end in short vowels; the sixth (*yāḥ*) is heavy because the vowel is long and is followed by a *visarga*; the seventh and eighth (*ve, dāḥ*) both contain long vowels and so are heavy.

5. Each *pāda* is divided into groups with three syllables in each group, called a *gāṇa*. The *gāṇas* are given names, according to how many light and heavy syllables they have:

म ̄-̄- न ̄-̄- भ ̄-̄- य ̄-̄-

ज ̄-̄- र ̄-̄- स ̄-̄- त ̄-̄-

The letter **ma** has all heavy syllables, **na** has all light syllables, **bha** has its first heavy, **ya** has its first light, **ja** has its middle heavy, **ra** has its middle light, **sa** has its last heavy, **ta** has its last light. One syllable by itself (not in a *gāṇa*) is considered to be *ga* or *la*, for *guru* or *laghu*. In the following set of letters, each syllable (with the next two syllables) imitates its own *gāṇa*. For example **yamātā** is light, heavy, heavy, and **mātārā** is heavy, heavy, heavy:

यमाताराजभानसलगाः

yamātārājabhānasalagāḥ

6. The Bhagavad-Gītā is in anuṣṭubh chandas (also called śloka meter), which is four pādas of eight syllables. The eight syllables are divided as: 3 + 3 + 1 + 1. Observe another line:

निस्त्रैगुरयो भवार्जुन  
nistraiguṇyo bhavārjuna  
— — — |— ^ — |— ^  
म र ल ल

This line is ma, ra, la, la. The ma and ra are the names of the first two gaṇas, and la and la are the names of the last two syllables.

7. The last syllable of a pāda, even if marked light, is considered heavy because it is followed by a cæsura, or a pause (yati). The pause takes time, making the previous syllable heavy. The pause is longer after the second and fourth pādas. Here is a passage on the last syllable:

Your enemies, though bereft of all heat, deprived of all prosperity, removed from all contact with allies and humble of heart, attain dignity when they crouch at your feet, even as the syllables of a stanza, though there be no anusvāra or the like, no lengthening, no conjunct, though their vowels proper be short, become long by position when they come at the end of a pāda. (Subhāṣitāvalī 2485)

8. The patterns of the various lines have names. For example:

a. न भ ल ग = ˘ ˘ ˘ | - ˘ ˘ | ˘ -

**gajagati** (gait of an elephant)

**रविसुतापरिसरे** (example)

b. ज र ल ग = ˘ - ˘ | - ˘ - | ˘ -

**pramāṇikā** (measured)

**पुनातु भक्तिरच्युता** (example)

c. भ त ल ग = - ˘ ˘ | - - ˘ | ˘ -

**māṇavaka** (youthful)

**चंचलचूडं चपलैः** (example)

d. म म ग ग = - - - | - - - | - -

**vidyunmālā** (garland of light)

**यस्मिन्नास्तां रापोच्छित्यै** (example)

e. र ज ग ल = - ˘ - | ˘ - ˘ | ˘ -

**samāṇikā** (uniform)

**यस्य कृष्णापादपद्म**

9. Study the pattern of the **Bhagavad-Gītā**, looking especially at the fifth, sixth and seventh syllables:

त्रैगुण्यविषया वेदा                    - - - | ^ ^ - | - -

निस्त्रैगुण्यो भवार्जुन ।                    - - - | - ^ - | ^ ^

निर्द्वन्द्वो नित्यसत्त्वस्थो                    - - - | - ^ - | - -

निर्योगक्षेम आत्मवान् ॥                    - - - | - ^ - | ^ -

योगस्थः कुरु कर्माणि                    - - - | ^ ^ - | - ^

सङ्गं त्यक्त्वा धनञ्जय ।                    - - - | - ^ - | ^ ^

सिद्ध्यसिद्ध्योः समो भूत्वा                    - ^ - | - ^ - | - -

समत्वं योग उच्यते ॥                    - - - | - ^ - | ^ -

दूरेण ह्यवरं कर्म                    - - - | ^ ^ - | - ^

बुद्धियोगाद्वनञ्जय ।                    - ^ - | - ^ - | ^ ^

बुद्धौ शरणमन्विच्छ                    - - ^ | ^ ^ - | -

कृपणाः फलहेतवः ॥                    - ^ - | ^ ^ - | ^ -

10. The fifth, sixth, and seventh syllables of the second and fourth lines are always the same. The fifth, sixth, and seventh syllables of the first and third lines are the same about 80% of the time.
11. The second or third syllable of each line is heavy, and the third and fourth syllable of lines two and four cannot be light then heavy.

**NOUNS ENDING  
IN "IN"**

1. Here is the declension for nouns ending in **in**:

Stem: **hastin** (masculine) elephant

prathamā	हस्ती	हस्तिनौ	हस्तिनः
dvitīyā	हस्तिनम्	हस्तिनौ	हस्तिनः
tr̥tiyā	हस्तिना	हस्तिभ्याम्	हस्तिभिः
caturthī	हस्तिने	हस्तिभ्याम्	हस्तिभ्यः
pañcamī	हस्तिनः	हस्तिभ्याम्	हस्तिभ्यः
ṣaṣṭhī	हस्तिनः	हस्तिनोः	हस्तिनाम्
saptamī	हस्तिनि	हस्तिनोः	हस्तिषु
sambodhana	हस्तिन्	हस्तिनौ	हस्तिनः
	eka	dvi	bahu

2. The neuter is the same as the masculine except for the nominative, accusative, and vocative:

Stem: **dāṇḍin** (neuter) (adjective) having a stick

<b>prathamā</b>	दाण्ड	दाण्डनी	दाण्डीनि
<b>dvitiyā</b>	दाण्ड	दाण्डनी	दाण्डीनि
<b>sambodhana</b>	दाण्ड	दाण्डनी	दाण्डीनि
	दाण्डन्		

3. Some nouns form an adjective by removing the final vowel, if there is one, and adding **in**. The suffix **in** is a secondary suffix, added to nominals. It has the sense of “possessing,” similar to the **vat** and **mat** suffixes. For example:

Noun	Adjective
<b>dāṇḍa</b> (mas.) stick	<b>dāṇḍin</b> (mf <sub>n</sub> ) possessing a stick
<b>aśva</b> (mas.) horse	<b>aśvin</b> (mf <sub>n</sub> ) possessing horses
<b>hasta</b> (mas.) hand	<b>hastin</b> (mf <sub>n</sub> ) possessing hands
<b>śaśa</b> (mas.) rabbit	<b>śaśin</b> (mf <sub>n</sub> ) possessing the rabbit
<b>bala</b> (mas.) strength	<b>balin</b> (mf <sub>n</sub> ) possessing strength
<b>maniṣā</b> (mas.) wisdom	<b>maniṣin</b> (mf <sub>n</sub> ) possessing wisdom
<b>yoga</b> (mas.) union	<b>yogin</b> (mf <sub>n</sub> ) possessing yoga
<b>pakṣa</b> (mas.) wing	<b>pakṣin</b> (mf <sub>n</sub> ) possessing wings

4. The adjectives can be declined in all three genders. The masculine follows the **in** declension, the neuter follows the **in** declension for the neuter, and the feminine adds **ī** and follows the **ī** declension.  
For example:

**yogin** (masculine)

**yogini** (feminine)

5. If the nominal ends in **as**, then the suffix becomes **vin** or **min**.  
For example:

**tapas** (austerity)

**tejas** (light)

**tapasvin** (possessing austerity)

**tejasvin** (possessing light)

6. Many of these adjectives are used as nouns (substansives). For example:

	Adjective	Noun
<b>dandin</b>	(mfn) possessing a stick	(mas.) recluse
<b>aśvin</b>	(mfn) possessing horses	(mas.) the Aśvins, charioteers
<b>hastin</b>	(mfn) possessing a hand	(mas.) elephant
<b>śaśin</b>	(mfn) possessing the rabbit	(mas.) moon
<b>balin</b>	(mfn) possessing strength	(mas.) bull
<b>maniśin</b>	(mfn) possessing wisdom	(mas.) wise person
<b>yogin</b>	(mfn) possessing <b>yoga</b>	(mas.) yogi
<b>pakṣin</b>	(mfn) possessing wings	(mas.) bird

7. One example (*Bhagavad-Gītā* 2.70) puts both types of nouns together:

kāma-kāmī desirer of desires

This places kāma, desire, and kāmin, possessing desire (desirer), into a **tatpuruṣa** compound, the “desirerer of desires.”

### MORE CLASS 3 VERBS

1. Now we will learn two more verbs from class 3. These verbs are conjugated somewhat irregularly. The first is  $\sqrt{dā}$  (3P), which means “give.” Like all class 3 verbs,  $\sqrt{dā}$  reduplicates.

Root:  $\sqrt{dā}$  (give) 3U Present Indicative

prathama	ददाति	दत्तः	ददति
	<u>dadāti</u>	dattaḥ	dadati
	dadā+ti	dad+tas	dad+ati
madhyama	ददासि	दत्थः	दत्थ
	<u>dadāsi</u>	datthaḥ	dattha
	dadā+si	dad+thas	dad+tha
uttama	ददामि	दद्वः	दद्धः
	<u>dadāmi</u>	dadvah	dadmaḥ
	dadā+mi	dad+vas	dad+mas
	eka	dvi	bahu

Notice that the reduplicated form appears before, but with a short a, and the weak forms lose the root vowel.

2. Another verb from class 3  $\sqrt{dhā}$  (U), means “place.”

Root:  $\sqrt{dhā}$  (place) 3P Present Indicative

<b>prathama</b>	<b>दधाति</b>	<b>धत्तः</b>	<b>दधति</b>
	<b><u>dadhāti</u></b>	<b>dhattah</b>	<b>dadhati</b>
	<b>dadhā+ti</b>	<b>dadh+tas</b>	<b>dadh+ati</b>
<b>madhyama</b>	<b>दधासि</b>	<b>धत्थः</b>	<b>धत्थ</b>
	<b><u>dadhāsi</u></b>	<b>dhatthah</b>	<b>dhattha</b>
	<b>dadhā+si</b>	<b>dadh+thas</b>	<b>dadh+tha</b>
<b>uttama</b>	<b>दधामि</b>	<b>दध्वः</b>	<b>दध्मः</b>
	<b><u>dadhāmi</u></b>	<b>dadhvah</b>	<b>dadhmah</b>
	<b>dadhā+mi</b>	<b>dadh+vas</b>	<b>dadh+mas</b>
	<b>_____</b>	<b>_____</b>	<b>_____</b>
	<b>eka</b>	<b>dvi</b>	<b>bahu</b>

Notice that this verb is conjugated like  $\sqrt{dā}$ , except that when the **dh** comes before **t** or **th**, the **dh** becomes **t** and the aspiration (**dh**) reappears in the reduplicated syllable.

### VERB CLASS 7

1. **Class Seven.**  $\sqrt{rudh}$  *gana* ( $\sqrt{rudh}$  block) In the seventh class, the present stem in strong forms is formed by adding **na** between the vowel and final consonant of the root. In weak forms, **n** is added. For example, the stem is:

$\sqrt{yuj}$ (unite)	<b>yunaj</b> (strong)
	<b>yūñj</b> (weak)

2. Here is the present indicative for class 7:

Root:  $\sqrt{yuj}$  (unite) 7U Present Indicative

<b>prathama</b>	<b>युनक्ति</b>	<b>युङ्कः</b>	<b>युञ्जन्ति</b>
	<u>yunakti</u>	<u>yuñktah</u>	<u>yuñjanti</u>
	yunaj+ti	yuñj+tas	yuñj+anti
<b>madhyama</b>	<b>युनक्ति</b>	<b>युङ्कथः</b>	<b>युञ्कथ</b>
	<u>yunaksi</u>	<u>yuñkthaḥ</u>	<u>yuñktha</u>
	yunaj+si	yuñj+thas	yuñj+tha
<b>uttama</b>	<b>युनज्जिमि</b>	<b>युञ्ज्जवः</b>	<b>युञ्ज्जमः</b>
	<u>yunajjimi</u>	<u>yuñjvah</u>	<u>yuñjmaḥ</u>
	yunaj+mi	yuñj+vas	yuñj+mas
	eka	dvi	bahu

## INTERNAL SANDHI

1. Most of the **sandhi** rules that we have studied are external **sandhi** rules. (See Lesson 8, p. 87.) External **sandhi** is used between words, between members of a compound, after prefixes, and before some nominal endings (**bhyām**, **bhis**, **bhyas**, and **su**—which are called **pada** endings), and before secondary suffixes (**taddhita pratyaya**) beginning with any consonant except **y**.
2. Internal **sandhi** is used before primary suffixes (**kṛt pratyaya**), secondary suffixes (**taddhita pratyaya**) beginning with a vowel or **y**, verb and nominal endings other than **bhyām**, **bhis**, **bhyas**, and **su**, and between other internal parts of a word.
3. External **sandhi** is used regularly when you are composing a sentence, but internal **sandhi** is not so regularly used, because

internal **sandhi** has usually, but not always, taken place before a particular word is put into a sentence.

4. Most external **sandhi** is dominated by regressive assimilation, where the first sound generally changes in the environment of a second sound, and the second sound stays the same. (Some of the external vowel **sandhi** is an exception.) Internal **sandhi** is more “two-way,” in that both sounds are affected. Also, with internal **sandhi**, two sounds come together with a greater variety of combinations.
5. We have studied two changes in internal **sandhi**: the change of **n** to **ṇ**, and **s** to **ś**. (See Lesson 11, pp. 142, 143.) For now, observing other changes in internal **sandhi** will be enough. (In this lesson and in several of the previous lessons on verb classes, we saw internal **sandhi** changes when verb endings, **tīñ**, were added.) Here are a few internal **sandhi** rules, just for observation:

a. Before vowels and **y**:

e becomes **ay**  
**ai** becomes **āy**  
**o** becomes **av**  
**au** becomes **āv**

For example, the **guṇa** of  $\sqrt{bhū}$  is **bho**, which becomes **bhav** before **a** (**bhavati**). The **guṇa** of  $\sqrt{nī}$  is **ne**, which becomes **nay** before **a** (**nayati**).

b. Before unvoiced consonants:

**d** becomes **t**

For example, **dad** becomes **dat** before **ta** (**datta**).

c. Before unvoiced unaspirated consonants:

**dh** (sometimes) becomes **t**

For example, **dadh** becomes **dhat** before **ta** (**dhatta**). Notice that the aspiration is lost, but reappears at the beginning (**dhatta**).

d. Before unvoiced unaspirated consonants:

**bh** (sometimes) becomes **b**

For example, **labh + ta** is **labdha**. Notice that the **ta** takes on both voicing and aspiration (**dha**).

**VOCABULARY****SANSKRIT****ENGLISH**

**जन्** (4Ā) जायते

he is born

**जन्मन्** (n.)

birth, origin, rebirth

**दा** (3U) ददाति दत्ते

he gives

**धा** (3U) दधाति धत्ते

he places

**पक्षिन्** (mas.)

bird

**पदम्** (n.)

place, state, step, foot

**बन्धः** (mas.)

bondage

**मनीषिन्** (mas.)

wise person

**मुच्** (6U) मुञ्चति मुञ्चते

he releases, liberates

**युज्** (7U) युनक्ति युक्ते

he unites

**योगिन्** (mas.)

practitioner of yoga (male)

**योगिनी** (fem.)

practitioner of yoga (female)  
(ī declension)

**रुध्** (7U) रुणाङ्कि रुन्धे

he blocks, opposes

**शशिन्** (mas.)

moon

**हस्तिन्** (mas.)

elephant

**EXERCISES**

1. Learn to recite Chapter 2, Verse 51 from the **Bhagavad-Gītā** for pronunciation and then with word meaning. Be able to give the grammatical analysis of each word.
2. Practice reciting the verse from the **Bhagavad-Gītā** in the **devanāgarī**:

कर्मजं बुद्धियुक्ता हि  
 फलं त्यक्त्वा मनीषिणः ।  
 जन्मबन्धविनिर्मुक्ताः  
 पदं गच्छन्त्यनामयम् ॥५१॥

3. Memorize the declension for words ending in in.
4. Memorize the conjugation of  $\sqrt{dā}$ ,  $\sqrt{dhā}$ , and  $\sqrt{yuj}$ .
5. Learn the vocabulary from this lesson.
6. Translate the following sentences:
  - a. ज्ञानं शान्तिमनसो जायते ।१।
  - b. कृष्णो वनाच्छुक्लं पक्षिणमानयति तं च मुञ्चति

c. सुखं मनीषिणा बुध्यते ।३।

d. शशिनस्तेजः पश्येति मित्रं वदति ।४।

e. पुत्रिका कुलं पुत्रवदजायत ।५।

f. महाराजोऽतिथौ मालामदधात् ।६।

g. महाराजस्तस्मै जलं फलानि चाप्यददात् ।७।

h. योगी जन्मनो बन्धाद्युक्तः ।८।

7. Translate the following sentences into Sanskrit:

a. योगाद्वद्धेः सत्त्वमागच्छति बुद्धेः सत्त्वाच्च  
सुखं जायते ।१।

b. यो दूरादागच्छति तं पद्मिणमर्जुनः स्मयते ।२।

c. असङ्गचेतो नित्यसुखस्य दातेह ।३।

(Here predicate nominative precedes the subject, with the verb understood.)

d. कौशलं सुकर्मजं मनीषिभिर्बुध्यते न दुःखस्थैः

।४।

e. यदा ते बुद्धिरात्मस्थस्तदा योगं लप्यसे ।५।

f. अतिथयेऽत्र जलमानयेति माता पुत्रिकां

वदति ।६।

g. वाप्या जलं लब्ध्वा कन्या गृहेऽतिथये तद्दाति

।७।

h. अग्निं हित्वा हस्ती जले पदान्यदधात् ।८।

**ANSWERS**

6. a. Knowledge is born of one whose mind is peaceful.  
b. Kṛṣṇa brings the white bird from the forest and releases it.  
c. Happiness is known by the wise person.  
d. "Look at the splendor of the moon," the friend says.  
e. A daughter was born to the family with sons.  
f. The great king placed a garland on the guest.  
g. The great king also gave water and fruit to him.  
h. The yogī is released from the bondage of rebirth.
7. a. From yoga comes purity of intellect, and from purity of intellect, happiness is born.  
b. Arjuna smiles at the bird which comes from the distance.  
c. The giver of eternal happiness in this world is the unattached mind.  
d. Prosperity, born of good action, is known by the wise, not by those established in suffering.

- e. You will obtain yoga when your intellect is established in the Self.
- f. "Bring water here for the guest," the mother says to her daughter.
- g. After obtaining water from the pond, the girl gives it to the guest in the house.
- h. Having abandoned the fire, the elephant placed its feet in the water.

# 24

## LESSON TWENTY-FOUR

Recitation: **Bhagavad-Gītā Chapter 2, Verse 52**  
**Svara**

Grammar: **The Periphrastic Future**  
**The Gerundive**  
**Verb Class 5**

Vocabulary: **Words from Chapter 2, Verse 52**  
**Verbs from Class 5**

BHAGAVAD-GĪTĀ

यदा ते मोहकलिलं

बुद्धिर्व्यतितरिष्यति ।

तदा गन्तासि निर्वेदं

श्रोतव्यस्य श्रुतस्य च ॥५२॥

yadā te moha-kalilam  
 buddhir vyatitarisyati  
 tadā gantāsi nirvedam  
 śrotavyasya śrutasya ca 52

When your intellect crosses  
 the mire of delusion,  
 then will you gain indifference  
 to what has been heard and what is yet to be heard.

yadā	(ind.) when
te	(gen. sing.) your, of you
moha-	(mas.) delusion
kalilam	(mas. acc. sing.) mire, thicket
moha-kalilam	(tatpuruṣa compound) mire of delusion
buddhiḥ	(fem. nom. sing.) intellect
vi-ati-tariṣyati	(3rd per. sing. fut. vi ati √त् 1P) will cross, crosses, crosses beyond
tadā	(ind.) then

<b>gantāsi</b>	(2nd per. sing. periphrastic fut. $\sqrt{gam}$ 1P) you will go, you will gain (See below for the periphrastic future.)
<b>nir-vedam</b>	(mas. acc. sing.) indifference
<b>śrotavyasya</b>	(mas. gen. sing. gerundive $\sqrt{śru}$ 5P) of what is yet to be heard (See below for the gerundive and for class 5.)
<b>śrutasya</b>	(mas. gen. sing. p.p.p. $\sqrt{śru}$ 5P) of the heard, of what has been heard
<b>ca</b>	(ind.) and

**SVARA**

1. The Pāṇiniya Śikṣā states that sound (*svara*) begins with an intention in consciousness. The intention becomes linked with the mind, body, prāṇa, etc., until audible sound is produced. Here is the verse from Pāṇiniya Śikṣā:

आत्मा बुद्ध्या समेत्यार्थन्मनो युक्ते विवक्षया ।

मनः कायाग्निमाहन्ति स प्रेरयति मारुतम् ॥

मारुतस्तूरसि चरन्मन्दं जनयति स्वरम् ।

ātmā buddhyā samety ārthān mano yuñkte vivakṣayā  
manah kāyāgnim āhanti sa prerayati mārutam  
mārutas tūrasi caran mandram janayati svaram

The Self, together with the intellect, takes a direction, and engages the mind with the intention to speak. The mind strikes the fire of the body, which in turn drives the air. Then the air, moving within the lungs, causes the emergence of subtle

sound, **mandram**, which becomes sound—**svaram**—the reverberation of the Self. (*Pāniniya Shikshā* 6-7)

2. This verse explains in more detail the traditional four levels of speech: **vaikhari**, **madhyamā**, **paśyanti**, and **parā**. Speech begins with **parā**, the transcendent, and ends with **vaikhari**, manifest sound. The *Rk Samhitā* (1.164.45) explains that, of the four sounds, only the fourth can be spoken by human beings:

**तुरीयं वाचो मनुष्या वदन्ति**

3. The *Pāniniya Shikshā* verse continues with five ways in which sound (**svara** or **varṇa**) may be classified:

**स्वरतः कालतः स्थानात्रयलानुप्रदानतः**

**svarataḥ kālataḥ sthānāt prayatnānupradānataḥ**

Here are the five ways:

- a. According to accent (**svara**). Accent means tone, and there are three tones: **udātta**, or “raised,” **anudātta**, or “unraised,” and **svarita**, or “moving, mixed” (See Lesson 3, p. 27.) The **svarita** is approximately one whole tone higher than the **udātta**, and the **anudātta** is approximately one whole tone lower than the **udātta**. Tone belongs to the vowels (**svara**). The seven musical tones, which are also called **svara**, are said to have arisen from the three tones.

In recitation, the accents are taught by hand movements, such as pointing the thumb to various fingers with the palm open. In some of the texts of the *Rk Samhitā* the accent marks are in red, with the letters in black.

- b. According to quantity (**kāla** or **mātrā**). The time required to say a short (**hrasva**) vowel is measured as one **mātrā**. (See Lesson 1, p. 2.) One **mātrā** is said to be the length of time required for the call of the woodcock, or the twinkling of the eyelashes, or a stroke of lightening. Two **mātrās** is the time for a long (**dirgha**) vowel. Vowels can also be three **mātrās** (**pluta**).

Consonants are considered to be one half **mātrā**. A **mātrā** is also called a **mora**. Half a **mātrā** is a **paramāṇu**, and half a **paramāṇu** is an **aṇu**. An **aṇu** is one-fourth the duration of a **mātrā**. An **aṇu** is said to be “too delicate for perception,” and a **paramāṇu** is said to be “just perceptible.” For example:

$$\text{mātrā} = 2 \text{ paramāṇu} = 4 \text{ aṇu}$$

- c. According to points of articulation (**sthāna**). There are five points of articulation in the mouth. (See Lesson 2, p. 9.) They are: the throat (**kanṭha**), palate (**tālu**), roof (**mūrdhan**), teeth (**danta**), and lips (**oṣṭha**). The tongue is called the instrument (**karana**) of articulation. Contact can be made from the tip, middle, or back of the tongue.
- d. According to internal effort (**ābhyanṭara prayatna**). The adjustment that takes place within the mouth in articulating speech is called internal effort, or primary effort. There are four kinds of internal effort:
- (1) Complete contact (**sprṣṭa**). The tongue fully touches the point of articulation as in the 25 **sparśa** consonants.
  - (2) Slight contact (**iṣat-sprṣṭa**). The tongue makes slight contact with the point of articulation, as in the semi-vowels.

- (3) Open (*vivṛta*). The mouth is open with full flow of air, as in the vowels (except short a).
- (4) Constricted (*savṛta*) The mouth is slightly contracted, as in the short a.
- e. According to external effort (*bāhya-prayatna*, or *anupradāna*). This refers to secondary effort, or the adjustments made outside of the mouth, of which there are eleven:
- (1) Expansion (*vivāra*) of vocal chords.
  - (2) Contraction (*samvāra*) of vocal chords.
  - (3) Voiceless aspiration (*śvāsa*).
  - (4) Voiced aspiration (*nāda*)
  - (5) Voiced sound (*ghoṣa*).
  - (6) Unvoiced sound (*aghoṣa*).
  - (7) Unaspirated (*alpa-prāṇa*).
  - (8) Aspirated (*mahā-prāṇa*).
  - (9) Raised tone (*udātta*).
  - (10) Unraised tone (*anudātta*).
  - (11) Moving tone (*svarita*).

(The apparent overlapping in external effort may be because one category results in the next. For example, *nāda* results in *ghoṣa*, or *śvāsa* results in *aghoṣa*.)

## THE PERIPHRASTIC FUTURE

- Now we will study the periphrastic future. In Sanskrit, there are two future tenses: the future (See Lesson 17, pp. 221-223.), which is called the simple future (**bhaviṣyan**, which Pāṇini calls *īrt*), and the periphrastic future (**anadyatana**, “not of today,” which Pāṇini calls *lut*). The periphrastic future is called the first future, and the simple future is called the second future.
- The difference between the two future tenses is that the simple future is contiguous, or connected to the present or the time in question. It shows the close proximity of a future action. The periphrastic future is not contiguous. It is in the remote or distant future, “not of this day.” It also has a sense of definiteness. Often some indication of time is used with it. The periphrastic future is not used as often as the simple future.
- The periphrastic future (*lut*) is formed from two parts, a noun and a verb. (There is an exception, which will be discussed in point 4.) The noun is formed by:

**guna of verb root + tā (or itā)**

For example:

- ✓ **gam** becomes **gantā**
- ✓ **kṛ** becomes **kartā**
- ✓ **bhū** becomes **bhavitā**

The **tā** forms an agent noun, a “doer.” It is the nominative singular of the *tr* declension. Thus **gantā** is “goer,” and **kartā** is “doer.”

- This noun is followed by **as** (in its conjugated form) to form the periphrastic future. A similar formation in English might be:

"When the tiger appears, then I am a hunter." ("When the tiger appears, then I will hunt.")

The exception (mentioned in point 3) is that the **prathama** form of the verb does not have **asti**, but only the noun (which is now considered a verb—the periphrastic future).

5. Here is the declension of  $\sqrt{\text{gam}}$ :

Root:  $\sqrt{\text{gam}}$  (go) 1P Periphrastic Future

<b>prathama</b>	गन्ता	गन्तारौ	गन्तारः
	gantā	gantārau	gantārah
<b>madhyama</b>	गन्तासि	गन्तास्थः	गन्तास्थ
	gantāsi	gantāsthaḥ	gantāstha
	gantā+asi	gantā+sthaḥ	gantā+stha
<b>uttama</b>	गन्तास्मि	गन्तास्वः	गन्तास्मः
	gantāsmi	gantāsvah	gantāsmah
	gantā+asmī	gantā+svah	gantā+smah
	_____	_____	_____
	eka	dvi	bahu

Notice that the **prathama puruṣa** takes the masculine/feminine endings of the **r** declension. Context will tell you whether these words are nouns or verbs.

6. The periphrastic future always takes **parasmaipada** endings, even for **ātmanepada** verbs.

7. Here is the periphrastic future (p. fut.) for some of the verbs we have studied or will study in this lesson:

ROOT	PRESENT	P. FUT.	ENGLISH
√āp (5P)	āpnoti	āptā	he will obtain
√iṣ (6P)	icchati	eṣitā	he will choose
√kr̥ (8U)	karoti, kurute	kartā	he will do
√gam (1P)	gacchati	gantā	he will go
√gup (1P)	gopāyati	gopāyitā gopitā goptā	he will protect
√cint (10U)	cintayati -te	cintayitā	he will think
√cur (10U)	corayati -te	corayitā	he will steal
√jan (4Ā)	jāyate	janitā	he will be born
√ji (1P)	jayati	jetā	he will conquer
√tan (8U)	tanoti, tanute	tanitā	he will stretch
√tud (6U)	tudati -te	tottā	he will push
√tṛ̥ (1P)	tarati	taritā	he will cross
√tyaj (1P)	tyajati	tyaktā	he will abandon
√dā (3U)	dadāti, datte	dātā	he will give
√div (4P)	divyati	devitā	he will play
√dr̥ś (√paś)(1P)	paśyati	dr̥ṣṭā	he will see
√dhā (3U)	dadhāti, dhatte	dhātā	he will place
√nī (1U)	nayati -te	netā	he will lead
√paṭh (1P)	paṭhati	paṭhitā	he will read
√pā (1P)	pibati	pātā	he will drink

<b>√prach (6P)</b>	<b>pṛcchati</b>	<b>praṣṭā</b>	he will ask
<b>√budh (1U)</b>	<b>bodhati -te</b>	<b>bodhitā</b>	he will know
<b>√bhāṣ (1Ā)</b>	<b>bhāṣate</b>	<b>bhāṣitā</b>	he will speak
<b>√bhū (1P)</b>	<b>bhavati</b>	<b>bhavitā</b>	he will be
<b>√man (4Ā)</b>	<b>manyate</b>	<b>mantā</b>	he will think
<b>√muc (6U)</b>	<b>muñcati - te</b>	<b>moktā</b>	he will release
<b>√yuj (7U)</b>	<b>yunakti, yuṅkte</b>	<b>yoktā</b>	he will unite
<b>√ram (1Ā)</b>	<b>ramate</b>	<b>rantā</b>	he will enjoy
<b>√labh (1Ā)</b>	<b>labhate</b>	<b>labdhā</b>	he will obtain
<b>√vad (1P)</b>	<b>vadati</b>	<b>vaditā</b>	he will speak
<b>√vas (1P)</b>	<b>vasati</b>	<b>vastā</b>	he will live
<b>√śubh (1Ā)</b>	<b>śobhate</b>	<b>śobhitā</b>	he will shine
<b>√śru (5P)</b>	<b>śṛṇoti</b>	<b>śrotā</b>	he will hear
<b>√su (5U)</b>	<b>sunoti, sunute</b>	<b>sotā</b>	he will press
<b>√sev (1Ā)</b>	<b>sevate</b>	<b>sevitā</b>	he will serve
<b>√sthā (1P)</b>	<b>tiṣṭhati</b>	<b>sthātā</b>	he will establish
<b>√smi (1Ā)</b>	<b>smayate</b>	<b>smetā</b>	he will smile
<b>√smṛ (1P)</b>	<b>smarati</b>	<b>smartā</b>	he will remember
<b>√has (1P)</b>	<b>hasati</b>	<b>hasitā</b>	he will laugh
<b>√hā (3P)</b>	<b>jahāti</b>	<b>hātā</b>	he will abandon
<b>√hu (3P)</b>	<b>juhoti</b>	<b>hotā</b>	he will offer

## THE GERUNDIVE

1. The gerundive is also called the future passive participle. This participle expresses obligation or necessity—what should or ought to be done. The gerundive is formed by adding *ya*, *aniya*, or *tavya* (these are called *kṛtya* suffixes) to the adjusted verbal root.
2. The gerundive, like the past passive participle, may act as a verb, an adjective, or a noun. In a sentence where the gerundive acts like a verb, the sentence is put in the ***karmani*** prayoga, the passive construction. In this construction, the object (***karman***) is in the nominative, and the agent (***kartri***) of action is in the instrumental (or sometimes the genitive). For example:

अश्वो राजा नेयः ।

*aśvo rājñā neyah*

The horse is to be lead by the king.

In this sentence, the gerundive is underlined. The agent of action (the king) is in the instrumental, and the object of action (the horse) is in the nominative. The gerundive agrees with the object. (The gerundive is usually found in the nominative case.)

3. An active English sentence must be recast in the passive before using the gerundive as a verb. For example, “The king must lead the horse,” would be recast as, “The horse is to be lead by the king.”
4. The gerundive agrees in person, number, and case with the object of action. If there is no object of action, the gerundive is declined in the nominative, singular, neuter. For example:

I must go. (becomes)

**मया गन्तव्यम् ।**

**mayā gantavyam**

It is to be gone by me.

In this sentence “by me” is in the instrumental, and the gerundive, which is underlined, is declined in the nominative, singular, neuter.

- Often the gerundive can be used for an imperative. For example:

**गन्तव्यम्**

Go. (It is to be gone.)

**आत्मा वारे द्रष्टव्यः श्रोतव्यो मन्तव्यो**

**निदिध्यासितव्यः**

The ātman alone must be seen, heard, contemplated, and realized. (*Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad* 2.4.5)

**स आत्मा स विज्ञेयः ।**

That is the Self. That is to be known.

(*Nṛsimhottaratāpanīya Upaniṣad* 1)

- Many of the formations for the gerundive occur in more than one way. In general, the root takes **guṇa**. Before **tavya**, the form is usually the same as before **tā** in the periphrastic future. Here are some of the gerundive formations for the verbs we have studied. They are also listed beginning on page 347.

ROOT	aniya	tavya	ya	ENGLISH
√āp (5P)	āpanīya	āptavya	āpya	to be obtained
√iṣ (6P)	eṣanīya	eṣitavya	eṣya	to be chosen
√kṛ (8U)	karaṇīya	kartavya	kārya	to be done
√gam (1P)	gamanīya	gantavya	gamyā	to be gone
√gup (1P)	gopaniya	goptavya	gopya	to be protected
√cint (10U)	cinataniya	cintayitavya	cintya	to be thought
√cur (10U)	coraniya	corayitavya	corya	to be stolen
√jan (4Ā)	—	janitavya	janya	to be born
√ji (1P)	—	jetavya	jitya, jeya	to be conquered
√tan (8U)	—	tanitavya	tanya	to be stretched
√tud (6U)	—	—	todya	to be pushed
√tṛ (1P)	tāraṇīya	taritavya	tārya	to be crossed
√tyaj (1P)	tyajaniya	tyaktavya	tyājya	to be abandoned
√dā (3U)	dāniya	dātavya	deya	to be given
√div (4P)	—	devitavya	—	to be played
√drś (1P)	darśaniya	draṣṭavya	drśya	to be seen

$\sqrt{dhā}$ (3U)	dhāniya	dhātavya	dheya	to be placed
$\sqrt{nī}$ (1U)	nayaniya	netavya	neya	to be lead
$\sqrt{paṭh}$ (1P)	paṭhaniya	paṭhitavya	pāṭhya	to be read
$\sqrt{pā}$ (1P)	pāniya	pātavya	peya	to be drunk
$\sqrt{prach}$ (6P)	—	praśtavya	prēchya	to be asked
$\sqrt{budh}$ (1U)	bodhaniya	bodhitavya	bodhya	to be known
$\sqrt{bhāṣ}$ (1Ā)	bhāṣaniya	bhāṣitavya	bhāṣya	to be spoken
$\sqrt{bhū}$ (1P)	bhavaniya	bhavitavya	bhāvya	should be
$\sqrt{man}$ (4Ā)	mānaniya	mantavya	mānya	to be thought
$\sqrt{muc}$ (6U)	mocaniya	moktavya	mocya	to be released
$\sqrt{yuj}$ (7U)	yojaniya	yoktavya	yojya	to be united
$\sqrt{ram}$ (1Ā)	ramaṇiya	rantavya	ramya	to be enjoyed
$\sqrt{labh}$ (1Ā)	labhaniya	labdhavya	labhya	to be obtained
$\sqrt{vad}$ (1P)	vādaniya	vaditavya	vadya	to be spoken
$\sqrt{vas}$ (1P)	vāsaniya	vastavya	vāsyā	to be lived
$\sqrt{śubh}$ (1Ā)	śobhaniya	—	—	to be shined
$\sqrt{sru}$ (5P)	śravaṇiya	śrotavya	śravya	to be heard

$\sqrt{su}$ (5U)	—	sotavya	—	to be pressed
$\sqrt{sev}$ (1Ā)	sevanīya	sevitavya	sevya	to be served
$\sqrt{sthā}$ (1P)	—	sthātavya	stheya	to be established
$\sqrt{smi}$ (1Ā)	smayaniya	smetavya	smāya	to be smiled
$\sqrt{smṛ}$ (1P)	smarāniya	smartavya	smarya	to be remembered
$\sqrt{has}$ (1P)	hasaniya	hasitavya	hāsyā	to be laughed
$\sqrt{hā}$ (3P)	—	hātavya	heya	to be abandoned
$\sqrt{hu}$ (3P)	—	hotavya	havya	to be offered

**VERB CLASS 5**

1. **Class Five.**  $\sqrt{su}$  gaṇa ( $\sqrt{su}$  press) The fifth class is called the su gaṇa. This class is formed almost exactly like class 8. In class 8, u is added to the root, and most roots end in n. In class 5, nu is added to the root, and most roots end in a vowel. The stem for class 5 is formed by:

root + nu for weak forms  
root + no for strong forms

2. The root  $\sqrt{sru}$  becomes śr before adding nu or no. Here is the conjugation for  $\sqrt{sru}$ :

Root: √śru (hear) 5P Present Indicative

prathama	শৃণোতি śrnoti śrno+ti	শৃণুতঃ śrṇutah śrṇu+tas	শৃণবন্তি śrṇvanti śrṇu+anti
madhyama	শৃণোষি śrnosi śrno+si	শৃণুথঃ śrṇuthah śrṇu+thas	শৃণুথ śrṇutha śrṇu+tha
uttama	শৃণোমি śrnomi śrno+mi	শৃণুবঃ śrṇuvah śrṇu+vas	শৃণুমঃ śrṇumah śrṇu+mas
	eka	dvi	bahu

3. Another root from class 5 is  $\sqrt{\bar{a}p}$  (obtain). Here is the conjugation for  $\sqrt{\bar{a}p}$ :

Root:  $\sqrt{\bar{a}p}$  (obtain) 5P Present Indicative

<b>prathama</b>	<b>आप्रोति</b>	<b>आपुतः</b>	<b>आपुवन्ति</b>
	<u><math>\bar{a}pnoti</math></u>	$\bar{a}pnutaḥ$	$\bar{a}pnuvanti$
	$\bar{a}pno+ti$	$\bar{a}pnu+tas$	$\bar{a}pnu+anti$
<b>madhyama</b>	<b>आप्रोषि</b>	<b>आपुथः</b>	<b>आपुथ</b>
	<u><math>\bar{a}pnosi</math></u>	$\bar{a}pnuthah$	$\bar{a}pnutha$
	$\bar{a}pno+si$	$\bar{a}pnu+thas$	$\bar{a}pnu+tha$
<b>uttama</b>	<b>आप्रोमि</b>	<b>आपुवः</b>	<b>आपुमः</b>
	<u><math>\bar{a}pnomi</math></u>	$\bar{a}pnuvah$	$\bar{a}pnumarh$
	$\bar{a}pno+mi$	$\bar{a}pnu+vas$	$\bar{a}pnu+mas$
	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
	<b>eka</b>	<b>dvi</b>	<b>bahu</b>

**VOCABULARY****SANSKRIT****ENGLISH**

**आप्** (5P) आप्नोति

he obtains

**कलिलः** (mas.)

mire, thicket

**चेद्** (ind.)

if (not placed first in a sentence) (often used as a relative adverb)

**तु** (ind.)

but (not placed first in a sentence)

**तृ** (1P) तरति

he crosses over

**निर्वेदः** (mas.)

indifference

**मोहः** (mas.)

delusion

**श्रु** (5P) श्रुणोति

he hears

**सु** (5U) सुनोति सुनुते

he presses

Notice that certain short words, called "enclitic," are not placed first in a sentence. (The alternate forms of pronouns also are not placed first.)

**EXERCISES**

1. Learn to recite Chapter 2, Verse 52 from the **Bhagavad-Gītā** for pronunciation and then with word meaning. Be able to give the grammatical analysis of each word.
2. Practice reciting the verse from the **Bhagavad-Gītā** in the **devanāgari**:

यदा ते मोहकलिलं  
 बुद्धिर्व्यतितरिष्यति ।  
 तदा गन्तासि निर्वेदं  
 श्रोतव्यस्य श्रुतस्य च ॥५२॥

3. Learn how to form the periphrastic future and memorize the periphrastic future forms for verbs we have studied.
4. Memorize the gerundive forms for the verbs we have studied.
5. Memorize the conjugation for verbs from class 5, and learn the vocabulary from this lesson.
6. Translate the following sentences into English:

a. सुखवांशेदसि तदेहामृतमासासि ।१।

b. वयं फलानि सुनुमो जलं च पक्षिभ्य आप्नुमः

- c. अङ्गिरा वेदस्य नित्यज्ञानं शृणोति ।३।
- d. यदा रामः सीता च नर्दी तरतस्तदा तौ हस्तिभ्यो  
गोप्यौ ।४।
- e. यदा योगी वने तपः करोति तदा स बन्धाद्युच्यते  
।५।
- f. कथमत्र मित्रेण विना मम स्वसागमिष्यतीति  
भ्रातापृच्छत् ।६।
- g. त्वया वापी तार्या फलानि चाप्यानीति पिता  
वदति ।७।
- h. यदा तु धेनव आगन्तारस्तदा पुनः  
स्मेतास्थेत्याचार्यः शिष्यान्वदति ।८।

7. Translate the following sentences:

a. जन्मबन्धं मत्वा मनीषी समत्वमिच्छति ।१।

b. विषयेषु सङ्गादविद्या जायते ।२।

c. शिष्याः पुस्तकं पठतेत्याचार्यो वदति ।३।

d. यदा पक्षी जलं तेषां हस्तेभ्यः पिबति तदा  
सुखिना बालाः ।४।

e. यदि रामस्य सीतायाश्च कथां शृणोषि ततः  
कौशलमिहासासि ।५।

f. आत्मा श्रोतव्यो मन्तव्योऽवगन्तव्यश्च ।६।

g. बन्धस्य हेतुं दृष्टोत्तिष्ठ मोहमुक्त इति

कृष्णोऽर्जुनमवदत् ।७।

h. सीतेव स्मित्वा माता सुन्दरीं पुत्रिकामवदत् ।८।

#### ANSWERS

6. a. If you are full of happiness, then you will obtain immortality in this world.
- b. We press the fruit and obtain water for the birds.
- c. Aṅgiras hears the eternal knowledge of the Veda.
- d. When Rāma and Sītā cross the river, then they must be protected from the elephants.
- e. When the yogī performs austerity in the forest, then he is released from bondage.
- f. “How will my sister come here without her friend?” the brother asked.

- g. "The pond must be crossed and fruit obtained by you," the father says.
  - h. "But when the cows come, then you will smile again," the teacher says to his students.
7. a. Having considered the bondage of birth, the wise person desires equanimity.
- b. From clinging to objects, ignorance is born.
- c. "Students, you must read the book," the teacher says.
- d. The boys are filled with happiness when the bird drinks water from their hands.
- e. If you hear the story of Rāma and Sītā, then you will obtain good fortune in this world.
- f. The Self is to be heard, reflected upon, and understood.
- g. "Having seen the cause of bondage, stand up, released from delusion," Kṛṣṇa said to Arjuna.
- h. The mother, having smiled like Sītā, spoke to her beautiful daughter.

# 25

## LESSON TWENTY-FIVE

Recitation: **Bhagavad-Gītā Chapter 2, Verse 53**  
Additional Letters

Grammar: **Pronominal Adjectives**  
**Verb Class 2, 9**  
**Summary of Verb Classes**

Vocabulary: **Words from Chapter 2, Verse 53**  
**Verbs from Class 2 and 9**

BHAGAVAD-GĪTĀ

श्रुतिविप्रतिपन्ना ते

यदा स्थास्यति निश्चला ।

समाधावचला बुद्धिस्

तदा योगमवाप्स्यसि ॥५३॥

śruti-vipratipannā te  
 yadā sthāsyati niścalā  
 samādhāv acalā buddhis  
 tadā yogam avāpsyasi 53

When your intellect, bewildered by Vedic texts,  
 shall stand unshaken,  
 steadfast in the Self,  
 then will you attain to Yoga.

śruti-	(fem.) hearing, that which is heard (from √śru), Vedic texts
vi-prati-pannā	(fem. nom. sing. p.p.p. vi prati √pad 4Ā) bewildered, confused
śruti-vipratipannā	(tatpuruṣa compound) bewildered by Vedic texts
te	(gen. sing.) your, of you
yadā	(ind.) when
sthāsyati	(3rd per. sing. fut. act. √sthā 1P) shall stand
niścalā	(fem. nom. sing. adj.) unshaken, unmoving

<b>samādhau</b>	(mas. loc. sing.) in the Self, in <b>samādhi</b>
<b>a-calā</b>	(fem. nom. sing. adj.) steadfast, unmoving
<b>buddhiḥ</b>	(fem. nom. sing.) intellect
<b>tadā</b>	(ind.) then
<b>yogam</b>	(mas. acc. sing.) yoga, union
<b>ava-āpsyasi</b>	(2nd. per. sing. fut. act. <b>ava</b> √āp 5P) you will attain, will obtain, will reach

## ADDITIONAL LETTERS

1. There are a few additional letters: *jihvāmūliya*, *upadhmāniya*, *yama*, *nāsikya*, and *svarabhakti*.
2. The word *jihvāmūliya* (*h*) means “produced at the root of the tongue.” In the Veda, the *jihvāmūliya* is sometimes used in place of the *visarga* before *ka* or *kha*. It is called *ardha-visarga*, or “half visarga.” It is said to be written like the thunderbolt (*vajra*):



3. The word *upadhmāniya* (*h*) means “blowing.” It is sometimes used in place of the *visarga* before *pa* or *pha*. It is also called *ardha-visarga*, or “half visarga.” It is usually written exactly like the *jihvāmūliya*. Sometimes it is written in another way, which is said to be like the temple of an elephant:



4. The word *yama* means “twin.” When a *sparśa* is followed by a nasal, the *sparśa* has a twin sound between it and the following nasal. For example:

*āt mā  
pad ma  
svap na*

The release of a *sparśa* is normally through the mouth, but when it is followed by a nasal, part of the release is said to be at the root of the nose. The *yama* is a nasalization of the *sparśa*, and the *yama* then off-glides into the following nasal. It is perhaps most easily perceived as a division (twin) of the *sparśa* before a nasal sound. The *yama* corresponds to the *sparśa*, and so there are four *yamas* (some texts say twenty): unvoiced and unaspirated, unvoiced and aspirated, voiced and unaspirated, and voiced and aspirated. They

are written in devanāgarī as:

ऋ or कुँ खुँ गुँ घुँ

For example, **ka**, **ca**, **ṭa**, **ta**, and **pa** all have the same yama: कुँ

5. The word **svarabhakti** means a “fragment of sound,” or “division of sound.” It is the sound of a vowel created by a consonant. The **svarabhakti** occurs between **r** and a sibilant, if the sibilant is followed by a vowel. It is said that **r** cannot be pronounced smoothly with a following sibilant, and so a short vowel fragment must be slipped between. The vowel fragment resembles the **r**, much like र̥. For example:

rājarsi

6. The **nāsikya**, “pertaining to the nose,” is a nasal sound that is sometimes used before **s**. It is also described as the sound that comes between **h** and a following nasal, as in **brahman**. It is written in devanāgarī like this:

—॒

7. These sounds, along with some others, are called **ayogavāha**. The **ayogavāha** sounds are: **anusvāra**, **visarga**, **jihvāmūliya**, **upadhmāniya**, **nāsikya**, **yama**, and **svarabhakti**. These sounds are usually counted as part of the alphabet in the various texts of **Śikṣā**. However, they are not recited with the alphabet, and they are not included in the **varnasamāmnāya**, or the 14 **Siva Sūtras** of **Pāṇini**. They are traditionally not recited with the alphabet because they cannot be pronounced independently. Their pronunciation is dependent upon another sound, such as **a**, and so they are said to be formed in union with **a**, or **a-yoga-vāha**. They are called by their names (**anusvāra**, etc.).

## PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

- There are a few adjectives that are declined like pronouns.  
They are:

<b>अन्य</b>	other
<b>उभ</b>	both (used in dual only)
<b>एक</b>	one
<b>पर</b>	higher, beyond
<b>पूर्व</b>	former
<b>सर्व</b>	all
<b>स्व</b>	own

In **ubha**, note that the dual endings for pronouns are the same as nouns for masculine **a**, neuter **a**, and feminine **ā**.

- These are declined like pronouns, except for the nominative and accusative neuter singular. All but **anya** form their neuter nominative and accusative singular like a noun. Only **anya** forms it like a pronoun. For example:

### Neuter Nominative Singular

<b>अन्यत्</b>	other
<b>एकम्</b>	one
<b>परम्</b>	higher, beyond
<b>पूर्वम्</b>	former
<b>सर्वम्</b>	all
<b>स्वम्</b>	own

3. Here are some examples of their use:

**एकः पुत्रो वनं गच्छति ।**

**ekah putro vanam gacchati**

One son goes to the forest.

**बालः सर्वाणि पुस्तकानि पठति ।**

**bālah sarvāṇi pustakāni pṝ̄hati**

The boy reads all the books.

**बालोऽन्यस्माद्रजादागच्छति ।**

**bālo 'nyasmād gajād āgacchati**

The boy comes from the other elephant.

**प्रकृतिं स्वामवष्टभ्य**

**prakṛtim svām avaṣṭabhyā**

Entering into my own nature (*Bhagavad-Gītā* 9.8)

4. These words can also be used as pronouns. For example:

**तदेकं वद**

**tad ekam vada**

Tell me the one (*Bhagavad-Gītā* 3.2)

**एवं बुद्धेः परं बुद्ध्वा**

**evam buddheḥ param buddhvā**

Thus, having known him who is beyond the intellect (*Bhagavad-Gītā* 3.43)

5. Here is the masculine declension for **sarva**. It follows **tad** (masculine). The feminine would follow **tad** (feminine).

Stem: **sarva** (masculine) all

<b>prathamā</b>	सर्वः	सर्वौ	सर्वे
<b>dvitiyā</b>	सर्वम्	सर्वौ	सर्वान्
<b>त्रिया</b>	सर्वेण	सर्वाभ्याम्	सर्वैः
<b>caturthī</b>	सर्वस्मै	सर्वाभ्याम्	सर्वेभ्यः
<b>pañcamī</b>	सर्वस्मात्	सर्वाभ्याम्	सर्वेभ्यः
<b>śaṣṭhī</b>	सर्वस्य	सर्वयोः	सर्वेषाम्
<b>saptamī</b>	सर्वस्मिन्	सर्वयोः	सर्वेषु
	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
	eka	dvi	bahu

**VERB CLASS 2**

1. **Class 2**  $\sqrt{ad}$  **gana** ( $\sqrt{ad}$  eat) The second class is called the root class because its present stem is the root. The root takes **guna** in strong forms. The stem of class 2 is formed by:

root (for weak forms)  
**guna** of root (for strong forms)

2. The most common verb in this class is  $\sqrt{as}$  (be, become), which we have already learned. Here is the conjugation of  $\sqrt{ad}$ :

Root:  $\sqrt{ad}$  (eat) 2P Present Indicative

<b>prathama</b>	<b>अत्ति</b>	<b>अत्तः</b>	<b>अदन्ति</b>
	<u>atti</u>	atthaḥ	adanti
	ad+ti	ad+tas	ad+anti
<b>madhyama</b>	<b>अत्सि</b>	<b>अत्थः</b>	<b>अत्थ</b>
	<u>atsi</u>	atthah	attha
	ad+si	ad+thas	ad+tha
<b>uttama</b>	<b>अद्धि</b>	<b>अद्वः</b>	<b>अद्यः</b>
	<u>admi</u>	advah	admaḥ
	ad+mi	ad+vas	ad+mas
	_____	_____	_____
<b>eka</b>	<b>dvi</b>	<b>bahu</b>	

3. Here is the conjugation of  $\sqrt{brū}$  (speak), which is irregular.  
 Notice that an ī is added in the strong forms:

Root:  $\sqrt{brū}$  (speak) 2U Present Indicative

prathama	<b>ब्रवीति</b>	<b>ब्रूतः</b>	<b>ब्रुवन्ति</b>
	<u>bravīti</u>	brūtah	bruvanti
	bravī+ti	brū+taś	bruv+anti
madhyama	<b>ब्रवीषि</b>	<b>ब्रूथः</b>	<b>ब्रूथ</b>
	<u>bravīsi</u>	brūthah	brūtha
	bravī+si	brū+thas	brū+tha
uttama	<b>ब्रवीमि</b>	<b>ब्रूवः</b>	<b>ब्रूमः</b>
	<u>bravīmi</u>	brūvah	brūmah
	bravī+mi	brū+vas	brū+mas
	_____	_____	_____
	eka	dvi	bahu

4. Here is the conjugation for the irregular verb  $\sqrt{han}$  (kill):

Root:  $\sqrt{han}$  (han) 2P Present Indicative

prathama	हन्ति <u>hanti</u> han+ti	हतः <u>hataḥ</u> ha+tas	घन्ति <u>ghnanti</u> ghn+anti
madhyama	हंसि <u>hamsi</u> han+si	हथः <u>hathaḥ</u> ha+thas	हथ hatha ha+tha
uttama	हन्मि <u>hanmi</u> han+mi	हन्वः <u>hanvah</u> han+vas	हन्मः <u>hanmah</u> han+mas
	eka	dvi	bahu

Notice that in a few cases the n in han is dropped, and before anti, han loses its a and the h becomes gh.

## VERB CLASS 9

1. **Class 9**  $\sqrt{kri\ gana}$  ( $\sqrt{kri}$  buy) The ninth class forms its stem by adding **nā** in strong forms and **nī** in weak forms. the present stem is formed by:

root + **nī** (for weak forms)  
root + **nā** (for strong forms)

2. Few of the roots in class 9 are used, except for the important root  $\sqrt{jñā}$  (know). This root is regular, except that it loses its **nī** throughout the conjugation:

Root:  $\sqrt{jñā}$  (know) 9U Present Indicative

<b>prathama</b>	<b>जानाति</b>	<b>जानीतः</b>	<b>जानन्ति</b>
	<u>jānāti</u>	jānītaḥ	jānanti
	jānā+ti	jānī+tas	jān+anti
 <b>madhyama</b>	 <b>जानासि</b>	 <b>जानीथः</b>	 <b>जानीथ</b>
	<u>jānāsi</u>	jānīthaḥ	jānītha
	jānā+si	jānī+thas	jānī+tha
 <b>uttama</b>	 <b>जानामि</b>	 <b>जानीवः</b>	 <b>जानीमः</b>
	<u>jānāmi</u>	jānīvah	jānīmaḥ
	jānā+mi	jānī+vas	jānī+mas
	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
	<b>eka</b>	<b>dvi</b>	<b>bahu</b>

Notice that before **anti**, the **nī** loses the **ī**.

**SUMMARY OF  
VERB CLASSES**

1. Here is a table that reviews the ten classes of verbs:

#	<u>GANA</u>	<u>STEM</u>	<u>PRESENT</u>	<u>ENGLISH</u>
1.	$\sqrt{bhū}$ (P)	guna of root + a	bhava+ti	he is
2.	$\sqrt{ad}$ (P)	guna of root (strong) root (weak)	at+ti at+tah	he eats those two eat
3.	$\sqrt{hu}$ (P)	abhyāsa + guna of root (strong) abhyāsa + root (weak)	juho+ti juhū+tah	he offers those two offer
4.	$\sqrt{div}$ (P)	root + ya	dīvya+ti	he plays
5.	$\sqrt{su}$ (U)	root + no (strong) root + nu (weak)	suno+ti sunu+tah	he presses those two press
6.	$\sqrt{tud}$ (U)	root + a	tuda+ti	he pushes
7.	$\sqrt{rudh}$ (U)	na after vowel of root (strong) n after vowel of root (weak)	ruṇaddhi (ruṇadh+ti) runddhah	he blocks those two block (rundh+tah)
8.	$\sqrt{tan}$ (U)	root + o (strong) root + u (weak)	tano+ti tanu+tah	he stretches those two stretch
9.	$\sqrt{kri}$ (U)	root + nā (strong) root + nī (weak)	kriṇā+ti kriṇī+tah	he buys those two buy
10.	$\sqrt{cur}$ (U)	guna of root + aya	corayati	he steals

2. Remember that in classes 1, 4, 6, and 10, the stem ends in **a**, and does not change. The other classes have strong and weak forms of the stem, and in the present indicative, the singular forms are strong. Remember **guna** only takes place if the root ends in a vowel, or has a short vowel followed by one consonant.

VOCABULARY	SANSKRIT	ENGLISH
	<b>अट्</b> (2P) <b>अत्ति</b>	he eats
	<b>अन्य</b> (mf <sub>n</sub> adj.)	other
	<b>क्री</b> (9U) <b>क्रीणाति क्रीणीते</b>	he buys, purchases
	<b>ज्ञा</b> (9U) <b>जानाति जानीते</b>	he knows
	<b>निश्चल</b> (mf(ā)n adj.)	unmoving, steady
	<b>पद्</b> (4Ā) <b>पद्यते</b>	he goes, attains
	<b>पर</b> (mf(ā)n adj.)	higher, beyond
	<b>पूर्व</b> (mf <sub>n</sub> adj.)	former
	<b>ब्रू</b> (2U) <b>ब्रवीति ब्रूते</b>	he speaks
	<b>श्रुतिः</b> (fem.)	Veda, scripture
	<b>समाधिः</b> (mas.)	transcendental awareness
	<b>सर्व</b> (mf <sub>n</sub> adj.)	all
	<b>स्व</b> (mf <sub>n</sub> adj.)	own
	<b>हन्</b> (2P) <b>हन्ति</b>	he kills

**EXERCISES**

1. Learn to recite Chapter 2, Verse 53 from the **Bhagavad-Gītā**, for pronunciation and then with word meaning. Be able to give the grammatical analysis of each word.
2. Practice reciting the verse from the **Bhagavad-Gītā** in the **devanāgari**:

श्रुतिविप्रतिपन्ना ते  
 यदा स्थास्यति निश्चला ।  
 समाधावचला बुद्धिस्  
 तदा योगमवाप्यसि ॥५३॥

3. Memorize the pronominal adjectives and know how to decline them.
4. Learn verb classes 2 and 9, and memorize the summary of verb classes.
5. Learn the vocabulary from this lesson.
6. Translate the following sentences into English:
  - a. यः कार्यं कर्म सर्वं करोति स कर्मयोगी ।१।
  - b. श्रुतिर्निश्चलमनोभिः श्रूयते ।२।

c. सीता वने सर्वाणि फलानि जानाति परं चापि

।३।

d. धार्मिकं कर्म जानामि तत्तु न करोमीति राजा  
वदति ।४।

e. दुर्वनं हित्वा वीरः शत्रुं हन्ति ।५।

f. समाधिस्था निश्चला सुन्दरी कन्या योगं करोति  
।६।

g. परस्माद्योहात्तीर्त्वा योगी शान्तिं पद्यते ।७।

h. नृपः स्वस्य पुत्रस्य जन्मनश्च कथां ब्रवीति ।८।

7. Translate the following sentences:

a. धार्मिकमेव कर्म कुरुतेति माता सर्वा  
प्रजामब्रवीत् ।१।

b. जलं पीत्वा बालाः सर्वाणि फलान्यदन्ति  
महाहस्तीव ।२।

c. उभयोः सूर्यचन्द्रोस्तेजो जानामीति मनीषी  
ब्रवीति ।३।

d. योगश्रुतौ बन्धान्मोहाच्च शरनं समाधिर्जायते  
।४।

e. समत्वे स्थितः सत्त्वं मनः कृत्वा योगी  
बन्धान्मुक्तः ।५।

f. हस्तिनो वने तेषां सर्वाञ्शत्रून्मन्ति ।६।

g. आत्मनात्मानं ज्ञात्वा योगिनी सुखमिहाप्रोति ।७।

h. नर्दी गच्छ जलं च म आनंयेति पिता

पुत्रमब्रवीत् ।८।

## ANSWERS

6. a. He who performs all action that ought to be done is a karma yogī.
- b. The scripture is heard by those whose minds are unmoving. (Notice that the verb agrees with the object, which is in the nominative.)
- c. Sītā knows all the fruits in the forest and even beyond.
- d. The king says, “I know virtuous action, but I do not do it.”
- e. After abandoning the difficult forest, the hero kills the enemy.
- f. Established in the Self, unmoving, the beautiful girl performs yoga.
- g. Having crossed beyond delusion, the yogī attains peace.
- h. The king speaks about his own son and his birth.

7. a. "Do only virtuous action," the mother said to all her children.
- b. After drinking the water the boys eat all the fruit like a great elephant.
- c. "I know the splendor of both the sun and moon," says the wise man.
- d. In the scripture of yoga, the shelter from bondage and delusion is known as samādhi.
- e. Established in equanimity, having made the mind pure, the yogī is liberated from bondage.
- f. The elephants kill all their enemies in the forest.
- g. Having known the Self by the Self, the yoginī obtains happiness in this world.
- h. "Go to the river and bring me water," the father said to his son.

# 26

## LESSON TWENTY-SIX

Recitation:

**Bhagavad-Gītā Chapter 2, Verse 54**

The alphabet

Grammar:

The tenses and moods

The perfect

Interrogative pronouns

Monosyllabic nouns

The optative

Vocabulary:

Words from Chapter 2, Verse 54

Indefinite particles

BHAGAVAD-GĪTĀ

अर्जुन उवाच ।

स्थितप्रज्ञस्य का भाषा

समाधिस्थस्य केशव ।

स्थितधीः किं प्रभाषेत्

किमासीत् व्रजेत् किम् ॥५४॥

arjuna uvāca

sthita-prajñasya kā bhāṣā

samādhi-sthasya keśava

sthita-dhiḥ kim prabhāṣeta

kim āśīta vrajeta kim 54

Arjuna said:

What are the signs of a man whose intellect is steady,  
who is absorbed in the Self, O Keshava?How does the man of steady intellect speak,  
how does he sit, how does he walk?

arjuna

(mas. nom. sing.) Arjuna

uvāca

(3rd per. sing. perfect active √vac 2P) said

(See below for the perfect.)

sthita-

(mas. p.p.p. √sthā 1P) steady, established

prajñasya

(mas. gen. sing.) of intellect

<b>sthita-prajñasya</b>	(bahuvrīhi compound) of a man whose intellect is steady
<b>kā</b>	(fem. nom. sing.) what (See below for interrogative pronoun.)
<b>bhāṣā</b>	(fem. nom. sing.) description, sign
<b>samādhi-</b>	(mas.) transcendental awareness, the Self
<b>sthasya</b>	(mas. gen. sing. from $\sqrt{sthā}$ 1P) of the absorbed, established
<b>samādhi-sthasya</b>	(bahuvrīhi compound based upon an upapada compound) of him who is absorbed in the Self
<b>keśava</b>	(mas. voc. sing.) Kṛṣṇa, “one with long hair”
<b>sthita-</b>	(mas. p.p.p. $\sqrt{sthā}$ 1P) steady, established
<b>dhiḥ</b>	(fem. nom. sing.) intellect (See below for monosyllabic nouns.)
<b>sthita-dhiḥ</b>	(bahuvrīhi compound) man of steady intellect, man whose intellect is steady
<b>kim</b>	(n. nom. sing.) how, what
<b>pra-bhāṣeta</b>	(3rd per. optative middle pra $\sqrt{bhāṣ}$ 1Ā) should speak, might speak, would speak
<b>kim</b>	(n. nom. sing.) how, what
<b>āsīta</b>	(3rd per. optative middle $\sqrt{ās}$ 2Ā) should sit, might sit, would sit
<b>vrajeta</b>	(3rd per. optative middle $\sqrt{vraj}$ 1P) should go, might walk, would walk
<b>kim</b>	(n. nom. sing.) how, what

## THE ALPHABET

1. Šikṣā is the first of the six Vedāṅgas, which are: Šikṣā, Kalpa, Vyākaraṇa, Nirukta, Chandas, and Jyotiṣa. Probably the most important text of Šikṣā is the Pāṇiniya Šikṣā. The Taittirīya Upaniṣad (1.2.1) lists six topics included in the study of Šikṣā: varṇah svaraḥ mātrā balaṁ sāma santānah (letter, tone, duration, force, articulation, combination).
2. The Pāṇiniya Šikṣā begins, as does the Āṣṭādhyāyī, with the 14 Śiva Sūtras, or Maheśvara Sūtras. These sūtras list the alphabet, using a system of abbreviation called pratyāhāra, “bringing together.” Groups of letters are listed by mentioning the first and last, as one might say “from A to Z” for the entire alphabet. Some letters, called anubandha, or it, indicate that an abbreviation has taken place.
3. Here are the 14 Śiva Sūtras:

अइउण् ।१। ऋलृक् ।२। एओण् ।३। ऐओच् ।४।  
 हयवरट् ।५। लण् ।६। जमडुणानम् ।७। भभज्  
 ।८। घठधष् ।९। जबगडदश् ।१०। खफछठथच-  
 टतव् ।११। कपय् ।१२। शषसर् ।१३। हल् ।१४।

4. The Pāṇiniya Šikṣā lists the alphabet as 63 or 64 letters. One letter, the long l, is considered duḥspr̥ṣṭa, or “difficult.” Here is the alphabet as given there:

अ	आ	अ३
इ	ई	ई३
उ	ऊ	ऊ३
ऋ	ऋू	ऋ३
ल	लू	लृ३
ए	ऐ	ऐ३
ओ	औ	औ३
अं	अः	( )

4 yamas

क	খ	গ	ঘ	ঁ
চ	ছ	জ	ঝ	জ
ট	ঠ	ঢ	ধ	শ
ত	থ	দ	ধ	ন
প	ফ	ব	ভ	ম
য	র	ল	ব	
শ	ষ	স	ল	

5. The alphabet is listed as containing different numbers of letters in various texts. It is listed as containing 43 letters in the **Siva Sūtras**, 63 or 64 in the **Pāṇiniya Śikṣā**, 47 in the **Rk Prātiśākhya**, 52 in the **Taittiriya Prātiśākhya**, 65 in the **Vājasaneyi Prātiśākhya**, and 57 in the **Rk Tantra**.
6. The **Aitareya Āranyaka** (2.3.6.14) defines the role of **a**: “A is the whole of speech, and manifested as different consonants and sibilants, it becomes many forms.” (*akāro vai sarvā vāk saiśā sparśośmabhir vyajyamānā bahvī nānā rūpā bhavati*).
7. The **Aitareya Āranyaka** (2.2.1) compares the vowels to days and the consonants to nights. It compares the vowels to consciousness, the sibilants to the breath, and the consonants to the body. (Thus the consonants are dependent upon the vowels.) In another passage of the **Aitareya Āranyaka** (3.2.5), the vowels are compared to the celestial, the sibilants to the atmosphere, and the consonants to the earth.
8. Still another passage of the **Aitareya Āranyaka** (3.2.2) compares the vowels to marrow, consonants to bone, sibilants to breath, and semi-vowels to flesh and blood. According to the **Chāndogya Upaniṣad** (2.22.3) the vowels are the body of Indra, the sibilants are the body of Prajāpati, and the consonants are the body of death.
9. The **Chāndogya Upaniṣad** (2.22.5) states:

All the vowels should be pronounced resonant and strong.  
 All the sibilants should be pronounced open, without being slurred or elided. All the consonants should be pronounced slowly, without merging them together.

## THE TENSES AND MOODS

1. The tenses and moods for verbs are grouped together by Pāṇini into the ten lakāras. (See Lesson 3, p. 25.) These ten lakāras can be divided into six tenses (*kālā*) and four moods (*arthā*):

<u>TENSE</u>	<u>NAME BY PĀNINI</u>	<u>ENGLISH</u>
vartamāna	laṭ	present
anadyatanabhūta	lañ	imperfect
parokṣabhūta	liṭ	perfect
bhūta	luñ	aorist
anadyatana	luṭ	periphrastic future
bhaviṣyan	lr̥ṭ	simple future
<u>MOOD</u>	<u>NAME BY PĀNINI</u>	<u>ENGLISH</u>
ājñā	loṭ	imperative
vidhi	liñ	optative
āśīḥ	leṭ	subjunctive
samketa	lr̥ñ	conditional

2. Those verbs ending in ṭ use primary endings, and are listed alphabetically: laṭ, liṭ, luṭ, lr̥ṭ, leṭ, and loṭ. Those verbs ending in ñ use secondary endings: lañ, liñ, luñ, and lr̥ñ.
3. In four of these—the present, imperfect, imperative, and optative—the root forms a special stem through modifications (*vikarana*), and the verb is formed from that stem. This group is called *sārvadhātuka*, or special. All of the others form the verb more or less from the root, and so are called *ārdhadhātuka*, or general. The *sārvadhātuka* verbs, along with the present participle, are referred to as the present system, because the verb is based upon the present stem.

**THE PERFECT**

- Now we will study the perfect tense, which is not considered part of the present system. The perfect is traditionally used for remote past action not witnessed by the speaker. It is usually found in the **prathama puruṣa** form.
- The perfect is formed in two ways: through reduplication and peripherastically. We will observe the perfect formed through reduplication of the root. The perfect has its own set of endings. There are many complexities for forming the perfect, so for now we will just observe and use some of the forms. Here is the perfect active for  $\sqrt{vac}$ :

Root:  $\sqrt{vac}$  (speak) 2P Perfect

<b>prathama</b>	<b>उवाच</b>	<b>ऊचतुः</b>	<b>ऊचुः</b>
	<u>uvāca</u>	ūcatuh	ūcuḥ
	uvāc+a	ūc+atus	ūc+us
<b>madhyama</b>	<b>उवक्थ</b>	<b>ऊचथुः</b>	<b>ऊच</b>
	<u>uvaktha</u>	ūcathuh	ūca
	uvac+tha	ūc+athus	ūc+a
<b>uttama</b>	<b>उवच</b>	<b>ऊचिव</b>	<b>ऊचिम</b>
	<u>uvaca</u>	ūciva	ūcima
	uvac+a	ūc+i+va	ūc+i+ma
	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
	eka	dvi	bahu

Notice that the singular stems are strong, as in the present indicative active. Also notice that there is an **i** inserted before the endings **va** and **ma**.

3. Here is the perfect middle for  $\sqrt{vac}$ :

Root:  $\sqrt{vac}$  (speak) 2P Perfect middle (he spoke)

prathama	ऊचे	ऊचाते	ऊचिरे
	ūce	ūcāte	ūcire
	ūc+e	ūc+āte	ūc+ire
madhyama	ऊचिषे	ऊचाथे	ऊचिध्वे
	ūciṣe	ūcāthe	ūcidhve
	ūc+i+se	ūc+āthe	ūc+i+dhve
uttama	ऊचे	ऊचिवहे	ऊचिमहे
	ūce	ūcivahē	ūcimahē
	ūc+e	ūc+i+vahe	ūc+i+mahe
	_____	_____	_____
	eka	dvi	bahu

Notice that, like the present indicative middle, all forms are weak in the perfect middle.

4. Here is the perfect for √as:

Root: √as (be) 2P Perfect (he was)

prathama	आस	आसतुः	आसुः
	āsa	āsatuh	āsuḥ
	ās+a	ās+atus	ās+us
madhyama	आसिथ	आसथुः	आस
	āsitha	āsathuh	āsa
	uvac+tha	ās+athus	ās+a
uttama	आस	आसिव	आसिम
	āsa	āsiva	āsimā
	ās+a	ās+i+va	ās+i+ma
	_____	_____	_____
	eka	dvi	bahu

Notice that the word *itihāsa* is formed from *iti* + *ha* + *āsa*, meaning “thus it was,” or history.

5. Here is the prathama puruṣa eka-vacana for some of the verbs we have studied. Just observe, so that you will be able to recognize the perfect:

<u>ROOT</u>	<u>PRESENT</u>	<u>PERFECT</u>	<u>ENGLISH</u>
√ad (2P)	atti	āda	he ate
√as (2P)	asti	āsa	he was
√āp (5P)	āpnoti	āpa	he obtained
√ās (2Ā)	āste	āsa	he sat
√iṣ (6P)	icchatī	iyeṣā	he desired
√kr̥ (8U)	karoti, kurute	cakāra cakre	he did
√gam (1P)	gacchati	jagāma	he went
√jan (4Ā)	jāyate	jajñe	he was born
√ji (1P)	jayati	jigāya	he conquered
√jñā (9U)	jānāti, jānīte	jajñau jajñe	he knew
√tan (8U)	tanoti, tanute	tatāna tene	he stretched
√tud (6U)	tudati -te	tutoda	he pushed
√tṛ̥ (1P)	tarati	tatāra	he crossed
√tyaj (1P)	tyajati	tatyāja	he abandoned

$\sqrt{dā}$ (3U)	dadāti, datte	dadau	he gave
$\sqrt{div}$ (4P)	divyati	dideva	he played
$\sqrt{drś}(\sqrt{paś})(1P)$	paśyati	dadarśa	he saw
$\sqrt{dhā}$ (3U)	dadhāti, dhatte	dadhau	he placed
$\sqrt{nī}$ (1U)	nayati -te	dadhe	
$\sqrt{nī}$ (1U)	nayati -te	nināya	he lead
$\sqrt{paṭh}$ (1P)	paṭhati	papāṭha	he read
$\sqrt{pad}$ (4Ā)	padyate	pede	he went
$\sqrt{pā}$ (1P)	pibati	papau	he drank
$\sqrt{prach}$ (6P)	pṛechāti	papraccha	he asked
$\sqrt{budh}$ (1U)	bodhati -te	bubodha	he knew
$\sqrt{bhāṣ}$ (1Ā)	bhāṣate	bubudhe	
$\sqrt{bhāṣ}$ (1Ā)	bhāṣate	babhāṣe	he spoke
$\sqrt{bhū}$ (1P)	bhavati	babhūva	he was
$\sqrt{man}$ (4Ā)	manyate	mene	he thought
$\sqrt{muc}$ (6U)	muñcati -te	mumoca	he released
$\sqrt{yuj}$ (7U)	yunakti, yuñkte	mumuce	
$\sqrt{yuj}$ (7U)	yunakti, yuñkte	yuyoja	he united
$\sqrt{ram}$ (1Ā)	ramate	yuyuje	
$\sqrt{ram}$ (1Ā)	ramate	reme	he enjoyed
$\sqrt{labh}$ (1Ā)	labhate -ti	lebhe	he obtained

$\sqrt{vac}$ (2P)	vakti	uvāca	he spoke
$\sqrt{vad}$ (1P)	vadati	uvāda	he spoke
$\sqrt{vas}$ (1P)	vasati	uvāsa	he lived
$\sqrt{vraj}$ (1P)	vrajati	vavrāja	he walked
$\sqrt{śubh}$ (1Ā)	śobhate	śuśubhe	he shined
$\sqrt{śru}$ (5P)	śrnoti	śuśrāva	he heard
$\sqrt{su}$ (5U)	sunoti, sunute	suśāva	he pressed
$\sqrt{sev}$ (1Ā)	sevate	sīṣeve	he served
$\sqrt{sthā}$ (1P)	tīṣhati	tasthau	he stood
$\sqrt{smi}$ (1Ā)	smayate	sīṣmiye	he smiled
$\sqrt{smṛ}$ (1P)	smarati	sasmāra	he remembered
$\sqrt{han}$ (2P)	hanti	jaghāna	he killed
$\sqrt{has}$ (1P)	hasati	jahāsa	he laughed
$\sqrt{hā}$ (3P)	jahāti	jahau	he abandoned
$\sqrt{hu}$ (3P)	juhoti	juhāva	he offered

Notice that for a verb root that ends in ā, the perfect ending is au.

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

- Now we will learn the interrogative pronoun, **ka**, which means "who," "what," or "how." This pronoun is declined exactly like **tad**, except that the neuter singular nominative and accusative is **kim**.
- Here are some examples of the declension:

Stem: **ka** (masculine) who

<b>prathamā</b>	<b>कः</b>	<b>कौ</b>	<b>के</b>
<b>dvitiyā</b>	<b>कम्</b>	<b>कौ</b>	<b>कान्</b>
<b>trtiyā</b>	<b>केन</b>	<b>काभ्याम्</b>	<b>कैः</b>

And so on, like **tad** in the masculine. (See Part 1, p. 309.)

- Here is the neuter:

Stem: **kim** (neuter) what, how

<b>prathamā</b>	<b>किम्</b>	<b>के</b>	<b>कानि</b>
<b>dvitiyā</b>	<b>किम्</b>	<b>के</b>	<b>कानि</b>
<b>trtiyā</b>	<b>केन</b>	<b>काभ्याम्</b>	<b>कैः</b>

And so on, like **tad** in the neuter. (See Part 1, p. 310.)

4. Here is the feminine:

Stem: **kā** (feminine) who

<b>prathamā</b>	<b>का</b>	<b>के</b>	<b>काः</b>
<b>dvitiyā</b>	<b>काम्</b>	<b>के</b>	<b>काः</b>
<b>tṛtiyā</b>	<b>काया</b>	<b>काभ्याम्</b>	<b>काभिः</b>

And so on, like **tad** in the feminine. (See Part 1, p. 311.)

5. This pronoun becomes an indefinite pronoun when followed by **api**, **cana**, or **cid**. The first part (**kas** or **kim**) may be declined. For example:

**कश्चन**

anyone

**किंचित्**

anything

**केनचित्**

with anything

6. With the addition of **na** before, it becomes:

**न कश्चित्**

no one

**न किंचन**

nothing

7. Here are some examples of how they are used:

**को जलं पिबति ।**

**ko jalam pibati**

Who drinks the water?

**कश्चिज्जलमपिबत् ।**

**kaścij jalam apibat**

Someone drank the water.

**न कश्चिज्जलमपिबत् ।**

**na kaścij jalam apibat**

No one drank the water.

8. Pronouns can also be made indefinite by repeating them. For example:

**यदा यदा हि धर्मस्य ग्लानिर्भवति भारत ।**

Whenever dharma is in decay, O Bhārata

(*Bhagavad Gītā* 4.7)

**MONOSYLLABIC  
NOUNS**

1. There are some nouns that are one syllable ending in a vowel. These nouns follow their own declensions. For example, **dhi**, intellect, follows the declension for monosyllabic nouns ending in **i**.

Stem: **dhi** (feminine) intellect

<b>prathamā</b>	<b>धीः</b>	<b>धियौ</b>	<b>धियः</b>
<b>dvitiyā</b>	<b>धियम्</b>	<b>धियौ</b>	<b>धियः</b>
<b>triyā</b>	<b>धिया</b>	<b>धीभ्याम्</b>	<b>धीभिः</b>
<b>caturthī</b>	<b>धिये धियै</b>	<b>धीभ्याम्</b>	<b>धीभ्यः</b>
<b>pañcamī</b>	<b>धियः धियाः</b>	<b>धीभ्याम्</b>	<b>धीभ्यः</b>
<b>śaṣṭhī</b>	<b>धियः धियाः</b>	<b>धियोः</b>	<b>धियाम् धीनाम्</b>
<b>saptami</b>	<b>धियि धियाम्</b>	<b>धियोः</b>	<b>धीषु</b>
<b>sambodhana</b>	<b>धीः</b>	<b>धियौ</b>	<b>धियः</b>
	<b>eka</b>	<b>dvi</b>	<b>bahu</b>

Notice that **i** changes to **iy** before endings that begin with a vowel.  
 Notice that several of the words have optional forms.

## THE OPTATIVE

- Now we will study the optative mood (**vidhi liñ**). This is the last verb form in the present system which we have not yet studied. The optative is used for what “should” or “ought” to be done. It is also used for what “might” or “would” be done. The optative, also called potential, expresses hope, expectation, advice, or a soft command.
- Here is an example of the optative active for classes 1, 4, 6, and 10:

Root: √bhū (be) 1P Optative (should be)

prathama	भवेत् bhavet bhava+i+t	भवेताम् bhavetām bhava+i+tām	भवेयुः bhavyuh bhava+i+us
madhyama	भवेः bhaveh bhava+i+s	भवेतम् bhavetam bhava+i+tam	भवेत् bhaveta bhava+i+ta
uttama	भवेयम् bhaveyam bhava+i+am	भवेव bhaveva bhava+i+va	भवेम bhavema bhava+i+ma
	eka	dvi	bahu

Notice that, except for the third person plural, the endings are the same as the imperfect active. These are called secondary endings, as opposed to the primary endings of the present indicative. Long i, which when mixed with a appears as e, marks the optative active. When followed by a vowel, the i becomes ey.

3. Here is an example of the optative middle for classes 1, 4, 6, and 10:

Root: √labh (obtain) 1Ā Optative (should obtain)

prathama	लभेत् labheta labha+i+ta	लभेयाताम् labheyātām labha+i+ātām	लभेरन् labheran labha+i+ran
madhyama	लभेथा: labhethāḥ labha+i+thās	लभेयाथाम् labheyāthām labha+i+āthām	लभेध्वम् labhedhvam labha+i+dhvam
uttama	लभेय labheya labha+i+a	लभेवहि labhevahi labha+i+vahi	लभेमहि labhemahi labha+i+mahi
	eka	dvi	bahu

Notice that, except for the first person singular and third person plural, the endings are the same as the imperfect middle. Long ī, which when mixed with a appears as e, marks the optative middle. When followed by a vowel, the ī becomes ey.

4. Here is an example of the optative active for classes 2, 3, 5, 7, 8, and 9:

Root:  $\sqrt{su}$  (press) 5U Optative (should press)

<b>prathama</b>	सुनुयात् sunuyāt sunu+yā+t	सुनुयाताम् sunuyātām sunu+yā+tām	सुनुयुः sunuyuh sunu+y+us
<b>madhyama</b>	सुनुयाः sunuyāḥ sunu+yā+s	सुनुयातम् sunuyātām sunu+yā+tām	सुनुयात् sunuyāta sunu+yā+ta
<b>uttama</b>	सुनुयाम् sunuyām sunu+yā+am	सुनुयाव sunuyāva sunu+yā+va	सुनुयाम sunuyāma sunu+yā+ma
	eka	dvi	bahu

Notice that, except for the third person plural, the endings are the same as the imperfect active. Instead of long ī, is yā, added to the weak form of the stem almost everywhere.

5. Here is the conjugation for √as:

Root: √as (is) 2P Optative (should be)

prathama	स्यात्	स्याताम्	स्युः
	syāt	syātām	syuḥ
	s+yā+t	s+yā+tām	s+y+us

madhyama	स्याः	स्यातम्	स्यात्
	syāḥ	syātām	syāta
	s+yā+s	s+yā+tām	s+yā+ta

uttama	स्याम्	स्याव	स्याम्
	syām	syāva	syāma
	s+yā+am	s+yā+va	s+yā+ma

eka                    dvi                    bahu

Notice that the weak form of as is s.

6. Here is the conjugation for the optative middle for classes 2, 3, 5, 7, 8, and 9:

Root:  $\sqrt{\text{ās}}$  (sit) 2Ā Optative Middle (should sit)

prathama	आसीत् āsīta ās+i+ta	आसीयाताम् āsiyātām ās+i+ātām	आसीरन् āsiran ās+i+ran
madhyama	आसीथा: āsīthāḥ ās+i+thās	आसीयाथाम् āsiyāthām ās+i+āthām	आसीध्वम् āsīdhvam ās+i+dhvam
uttama	आसीय āsīya ās+i+a	आसीवहि āsīvahi ās+i+vahi	आसीमहि āsīmahi ās+i+mahi
	eka	dvi	bahu

Notice that y is inserted if the ending begins with a vowel.

VOCABULARY	SANSKRIT	ENGLISH
	<b>आस्</b> (2Ā) आस्ते	he sits
<b>क</b>	(mas.)	who, what
<b>का</b>	(fem.)	who, what
<b>किम्</b>	(n.)	what, how, why
<b>चन</b>	(ind.)	(marks indefinite after <b>ka</b> , etc.)
<b>चित्</b>	(ind.)	(marks indefinite after <b>ka</b> , etc.)
<b>धीः</b>	(fem.)	intellect
<b>प्रज्</b>	(mf(ā)n adj.)	intelligent, wise
<b>प्रज्ञा</b>	(fem.)	intelligence, wisdom
<b>भाषा</b>	(fem.)	description, sign
<b>वच्</b> (2P)	<b>वक्ति</b>	he says
<b>व्रज्</b> (1P)	<b>व्रजति</b>	he goes, he walks

- c. यः कश्चिद्वने सर्वाणि फलानि जानाति स प्रथमं  
फलमद्यादिति राजोवाच ।३।
- d. केन मम जन्मनः पदं व्रजेयमिति नरः पप्रच्छ ।४।
- e. कस्य स पुत्र इति न भाषितव्यम् ।५।
- f. यस्मादागच्छति तत्र ज्ञायते ।६।
- g. आत्मना युक्त्वा सङ्गं जहीधीत्याचार्योऽब्रवीत्  
।७।
- h. य एको मोहकलिलादिह मुक्तः स योगी ।८।

7. Translate the following sentences:

- a. बहवो हस्तिनो न श्रोतव्या दूरे भीतैर्बालैः  
श्रूयन्ते ।१।

b. किं कृष्णं वनं ते जानन्ति ।२।

c. केनापि स्वं ग्रामं रामो गमिष्यति ।३।

Notice that *svam* is used for “his own.”

d. सर्वैर्बहुमतो भूत्वा रामः शुक्लां मालां सीतया  
दीयते ।४।

e. बुद्धिसत्त्वेन सीता रामश्च दुःखस्य बन्धं तरतः  
।५।

f. तस्मात्पुत्र ज्ञातव्यं सर्वं ज्ञात्वा सुखवान्भवेति  
पितोवाच ।६।

g. सङ्गजं दुःखमसङ्गजं च सुखमित्याचार्यो  
भाषिष्यते ।७।

h. किं महाराजं वदेयमिति वीरो मन्यते । ८।

## ANSWERS

6. a. He who sits with the teacher without having offered water to him is not a student of the scripture.
  - b. Who said that happiness is born of wisdom?
  - c. "Whoever knows all the fruits in the forest should eat the first fruit," the king said.
  - d. "With whom should I go to the place of my birth?" the man asked.
  - e. Let it not be said, "Whose son is he?"
  - f. From where he comes is not known.
  - g. "Abandon attachment, having become united by means of the Self," the teacher said.
  - h. The yogī is the one who is released from the mire of delusion in this world.
7. a. Many elephants which should not be heard are heard in the distance by the fearful boys.
  - b. What do they know about the black forest?
  - c. Rāma will go to his own village with anyone.
  - d. Having been thought well of by all, Rāma is given the white garland by Sītā. (Use **bahu-mataḥ** for "thought well of.")

- e. Sītā and Rāma cross over the bondage of suffering through purity of intellect.
- f. "Therefore son, having known all that is to be known, be filled with happiness," the father said.
- g. "Suffering is born of attachment and happiness is born of non-attachment," the teacher will say.
- h. "How should I speak to the great king," the hero thinks.

# 27

## LESSON TWENTY-SEVEN

Recitation:	Bhagavad-Gītā Chapter 2, Verse 55 Pāṇini
Grammar:	Nouns Ending in Consonants The Infinitive The Pronoun etad
Vocabulary:	Words from Chapter 2, Verse 55

BHAGAVAD-GĪTĀ

श्रीभगवानुवाच ।

प्रजहाति यदा कामान्

सर्वान्यार्थं मनोगतान् ।

आत्मन्येवात्मना तुष्टः

स्थितप्रज्ञस्तदोच्यते ॥५५॥

śrī-bhagavān uvāca  
 prajahāti yadā kāmān  
 sarvān pārtha mano-gatān  
 ātmany evātmanā tuṣṭah  
 sthita-prajñas tadocyate 55

The Blessed Lord said:

When a man completely casts off all desires  
 that have gone (deep) into the mind, O Partha,  
 when he is satisfied in the Self through the Self alone,  
 then is he said to be of steady intellect.

śrī-	(fem.) blessed, radiant
bhagavān	(mas. nom. sing.) lord
uvāca	(3rd per. sing. perfect active √vac 2P) said

<b>pra-jahāti</b>	(3rd per. sing. pres. indic. active. <b>pra</b> $\sqrt{hā}$ 3P) casts off, abandons
<b>yadā</b>	(ind.) when
<b>kāmān</b>	(mas. acc. pl.) desires, cravings
<b>sarvān</b>	(mas. acc. pl.) all
<b>pārtha</b>	(mas. voc. sing.) son of Pṛthā, Arjuna
<b>manah-</b>	(n.) mind
<b>gatān</b>	(mas. acc. pl. p.p.p. $\sqrt{gam}$ ) gone
<b>mano-gatān</b>	(tatpuruṣa compound) gone into the mind
<b>ātmani</b>	(mas. loc. sing.) in the Self
<b>eva</b>	(ind.) alone
<b>ātmanā</b>	(mas. inst. sing.) through the Self
<b>tuṣṭah</b>	(mas. nom. sing. p.p.p. $\sqrt{tuṣ}$ 4P) satisfied
<b>sthita-</b>	(mas. p.p.p. $\sqrt{sthā}$ 1P) steady
<b>prajñāḥ</b>	(mas. nom. sing.) intellect
<b>sthita-prajñāḥ</b>	(bahuvrīhi compound) man whose intellect is steady
<b>tadā</b>	(ind.) then
<b>ucyate</b>	(3rd per. sing. pres. indic. passive $\sqrt{vac}$ 2P) is said

**PĀNINI**

1. Vyākaraṇa is said to be the mouth of the Veda. The principal author of Vyākaraṇa is Pānini, the author of the Aṣṭādhyāyī (eight chapters), as well as the Pāṇiniya Śikṣā, Dhātupāṭha (a list of 2,200 verb roots, along with meanings), Gāṇapatha (a list of verb roots divided into ten gaṇas according to how they form their present stem), and the Liṅgānuśāsana (a list of words according to their genders).
2. Pānini's Aṣṭādhyāyī is in about 4,000 sūtras. It is both a complete description of Sanskrit, and extremely brief. For the sake of brevity, technical terms (*samjñā*) are used. Generally, there are two types of *samjñā*: kṛtrima *samjñā* and akṛtrima *samjñā*. The kṛtrima *samjñā* is an artificial term, such as *laṭ*, *liñ*, etc. The term is short, to maintain brevity. The akṛtrima *samjñā* is a term in which the word itself conveys the literal sense, such as *sarvanāman* ("all-name," pronoun) or *samāsa* ("put together," compound). Pānini uses kṛtrima *samjñā*, such as *rk*, *ak*, *hal*, *sup*, *tiñ*, etc.
3. Pānini uses a technique to form the kṛtrimā *samjñā* called *pratyāhāra* ("bringing together"). The technique is to name the first and the last instead of all members of a set. For example, it is shorter to say "from A to Z" than it is to list the entire alphabet, and it is easier to say "from K to 12" than list all 12 grades. Another technique is to list the first or first few members of a set to indicate the entire set. For example, it is shorter to say "A, B C's" than it is to list the entire alphabet.
4. The technique of *pratyāhāra* is to list one or more members of the set, and then end with a marker, called *anubandha*. Pānini has a special abbreviation for the *anubandha*, called *it*. For example, *sup* stands for the nominal endings. The first nominal ending (the nominative singular) is *s*, which is the first letter of *sup*. The *p* at the end of *sup* is an *anubandha* (*it*). The letter

before the **anubandha** is usually the end of the list. In the example “from A to Z,” the word “from” is like an **anubandha**, because it indicates a list. The **anubandhas** are given in the 14 **Śiva Sūtras** which begin the **Aṣṭādhyāyī**. In addition to technical terms, there are statements called **paribhāṣā** that tell how the technical terms and other rules are to be interpreted.

5. Pāṇini listed all verb roots in ten **gaṇas**, or classes. Each class has a model root. The model root for the first class is  $\sqrt{bhū}$ , which means both “being” and “becoming.” The ultimate sense of this and every word is considered by Pāṇini to be **sattā**, existence or being.
6. When **sattā** is viewed from the standpoint of the world, it appears as **kriyā** (active) and **dravya** (stationary). The active aspect (**kriyā**) is dynamic (**bhāva**) and appears as verbs. The stationary aspect (**dravya**) is static (**satva**) and appears as nouns. Every word is modeled after  $\sqrt{bhū}$  in that every word has being (**sattā**) and becoming (**kriyā** or **dravya**). For example:

<b>dravya</b>	stationary	<b>satva</b>	static	nouns
<b>kriyā</b>	active	<b>bhāva</b>	dynamic	verbs
<b>sattā</b>	existence			

7. Pāṇini shows how verbs and nouns can be formed systematically from verb roots. The root forms a base or stem, called **prakṛti**. Affixes, called **pratyaya**, are added to the base to form a word. According to Pāṇini there are six types of **pratyayas**:

**sup** (to form nouns, **subanta**),  
**tiñ** (to form verbs, **tiñanta**),  
**kṛt** (primary endings to form nominals, including participles, **kṛdanta**),  
**taddhita** (secondary endings to form nominals from nouns),  
**dhātu** (secondary or derivative endings to form a verbal or nominal base), and  
**stri** (endings to make a word feminine).

8. **Pāṇini** listed the relationship between a verb and various nouns in six **kārakas**. A **kāraka** is the “instrument of action,” meaning the capacity in which something becomes instrumental in bringing about the action of a verb. The **kārakas** correspond to six of the cases, which are called **kāraka-vibhaktis**. The six **kārakas** are:

**kartṛ** (the agent),  
**karman** (the object),  
**karana** (the instrument, in the instrumental case),  
**sampradāna** (the purpose, in the dative),  
**apādāna** (showing separation, in the ablative), and  
**adhikarana** (support or location, in the locative).

In **kartari prayoga** (agent construction) the **kartṛ** is in the nominative case and the **karman** is in the accusative case. In the **karmani prayoga** (passive construction), the **karman** is in the nominative case, and the **kartṛ** is in the instrumental case. The genitive case is called **upapada-vibhakti**, which is considered weaker because this case shows a relationship between two nouns only.

**NOUNS ENDING IN  
CONSONANTS**

1. Here are two examples of nominal declensions that end in a consonant:

Stem: *vāc* (*stri-liṅga*) speech

prathamā	वाक्	वाचौ	वाचः
dvitiyā	वाच्म्	वाचौ	वाचः
trtiyā	वाचा	वाग्भ्याम्	वाग्भिः
caturthī	वाचे	वाग्भ्याम्	वाग्भ्यः
pañcamī	वाचः	वाग्भ्याम्	वाग्भ्यः
ṣaṣṭhī	वाचः	वाचोः	वाचाम्
saptamī	वाचि	वाचोः	वाक्तु
sambodhana	वाक्	वाचौ	वाचः
	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
	eka	dvi	bahu

Stem: marut (pum-liṅga) wind

<b>prathamā</b>	मरुत्	मरुतौ	मरुतः
<b>dvitiyā</b>	मरुतम्	मरुतौ	मरुतः
<b>trtiyā</b>	मरुता	मरुदृध्याम्	मरुद्धिः
<b>caturthī</b>	मरुते	मरुदृध्याम्	मरुदृध्यः
<b>pañcamī</b>	मरुतः	मरुदृध्याम्	मरुदृध्यः
<b>śaṣṭhī</b>	मरुतः	मरुतोः	मरुताम्
<b>saptamī</b>	मरुति	मरुतोः	मरुत्सु
<b>sambodhana</b>	मरुत्	मरुतौ	मरुतः
	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
	eka	dvi	bahu

**THE INFINITIVE**

1. In English, the infinitive is marked by "to." For example, "to go," and "to obtain" are infinitives. In Sanskrit, the infinitive is formed, with exceptions, by:

**guna** of root + **tum** (or **itum**)

The formation of the infinitive is the same as the periphrastic future, only with the **kṛt** ending **tum**, instead of **tā**. The Sanskrit infinitive is an indeclinable participle.

2. Here is the formation of the infinitive for some of the verbs we have studied:

<u>ROOT</u>	<u>PRESENT</u>	<u>INFINITIVE</u>	<u>ENGLISH</u>
√ad (2P)	atti	attum	to eat
√āp (5P)	āpnoti	āptum	to obtain
√ās (2Ā)	āste	āsitum	to sit
√iṣ (6P)	icchati	eṣṭum	to desire
√kṛ (8U)	karoti, kurute	kartum	to do
√gam (1P)	gacchati	gantum	to go
√gup (1P)	gopāyati	gopitum	to protect
√ji (1P)	jayati	jetum	to conquer
√jīv (1P)	jīvati	jīvitum	to live

$\sqrt{jñā}$ (9U)	jānāti, jānīte	jñātum	to know
$\sqrt{tan}$ (8U)	tanoti, tanute	tantum	to stretch
$\sqrt{tuṣ}$ (4P)	tusyati	toṣṭum	to satisfy
$\sqrt{tr̥}$ (1P)	tarati	tartum	to cross
$\sqrt{tyaj}$ (1P)	tyajati	tyaktum	to abandon
$\sqrt{dā}$ (3U)	dadāti, datte	dātum	to give
$\sqrt{dr̥ś}(\sqrt{paś})(1P)$	paśyati	draṣṭum	to see
$\sqrt{dhā}$ (3U)	dadhāti, dhatte	dhātum	to place
$\sqrt{dhṛ̥}$ (1U)	dharati -te	dhartum	to hold
$\sqrt{nī}$ (1U)	nayati -te	netum	to lead
$\sqrt{paṭh}$ (1P)	paṭhati	paṭhitum	to read
$\sqrt{pad}$ (4Ā)	padyate	pattum	to go
$\sqrt{pā}$ (1P)	pibati	pātum	to drink
$\sqrt{prach}$ (6P)	prechati	praṣṭum	to ask
$\sqrt{budh}$ (1U)	bodhati -te	boddhum	to know
$\sqrt{bhāṣ}$ (1Ā)	bhāṣate	bhāṣṭum	to speak

$\sqrt{bhū}$ (1P)	bhavati	bhavitum	to be
$\sqrt{man}$ (4Ā)	manyate	mantum	to think
$\sqrt{muc}$ (6U)	muñcati -te	moktum	to release
$\sqrt{yuj}$ (7U)	yunakti, yuñkte	yoktum	to unite
$\sqrt{ram}$ (1Ā)	ramate	ramitum	to enjoy
$\sqrt{vac}$ (2P)	vakti	vaktum	to speak
$\sqrt{vad}$ (1P)	vadati	vaditum	to speak
$\sqrt{vas}$ (1P)	vasati	vastum	to live
$\sqrt{vraj}$ (1P)	vrajati	vrajitum	to walk
$\sqrt{śak}$ (5P)	śaknoti	śaktum	to be able
$\sqrt{śubh}$ (1Ā)	śobhate	śobhitum	to shine
$\sqrt{śru}$ (5P)	śṛṇoti	śrotum	to hear
$\sqrt{sev}$ (1Ā)	sevate	sevitum	to serve
$\sqrt{sthā}$ (1P)	tiṣṭhati	sthātum	to stand
$\sqrt{smi}$ (1Ā)	smayate	smetum	to smile
$\sqrt{smṛ}$ (1P)	smarati	smartum	to remember

$\sqrt{han}$ (2P)	hanti	hantum	to kill
$\sqrt{has}$ (1P)	hasati	hasitum	to laugh
$\sqrt{hā}$ (3P)	jahāti	hātum	to abandon
$\sqrt{hu}$ (3P)	juhoti	hotum	to offer

3. The infinitive is usually used like the direct object of a verb (or verb form, such as the past passive participle). The infinitive is used as an accusative with the verb, and thus ends in **m** for the accusative. The infinitive shows purpose, and is sometimes used instead of the dative. For example:

रामो गन्तुमिच्छति ।

rāmo gantum icchati

Rāma wants to go.

4. While the infinitive is usually the only accusative of the verb, the infinitive may take its own accusative. It may, like a verb, also relate to words in other cases, such as the ablative, instrumental, dative, etc. For example:

रामो वनं गन्तुमिच्छति ।

rāmo vanam gantum icchati

Rāma wants to go to the forest.

रामो वनादागन्तुमिच्छति ।

rāmo vanādā gantum icchati

Rāma wants to come from the forest.

5. The infinitive is negated with **na**. It is often used with two roots:  $\sqrt{\text{śak}}$  5P (be able) and  $\sqrt{\text{arh}}$  1P (be worthy). For example:

**भरतो वनं न गन्तुं शक्नोति ।**

bharato vanam na gantum śaknoti

Bharata is not able to go to the forest.

**नानुशोचितुमहीसि**

nānuśocitum arhasi

You are not worthy to grieve. (You should not grieve.)

(Bhagavad-Gītā 2.25)

Notice that this example uses the infinitive to form a request, or imperative. Here is another example:

**एतन्मे संशयं कृष्ण छेत्तुमहीसि**

etan me samśayam kṛṣṇa chettum arhasi

You are able to dispel this doubt of mine O Kṛṣṇa

(Bhagavad-Gītā 6.39)

Also notice the word for “this,” which is presented below.

6. The infinitive may be used with **śakya** (adj.), which means “possible,” and is derived from  $\sqrt{\text{śak}}$  5P. For example:

**शक्योऽवाप्तुम्**

śakyo 'vāptum

It can be gained. (Bhagavad-Gītā 6.36)

(It is possible to obtain.)

7. The infinitive may be used with **arha** (adj.), which means “worthy of” or “being allowed” and is derived from  $\sqrt{arh}$  1P. For example:

**तस्मान्नार्हा वयं हन्तुं धार्तराष्ट्रान्**

tasmān nārhā vayam hantum dhārtarāṣṭrān

Therefore it would not be right for us to kill the sons of Dhṛtarāṣṭra. (**Bhagavad-Gītā** 1.37)

8. The infinitive can also be used with a passive construction. For example:

**बालः पुस्तकं पठितुं शक्नोति ।**

bālah pustakam pathitum śaknoti (active construction)

The boy is able to read the book.

**बालेन पुस्तकं पठितुं शक्यते ।**

bālena pustakam pathitum śakyate (passive construction)

The book can be read by the boy.

(The book is able to be read by the boy.)

**THE PRONOUN  
ETAD**

1. The pronoun etad (this) is declined the same as tad.

It refers to something nearer than tad. Here are some examples of its declension:

Stem: etad (pum-liṅga) this

prathamā	एषः	एतौ	एते
dvitīyā	एतम्	एतौ	एतान्
	eka	dvi	bahu

Stem: etad (napumṣaka-liṅga) this

prathamā	एतत्	एते	एतानि
dvitīyā	एतत्	एते	एतानि
	eka	dvi	bahu

Stem: etad (stri-liṅga) this

prathamā	एषा	एते	एताः
dvitīyā	एताम्	एते	एताः
	eka	dvi	bahu

2. Here are some examples of its use:

**एषा ब्रोह्मी स्थितिः पार्थ**

**eṣā brāhmī sthitih pārtha**

This is the state of Brahman, O Pārtha

(Bhagavad-Gītā 2.72)

**एतन्मे संशयं**

**etan me samśayam**

This doubt of mine

(Bhagavad-Gītā 6.39)

VOCABULARY	SANSKRIT	ENGLISH
	<b>अर्ह्</b> (1P) अर्हति	he is worthy
	<b>एतद्</b> (mf <sup>n</sup> pro.)	this
	<b>कामः</b> (mas.)	desire
	<b>जीव्</b> (1P) जीवति	he lives
	<b>तुष्</b> (4P) तुष्यति	he is satisfied, contented
	<b>धृ</b> (1P) धरति	he holds
	<b>मरुत्</b> (mas.)	wind
	<b>वाक्</b> (fem.)	speech
	<b>विद्</b> (4Ā) विद्यते	he is
	<b>शक्</b> (5P) शक्नोति	he is able
	<b>शक्य</b> (mf(ā)n adj.)	possible, able
	<b>श्रीः</b> (fem.)	radiance, splendor

**EXERCISES**

1. Learn to recite Chapter 2, Verse 55 from the **Bhagavad-Gītā**, for pronunciation and then with word meaning. Be able to give the grammatical analysis of each word.
2. Practice reciting the verse from the **Bhagavad-Gītā** in the **devanāgarī** with meaning:

श्रीभगवानुवाच ।

प्रजहाति यदा कामान्

सर्वान्पार्थं मनोगतान् ।

आत्मन्येवात्मना तुष्टः

स्थितप्रज्ञस्तदोच्यते ॥५५॥

3. Memorize the declensions for nouns ending in consonants.
4. Learn the use of the infinitive.
5. Learn the use of **etad** and learn the vocabulary.
6. Translate the following sentences into English:

a. रामो मृगं न हन्तुमिच्छति सीता तु तं पृच्छति

११

b. एते सुमरुतो दूराज्जलादागच्छन्ति १२।

- c. सर्वकामांस्त्यकत्वा श्रीरामस्तस्य राज्येन विनापि  
तुष्टः ।३।
- d. य एषो वीरो महासेनां नेतुमर्हति स केनचिदास्ते  
च वदति च ।४।
- e. अङ्गिरा वेदानां ज्ञानमाप्तुं गच्छति ।५।
- f. मनो मरुतमिव न धर्तुं शक्नोमीति शिष्यो मन्यते  
।६।
- g. विषयसङ्गजो बन्धः सर्वदुःखानां हेतुर्विद्यते ।७।
- h. कदा ते पक्षिनोऽन्यत इव  
दुर्वनात्प्रतिगमिष्यन्तीति राजापृच्छत् ।८।

7. Translate the following sentences:

- a. अस्माकं शत्रुभ्यो राज्यं धर्तुं शक्नवामेति राजा  
ब्रवीति ।१।
- b. त्वं योगं कुरु कामेन विना च जीवेत्याचार्य  
उवाच ।२।
- c. मनिषिनां वाक्ते जोवती समवती च विद्यते ।३।
- d. यो वने जीवति स योगी वेदानां सूक्तानि सुखेन  
पठति ।४।
- e. त्वया भवितुमिच्छामीति सीता राममब्रवीत् ।५।
- f. एषो योगः समत्वं त्वयोक्त्वा मयाप्तव्यो  
भवतीत्यर्जुनः कृष्णमुवाच ।६।
- g. का भाषा स्थितप्रज्ञस्येत्यर्जुनः पप्रच्छ ।७।

h. स आत्मवांस्तुष्टो निश्चलो मोहाद्युक्त इति  
कृष्णोऽर्जुनमुवाच ।८।

## ANSWERS

6. a. Rāma doesn't want to kill the deer, but Sītā asks him.
- b. These good winds come from the distant water.
- c. Having abandoned all desires Śrī Rāma is satisfied even without his kingdom.
- d. This hero, who is able to lead the great army, sits and speaks with anyone.
- e. Añgiras goes to obtain knowledge of the Vedas.
- f. "I am unable to hold the mind, like the wind," the student thinks.
- g. Born of attachment to objects, bondage is the cause of all suffering.
- h. "When will those birds, like the others, return from the bad forest?" the king asked.
7. a. The king says that we must be able to hold the kingdom from our enemies. (Use the imperative for "must be able.")

- b. "You must perform yoga and live without desire," the teacher said.
- c. The speech of the wise is possessed of balance and splendor.
- d. The yogī who lives in the forest reads the hymns of the Vedas with happiness.
- e. "I want to be with you," said Sītā to Rāma.
- f. "This yoga, spoken of by you as evenness is to be attained by me," said Arjuna to Kṛṣṇa.
- g. "What is the sign of one whose intellect is steady?" Arjuna asked.
- h. "He is possessed of the Self, contented, steady, and released from delusion," Kṛṣṇa said to Arjuna.

# 28

## LESSON TWENTY-EIGHT

Recitation: **Bhagavad-Gītā Chapter 2, Verse 56**

Grammar: **The Present Participle  
Absolute Constructions**

Vocabulary: **Words from Chapter 2, Verse 56**

BHAGAVAD-GĪTĀ

दुःखेष्वनुद्विग्नमनाः

सुखेषु विगतस्पृहः ।

वीतरागभयक्रोधः

स्थितधीर्मुनिरुच्यते ॥५६॥

duḥkheṣv anudvigna-manāḥ

sukheṣu vigata-spr̥hāḥ

vīta-rāga-bhaya-krodhāḥ

sthita-dhīr munir ucyate 56

He whose mind is unshaken in the midst of sorrows,  
 who amongst pleasures is free from longing,  
 from whom attachment, fear and anger have departed,  
 he is said to be a sage of steady intellect.

duḥkhesu

(n. loc. pl.) in sorrows

an-ud-vigna-

(p.p.p. **an ud** √**vij** 6Ā) unshaken,  
 unagitated

manāḥ

(mas. nom. sing.) mind

anudvigna-manāḥ

(bahuvrīhi compound) whose mind  
 is unshaken (The compound is  
 masculine even though “mind” is  
 neuter.)

sukheṣu

(n. loc. pl.) in pleasures

vi-gata-

(p.p.p. **vi** √**gam** 1P) free, gone away

spr̥hāḥ

(mas. nom. sing.) longing, desire

<b>vigata-spr̥hah</b>	(bahuvrīhi compound) who is free from longing
<b>vīta-</b>	(p.p.p. vi √i 2P) departed
<b>rāga-</b>	(mas.) attachment, passion
<b>bhaya-</b>	(n.) fear
<b>krodhah</b>	(mas. nom. sing.) anger
<b>rāga-bhaya-krodhah</b>	(dvandva compound)
<b>vīta-rāga-bhaya-krodhah</b>	(bahuvrīhi compound) whose attachment fear and anger have departed
<b>sthita-</b>	(p.p.p. √sthā 1P) steady
<b>dhiḥ</b>	(mas. nom. sing.) intellect
<b>sthita-dhiḥ</b>	(bahuvrīhi compound) whose intellect is steady, of steady intellect (The compound is masculine even though “intellect” is feminine.)
<b>munih</b>	(mas. nom. sing.) sage
<b>ucyate</b>	(3rd per. sing. pres. indic. passive √vac 2P) is said

## THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

1. The present participle (**vartamāne kṛdanta**) is the last form that we have not yet studied that is based upon the present stem. It is considered part of the present system.
2. Here is an example of a present participle in English:

Rāma, going to the forest, sees a deer.

The word “going” is a present participle. It is used in Sanskrit something like the gerund (Having gone to the forest, Rāma . . .) in that it takes the same subject, which is “Rāma.” Also, it may take its own accusative, etc. Like the gerund, it forms a dependent clause, and is subordinate to the main verb. However, while the gerund expresses completed action, the present participle expresses action still in progress.

3. The present participle is best understood by breaking the sentence in two. For example:

Rāma, going to the forest, sees a deer.

The dependent phrase, “going to the forest” could be understood on its own first, and then integrated with the rest of the sentence.

4. Like other participles, the present participle acts as an adjective and a verb. As an adjective, it must agree with a word in the independent clause. (For example, “going” would agree with “Rāma.”) As a verb, it may take its own object. (For example, “going” takes the object “forest.”)
5. In Sanskrit there is a present active participle and a present middle participle. They are used the same way, but are formed differently. Active roots take the present active participle, and middle roots take the present middle participle.

6. The stem of the present active participle is formed by taking the third person plural form of the present indicative and dropping the final i. For example:

<u>ROOT</u>	<u>3rd Per. Pl.</u>	<u>STEM</u>	<u>ENGLISH</u>
√bhū (1P)	bhavanti	bhavant	being
√ad (2P)	adanti	adant	eating
√hu (3P)	juhvati	juhvat	offering
√div (4P)	divyanti	divyant	playing
√su (5U)	suvanti	suvant	pressing
√tud (6U)	tudanti	tudant	pushing
√rudh (7U)	rundhanti	rundhant	blocking
√tan (8U)	tanvanti	tanvant	stretching
√kri (9U)	kriṇanti	kriṇant	buying
√cur (10U)	corayanti	corayant	stealing

Notice that the third *gana* does not have an n before the final t.  
(It's declension will be discussed below, #9)

7. Like an adjective, the present participle stem is declined in the masculine, feminine, and neuter.
8. For the masculine declension, the participle stem follows the at (or ant) declension. (See Lesson 19.) The only exception is that the nominative singular ends in an rather than ān. Here is the masculine declension for the present active participle:

dhātu: √gam (go) 1P

Present Active Participle Stem: gacchant (going) pum-liṅga

prathamā	गच्छन्	गच्छन्तौ	गच्छन्तः
dvitiyā	गच्छन्तम्	गच्छन्तौ	गच्छतः
trtiyā	गच्छता	गच्छद्ध्याम्	गच्छद्धिः
caturthī	गच्छते	गच्छद्ध्याम्	गच्छद्धयः
pañcamī	गच्छतः	गच्छद्ध्याम्	गच्छद्धयः
śaṣṭhi	गच्छतः	गच्छतोः	गच्छताम्
saptamī	गच्छति	गच्छतोः	गच्छत्सु
sambodhana	गच्छन्	गच्छन्तौ	गच्छन्तः
	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
	eka	dvi	bahu

8. Here are some examples:

रामो वनं गच्छन्मृगं पश्यति ।

rāmo vanam gacchan mṛgam paśyati

Rāma, going to the forest, sees a deer.

रामो मृगं पश्यस्तं गच्छति ।

rāmo mṛgam paśyamṣ tam gacchatī

Rāma, seeing the deer, goes to it.

Notice that in each example, the participle agrees with the subject, which is masculine. Notice that in the second example, **paśyan** changes to **paśyamṣ** because of **sandhi**. Here is another example:

पश्यञ्चरवन्पृशञ्जिग्रन्त्रन्नगच्छन्स्वपञ्चसन्

paśyañ chṛṇvan sprśañ jighram nāśnan gacchan

svapañ chvasan

seeing, hearing, touching, smelling, eating, walking,  
sleeping, breathing (**Bhagavad-Gītā** 5.8)

Notice that all of these present active participles are nominative, masculine, singular. Each of the participles ends in **an**, but some of them change because of **sandhi** (**n + ś = nś** or **nch**; **an + a = anna**).

9. For **gāṇa** 3 verbs, the **at (ant)** declension is followed, only those forms that have **ant** use **at**, and thus are considered weak. The masculine nominative singular ends in **at** rather than **an**.
10. The neuter participle also follows the **at** declension (neuter), the only exception is that the nominative, accusative, and vocative dual have an **n** before the **t**. For example:

*dhātu: √gam (go) 1P*

Present Active Participle Stem: **gacchant** (going)  
**napumṣaka-liṅga**

<i>prathamā</i>	गच्छत्	गच्छन्ती	गच्छन्ति
-----------------	--------	----------	----------

<i>dvitiyā</i>	गच्छत्	गच्छन्ती	गच्छन्ति
----------------	--------	----------	----------

<i>trtiyā</i>	गच्छता	गच्छद्याम्	गच्छद्धिः
---------------	--------	------------	-----------

<i>cathurthī</i>	गच्छते	गच्छद्याम्	गच्छद्यः
------------------	--------	------------	----------

<i>pañcamī</i>	गच्छतः	गच्छद्याम्	गच्छद्यः
----------------	--------	------------	----------

<i>śaṣṭhī</i>	गच्छतः	गच्छतोः	गच्छताम्
---------------	--------	---------	----------

<i>saptamī</i>	गच्छति	गच्छतोः	गच्छत्सु
----------------	--------	---------	----------

<i>sambodhana</i>	गच्छत्	गच्छन्ती	गच्छन्ति
-------------------	--------	----------	----------

eka

dvi

bahu

Note that for the **dvi-vacana**, classes 2, 3, 5, 7, 8, and 9 (and optionally class 6) use **ati** rather than **anti**.

11. The feminine declension forms the stem by adding *i*, which forms *anti*. It is then declined like a long *i*. For example:

Root:  $\sqrt{gam}$  (go) 1P

Present Active Participle Stem: *gacchanti* (going) *stri-liṅga*

*prathamā* गच्छन्ती गच्छन्त्यौ गच्छन्त्यः

*dvitiyā* गच्छन्तीम् गच्छन्त्यौ गच्छन्तीः

*trtiyā* गच्छन्त्या गच्छन्तीभ्याम् गच्छन्तीभिः

*caturthī* गच्छन्त्यै गच्छन्तीभ्याम् गच्छन्तीभ्यः

*pañcamī* गच्छन्त्याः गच्छन्तीभ्याम् गच्छन्तीभ्यः

*śaṣṭhi* गच्छन्त्याः गच्छन्त्योः गच्छन्तीनाम्

*saptami* गच्छन्त्याम् गच्छन्त्योः गच्छन्तीषु

*sambodhana* गच्छन्ति गच्छन्त्यौ गच्छन्त्यः

\_\_\_\_\_

eka

\_\_\_\_\_

dvi

\_\_\_\_\_

bahu

Note that classes 2, 3, 5, 7, 8, and 9 (and optionally class 6) use *ati* rather than *anti*.

12. The stem for the present middle participle is formed by adding **māna** to the present stem for classes 1, 4, 6, and 10. The other classes add **āna** to the weak form of the stem. For example:

<u>ROOT</u>	<u>CLASS</u>	<u>VERB STEM</u>	<u>PARTICIPLE STEM</u>	<u>ENGLISH</u>
√bhāś	1	bhāṣa	bhāṣamāṇa	speaking
√sev	1	seva	sevamāṇa	serving
√vṛt	1	varta	vartamāṇa	being
√kṛ	8	kuru (weak)	kurvāṇa	doing
√su	5	sunu (weak)	sunvāṇa	pressing
√rudh	7	rundh (weak)	rundhāṇa	blocking

13. The present middle participle is declined like the masculine **a**, the neuter **a**, and the feminine **ā**.
14. The present participle stem for √as is **sant** (mas.), **sat** (n.), and **sati** (fem.).
15. The present passive participle stem is formed from the passive stem, with the ending **māna** for all classes.

## ABSOLUTE CONSTRUCTIONS

1. There are two absolute constructions: the locative absolute and genitive absolute. These are both used with the present participle (or past participle) to express two actions taking place at the same time. With the absolute constructions, the participle and the main verb have different subjects.
2. The locative absolute (*sat saptamī*), which is more common, is a dependent clause which, in English, could be introduced with "when," "while," or "as." For example:

When Rāma is speaking, the boy hears.

The subject and the participle of the locative absolute clause are in the locative case. In sentence above, "Rāma is speaking" would be in the locative. It might be understood as:

In Rāma's speaking, the boy hears.

4. Here is the example in Sanskrit:

रामे भाषमाणे बालः शृणोति ।  
rāme bhāṣamāne bālah śṛṇoti

Notice that the subject and participle of the locative absolute clause are in the locative case.

5. Here is another example:

न हन्यते हन्यमाने शरीरे ।  
na hanyate hanyamāne śarīre

He is not slain when the body is slain. (Bhagavad-Gītā 2.20)

6. Let's look at the formation of the locative for some of the participles:

<u>ROOT</u>	<u>PARTICIPLE STEM</u>	<u>LOCATIVE</u>
√sev (1Ā)	sevamāna	sevamāne (mas., n. sing.)
√sev (1Ā)	sevamāna	sevamānāyām (fem. sing.)
√sev (1Ā)	sevamāna	sevamānešu (mas. pl.)
√sev (1Ā)	sevamāna	sevamānāsu (fem. pl.)
√bhū (1P)	bhavant	bhavati (mas. sing.)
√bhū (1P)	bhavanti	bhavantyām (fem. sing.)
√bhū (1P)	bhavant	bhavatsu (mas. pl.)
√bhū (1P)	bhavanti	bhavantiṣu (fem. pl.)
√su (5U)	sunvatī	sunvatyām (fem. sing.)
√hu (3P)	juhvat	juhvati (mas. sing.)
√as (2P)	sant	sati (mas. sing.)
√as (2P)	sant	satsu (mas. pl.)

7. Notice that the masculine singular locative of **parasmaipada** verbs (**bhavati** and **juhvati**) resembles a conjugated verb. This could lead to confusion. For example:

**रामे वनं गच्छति सीता गच्छति ।**  
rāme vanam gacchati sītā gacchati  
When Rāma goes to the forest Sītā goes.

In this example, **rāme vanam gacchati** is the locative absolute clause, and **sītā gacchati** is the main clause. The first **gacchati** must be a locative participle because **rāme** is locative. If a word is in the locative, it may often be the subject of a locative absolute clause.

8. When the locative absolute is used with **api**, it means “even though.” For example:

राजि भाषमाणोऽपि बालस्तन्न शृणोति ।

rājñi bhāṣamāne 'pi bālas tan na śrṇoti

Even though the king speaks, the boy does not hear him.

9. There is also a genitive absolute, which is used like the locative absolute. The genitive absolute is called the “genitive of disrespect,” because it indicates action which is happening in spite of the action of the genitive absolute. For example:

तस्य पश्यतः सा गच्छति ।

tasya paśyataḥ sā gacchati

While he looks on, she goes.

राजो भाषमाणस्य बालोऽहसत् ।

rājño bhāṣamāṇasya bālo 'hasat

While the king was speaking, the boy laughed.

## VOCABULARY

## SANSKRIT

## ENGLISH

**अधि+गम्** अधिगच्छति

he attains

इ (2P) एति

he goes

क्रोधः (mas.)

anger

गै (1P) गायति

he sings

भयम् (n.)

fear

मुनिः (mas.)

sage

रागः (mas.)

attachment, passion, red color,

विज् (6Ā) विजते

melody

विश् (6P) विशति

he enters

वृत् (1Ā) वर्तते

he is

सृज् (6P) सृजति

he creates, emits

स्पृहा (fem.)

longing, desire

**EXERCISES**

1. Learn to recite Chapter 2, Verse 56 from the **Bhagavad-Gītā**, for pronunciation and then with word meaning. Be able to give the grammatical analysis of each word.
2. Practice reciting the verse from the **Bhagavad-Gītā** with the meaning in mind:

दुःखेष्वनुद्विग्नमनाः  
 सुखेषु विगतस्पृहः ।  
 वीतरागभयक्रोधः  
 स्थितधीर्मुनिरुच्यते ॥५६॥

3. Learn the use and formation of the present participle.
4. Learn the use of the absolute construction.
5. Learn the vocabulary from this lesson.
6. Translate the following sentences into English:

a. पक्षिषु न गायत्स्वपि बालो भयेन विना कृष्णं

वनं विशति ।१।

b. श्रीमतः सत्त्वस्य योगिनो गृहमक्रधोऽरागश्च

वर्तते ।२।

c. धार्मिको मुनिरात्मानं धरन्भयं कामं च न सृजति

।३।

d. सर्वकामदं ज्ञात्वा मुनिः स्पृहात्कामाद्व तीर्णः

।४।

e. सर्वेषु कर्मसु गुणैः क्रियमानेष्वपि कर्ताहमिति  
मन्यते ।५।

f. जलं पीत्वाभयात्कन्या गातुं शक्नोति ।६।

g. तस्यातिथेर्पदाभ्यां जलं जुह्वदेदेभ्यो मुनिस्तस्मै  
सूक्तान्यगायत् ।७।

h. सुन्दराणां पक्षिणां गीतं शृणवती सीता सुखवती  
भवति ।८।

7. Translate the following sentences:

a. ज्ञानं लब्ध्वा योगी परां शान्तिमध्यगच्छत् ।१।

b. यो नर आत्मनि तुष्टः स सङ्गात्समत्वमेति ।२।

c. मातुः पश्यन्त्या अपि बालः सर्वाणि चोरितानि  
फलान्यत्ति ।३।

d. यद्यपि हस्तिनं द्रष्टुं न शक्नोषि तदा तं दूरे  
श्रोष्यसीति राजोवाच ।४।

e. रामे शृणवति सीता रागमालां गायति ।५।

f. सूर्यः कामदो मनीषिभिर्बुद्ध्यते ।६।

g. किं मुनिः कामं च क्रोधं च त्यक्तुं कुर्यात् ।७।

(The third person singular optative is **kuryāt**.)

h. क्रोधभयस्पृहाः मनीषिणां शत्रुरुच्यन्ते । ८।

## ANSWERS

6. a. Even though the birds are not singing, the boy enters the black forest without fear.
- b. The house of the radiant and pure yogī is without anger and passion.
- c. The virtuous sage, holding to the Self, does not create fear and desire.
- d. Having known the granter of all wishes (Śiva) the sage crossed beyond longing and desire. (**kāmada** is an **upapada** compound. See p. 13.)
- e. Even though all actions are performed by the guṇas, he thinks, "I am the doer."
- f. Having drunk water, the girl is able to sing without fear.
- g. While offering water to the feet of his guest, the sage sang hymns from the Vedas to him.
- h. Hearing the song of the beautiful birds, Sītā becomes filled with happiness.

7. a. Having gained knowledge, the yogī attained supreme peace.
- b. The man who is satisfied in the Self goes from attachment to equanimity.
- c. Even while the mother watches, the boy eats all the stolen fruit.
- d. "Even if you are not able to see the elephant, you will hear him in the distance," the king said.
- e. Sītā sings a garland of melodies while Rāma listens.
- f. The sun is known as the giver of desires by the wise.
- g. What should the sage do to abandon desire and anger?
- h. Anger, fear, and desire are called the enemy of the wise.

---

# 29

## LESSON TWENTY-NINE

Recitation: **Bhagavad-Gītā Chapter 2, Verse 57**

Grammar: Feminine Nouns in **ū**  
The Causative  
More Pronouns: **ayam, idam, iyam**

Vocabulary: Words from Chapter 2, Verse 57

BHAGAVAD-GĪTĀ

यः सर्वत्रानभिस्तेहस्

तत्प्राप्य शुभाशुभम् ।

नाभिनन्दति न द्वेष्टि

तस्य प्रज्ञा प्रतिष्ठिता ॥५७॥

yah sarvatrānabhisnehas  
 tat tat prāpya śubhāśubham  
 nābhinandati na dveṣṭi  
 tasya prajñā pratiṣṭhitā 57

He who has no undue fondness towards anything,  
 who neither exults nor recoils  
 on gaining what is good or bad,  
 his intellect is established.

<b>yah</b>	(mas. nom. sing.) who, he who
<b>sarvatra</b>	(ind.) everywhere, always
<b>an-abhi-snehaḥ</b>	(mas. nom. sing.) without undue fondness
<b>tat</b>	(n. acc. sing.) that
<b>tat</b>	(n. acc. sing.) that
<b>tat tat</b>	this or that, anything
<b>pra-āpya</b>	(gerund <b>pra</b> + <b>āp</b> 5P) having gained, obtained
<b>śubha-</b>	(n.) good, pleasant
<b>aśubham</b>	(n. acc. sing.) bad, unpleasant

<b>śubhāśubham</b>	(samāhāra dvandva compound) good or bad (For the samāhāra dvandva compound, see Lesson 16, p.212.)
<b>na</b>	(ind.) not
<b>abhi-nandati</b>	(3rd per. sing. pres. indict. active abhi √nand 1P) he exults, rejoices
<b>na</b>	(ind.) not
<b>dveṣṭi</b>	(3rd per. sing. pres. indict. active √dviṣ 2P) he hates, recoils
<b>tasya</b>	(mas. gen. sing.) his, of him
<b>prajñā</b>	(fem. nom. sing.) intellect, discrimination
<b>prati-sthitā</b>	(fem. nom. sing. p.p.p. prati √sthā 1P) established

**FEMININE NOUNS  
IN Ū**

1. Here is the declension for feminine nouns ending in ū:

Stem: vadhū (strī-liṅga) woman

prathamā	वधूः	वध्वौ	वध्वः
dvitiyā	वधूम्	वध्वौ	वधूः
trtiyā	वध्वा	वधूभ्याम्	वधूभिः
caturthi	वध्वै	वधूभ्याम्	वधूभ्यः
pañcamī	वध्वाः	वधूभ्याम्	वधूभ्यः
śaṣṭhi	वध्वाः	वध्वोः	वधूनाम्
saptami	वध्वाम्	वध्वोः	वधूषु
sambodhana	वधु	वध्वौ	वध्वः
	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
	eka	dvi	bahu

**THE CAUSATIVE**

1. There is a group of verb formations that are called derivative verbs, or secondary verbs (**pratyayānta-dhātu**): the causative (**nijanta**), desiderative (**sannanta**), intensive (**yañanta**), and denominative (**nāmadhātu**). These verbs form their stem by adding a sign, such as **i**, to the strengthened root. The stem is then conjugated.
2. We will now study the causative. The causative indicates that someone is being caused to do the action expressed in the root.
3. The causative is formed by adding the suffix **i** to the strengthened root. The **i** usually appears as **ay** or **aya**. For example:

**तत्र बालो गच्छति ।**

**tatra bālo gacchaṭi**

The boy goes there.

**तत्र माता बालं गमयति ।**

**tatra mātā bālam̄ gamayati**

The mother sends the boy there.

(The mother causes the boy to go there.)

Notice that in English it is better, if possible, to give the meaning of “cause to go” with the verb “send.”

4. With the causative, there are considered to be two subjects (**kartr̄**), or agents: the subject of the causative verb and the subject of the underlying root. In the example above, the mother is the subject of the causative, and the boy is the subject of the underlying root. The subject of the underlying root is in the accusative case for intransitive verbs and verbs of motion.

For transitive verbs (**sakarmaka dhātu**), or verbs which have

an object, the subject of the underlying root is often in the instrumental case.

5. Causatives usually take **parasmaipada** endings.
6. Here are some examples of the formation of the causative. The causative is conjugated like the roots of class 10.

<u>ROOT</u>	<u>PRESENT</u>	<u>CAUSATIVE</u>	<u>ENGLISH</u>
√ad (2P)	atti	ādayati	he feeds
√āp (5P)	āpnoti	āpayati	he causes to obtain
√ās (2Ā)	āste	āsayati	he causes to sit
√i (2P)	eti	āyayati	he sends
√iṣ (6P)	icchati	ēsayati	he causes to choose
√kr̥ (8U)	karoti, kurute	kārayati	he causes to do
√gam (1P)	gacchati	gamayati	he causes to go
√gup (1P)	gopāyati	gopayati	he causes to protect
√gai (1P)	gāyati	gāpayati	he causes to sing
√jan (4Ā)	jāyate	janayati	she gives birth to
√ji (1P)	jayati	jāpayati	he causes to conquer
√jīv (1P)	jīvati	jīvayati	he causes to live

$\sqrt{jñā}$ (9U)	jānāti, jānīte	jñāpayati	he tells
$\sqrt{jñā}$ (9U)	jñāpayati		
$\sqrt{tan}$ (8U)	tanoti, tanute	tānayati	he causes to stretch
$\sqrt{tud}$ (6U)	tudati -te	todayati	he causes to push
$\sqrt{tuṣ}$ (4P)	tuṣyati	toṣayati	he causes to satisfy
$\sqrt{tarati}$ (1P)	tarati	tārayati	he causes to cross
$\sqrt{tyaj}$ (1P)	tyajati	tyājayati	he causes to abandon
$\sqrt{dā}$ (3U)	dadāti, datte	dāpayati	he causes to give
$\sqrt{drś}(\sqrt{paś})(1P)$	paśyati	darśayati	he causes to see
$\sqrt{dhā}$ (3U)	dadhāti, dhatte	dhāpayati	he causes to place
$\sqrt{dhṛ}$ (1U)	dharati -te	dhārayati	he causes to hold
$\sqrt{nī}$ (1U)	nayati -te	nāyayati	he causes to lead
$\sqrt{paṭh}$ (1P)	paṭhati	pāṭhayati	he causes to read
$\sqrt{pad}$ (4Ā)	padyate	pādayati	he sends
$\sqrt{pā}$ (1P)	pibati	pāyayati	he causes to drink
$\sqrt{prach}$ (6P)	prēchhati	pracchayati	he causes to ask
$\sqrt{budh}$ (1U)	bodhati -te	bodhayati	he causes to know

$\sqrt{bhāṣ}$ (1Ā)	<b>bhāṣate</b>	<b>bhāṣayati</b>	he causes to speak
$\sqrt{bhū}$ (1P)	<b>bhavati</b>	<b>bhāvayati</b>	he causes to be
$\sqrt{man}$ (4Ā)	<b>manyate</b>	<b>mānayati</b>	he causes to think
$\sqrt{muc}$ (6U)	<b>mūñcati -te</b>	<b>mocayati</b>	he causes to release
$\sqrt{yuj}$ (7U)	<b>yunakti, yuñkte</b>	<b>yojayati</b>	he causes to unite
$\sqrt{ram}$ (1Ā)	<b>ramate</b>	<b>ramayati</b>	he causes to enjoy
$\sqrt{labh}$ (1Ā)	<b>labhate</b>	<b>lambhayati</b>	he causes to obtain
$\sqrt{vac}$ (2P)	<b>vakti</b>	<b>vācayati</b>	he causes to speak
$\sqrt{vad}$ (1P)	<b>vadati</b>	<b>vādayati</b>	he causes to speak
$\sqrt{vas}$ (1P)	<b>vasati</b>	<b>vāsayati</b>	he causes to live
$\sqrt{viś}$ (6P)	<b>viśati</b>	<b>veśayati</b>	he causes to enter
$\sqrt{vraj}$ (1P)	<b>vrajati</b>	<b>vrājayati</b>	he causes to walk
$\sqrt{śak}$ (5P)	<b>śaknoti</b>	<b>śākayati</b>	he causes to be able
$\sqrt{śubh}$ (1Ā)	<b>śobhate</b>	<b>śobhayati</b>	he causes to shine
$\sqrt{śru}$ (5P)	<b>śṛṇoti</b>	<b>śrāvayati</b>	he tells
$\sqrt{sṛj}$ (6P)	<b>sṛjati</b>	<b>sarjayati</b>	he causes to create
$\sqrt{sev}$ (1Ā)	<b>sevate</b>	<b>sevayati</b>	he causes to serve

$\sqrt{s}thā$ (1P)	tiṣṭhati	sthāpayati	he places
$\sqrt{s}mi$ (1Ā)	smayate	smāpayati	he causes to smile
$\sqrt{s}mr̥$ (1P)	smarati	smārayati	he causes to remember
$\sqrt{h}an$ (2P)	hanti	ghātayati	he causes to kill
$\sqrt{h}as$ (1P)	hasati	hāsayati	he causes to laugh
$\sqrt{h}ā$ (3P)	jahāti	hāpayati	he causes to abandon
$\sqrt{h}u$ (3P)	juhoti	hāvayati	he causes to offer

Notice that some roots take a p before the **aya**.

7. The causative can be used as the stem for all conjugations in the present system. For example:

Present indicative ( <b>lat̥</b> )	gamayati	he causes to go
Imperfect ( <b>lañī</b> )	agamayat̥	he caused to go
Imperative ( <b>lot̥</b> )	gamayatu	he must cause to go
Optative ( <b>vidhi liñī</b> )	gamayet̥	he should cause to go
Present participle ( <b>vartamāne krdanta</b> )	gamayan	he is causing to go

8. The causative can be used for many other verbal formations (of which some look similar or identical to other formations already learned). For example:

Passive		
(karmaṇī prayoga)	gamyate	he caused to have gone
Past passive participle (bhūte kṛdanta)	gamita	he caused to have gone
Gerund	gamayitvā	having caused to go
Infinitive	gamayitum	to cause to go
Gerundive	gamayitavya	
	gamyā	
	gamanīya	to be caused to go
Future (lṛt)	gamayiṣyati	he will cause to go
Periphrastic future (luṭ)	gamayitā	he will cause to go

9. The causative past passive participle is always formed with **i**, which is the sign of the causative.

10. Observe the imperative of **√gam**, which is formed with the causative:

असतो मा सद्गमय ।

तमसो मा ज्योतिर्गमय ।

मृत्योर्मा अमृतं गमय ॥

asato mā sad gamaya

tamaso mā jyotir gamaya

mṛtyor mā amṛtam gamaya

Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad 1.3.28

From non-existence lead us to existence,

From darkness lead us to light,

From death lead us to immortality.

**MORE PRONOUNS:  
AYAM, IDAM, IYAM**

- There is an additional pronoun which means “this.” It is declined in all three genders. Here is the masculine:

Stem: ayam (pum-liṅga) this

prathamā	अयम्	इमौ	इमे
dvitiyā	इम्	इमौ	इमान्
trtiyā	अनेन	आभ्याम्	एभिः
caturthī	अस्मै	आभ्याम्	एभ्यः
pañcamī	अस्मात्	आभ्याम्	एभ्यः
śaṣṭhī	अस्य	अनयोः	एषाम्
saptami	अस्मिन्	अनयोः	एषु
	eka	dvi	bahu

2. Here is the neuter:

Stem: **idam** (*napuṁsaka-liṅga*) this

<b>prathamā</b>	इदम्	इमे	इमानि
<b>dvitiyā</b>	इदम्	इमे	इमानि
<b>tr̥tiyā</b>	अनेन	आभ्याम्	एभिः
<b>caturthī</b>	अस्मै	आभ्याम्	एभ्यः
<b>pāñcamī</b>	अस्पात्	आभ्याम्	एभ्यः
<b>śaṣṭhī</b>	अस्य	अनयोः	एषाम्
<b>saptami</b>	अस्मिन्	अनयोः	एषु
	eka	dvi	bahu

3. Here is the feminine:

Stem: iyam (strī-liṅga) this

prathamā	इयम्	इमे	इमाः
dvitiyā	इमाम्	इमे	इमाः
trtiyā	अनया	आभ्याम्	आभिः
caturthī	अस्यै	आभ्याम्	आभ्यः
pañcamī	अस्याः	आभ्याम्	आभ्यः
ṣaṣṭhī	अस्याः	अनयोः	आसाम्
saptamī	अस्याम्	अनयोः	आसु
	_____	_____	_____
	eka	dvi	bahu

4. Here is an example:

**सर्वं खल्विदं ब्रह्म ।**

**sarvam̄ khalv idam brahma**

All this is Brahman. (**Chāndogya Upaniṣad 3.14.1**)

5. Closely related to this pronoun is the pronoun **ena** (this). This pronoun is not used first in a sentence, and refers to something that has already been named. It is used as a substantive and not a demonstrative—that is, it is used by itself and not before a noun. (The pronoun **tad** can be used alone or before a noun.)
6. The pronoun **ena** is found in all three genders, but not in all cases. It means “this,” and refers to something already spoken of. Here is the masculine:

Stem: **ena** (pum-liṅga) this

**dvitiyā**      एनम्      एनौ      एनान्

**त्र्यातीया**      एनेन

**षष्ठी**      एनयोः

**saptami**      एनयोः  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 eka      dvi      bahu

7. Here is the neuter:

Stem: ena (*napuṁsaka-liṅga*) this

**dvitīyā** एनत् एने एनानि

**tr̥tiyā** एनेन

**ṣaṣṭhi** एनयोः

**saptami** एनयोः

eka dvi bahu

8. Here is the feminine:

Stem: ena (*stri-liṅga*) this

**dvitīyā** एनाम् एने एनाः

**tr̥tiyā** एनया

**ṣaṣṭhi** एनयोः

**saptami** एनयोः

eka dvi bahu

9. Here is an example:

आश्र्वर्यवत्पश्यति कश्चिदेनम् ।

āścaryavat paśyati kaścid enam

One sees him as a wonder. (*Bhagavad-Gītā* 2.29)

**VOCABULARY****SANSKRIT****ENGLISH**

<b>अभिस्त्रेहः</b>	(mas.)	undue fondness, attraction
<b>अयम्</b>	(mas. pro.)	this
<b>आनन्दः</b>	(mas.)	joy, bliss
<b>इदम्</b>	(n. pro.)	this
<b>इयम्</b>	(fem. pro.)	this
<b>एन</b>	(pro.)	this
<b>द्विष्</b> (2U)	द्वेषि द्वेष्टे	he hates
<b>नन्द्</b> (1P)	नन्दति	he exults, rejoices
<b>प्र आप्</b> (5P)	प्राप्नोति	he gains, arrives
<b>प्रति स्था</b> (1P)	प्रतिस्थिति	he establishes
<b>वधूः</b>	(fem.)	woman
<b>शुभम्</b>	(n.)	the good, the pleasant
<b>सर्वत्र</b>	(ind.)	everywhere, always

**EXERCISES**

1. Learn to recite Chapter 2, Verse 57 from the **Bhagavad-Gītā**, for pronunciation and then with word meaning. Be able to give the grammatical analysis of each word.
2. Practice reciting the verse from the **Bhagavad-Gītā** with word meaning:

यः सर्वत्रानभिस्तेहस्

तत्तत्प्राप्य शुभाशुभम् ।

नाभिनन्दति न द्वेष्टि

तस्य प्रजा प्रतिष्ठिता ॥५७॥

3. Memorize the declension for feminine nouns ending in **ū**.
4. Learn the use and formation of the causative.
5. Learn the pronoun **ayam** in all genders, and learn the vocabulary from this lesson.
6. Translate the following sentences into English:
  - a. कश्चिच्चेच्छुभं प्राप्नोति स सुखं भवति ।१।
  - b. कृष्णोऽर्जुनेन सङ्गं त्याजयति ।२।

c. य आनन्दो योगिभिः प्राप्यते स सर्वैरापनीयम्

।३।

d. निश्चिलं मनः प्राप्य योगी सर्वेभ्य एनत्वष्टुं

शक्नोति ।४।

e. यः कश्चित्स्या गृहमविशत्स्मै श्रीमती

वधूरानन्दमभवयत् ।५।

f. धीमतो नृपस्य शत्रुस्तस्य प्रजाभिर्द्विष्टः ।६।

g. त्वमत्र गजमानयान्येन केनचित्तमानायय वेति

राजा नरमुवाच ।७।

h. वनं गच्छनामो भ्रात्रा राज्यं नाययति ।८।

7. Translate the following sentences:

- a. सत्यसत्त्वसमत्वानन्दा इति तुष्टनरस्य भाषा इमाः ।१।
- b. सर्वकर्माणि त्यक्त्वा योगी समाधौ विशति न कुर्वन्न कारयन्वा ।२।
- c. य आत्मने सर्वाणि कर्माणि दत्त्वा सङ्गं त्यक्त्वा करोति स श्रीमान्मुनिः ।३।
- d. मनसा बुद्ध्या वाचा च शान्तिमती वधूः शुभं सर्वत्र प्रत्यतिष्ठत् ।४।
- e. या नरा आनन्दवन्तः सत्यमन्यैर्दर्शयन्तस्ते दुःखान्मुच्यन्ते ।५।
- f. पुस्तकं पठनप्ययं बालस्तस्य सुन्दरीमल्पां स्वसारं पश्यति ।६।

g. यदि सूर्यः शोभते तदा जलस्य वाप्यामिमे बाला

दीव्येयुः ।७।

h. मुनिः किमशुभं न द्वेष्टि शुभे च न नन्दति ।८।

#### ANSWERS

6. a. If someone obtains the good, he becomes happy.
  - b. Kṛṣṇa causes Arjuna to abandon attachment.
  - c. The bliss attained by yogīs should be obtained by all.
  - d. Having gained a steady mind, the yogī is able to create this for all.
  - e. The radiant woman caused bliss for anyone who entered her house.
  - f. The enemy of the wise king was hated by his subjects.
  - g. “You must bring the elephant here or have someone else bring it,” the king told the man.
  - h. Going to the forest, Rāma has his brother lead the kingdom.
7. a. These are the signs of a contented man: truth, purity, balance, and joy.

- b. Having abandoned all action, the yogī enters samādhi, neither acting nor causing action to be done.
- c. He who acts, having given all actions to the Self, having abandoned attachment, is a sage, full of splendor.
- d. By means of the mind, intellect, and speech, the peaceful woman established good everywhere.
- e. Those men who are full of joy, causing others to see truth, are released from suffering.
- f. Even though reading a book, this boy watches his beautiful little sister.
- g. If the sun shines, then these boys might play in the pond of water.
- h. The sage neither hates what is not good nor exults in the good.

# 30

## LESSON THIRTY

Recitation: **Bhagavad-Gītā Chapter 2, Verse 58**

Grammar: **Nouns in is, us  
Primary suffixes  
Secondary suffixes  
Adverbs  
The Desiderative**

Vocabulary: **Words from Chapter 2, Verse 58  
Nouns Formed from Primary Suffixes  
Nouns Formed from Secondary Suffixes**

BHAGAVAD-GĪTĀ

यदा संहरते चायं

कूर्मोऽज्ञानीव सर्वशः ।

इन्द्रियाणीन्द्रियार्थेभ्यस्

तस्य प्रज्ञा प्रतिष्ठिता ॥५८॥

yadā samharate cāyam  
 kūrmo 'ñgānīva sarvaśah  
 indriyāñindriyārthebhyaḥ  
 tasya prajñā pratiṣṭhitā 58

And when a man withdraws  
 his senses from their objects,  
 as a tortoise draws in its limbs from all sides,  
 his intellect is established.

yadā	(ind.) when
sam-harate	(3rd per. sing. pres. indicat. mid. <b>sam</b> √ <b>hr</b> 1P) he withdraws, takes together
ca	(ind.) and
ayam	(mas. nom. sing.) this

kūrmah	(mas. nom. sing.) tortoise, turtle
añgāni	(n. acc. pl.) limbs
iva	(ind.) like
sarvaśah	(ind.) completely, everywhere, on all sides

<b>indriyāṇī</b>	(n. acc. pl.) senses
<b>indriya</b>	(n.) sense
<b>arthebhyaḥ</b>	(mas. abl. pl.) from the objects
<b>indriya-arthebhyaḥ</b>	(tatpuruṣa compound) from the objects of the senses
<b>tasya</b>	(mas. gen. sing.) his
<b>prajñā</b>	(fem. nom. sing.) intellect
<b>prati-sthitā</b>	(fem. nom. sing. p.p.p. <b>prati</b> √ <b>sthā</b> 1P) established

## NOUNS IN IS, US

1. There are a few nouns that end in is and us. Their declension is much like nouns ending in as.

Stem: **havis** (*napuṁsaka-liṅga*) oblation

<b>prathamā</b>	हविः	हविषी	हर्विषि
<b>dvitiyā</b>	हविः	हविषी	हर्विषि
<b>trtiyā</b>	हविषा	हविभ्याम्	हविर्भिः
<b>caturthā</b>	हविषे	हविभ्याम्	हविभ्यः
<b>pañcamī</b>	हविषः	हविभ्याम्	हविभ्यः
<b>ṣaṣṭhi</b>	हविषः	हविषोः	हविषाम्
<b>saptami</b>	हविषि	हविषोः	हविषु
<b>sambodhana</b>	हविः	हविषी	हर्विषि
	eka	dvi	bahu

Stem: dhanus (*napuṁsaka-liṅga*) bow

prathamā	धनुः	धनुषी	धनूषि
dvitiyā	धनुः	धनुषी	धनूषि
trtiyā	धनुषा	धनुभ्याम्	धनुर्भिः
caturthī	धनुषे	धनुभ्याम्	धनुभ्यः
pañcamī	धनुषः	धनुभ्याम्	धनुभ्यः
śaṣṭhī	धनुषः	धनुषोः	धनुषाम्
saptamī	धनुषि	धनुषोः	धनुषु
sambodhana	धनुः	धनुषी	धनूषि
	eka	dvi	bahu

## PRIMARY SUFFIXES

1. We have seen (in Lesson 19) that suffixes (*pratyaya*) are called primary (*kṛt*) and secondary (*taddhita*). Primary suffixes are added directly to the verbal root or an adjusted form of the verbal root, such as *guṇa*. Secondary suffixes are added to a nominal which is formed by a primary suffix. Learning the suffixes and observing the changes from the roots is a way of generating a larger vocabulary.
2. Now we will observe six of the several dozen primary suffixes:

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) <b>a</b>   | (d) <b>man</b> |
| (b) <b>ā</b>   | (e) <b>as</b>  |
| (c) <b>ana</b> | (f) <b>ti</b>  |

- (a) The most important suffix is **a**, which is usually added to the *guṇa* of the root, if the root is a light syllable or ends in a long vowel. It forms mostly masculine nouns. If the root ends in **c** or **j**, it becomes **k** or **g**. Here are some examples:

<u>VERBAL ROOT</u>	<u>NOMINAL DERIVATIVE</u>
√grah (9P) hold	graha (adj.) holding, seizing graha (mas.) planet
√jī (1P) conquer	jaya (mas.) victory
√jīv (1P) live	jīva (mas.) a living individual
√tṛ (1P) cross	tāra (mas.) crossing avatāra (mas.) one who crosses down tyāga (mas.) renunciation
√tyaj (1P) abandon	bhava, bhāva (mas.) state, condition
√bhū (1P) be	bhaya (n.) fear
√bhī (3P) fear	yoga (mas.) union
√yuj (7U) unite	veda (mas.) knowledge
√vid (2P) know	sarga (mas.) creation
√sṛj (6P) create	

(b) The suffix **ā** forms feminine nouns. For example:

<u>VERBAL ROOT</u>	<u>NOMINAL DERIVATIVE</u>
√cint (10U) think	cintā (fem.) thought
√bhāṣ (1Ā) speak	bhāṣā (fem.) speech
√sev (1Ā) serve	sevā (fem.) service
√han (2P) kill	himṣā (fem.) injury
	ahimṣā (fem.) non-injury

(c) The suffix **ana** forms mostly neuter nouns:

<u>VERBAL ROOT</u>	<u>NOMINAL DERIVATIVE</u>
√ās (2Ā) sit	āsana (n.) seat, posture
√kṛ (8U) do	karana (n.) means of action
√gam (1P) go	gamana (n.) going
√dā (3U) give	dāna (n.) giving
√vac (2P) speak	vacana (n.) speech
√śru (5P) hear	śravaṇa (n.) hearing
√sthā (3P) stand	sthāna (n.) standing, place

(d) The suffix **man** forms mostly neuter nouns:

<u>VERBAL ROOT</u>	<u>NOMINAL DERIVATIVE</u>
√kṛ (8U) do	karman (n.) action
√jan (4Ā) be born	janman (n.) birth
√bṛh (1P) expand	brahman (n.) the absolute
√hu (3P) offer	homan (n.) sacrifice

(e) The suffix **as** forms mostly neuter nouns:

<u>VERBAL ROOT</u>	<u>NOMINAL DERIVATIVE</u>
√ <b>tap</b> (10U) heat	<b>tapah</b> (n.) austerity
√ <b>man</b> (4Ā) think	<b>manah</b> (n.) mind
√ <b>vac</b> (2P) speak	<b>vacah</b> (n.) speech

(f) The suffix **ti** forms feminine nouns:

<u>VERBAL ROOT</u>	<u>NOMINAL DERIVATIVE</u>
√ <b>gam</b> (1P) go	<b>gati</b> (fem.) path
√ <b>jan</b> (4Ā) be born	<b>jāti</b> (fem.) birth, caste
√ <b>drś</b> (1P) see	<b>drṣṭi</b> (fem.) sight
√ <b>budh</b> (1U) know	<b>buddhi</b> (fem.) intellect
√ <b>man</b> (4Ā) think	<b>mati</b> (fem.) thought
√ <b>muc</b> (6U) release	<b>mukti</b> (fem.) liberation
√ <b>sṛj</b> (6P) create	<b>sṛṣti</b> (fem.) creation

## SECONDARY SUFFIXES

1. The secondary suffixes are formed from nouns and adjectives, often by changing the first syllable to its **vṛddhi** substitute. Often an adjective is formed. We have studied several of the secondary suffixes which indicate possession: **vant**, **mant**, **in**, and **vin**. Here are a few more of the several dozen secondary suffixes:

- |                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| (a) <b>a</b>        | (e) <b>ka (ika)</b>    |
| (b) <b>ya (iya)</b> | (f) <b>maya (mayī)</b> |
| (c) <b>eya</b>      | (g) <b>tara</b>        |
| (d) <b>tva (tā)</b> | (h) <b>tama</b>        |

(a) The letter **a** is also an important secondary suffix, showing connection, such as family descent (**apatya**), or abstraction. Sometimes the **a** is added, but more often the **a** replaces the final **a**, and the only visible change is the **vṛddhi** substitute in the first syllable.  
Here are some examples:

<u>NOUN</u>	<u>DERIVATIVE</u>
pāñḍu (mas.) Pāñḍu	pāñḍava (mas.) descendant of Pāñḍu
putra (mas.) son	pautra (mas.) grandchild
brahman (n.) brahman	brāhmaṇa (adj.) a brāhmaṇa
manas (n.) mind	manasa (adj.) mental
śiva (mas.) Śiva	śaiva (adj.) belonging to Śiva

(b) The suffix **ya** (or **iya**) forms mostly adjectives and abstract nouns in the neuter:

<u>NOUN</u>	<u>DERIVATIVE</u>
aditi (fem.) Aditi	āditya (mas.) descendent of Aditi, the sun
kavi (mas.) a poet	kāvya (n.) poetry
kṣatra (n.) might	kṣatriya (mas.) kṣatriya
danta (mas.) tooth	dantya (adj.) dental
madhu (mas.) honey	madhavya (adj.) consisting of honey
vīra (mas.) hero	vīrya (n.) heroism
sat (n.) existence	satya (n.) truth
soma (mas.) soma	saumya (n.) belonging to soma

(c) The suffix **eya** takes **vṛddhi** in the first syllable and shows descent from or pertaining to:

<u>NOUN</u>	<u>DERIVATIVE</u>
r̥ṣi (mas.) seer	ārṣeya (adj.) pertaining to a ṛṣi
kuntī (fem.) Kuntī	kaunteya (mas.) son of Kuntī, Arjuna
puruṣa (mas.) man	pauruṣeya (adj.) human apauruṣeya (adj.) non-human

(d) The suffix **tva** forms neuter abstract nouns, and the suffix **tā** forms feminine abstract nouns:

<u>NOUN</u>	<u>DERIVATIVE</u>
<b>amṛta</b> (adj.) immortal	<b>amṛtatva</b> (n.) immortality
<b>deva</b> (adj.) heavenly	<b>devatā</b> (fem.) divinity
<b>nitya</b> (adj.) eternal	<b>nityatva</b> (n.) eternity
<b>sama</b> (adj.) even	<b>samatva</b> (n.) evenness, equanimity

(e) The suffix **ka** (or **ika**) may mean “referring to” or indicate smallness:

<u>NOUN</u>	<u>DERIVATIVE</u>
<b>adhideva</b> (n.) mind	<b>ādhidaivika</b> (adj.) pertaining to the mind
<b>adhibhūta</b> (n.) object	<b>ādhibhautika</b> (adj.) physical
<b>adhyātama</b> (n.) Self	<b>ādhyātmika</b> (adj.) relating to the Self
<b>ant</b> (mas.) end	<b>antaka</b> (mas.) death
<b>aśva</b> (mas.) horse	<b>aśvaka</b> (mas.) colt
<b>dharma</b> (mas.) law	<b>dhārmika</b> (adj.) virtuous
<b>nyāya</b> (mas.) logic	<b>naiyāyika</b> (m.) knower of Nyāya
<b>putra</b> (mas.) son	<b>putraka</b> (mas.) little son
<b>mama</b> (pro.) my	<b>māmaka</b> (adj.) mine
<b>veda</b> (mas.) knowledge	<b>vaidika</b> (adj.) relating to the Veda <b>vaidika</b> (mas.) scholar of the Veda

(f) The suffix **maya** (feminine, **mayī**), added to an unchanged (no **guna** added) nominal, indicates “made of” or “filled with”:

<u>NOUN</u>	<u>DERIVATIVE</u>
<b>ānanda</b> (mas.) joy	<b>ānandamaya</b> (adj.) filled with joy <b>ānandamayī</b> (fem.) filled with joy
<b>cit</b> (fem.) consciousness	<b>cinmaya</b> (adj.) made of consciousness
<b>jñāna</b> (n.) knowledge	<b>jñānamaya</b> (adj.) consisting of knowledge

jyotiḥ (n.) light  
hiranya (n.) gold

jyotirmaya (adj.) filled with light  
hiranyamaya (adj.) made of gold

- (g, h) The suffixes **tara** and **tama** are applied to adjectives to form the comparative and superlative adjective. The adjective appears as it would before a case ending beginning with a consonant:

<u>ADJECTIVE</u>	<u>COMPARATIVE</u>	<u>SUPERLATIVE</u>
priya dear	priyatara dearer	priyatama dearest
manda slow	mandatara slower	mandatama slowest

## ADVERBS

1. There are several secondary suffixes which form adverbs (which are not declined). The suffix **vat** means "like" or "as":

<u>NOUN</u>	<u>ADVERB</u>
aśva (mas.) horse	aśvavat like a horse
āditya (mas.) sun	ādityavat like the sun
āścarya (n.) a wonder	āścaryavat as a wonder

(Bhagavad-Gītā 5.16)

(Bhagavad-Gītā 2.29)

2. The suffix **tas** forms an ablative adverb (or sometimes genitive or instrumental):

<u>NOMINAL</u>	<u>ADVERB</u>
madhya (adj.) middle	madhyataḥ from the middle

For example:

शक्योऽवाप्तुमुपायतः ।

śakyo 'vāptum upāyataḥ

It can be gained through proper means. (Bhagavad-Gītā 6.36)  
(It is possible to obtain from proper means.)

3. The suffix **śas** forms adverbs of manner:

<u>NOMINAL</u>	<u>ADVERB</u>
eka one (mfn)	ekaśah one by one
sarva all (mfn)	sarvaśah completely

4. Adverbs can also be formed with the accusative neuter singular of nouns and adjectives. Also, the singular of other cases, such as the instrumental, can form an adverb. For example:

<u>NOMINAL</u>	<u>ADVERB</u>
nitya (adj.) eternal	nityam always
satya (n.) truth	satyam truthfully
sukha (n.) happiness	sukham happily
duḥkha (n.) pain	duḥkhena painfully

For example:

सुखं बन्धात्प्रमुच्यते ।

sukham bandhāt pramucyate

He is easily released from bondage. (*Bhagavad-Gītā* 5.3)

**THE DESIDERATIVE**

1. The desiderative (**sannanta**) is part of the group of secondary verbs, which form their stem by adding a sign to the root. (The causative, intensive, and denominative are also secondary verbs.)
2. The desiderative indicates desire. It indicates that the subject wishes or desires to do the action of the verbal root. The sign of the desiderative is **sa**, which sometimes appears as **iṣa**. It is placed after the root.
3. The root takes reduplication (**abhyāsa**). In the reduplicated syllable, which comes first, some vowels (**a, ā, r, ḫ, i, and ī**) appear as **i**. For example:

सीता वनं जिगमिषति ।

**sītā vanam jigamisati**

Sītā wishes to go to the forest.

4. All desiderative stems end in **a**, and are treated like stems in the **gaṇas** which end in **a** (1, 4, 6, and 10).
5. Here are the desiderative stems for some of the verbs we have studied:

<u>ROOT</u>	<u>PRESENT</u>	<u>DESIDERATIVE</u>	<u>ENGLISH</u>
√ad (2P)	atti	jighatsati	he wants to eat
√āp (5P)	āpnoti	īpsati	he wants to obtain
√ās (2Ā)	āste	āsjsiṣati	he wants to sit
√i (2P)	eti	iyiṣati	he wants to go
√is (6P)	icchatī	esisisati	he wants to choose

$\sqrt{kṛ}$ (8U)	karoti, kurute	cikırşati	he wants to do
$\sqrt{gam}$ (1P)	gacchatī	jigamişati	he wants to go
$\sqrt{gup}$ (1P)	gopāyati	jugupsati	he wants to protect
$\sqrt{gai}$ (1P)	gāyati	jigāsati	he wants to sing
$\sqrt{jan}$ (4Ā)	jāyate	jijanişate	he wants to be born
$\sqrt{ji}$ (1P)	jayati	jjigışati	he wants to conquer
$\sqrt{jīv}$ (1P)	jīvati	jijīvişati	he wants to live
$\sqrt{jñā}$ (9U)	jānāti, jānīte	jijñāsatı	he wants to know
$\sqrt{tan}$ (8U)	tanoti, tanute	titāmsati	he wants to stretch
$\sqrt{tud}$ (6U)	tudati -te	tututsati	he wants to push
$\sqrt{tuṣ}$ (4P)	tuṣyati	tutukşati	he wants to satisfy
$\sqrt{tṛ}$ (1P)	tarati	titirşati	he wants to cross
$\sqrt{tyaj}$ (1P)	tyajati	tityakşati	he wants to abandon
$\sqrt{dā}$ (3U)	dadāti, datte	ditsati	he wants to give
$\sqrt{drś}(\sqrt{paś})(1P)$ paṣyati		didırkşati	he wants to see
$\sqrt{dhā}$ (3U)	dadhāti, dhatte	dhitsati	he wants to place

$\sqrt{dhṛ}$ (1U)	dharati -te	didhīṛṣati	he wants to hold
$\sqrt{nī}$ (1U)	nayati -te	niniṣati	he wants to lead
$\sqrt{paṭh}$ (1P)	paṭhati	pi paṭhiṣati	he wants to read
$\sqrt{pad}$ (4Ā)	padyate	pitsati	he wants to go
$\sqrt{pā}$ (1P)	pibati	pi pāsatı	he wants to drink
$\sqrt{prach}$ (6P)	pr̥cchatı	pi pr̥chiṣati	he wants to ask
$\sqrt{budh}$ (1U)	bodhati -te	bubhutsati	he wants to know
$\sqrt{bhāṣ}$ (1Ā)	bhāṣate	bibhāṣiṣati	he wants to speak
$\sqrt{bhū}$ (1P)	bhavati	bubhūṣati	he wants to be
$\sqrt{man}$ (4Ā)	manyate	mīmāṁṣate	he wants to think
$\sqrt{muc}$ (6U)	muñcati -te	mumukṣati	he wants to release
$\sqrt{yuj}$ (7U)	yunaktı, yuñkte	yuyuksati	he wants to unite
$\sqrt{ram}$ (1Ā)	ramate	riramṣati	he wants to enjoy
$\sqrt{labh}$ (1Ā)	labhate	lipstate	he wants to obtain
$\sqrt{vac}$ (2P)	vaktı	vivakṣati	he wants to speak
$\sqrt{vad}$ (1P)	vadati	vivadiṣati	he wants to speak
$\sqrt{vas}$ (1P)	vasati	vivatsati	he wants to live

$\sqrt{viś}$ (6P)	viśati	vivikṣati	he wants to enter
$\sqrt{vraj}$ (1P)	vrajati	vivrajiṣati	he causes to walk
$\sqrt{śak}$ (1P)	śaknoti	śikṣati	he wants to be able
$\sqrt{śubh}$ (1Ā)	śobhate	śuśobhiṣate	he causes to shine
$\sqrt{śru}$ (5P)	śṛṇoti	śuśrūṣati	he wants to hear
$\sqrt{sṛj}$ (6P)	sṛjati	sisṛkṣati	he wants to create
$\sqrt{sev}$ (1Ā)	sevate	siseviṣati	he wants to serve
$\sqrt{sthā}$ (1P)	tiṣṭhati	tiṣṭhāsatī	he wants to stand
$\sqrt{smi}$ (1Ā)	smayate	sismayıṣati	he wants to smile
$\sqrt{smṛ}$ (1P)	smarati	susmūrṣati	he causes to remember
$\sqrt{han}$ (2P)	hanti	jighāṃṣati	he wants to kill
$\sqrt{has}$ (1P)	hasati	jihasiṣati	he wants to laugh
$\sqrt{hā}$ (3P)	jahāti	jihāsatī	he wants to abandon
$\sqrt{hu}$ (3P)	juhoti	juhūṣati	he wants to offer

6. There is an adjective derived from the desiderative, by changing the final **a** of the stem to **u**. For example:

<u>ROOT</u>	<u>DESIDERATIVE STEM</u>	<u>ADJECTIVE</u>	<u>ENGLISH</u>
$\sqrt{yudh}$ (4Ā)	yuyutsa	yuyutsu	eager to fight

7. Observe the first verse of the **Bhagavad-Gītā**:

धर्मक्षेत्रे कुरुक्षेत्रे  
 समवेता युयुत्सवः ।  
 मामकाः पाराङ्गवाश्वैव  
 किमकुर्वत सञ्जय ॥१॥

dharma-kṣetre kuru-kṣetre  
 samavetā yuyutsavah  
 māmakāḥ pāñḍavāś caiva  
 kim akurvata sañjaya 1

Assembled on the field of Dharma,  
 O Sañjaya, on the field of the Kurus,  
eager to fight, what did my people  
 and the Pāñdavas do?

Here is the new vocabulary:

kṣetra	(n. loc. sing.) on the field
samavetāḥ	(mas. nom pl. p.p.p. sam ava √i 2P) assembled
yuyutsavah	(mas. nom. pl. from desiderative of √yudh 4Ā) eager to fight
māmakāḥ	(mas. nom. pl.) mine (my people)
pāñḍavāḥ	(mas. nom. pl.) sons of Pāñdu

6. There is also a feminine noun derived from the desiderative, by changing the final a of the stem to ā. For example:

<u>ROOT</u>	<u>DESIDERATIVE STEM</u>	<u>NOUN</u> (fem.)	<u>ENGLISH</u>
√man (4Ā) think	mīmāṁṣa	mīmāṁsā	analysis
√jñā (9P) know	jījñāsa	jījñāsā	the desire to know
√śak (1P) be able	śikṣa	śikṣā	the desire to be able, education

7. Observe the first sūtra of the Brahma Sūtra:

**अथातो ब्रह्मजिज्ञासा ॥१॥**

**athāto brahma-jijñāsā**

Now, from here, the desire to know Brahman.

**VOCABULARY**

SANSKRIT	ENGLISH	
अङ्गम् (n.)	limb	
अर्थः (mas.)	object, purpose	
अश्वकः (mas.)	colt	
अहिंसा (fem.)	non-injury	
आदित्यः (mas.)	the sun	
आदित्यवत् (adv.)	like the sun	
इन्द्रियम् (n.)	sense	
करणम् (n.)	means of action, instrument	
काव्यम् (n.)	poetry	
कूर्मः (mas.)	tortoise, turtle	
चक्षुस् (n.)	eye	
सर्गः (mas.)	creation	
ज्योतिः (n.)	light, flame	
धनुस् (n.)	bow	
पौत्रः (mas.)	grandchild	
ब्रह्मन् (n.)	the absolute	
मुक्तिः (fem.)	liberation	
सम् ह (1U) संहरते	he withdraws, takes together	
सर्वशः (ind.)	on all sides, completely	
सुखम् (adv.)	happily	
हविस् (n.)	oblation	
ह (1U)	हरति हरते	he takes

**EXERCISES**

1. Learn to recite Chapter 2, Verse 58 from the **Bhagavad-Gītā**, for pronunciation and then with word meaning. Be able to give the grammatical analysis of each word.
2. Practice reciting the verse from the **Bhagavad-Gītā** with meaning:

यदा संहरते चायं  
 कूर्मोऽज्ञानीव सर्वशः ।  
 इन्द्रियाणीन्द्रियार्थेभ्यस्  
 तस्य प्रज्ञा प्रतिष्ठिता ॥५८॥

3. Memorize the declension for nouns ending in **is** and **us**.
4. Learn the formations made with primary and secondary endings.
5. Learn the formation and use of the desiderative.
6. Translate the following sentences:
  - a. सर्वकामक्रोदौ त्यक्त्वा योगी  
 जीवन्मुक्तिरित्युच्यते ।१।
  - b. यथादित्यो ज्योतिः सृजति तथा कविः काव्यं  
 सिसृक्षति ।२।

c. सुन्दराभ्यां चक्षुभ्यां तस्य मातरं पश्यन्नश्वकस्तुष्टः

।३।

d. इहैव तैर्जितः सर्गो येषां साम्ये स्थितं मनः ।४।

e. आत्मानमबुधित्वा ब्रह्म बोद्धुं न शक्नोति ।५।

f. यः सर्वगतं ब्रह्मात्मानां पश्यति स एव पश्यति

।६।

g. योऽग्रये हविर्जुहूषते स ज्योतिषि जलं फलं च  
दधाति ।७।

h. योगो जन्मनो मुक्त्याः करणमुच्यते ।८।

7. Translate the following sentences:

a. इन्द्रियार्थेभ्यः संहृत्य योगी समाधौ स्थितः ।१।

b. ब्रह्मणि सर्वाणि कर्माणि दत्त्वा विषयेषु सङ्गं  
त्यक्त्वा मुनिः सुखं करोति ।२।

c. पौत्रो जलाय नदीमश्कं निनीषति ।३।

d. अल्पो ज्योतिरादित्यवत्कृष्णो गृहे शोभते ।४।

e. यदा कूर्मो जलादागच्छत्तदा स तस्याङ्गानि  
सर्वशः समहरत ।५।

f. सर्वेभ्योऽहिंसया महात्मा मुक्तिं प्राप्नोति ।६।

g. ज्ञानं लब्ध्वा परां शान्तिमधिगच्छति ।७।

h. तस्य पर्णीं सीतां बुभूषनामो महाधनुस्तनोति ।८।

## ANSWERS

6. a. The yogī, having abandoned all desire and anger, is called “jīvan-mukti,” or “liberated while living.”
  - b. As the sun creates light, so the poet desires to create poetry.
  - c. Seeing his mother with his beautiful eyes, the colt is contented.
  - d. Even here, in this life, the universe is conquered by those whose mind is established in equanimity. (*Bhagavad-Gītā* 5.19)
  - e. It is not possible to know Brahman without having known the Self.
  - f. Who sees the Self as the all-pervading Brahman, he alone sees.
  - g. He who wants to offer an oblation to the fire, places water and fruit in the flame.
  - h. Yoga is called the instrument for liberation from rebirth.
7. a. Having withdrawn from the objects of the senses, the yogī is established in samādhi.

- b. Having given all actions to the universal being, having abandoned attachment to objects, the sage happily acts.
- c. The grandchild wants to lead the colt to the river for water.
- d. The small flame shines like the sun in the black house.
- e. When the turtle came from the water, then he withdrew his limbs on all sides.
- f. Through non-violence to all, the great soul gains liberation.
- g. Having gained knowledge, he comes to the supreme peace.
- h. Wishing Sītā to be his wife, Rāma stretches the great bow.

# 31

## LESSON THIRTY-ONE

Recitation: **Bhagavad-Gītā Chapter 2, Verse 59**

Grammar: **Nouns Ending in o, au  
The Intensive  
The Denominative  
The Conditional  
The Aorist  
Future Active and Middle Participles  
The Past Active Participle  
Cardinal Numbers**

Vocabulary: **Words from Chapter 2, Verse 59**

BHAGAVAD-GĪTĀ

विषया विनिवर्तने

निराहारस्य देहिनः ।

रसवर्ज रसोऽप्यस्य

परं दृष्टा निवर्तते ॥५६॥

**visavā vinivartante**

## **nirāhārasya dehinah**

**rasa-varjam raso 'py asya**

param drṣṭvā nivartate 59

The objects of sense turn away  
from him who does not feed upon them,  
but the taste for them persists.  
On seeing the Supreme even this taste ceases.

<b>viśayāḥ</b>	(mas. nom. pl.) the objects, objects of sense
<b>vi-ni-vartante</b>	(3rd per. pl. pres. indic. middle vi ni √ vṛt 1Ā) turn away

**nir-ā-hārasya** (mas. gen. sing. from *nir ā hāra*) of the not feeding, not bringing near

**dehinah** (mas. gen. sing. from **daha**) of the embodied one, of him

<b>rasa-</b>	(mas.) taste, essence
<b>varjam</b>	(adv.) except, excluding
<b>rasa-varjam</b>	(tatpurusa compound) except the taste

<b>rasah</b>	(mas. nom. sing.) taste
<b>api</b>	(ind.) even, also
<b>asya</b>	(mas. gen. sing.) of this
<b>param</b>	(mas. acc. sing.) the Supreme
<b>dṛṣṭvā</b>	(gerund √dṛś 1P) having seen, on seeing
<b>ni-vartate</b>	(3rd per. sing. pres. indic. middle <b>ni</b> √vṛt 1Ā) ceases

**NOUNS ENDING IN  
O, AU**

1. Here is the declension of nouns ending in o:

Stem: go (pum-liṅga) bull; (strī-liṅga) cow

prathamā	गौः	गावौ	गावः
----------	-----	------	------

dvitīyā	गाम्	गावौ	गा:
---------	------	------	-----

trtīyā	गवा	गोभ्याम्	गोभिः
--------	-----	----------	-------

caturthī	गवे	गोभ्याम्	गोभ्यः
----------	-----	----------	--------

pañcamī	गोः	गोभ्याम्	गोभ्यः
---------	-----	----------	--------

ṣaṣṭhī	गोः	गवोः	गवाम्
--------	-----	------	-------

saptamī	गवि	गवोः	गोषु
---------	-----	------	------

sambodhana	गौः	गावौ	गावः
------------	-----	------	------

eka	dvi	bahu
-----	-----	------

2. Here is the declension of nouns ending in au:

Stem: nau (stī-liṅga) ship

prathamā	नौः	नावौ	नावः
dvitiyā	नावम्	नावौ	नावः
trtiyā	नावा	नौभ्याम्	नौभिः
caturthī	नावे	नौभ्याम्	नौभ्यः
pañcamī	नावः	नौभ्याम्	नौभ्यः
ṣaṣṭhī	नावः	नावोः	नावाम्
saptamī	नावि	नावोः	नौषु
sambodhana	नौः	नावौ	नावः
	eka	dvi	bahu

**THE INTENSIVE**

1. We will now briefly review several formations. The intensive (*yañanta*) is considered a secondary verbal derivative, like the causative and desiderative. The intensive indicates intensity or force. It is sometimes called the frequentative, because it may indicate the repetition of the action of the verb.
2. The intensive is rarely used and is formed from less than half the roots—only from monosyllabic roots beginning with a consonant. It is formed in two ways. One way is through a strong kind of reduplication (*abhyāsa*) and **parasmaipada** endings. For this form, *i* may optionally be added before terminations beginning with consonants. The other takes *ya* after the reduplication and uses **ātmanepada** endings.
3. Here are a few examples of each form of the intensive:

<u>ROOT</u>	<u>1st FORM</u>	<u>2nd FORM</u>	<u>ENGLISH</u>
√ <i>ji</i> 1P	jejeti jejayīti	jejīyate	he conquers repeatedly
√ <i>dhā</i> 3P	dādhāti dādhēti	dedhīyate	he strongly places
√ <i>nī</i> 1P	neneti nenayīti	nenīyate	he strongly leads
√ <i>bhū</i> 1P	bobhoti bobhavīti	bobhūyate	he definitely is

**THE DENOMINATIVE**

1. The denominative (*nāmadhātu*) is a verb formed from a nominal (*nāman*). There are many examples of verbs formed from nouns or adjectives in English. For example, “He hands it to me” or “The sky blackens.”
2. The denominative means “act like,” “make into,” “regard,” or “desire” the underlying noun.

3. The denominative stem is formed by adding ya to the noun. The final vowel of the noun may be adjusted or lengthened. The stem is then conjugated like an **a gana** stem with either **parasmaipada** or **ātmanepada** endings. (Some of these verbs have been encountered already.) For example:

<u>NOUN</u>	<u>DENOMINATIVE</u>	<u>ENGLISH</u>
kathā (story)	kathayati	he tells the story
kavi (poet)	kavīyati	he wishes for a poet
gopa (cow protector)	gopāyati	he protects
tapas (austerity)	tapasyati	he performs austerities
namas (homage)	namasyati	he pays homage to
rājan (king)	rājāyati	he acts as a king

### THE CONDITIONAL

1. The conditional (lṛñ) is a rarely used verb mood which indicates “would have.” It is used for situations contrary to fact. It is a past tense. It might be thought of as a past form of the future, and is formed exactly that way. The simple future changes to the conditional in the same way the present changes to the imperfect. An a is prefixed and the imperfect endings are added to the simple future. For example:

<u>ROOT</u>	<u>FUTURE</u>	<u>CONDITIONAL</u>	<u>ENGLISH</u>
√gam 1P	gamiṣyati	agamiṣyat	he would have gone
√bhū 1P	bhaviṣyati	abhaviṣyat	it would have been

### THE AORIST

1. The aorist (luñ) indicates past tense. It is considered to be action “of today” (**adyatana**). Other past tenses are the imperfect, which is “not of today” (**anadyatana**) and the perfect, which is “remote” (**parokṣa**). The aorist is very rarely used in classical Sanskrit.
2. There are several types of aorist formations. Here are some examples:

<u>ROOT</u>	<u>AORIST</u>
√gam 1P	agamat, ajīgamat, agāmi
√bhū 1P	abhuvat, abībhuvat, abhūt

**FUTURE ACTIVE AND  
MIDDLE PARTICIPLES**

1. The future active and middle participles are formed from the simple future stem in the same way as the present participles. For example:

<u>ROOT</u>	<u>FUTURE</u>	<u>PARTICIPLE STEM</u>	<u>ENGLISH</u>
√gam 1P	gamiṣyati	gamiṣyant	will be going
√sev 1Ā	seviṣyate	seviṣyamāṇa	will be serving
√sthā 1P	sthāsyati	sthāsyant	will be standing

**THE PAST ACTIVE  
PARTICIPLE**

1. The past active participle is formed by adding the ending *vant* to the past passive participle. It is used as a past tense in the active construction (*kartari prayoga*). It agrees with the subject. For example:

रामो वनं गतवान् ।

rāmo vanam gatavān

Rāma went to the forest.

सीता वनं गतवती ।

sītā vanam gatavatī

Sītā went to the forest.

**CARDINAL NUMBERS** 1. The cardinal numbers were introduced in Lesson 12. Here are some additional numbers:

śūnya	०	0
ekādaśa	११	11
dvādaśa	१२	12
trayodaśa	१३	13
caturdaśa	१४	14
pañcadaśa	१५	15
ṣoḍaśa	१६	16
saptadaśa	१७	17
aṣṭādaśa	१८	18
navadaśa	१९	19
vimśati	२०	20
ekavimśati	२१	21
dvāvimśati	२२	22
trayovimśati	२३	23
caturvimśati	२४	24
pañcavimśati	२५	25
ṣaḍvimśati	२६	26
saptavimśati	२७	27
aṣṭāvimśati	२८	28
navavimśati	२९	29

<i>trimśat</i>	३०	30
<i>catvārimśat</i>	४०	40
<i>pacaśat</i>	५०	50
<i>ṣaṣṭi</i>	६०	60
<i>saptati</i>	७०	70
<i>aśiti</i>	८०	80
<i>navati</i>	९०	90
<i>śatam</i>	१००	100
<i>dviśatam</i>	२००	200
<i>sahasram</i>	१०००	1,000
<i>lakṣa</i>	१०००००	100,000

2. Here is the declension for some of the numbers. The numbers from one to nineteen are treated like adjectives. The declension for *eka*, “one,” was discussed in Lesson 25. The declension for *dvi* follows *dva* (short a), and is declined in the dual only. In compounds, *dvi* is used.

3. From three onward, the plural is used. Here is the declension for “three” in all three genders:

Stem: **tri** (mas., n., fem.) three

<b>prathamā</b>	<b>trayah</b>	<b>trīṇi</b>	<b>tisrah</b>
<b>dvitiyā</b>	<b>trīn</b>	<b>trīṇi</b>	<b>tisrah</b>
<b>trtiyā</b>	<b>tribhiḥ</b>	<b>tribhiḥ</b>	<b>tisrbhiḥ</b>
<b>caturthī</b>	<b>tribhyah</b>	<b>tribhyah</b>	<b>tisrbhyah</b>
<b>pañcamī</b>	<b>tribhyah</b>	<b>tribhyah</b>	<b>tisrbhyah</b>
<b>ṣaṣṭhī</b>	<b>trayāṇām</b>	<b>trayāṇām</b>	<b>tisṛṇām</b>
<b>saptamī</b>	<b>triṣu</b>	<b>triṣu</b>	<b>tisṛṣu</b>
<b>sambodhana</b>	<b>trayah</b>	<b>trīṇi</b>	<b>tisrah</b>
	[_____]	[_____]	[_____]
	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine

4. Here is the declension for “four” in all three genders:

Stem: **catur** (mas., n., fem.) four

<b>prathamā</b>	<b>catvārah</b>	<b>catvāri</b>	<b>catasrah</b>
<b>dvitiyā</b>	<b>caturah</b>	<b>catvāri</b>	<b>catasrah</b>
<b>trtiyā</b>	<b>caturbhiḥ</b>	<b>caturbhiḥ</b>	<b>catasrbhiḥ</b>
<b>caturthī</b>	<b>caturbhyah</b>	<b>caturbhyah</b>	<b>catasrbhyah</b>
<b>pañcamī</b>	<b>caturbhyah</b>	<b>caturbhyah</b>	<b>catasrbhyah</b>
<b>ṣaṣṭhī</b>	<b>caturṇām</b>	<b>caturṇām</b>	<b>catasṛṇām</b>
<b>saptamī</b>	<b>caturṣu</b>	<b>caturṣu</b>	<b>catasṛṣu</b>
<b>sambodhana</b>	<b>catvārah</b>	<b>catvāri</b>	<b>catasrah</b>
	[_____]	[_____]	[_____]
	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine

ree”

5. The declension for “five” onward is the same for all three genders:

Stem: pañca (all genders) five

prathamā	pañca
dvitiyā	pañca
trtiyā	pañcabhiḥ
caturthī	pañcabhyah
pañcamī	pañcabhyah
ṣaṣṭhī	pañcāṇām
saptamī	pañcasu
sambodhana	pañca

6. Here is the declension for six:

Stem: ṣaṣ (all genders) six

prathamā	ṣat
dvitiyā	ṣat
trtiyā	ṣadbhiḥ
caturthī	ṣadbhyah
pañcamī	ṣadbhyah
ṣaṣṭhī	ṣanṇām
saptamī	ṣatsu
sambodhana	ṣat

7. The declension for eight has a few alternate forms:

Stem: **aṣṭa** (all genders) eight

<b>prathamā</b>	<b>aṣṭa / aṣṭau</b>
<b>dvitiyā</b>	<b>aṣṭā / aṣṭau</b>
<b>trtiyā</b>	<b>aṣṭabhiḥ / aṣṭābhiḥ</b>
<b>caturthī</b>	<b>aṣṭabhyāḥ / aṣṭābhyāḥ</b>
<b>pañcamī</b>	<b>aṣṭabhyāḥ / aṣṭābhyāḥ</b>
<b>saṣṭhī</b>	<b>aṣṭānām</b>
<b>saptamī</b>	<b>aṣṭasu / aṣṭāsu</b>
<b>saṃbodhana</b>	<b>aṣṭa / aṣṭau</b>

8. The declension for 7 and 9 – 19 follows the declension of **pañca**. They decline like adjectives. Numbers from 20 and higher decline like nouns, and are put in the same case as the noun they describe or are put in the genitive.

VOCABULARY	SANSKRIT	ENGLISH
गो	(mas.)	bull
गो	(fem.)	cow
जीवः	(mas.)	living individual
दानम्	(n.)	giving
देहिन्	(mas.)	embodied one, a person
नि वृत् <sub>(1Ā)</sub>	निवर्तते	he ceases
नित्यम्	(adv.)	always
नौ	(fem.)	ship
प्रिय	(adj.)	dear
प्रियतम्	(adj.)	dearest
प्रियतर	(adj.)	dearer
रसः	(mas.)	taste, essence, nectar
वचनम्	(n.)	speech
वर्जम्	(adv.)	except
वि नि वृत् <sub>(1Ā)</sub>	विनिवर्तते	he turns away
वृत् <sub>1Ā</sub>	वर्तते	he is
वैदिकः	(mas.)	scholar of the Veda
हिरण्यमय	(adj.)	made of gold, golden

**EXERCISES**

1. Learn to recite Chapter 2, Verse 59 from the **Bhagavad-Gītā**, for pronunciation and then with word meaning. Be able to give the grammatical analysis of each word.
  
2. Practice reciting the verse from the **Bhagavad-Gītā** with meaning:

विषया विनिवर्तन्ते  
 निराहारस्य देहिनः ।  
 रसवर्जं रसोऽप्यस्य  
 परं दृष्टा निवर्तते ॥५६॥

3. Memorize the declension for nouns ending in **o** and **au**.
  
4. Learn the following verb formations: the intensive, denominative, and conditional.
  
5. Learn the future active and middle participles, the past active participle, the formation and use of the cardinal numbers, and the vocabulary from this lesson.
  
6. Decline the following verses from the **Bhagavad-Gītā**. Be able to read them in Sanskrit with the meaning. Some of the vocabulary is given.

यततो ह्यपि कौन्तेय  
 पुरुषस्य विपश्चितः ।  
 इन्द्रियाणि प्रमाथीनि  
 हरन्ति प्रसभं मनः ॥६०॥

**yatato hy api kaunteya  
 puruṣasya vipaścitaḥ  
 indriyāṇī pramāthīni  
 haranti prasabham manah 60**

The turbulent senses, O son of Kunti,  
 forcibly carry away the mind  
 even of a discerning man  
 who endeavors (to control them).

<b>yatataḥ</b>	(mas. gen sing. pres. act. pl. √yat 1Ā) of the endeavoring person
<b>vipaś-citaḥ</b>	(mas. gen. sing.) of the discerning
<b>pramāthīni</b>	(n. nom. pl. ) turbulent,
<b>prasabham</b>	(adv.) forcibly

तानि सर्वाणि संयम्य  
 युक्त आसीत मत्परः ।  
 वशे हि यस्येन्द्रियाणि  
 तस्य प्रज्ञा प्रतिष्ठिता ॥६१॥

tāni sarvāṇi samyamya  
 yukta āśita mat-parah  
 vaśe hi yasyendriyāṇi  
 tasya prajñā pratiṣṭhitā 61

Having brought them all under control,  
 let him sit united, looking to Me as Supreme;  
 for his intellect is established  
 whose senses are subdued.

samyamya	(gerund sam √yam 1P) having brought under control
mat-parah	(mas. nom. sing.) Me as Supreme
vaśe	(mas. loc. sing.) in control, subdued

ध्यायतो विषयान्युसः  
 सञ्जस्तेषूपजायते ।  
 सञ्जात्संजायते कामः  
 कामात्क्रोधोऽभिजायते ॥६२॥

dhyāyato viṣayān pūmsaḥ  
 saṅgas teṣūpajāyate  
 saṅgāt saṃjāyate kāmaḥ  
 kāmāt krodho 'bhijāyate 62

Pondering on objects of the senses, a man develops attachment for them; from attachment springs up desire, and desire gives rise to anger.

dhyāyataḥ	(mas. gen. sing. pres. act. pl. √dhai 1P)
	pondering
pūmsaḥ	(mas. gen. sing.) of a man

क्रोधाद्वति संमोहः  
 संमोहात्सृतिविभ्रमः ।  
 सृतिभ्रंशाद्बुद्धिनाशो  
 बुद्धिनाशात्प्रणश्यति ॥६३॥

krodhād bhavati sammohah  
 sammohāt smṛti-vibhramah  
 smṛti-bhramśād buddhi-nāśo  
 buddhi-nāśāt praṇasyati 63

From anger arises delusion;  
 from delusion unsteadiness of memory;  
 from unsteadiness of memory destruction of intellect;  
 through the destruction of the intellect he perishes.

sammohah	(mas. nom. sing.) delusion
vibhramah	(mas. nom. sing.) unsteadiness
nāśah	(mas. nom. sing.) destruction
praṇasyati	(3rd per. sing. pres. indicat. act. <b>pra</b> √ <b>naś</b> 4P) he perishes

रागद्वेषवियुक्तैस्तु  
 विषयानिन्द्रियैश्चरन् ।  
 आत्मवश्यैर्विधेयात्मा  
 प्रसादमधिगच्छति ॥६४॥

rāga-dveṣa-viyuktaiḥ tu  
 viṣayān indriyaīś caran  
 ātma-vaśyair vidheyātmā  
 prasādam adhigacchati 64

But he who is self-disciplined,  
 who moves among the object of the senses  
 with the senses freed from attachment and aversion  
 and under his own control, he attains to ‘grace.’

dveṣa	(mas.) aversion
viyuktaiḥ	(mas. inst. pl. p.p.p. vi √yuj 7U) freed
caran	(mas. nom sing. pres. act. participle √car 1P) moves
vaśyaiḥ	(mas. inst. pl.) control
vidheya	(gerundive vi √dhā 3U) disciplined
prasādam	(mas. acc. sing.) grace

प्रसादे सर्वदुःखानं  
हानिरस्योपजायते ।  
प्रसन्नचेतसो ह्याशु  
बुद्धिः पर्यवतिष्ठते ॥६५॥

prasāde sarva-duḥkhānām  
hānir asyopajāyate  
prasanna-cetaso hy āśu  
buddhiḥ paryavatiṣṭhate 65

In ‘grace’ is born an end to all his sorrows.  
Indeed the intellect of the man  
of exalted consciousness  
soon becomes firmly established.

hāniḥ	(fem. nom. sing.) end
prasanna	(mas. p.p.p. √sad 1P) exalted
cetasah	(mas. gen. sing.) of consciousness
prasanna-cetasah	(bahuvrīhi compound) man of exalted consciousness
āśu	(adv.) quickly, soon

नास्ति बुद्धिरयुक्तस्य  
 न चायुक्तस्य भावना ।  
 न चाभावयतः शान्तिर्  
 अशान्तस्य कुतः सुखम् ॥६६॥

nāsti buddhir ayuktasya  
 na cāyuktasya bhāvanā  
 na cābhāvayataḥ śāntir  
 aśāntasya kutah sukham 66

He who is not established has no intellect,  
 nor has he any steady thought.  
 The man without steady thought has no peace;  
 for one without peace how can there be happiness?

**bhāvanā** (fem. nom. sing.) steady thought

इन्द्रियाणां हि चरतां  
 यन्मनोऽनुविधीयते ।  
 तदस्य हरति प्रज्ञां  
 वायुर्नावमिवाभसि ॥६७॥

indriyāṇāṁ hi caratām  
 yan mano 'nuvidhīyate  
 tad asya harati prajñām  
 vāyur nāvam ivāmbhasi 67

When a man's mind is governed  
 by any of the wandering senses,  
 his intellect is carried away by it  
 as a ship by the wind on water.

<b>anuvidhīyate</b>	(3rd per. sing. pres. indic. pass. <b>anu vi</b> √ <b>dhā</b> 3U) is governed
<b>vāyuḥ</b>	(mas. nom. sing.) wind
<b>nāvam</b>	(fem. acc. sing.) ship
<b>ambhasi</b>	(n. loc. sing.) on water

तस्माद्यस्य महाबाहो  
 निगृहीतानि सर्वशः ।  
 इन्द्रियाणीन्द्रियार्थेभ्यस्  
 तस्य प्रज्ञा प्रतिष्ठिता ॥६८॥

tasmād yasya mahābāho  
nigṛhitāni sarvaśāḥ  
indriyāṇīndriyārthebhyaḥ  
tasya prajñā pratisthitā 68

Therefore he whose senses  
are all withdrawn from their objects.  
O mighty-armed,  
his intellect is established.

**nigr̥hitāni** (n. nom. pl. p.p.p. ni  $\sqrt{\text{grah}}$  9U)  
withdrawn

या निशा सर्वभूतानां  
 तस्यां जागर्ति संयमी ।  
 यस्यां जाग्रति भूतानि  
 सा निशा पश्यतो मुनेः ॥६६॥

yā niśā sarva-bhūtānāṁ  
 tasyāṁ jāgarti samyamī  
 yasyāṁ jāgrati bhūtāni  
 sā niśā paśyato muneh 69

That which is night for all beings,  
 therein the self-controlled is awake.  
 that wherein beings are awake  
 is night for the sage who sees.

niśā	(fem. nom. sing.) night
bhūtānām	(n. gen. pl.) of beings
jāgarti	(3rd per. sing. pres. indict. act. √jāgr 2P) is awake
samyamī	(mas. nom. sing.) self-controlled
jāgrati	(3rd per. pl. pres. indict. act. √jāgr 2P) are awake

आपूर्यमाणमचलप्रतिष्ठं  
 समुद्रमापः प्रविशन्ति यद्वत् ।  
 तद्वत्कामा यं प्रविशन्ति सर्वे  
 स शान्तिमाप्नोति न कामकामी ॥७०॥

āpūryamāṇam acala-pratiṣṭham  
 samudram āpaḥ praviśanti yadvat  
 tadvat kāmā yaṁ praviśanti sarve  
 sa śāntim āpnoti na kāma-kāmī 70

He whom all desires enter  
 as waters enter  
 the ever-full and unmoved sea  
 attains peace, and not he who cherishes desires.

āpūryamāṇam	(mas. acc. sing. pres. mid. participle $\sqrt{pṛ}$ 3P) ever-full
acala	(mas.) unmoved
pratiṣṭham	(n. acc. sing.) stationary
acala-pratiṣṭham	(karmadhāraya compound) unmoved
samudram	(n. acc. sing.) sea
āpaḥ	(fem. nom. pl.) waters
yadvat	(adv.) as
kāma-kāmī	(tatpuruṣa compound mas. nom. sing.) desirer of desires, he who cherishes desires

विहाय कामान्यः सर्वान्  
पुमांश्वरति निःस्पृहः ।  
निर्ममो निरहङ्कारः  
स शान्तिमधिगच्छति ॥७१॥

vihāya kāmān yah̄ sarvān  
pumāṁś carati niḥspṛhah̄  
nirmamo nirahañkārah̄  
sa śāntim adhigacchati 71

When a man acts without longing,  
having relinquished all desires,  
free from the sense of 'I' and 'mine,'  
he attains to peace.

<b>vihāya</b>	(gerund vi $\sqrt{hā}$ 3P) having relinquished
<b>pumān</b>	(mas. nom. sing. from <b>pumāṁś</b> ) man
<b>niḥspṛhah̄</b>	(mas. nom sing.) without longing
<b>nirmamah̄</b>	(mas. nom. sing.) free from the sense of 'mine'
<b>nirahañkārah̄</b>	(mas. nom. sing.) free from the sense of 'I'

एषा ब्राह्मी स्थितिः पार्थ  
 नैनां प्राप्य विमुह्यति ।  
 स्थित्वास्यामन्तकालेऽपि  
 ब्रह्मनिर्वाणमृच्छति ॥७२॥

esā brāhmaṇī sthitih pārtha  
 nainām prāpya vimuhyati  
 sthitvāsyām anta-kāle 'pi  
 brahma-nirvāṇam ṛcchati 72

This is the state of Brahman, O Partha.  
 Having attained it, a man is not deluded.  
 Established in that, even at the last moment,  
 he attains eternal freedom in divine consciousness.

anta-kāle	(mas. loc. sing.) at the end of time, at the last moment
ṛcchati	(3rd per. sing. pres. indic. act. √ṛ 1P) he attains

**a****TABLES****MASCULINE**Stem: **nara** (masculine) man (given on p. 74, Part I)

Nom.	नरः	नरौ	नराः
Acc.	नरम्	नरौ	नरान्
Inst.	नरेण *	नराभ्याम्	नरैः
Dat.	नराय	नराभ्याम्	नरेभ्यः
Abl.	नरात्	नराभ्याम्	नरेभ्यः
Gen.	नरस्य	नरयोः	नराणाम् *
Loc.	नरे	नरयोः	नरेषु
Voc.	नर	नरौ	नराः
	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
	Singular	Dual	Plural

\*The instrumental singular for **gaja** is **gajena**, and the genitive plural for **gaja** is **gajānām**. The **r** in **nareṇa** and **narāṇām** causes the **n** to become **ṇ**. (See page 142, 143 Part I)

**a**Stem: **phala** (neuter) fruit (given on p. 92, Part I)**NEUTER**

Nom.	फलम्	फले	फलानि
Acc.	फलम्	फले	फलानि
Inst.	फलेन	फलाभ्याम्	फलैः
Dat.	फलाय	फलाभ्याम्	फलेभ्यः
Abl.	फलात्	फलाभ्याम्	फलेभ्यः
Gen.	फलस्य	फलयोः	फलानाम्
Loc.	फले	फलयोः	फलेषु
Voc.	फल	फले	फलानि
	Singular	Dual	Plural

**ा****FEMININE**Stem: **senā** (feminine) army (given on p. 145, Part I)

Nom.	सेना	सेने	सेनाः
Acc.	सेनाम्	सेने	सेनाः
Inst.	सेनया	सेनाभ्याम्	सेनाभिः
Dat.	सेनायै	सेनाभ्याम्	सेनाभ्यः
Abl.	सेनायाः	सेनाभ्याम्	सेनाभ्यः
Gen.	सेनायाः	सेनयोः	सेनानाम्
Loc.	सेनायाम्	सेनयोः	सेनासु
Voc.	सेने	सेने	सेनाः
	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
	Singular	Dual	Plural

**i**Stem: **agni** (masculine) fire; **kīrti** (feminine) glory (p. 160, Part I)**MASCULINE****FEMININE**

Nom.	<b>अग्निः</b>	<b>अग्नी</b>	<b>अग्रयः</b>
Acc.	<b>अग्निम्</b>	<b>अग्नी</b>	<b>अग्नीन् कीर्तीः</b>
Inst.	<b>अग्निना कीर्त्या</b>	<b>अग्निभ्याम्</b>	<b>अग्निभिः</b>
Dat.	<b>अग्ने कीर्त्यै</b>	<b>अग्निभ्याम्</b>	<b>अग्निभ्यः</b>
Abl.	<b>अग्नेः कीर्त्याः</b>	<b>अग्निभ्याम्</b>	<b>अग्निभ्यः</b>
Gen.	<b>अग्नेः कीर्त्याः</b>	<b>अग्नोः</b>	<b>अग्नीनाम्</b>
Loc.	<b>अग्नौ कीर्त्यम्</b>	<b>अग्नोः</b>	<b>अग्निषु</b>
Voc.	<b>अग्ने</b>	<b>अग्नी</b>	<b>अग्रयः</b>
	—————	—————	—————
	Singular	Dual	Plural

The singular dative, ablative, genitive, and locative have an optional feminine form. For example, the feminine dative singular is **kīrtaye** or **kīrtyai**. The feminine instrumental singular is **kīrtyā**.

**i**Stem: **nadi** (feminine) river (given on p. 171, Part I)**FEMININE**

Nom.	नदी	नद्यौ	नद्यः
Acc.	नदीम्	नद्यौ	नदीः
Inst.	नद्या	नदीभ्याम्	नदीभिः
Dat.	नद्ये	नदीभ्याम्	नदीभ्यः
Abl.	नद्याः	नदीभ्याम्	नदीभ्यः
Gen.	नद्याः	नद्योः	नदीनाम्
Loc.	नद्याम्	नद्योः	नदीषु
Voc.	नदि	नद्यौ	नद्यः
	[underline] Singular	[underline] Dual	[underline] Plural

**an**Stem: **rājan** (mas.) king; **ātman** (mas.) Self (given on p. 208, Part I)**MASCULINE**

Nom. राजा

राजानौ

राजानः

Acc. राजानम्

राजानौ

राज्ञः आत्मनः

Inst. राजा आत्मना

राजभ्याम्

राजभिः

Dat. राजे आत्मने

राजभ्याम्

राजभ्यः

Abl. राज्ञः आत्मनः

राजभ्याम्

राजभ्यः

Gen. राज्ञः

राज्ञोः

राज्ञाम्

आत्मनः

आत्मनोः

आत्मनाम्

Loc. राजि आत्मनि

राज्ञोः आत्मनोः

राजसु

Voc. राजन्

राजानौ

राजानः

[ ]

Singular

[ ]

Dual

[ ]

Plural

**an**Stem: **nāman** (neuter) name (given on p. 209, Part I)**NEUTER**

Nom.	<b>नाम</b>	<b>नाम्नी नामनी</b>	<b>नामानि</b>
------	------------	---------------------	---------------

Acc.	<b>नाम</b>	<b>नाम्नी नामनी</b>	<b>नामानि</b>
------	------------	---------------------	---------------

Inst.	<b>नाम्ना</b>	<b>नामभ्याम्</b>	<b>नामधिः</b>
-------	---------------	------------------	---------------

Dat.	<b>नाम्ने</b>	<b>नामभ्याम्</b>	<b>नामभ्यः</b>
------	---------------	------------------	----------------

Abl.	<b>नाम्नः</b>	<b>नामभ्याम्</b>	<b>नामभ्यः</b>
------	---------------	------------------	----------------

Gen.	<b>नाम्नः</b>	<b>नाम्नोः</b>	<b>नाम्नाम्</b>
------	---------------	----------------	-----------------

Loc.	<b>नाम्नि नामनि</b>	<b>नाम्नोः</b>	<b>नामसु</b>
------	---------------------	----------------	--------------

Voc.	<b>नामन् नाम</b>	<b>नाम्नी नामनी</b>	<b>नामानि</b>
------	------------------	---------------------	---------------

Singular	Dual	Plural
----------	------	--------

**r̥**

Stem: dātr̥ (mas.) giver; svasr̥ (fem.) sister (p. 220, Part I)

**MASCULINE****FEMININE**

Nom. दाता दातारौ दातारः

Acc. दातारम् दातारौ दातृन् स्वसृः

Inst. दात्रा दातृभ्याम् दातृभिः

Dat. दात्रे दातृभ्याम् दातृभ्यः

Abl. दातुः दातृभ्याम् दातृभ्यः

Gen. दातुः दात्रोः दातृणाम्

Loc. दातरि दात्रोः दातृषु

Voc. दात्र् दातारौ दातारः

Stem: pitr̥ (mas.) father; mātr̥ (fem.) mother; bhrātr̥ (mas.) brother

(These nouns follow  
dātr̥ in all other cases.)

Nom. pitā pitarau pitarah

Acc. pitaram pitarau pitṛn / bhrātr̥n / mātr̥

**U**Stem: **hetu** (mas.) cause; **dhenu** (fem.) cow (given on p. 232, Part I)**MASCULINE****FEMININE**

Nom.	हेतुः	हेतू	हेतवः
Acc.	हेतुम्	हेतू	हेतुन् धेनूः
Inst.	हेतुना धेन्वा	हेतुभ्याम्	हेतुभिः
Dat.	हेतवे धेन्वै	हेतुभ्याम्	हेतुभ्यः
Abl.	हेतोः धेन्वाः	हेतुभ्याम्	हेतुभ्यः
Gen.	हेतोः धेन्वाः	हेत्वोः	हेतुनाम्
Loc.	हेतौ धेन्वाम्	हेत्वोः	हेतुषु
Voc.	हेतो	हेतू	हेतवः
	—————	—————	—————
	Singular	Dual	Plural

The singular dative, ablative, genitive, and locative have an optional feminine form. For example, the feminine dative singular is **dhenave** or **dhenvai**.

**mad**Stem: **mad** (singular) I; **asmad** (plural) we (p. 128, Part I)**asmad**

Nom.	अहम्	आवाम्	वयम्
I, we			
Acc.	माम् मा	आवाम् नौ	अस्मान् नः
	me, us		
Inst.	मया	आवाभ्याम्	अस्माभिः
	with me, us		
Dat.	मह्यम् मे	आवाभ्याम् नौ	अस्मभ्यम् नः
	for me, us		
Abl.	मत्	आवाभ्याम्	अस्मत्
	from me, us		
Gen.	मम मे	आवयोः नौ	अस्माकम् नः
	my, our		
Loc.	मयि	आवयोः	अस्मायु
on me, us	<u>          </u>	<u>          </u>	<u>          </u>
	Singular	Dual	Plural

**tvad**Stem: **tvad** (singular) you; **yuṣmad** (plural) you (p. 129, Part I)**yuṣmad**

Nom.	<b>त्वम्</b>	<b>युवाम्</b>	<b>यूयम्</b>
	you (subject)		
Acc.	<b>त्वाम् त्वा</b>	<b>युवाम् वाम्</b>	<b>युष्मान् वः</b>
	you (object)		
Inst.	<b>त्वया</b>	<b>युवाभ्याम्</b>	<b>युष्माभिः</b>
	with you		
Dat.	<b>तुभ्यम् ते</b>	<b>युवाभ्याम् वाम्</b>	<b>युष्मभ्यम् वः</b>
	for you		
Abl.	<b>त्वत्</b>	<b>युवाभ्याम्</b>	<b>युष्मत्</b>
	from you		
Gen.	<b>तव ते</b>	<b>युवयोः वाम्</b>	<b>युष्माकम् वः</b>
	of you, your		
Loc.	<b>त्वयि</b>	<b>युवयोः</b>	<b>युष्मासु</b>
on you	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
	Singular	Dual	Plural

**tad**

Stem: tad (masculine) he

**MASCULINE**

Nom.	सः	तौ	ते
he, they			
Acc.	तम्	तौ	तान्
him, them			
Inst.	तेन	ताभ्याम्	तैः
with him, them			
Dat.	तस्मै	ताभ्याम्	तेभ्यः
for him, them			
Abl.	तस्मात्	ताभ्याम्	तेभ्यः
from him, them			
Gen.	तस्य	तयोः	तेषाम्
his, their			
Loc.	तस्मिन्	तयोः	तेषु
on him, them	Singular	Dual	Plural

Remember that **sah**, the nominative singular, usually appears as **sa**.  
 (See #5, p. 147.)

**tad**

Stem: tad (neuter) it

**NEUTER**

Nom.	तत्	ते	तानि
	it (subject)		
Acc.	तत्	ते	तानि
	it (object)		
Inst.	तेन	ताभ्याम्	तैः
	with it		
Dat.	तस्मै	ताभ्याम्	तेभ्यः
	for it		
Abl.	तस्मात्	ताभ्याम्	तेभ्यः
	from it		
Gen.	तस्य	तयोः	तेषाम्
	of it, its		
Loc.	तस्मिन्	तयोः	तेषु
on it	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
	Singular	Dual	Plural

**tad**

Stem: tad (feminine) she

**FEMININE**

Nom.	सा	ते	ताः
	she, they		
Acc.	ताम्	ते	ताः
	her, them		
Inst.	तया	ताभ्याम्	ताभिः
	with her, them		
Dat.	तस्यै	ताभ्याम्	ताभ्यः
	for her, them		
Abl.	तस्याः	ताभ्याम्	ताभ्यः
	from her, them		
Gen.	तस्याः	तयोः	तासाम्
	her, their		
Loc.	तस्याम्	तयोः	तासु
on her, them	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
	Singular	Dual	Plural

**MAT, VAT****MASCULINE**Stem: **bhagavat** (masculine) possessing fortune, fortunate

<b>prathamā</b>	भगवान्	भगवन्तौ	भगवन्तः
<b>dvitiyā</b>	भगवन्तम्	भगवन्तौ	भगवतः
<b>trtiyā</b>	भगवता	भगवद्ध्याम्	भगवद्धिः
<b>caturthī</b>	भगवते	भगवद्ध्याम्	भगवद्धयः
<b>pañcamī</b>	भगवतः	भगवद्ध्याम्	भगवद्धयः
<b>śasṭhī</b>	भगवतः	भगवतोः	भगवताम्
<b>saptamī</b>	भगवति	भगवतोः	भगवत्सु
<b>sambodhana</b>	भगवन्	भगवन्तौ	भगवन्तः
	—	—	—
	eka	dvi	bahu

## MAT, VAT

## NEUTER

Stem: **bhagavat** (neuter) possessing fortune, fortunate

<i>prathamā</i>	भगवत्	भगवती	भगवन्ति
<i>dvitiyā</i>	भगवत्	भगवती	भगवन्ति
<i>trtiyā</i>	भगवता	भगवद्ध्याम्	भगवद्धिः
<i>caturthī</i>	भगवते	भगवद्ध्याम्	भगवद्धयः
<i>pañcamī</i>	भगवतः	भगवद्ध्याम्	भगवद्धयः
<i>śaṣṭhī</i>	भगवतः	भगवतोः	भगवताम्
<i>saptamī</i>	भगवति	भगवतोः	भगवत्सु
<i>sambodhana</i>	भगवत्	भगवती	भगवन्ति
	eka	dvi	bahu

**MAT, VAT****FEMININE**Stem: **bhagavat** (neuter) possessing fortune, fortunate

prathamā	भगवती	भगवत्यौ	भगवत्यः
dvitiyā	भगवतीम्	भगवत्यौ	भगवतीः
tritiyā	भगवत्या	भगवतीभ्याम्	भगवतीभिः
caturthī	भगवत्यै	भगवतीभ्याम्	भगवतीभ्यः
pañcamī	भगवत्याः	भगवतीभ्याम्	भगवतीभ्यः
śaṣṭhī	भगवत्याः	भगवत्योः	भगवतीनाम्
saptamī	भगवत्याम्	भगवत्योः	भगवतीषु
sambodhana	भगवति	भगवत्यौ	भगवत्यः
	eka	dvi	bahu

## AS

## NEUTER

Stem: **manas** (neuter) mind

prathamā	मनः	मनसी	मनांसि
dvitiyā	मनः	मनसी	मनांसि
trtiyā	मनसा	मनोभ्याम्	मनोभिः
caturthī	मनसे	मनोभ्याम्	मनोभ्यः
pañcamī	मनसः	मनोभ्याम्	मनोभ्यः
ṣaṣṭhi	मनसः	मनसोः	मनसाम्
saptamī	मनसि	मनसोः	मनःसु
sambodhana	मनः	मनसी	मनांसि
	eka	dvi	bahu

## AS.

MASCULINE  
FEMININE

Stem: aṅgiras (masculine) aṅgiras (femininine)

prathamā	अङ्गिरः	अङ्गिरसौ	अङ्गिरसः
dvitiyā	अङ्गिरसम्	अङ्गिरसौ	अङ्गिरसः
trtiyā	अङ्गिरसा	अङ्गिरोभ्याम्	अङ्गिरोभिः
caturthī	अङ्गिरसे	अङ्गिरोभ्याम्	अङ्गिरोभ्यः
pañcamī	अङ्गिरसः	अङ्गिरोभ्याम्	अङ्गिरोभ्यः
ṣaṣṭhī	अङ्गिरसः	अङ्गिरसोः	अङ्गिरसाम्
saptamī	अङ्गिरसि	अङ्गिरसोः	अङ्गिरःसु
sambodhana	अङ्गिरः	अङ्गिरसी	अङ्गिरांसि
	eka	dvi	bahu

## IN

## MASCULINE

Stem: **hastin** (masculine) elephant

<b>prathamā</b>	हस्ती	हस्तिनौ	हस्तिनः
<b>dvitiyā</b>	हस्तिनम्	हस्तिनौ	हस्तिनः
<b>trtiyā</b>	हस्तिना	हस्तिभ्याम्	हस्तिभिः
<b>caturthī</b>	हस्तिने	हस्तिभ्याम्	हस्तिभ्यः
<b>pañcamī</b>	हस्तिनः	हस्तिभ्याम्	हस्तिभ्य
<b>śaṣṭhī</b>	हस्तिनः	हस्तिनोः	हस्तिनाम्
<b>saptamī</b>	हस्तिनि	हस्तिनोः	हस्तिषु
<b>sambodhana</b>	हस्तिन्	हस्तिनौ	हस्तिनः
	eka	dvi	bahu

## IN

## NEUTER

Stem: *dandin* (neuter) (adjective) having a stick

<i>prathamā</i>	दण्डि	दण्डिनी	दण्डीनि
<i>dvitiyā</i>	दण्डि	दण्डिनी	दण्डीनि
<i>sambodhana</i>	दण्डि	दण्डिनी	दण्डीनि
	दण्डन्		
	_____	_____	_____
	eka	dvi	bahu

The rest are the same as the masculine.

**MONOSYLLABIC  
NOUNS  
FEMININE**

Stem: **dhi** (feminine) intellect

prathamā	धीः	धियौ	धियः
dvitiyā	धियम्	धियौ	धियः
trtiyā	धिया	धीभ्याम्	धीभिः
caturthī	धिये धियै	धीभ्याम्	धीभ्यः
pañcamī	धियः धियाः	धीभ्याम्	धीभ्यः
ṣaṣṭhī	धियः धियाः	धियोः	धियाम् धीनाम्
saptamī	धियि धियाम्	धियोः	धीषु
sambodhana	धीः	धियौ	धियः
	eka	dvi	bahu

**NOUNS ENDING IN  
CONSONANTS**

**FEMININE**

Stem: *vāc* (*strī-liṅga*) speech

prathamā	वाक्	वाचौ	वाचः
dvitiyā	वाचम्	वाचौ	वाचः
trtiyā	वाचा	वाग्भ्याम्	वाग्भिः
caturthī	वाचे	वाग्भ्याम्	वाग्भ्यः
pañcamī	वाचः	वाग्भ्याम्	वाग्भ्यः
ṣaṣṭhī	वाचः	वाचोः	वाचाम्
saptamī	वाचि	वाचोः	वाचु
sambodhana	वाक्	वाचौ	वाचः
	eka	dvi	bahu

NOUNS ENDING IN  
CONSONANTS  
MASCULINE

Stem: marut (pum-liṅga) wind

prathamā	मरुत्	मरुतौ	मरुतः
dvitiyā	मरुतम्	मरुतौ	मरुतः
trtiyā	मरुता	मरुदृभ्याम्	मरुदृष्टिः
caturthī	मरुते	मरुदृभ्याम्	मरुदृभ्यः
pañcamī	मरुतः	मरुदृभ्याम्	मरुदृभ्यः
ṣaṣṭhī	मरुतः	मरुतोः	मरुताम्
saptamī	मरुति	मरुतोः	मरुत्सु
saṃbodhana	मरुत्	मरुतौ	मरुतः
	eka	dvi	bahu

**Ū**

## FEMININE NOUNS

Stem: *vadhū* (*sti-liṅga*) woman

<i>prathamā</i>	वधूः	वध्वौ	वध्वः
<i>dvitiyā</i>	वधूम्	वध्वौ	वधूः
<i>trtiyā</i>	वध्वा	वधूभ्याम्	वधूभिः
<i>caturthī</i>	वध्वै	वधूभ्याम्	वधूभ्यः
<i>pañcamī</i>	वध्वाः	वधूभ्याम्	वधूभ्यः
<i>śasṭhī</i>	वध्वाः	वध्वोः	वधूनाम्
<i>saptamī</i>	वध्वाम्	वध्वोः	वधूषु
<i>sambodhana</i>	वधु	वध्वौ	वध्वः
	[ eka ]	[ dvi ]	[ bahu ]

## IS

## NEUTER

Stem: **havis** (*nāpumṣaka-liṅga*) oblation

prathamā	हविः	हविषी	हवीषि
dvitiyā	हविः	हविषी	हवीषि
trtiyā	हविषा	हविभ्याम्	हविर्भिः
caturthā	हविषे	हविभ्याम्	हविभ्यः
pañcamī	हविषः	हविभ्याम्	हविभ्यः
śaṣṭhī	हविषः	हविषोः	हविषाम्
saptamī	हविषि	हविषोः	हविषःषु
saṃbodhana	हविः	हविषी	हवीषि
	eka	dvi	bahu

## US

## NEUTER

Stem: dhanus (napuṁsaka-liṅga) bow

prathamā	धनुः	धनुषी	धनूषि
dvitiyā	धनुः	धनुषी	धनूषि
trtiyā	धनुषा	धनुर्भाम्	धनुर्भिः
caturthī	धनुषे	धनुर्भाम्	धनुर्भ्यः
pañcamī	धनुषः	धनुर्भाम्	धनुर्भ्यः
śaṣṭhī	धनुषः	धनुषोः	धनुषाम्
saptamī	धनुषि	धनुषोः	धनुषःषु
sambodhana	धनुः	धनुषी	धनूषि
	[ eka ]	[ dvi ]	[ bahu ]

## O

MASCULINE  
FEMININE

Stem: go (puṁ-liṅga) bull; (strī-liṅga) cow

prathamā	गौः	गावौ	गावः
dvitiyā	गाम्	गावौ	गा:
trtiyā	गवा	गोभ्याम्	गोभिः
caturthī	गवे	गोभ्याम्	गोभ्यः
pañcamī	गोः	गोभ्याम्	गोभ्यः
śaṣṭhī	गोः	गवोः	गवाम्
saptami	गवि	गवोः	गोषु
saṁbodhana	गौः	गावौ	गावः
	eka	dvi	bahu

## AU

## FEMININE

Stem: nau (sti-liṅga) ship

<b>prathamā</b>	नौः	नावौ	नावः
<b>dvitiyā</b>	नावम्	नावौ	नावः
<b>trtiyā</b>	नावा	नौभ्याम्	नौभिः
<b>caturthī</b>	नावे	नौभ्याम्	नौभ्यः
<b>pañcamī</b>	नावः	नौभ्याम्	नौभ्यः
<b>śaṣṭhī</b>	नावः	नावोः	नावाम्
<b>saptami</b>	नावि	नावोः	नौषु
<b>sambodhana</b>	नौः	नावौ	नावः
	[ eka ]	[ dvi ]	[ bahu ]

**ADJECTIVES  
DECLINED LIKE  
PRONOUNS**

Stem: *sarva* (masculine) all

prathamā	सर्वः	सर्वौ	सर्वे
dvitiyā	सर्वम्	सर्वौ	सर्वान्
त्रिया	सर्वेण	सर्वाभ्याम्	सर्वैः
caturthī	सर्वस्मै	सर्वाभ्याम्	सर्वेभ्यः
pañcamī	सर्वस्मात्	सर्वाभ्याम्	सर्वेभ्यः
śaṣṭhī	सर्वस्य	सर्वयोः	सर्वेषाम्
saptamī	सर्वस्मिन्	सर्वयोः	सर्वेषु
	eka	dvi	bahu

## INTERROGATIVE

## PRONOUNS

Stem: **ka** (masculine) who

<b>prathamā</b>	कः	कौ	के
<b>dvitiyā</b>	कम्	कौ	कान्
<b>trtiyā</b>	केन	काभ्याम्	कैः

And so on, like **tad** in the masculine. (See Part 1, p. 309.)Stem: **kim** (neuter) what, how

<b>prathamā</b>	किम्	के	कानि
<b>dvitiyā</b>	किम्	के	कानि
<b>trtiyā</b>	केन	काभ्याम्	कैः

And so on, like **tad** in the neuter. (See Part 1, p. 310.)Stem: **kā** (feminine) who

<b>prathamā</b>	का	के	क
<b>dvitiyā</b>	काम्	के	काः
<b>trtiyā</b>	कया	काभ्याम्	काभिः

And so on, like **tad** in the feminine. (See Part 1, p. 311.)

## ETAD

Stem: etad (*pum-liṅga*) this

prathamā	एषः	एतौ	एते
dvitiyā	एतम् [eka]	एतौ [dvi]	एतान् [bahu]

And so on, like **tad** in the masculine. (See Part 1, p. 309.)

Stem: etad (*napuṁsaka-liṅga*) this

prathamā	एतत्	एते	एतानि
dvitiyā	एतत् [eka]	एते [dvi]	एतानि [bahu]

And so on, like **tad** in the neuter. (See Part 1, p. 310.)

Stem: etad (*stri-liṅga*) this

prathamā	एषा	एते	एताः
dvitiyā	एताम् [eka]	एते [dvi]	एताः [bahu]

And so on, like **tad** in the feminine. (See Part 1, p. 311.)

**PRESENT ACTIVE  
PARTICIPLE  
MASCULINE**

dhātu: √gam (go) 1P

Present Active Participle Stem: gacchant (going) pum-liṅga

prathamā	गच्छन्	गच्छन्तौ	गच्छन्तः
dvitiyā	गच्छन्तम्	गच्छन्तौ	गच्छतः
trtiyā	गच्छता	गच्छद्धयाम्	गच्छद्धिः
caturthi	गच्छते	गच्छद्धयाम्	गच्छद्धयः
pañcamī	गच्छतः	गच्छद्धयाम्	गच्छद्धयः
śaṣṭhi	गच्छतः	गच्छतोः	गच्छताम्
saptamī	गच्छति	गच्छतोः	गच्छत्सु
sambodhana	गच्छन्	गच्छन्तौ	गच्छन्तः
	eka	dvi	bahu

**PRESENT ACTIVE  
PARTICIPLE**

**NEUTER**

dhātu: √gam (go) 1P

Present Active Participle Stem: gacchant (going)  
napumṣaka-liṅga

prathamā	गच्छत्	गच्छन्ती	गच्छन्ति
dvitiyā	गच्छत्	गच्छन्ती	गच्छन्ति
trtiyā	गच्छता	गच्छद्याम्	गच्छद्धिः
cathurthī	गच्छते	गच्छद्याम्	गच्छद्यः
pañcamī	गच्छतः	गच्छद्याम्	गच्छद्यः
śaṣṭhī	गच्छतः	गच्छतोः	गच्छताम्
saptamī	गच्छति	गच्छतोः	गच्छत्पु
sambodhana	गच्छत्	गच्छन्ती	गच्छन्ति
	eka	dvi	bahu

Note that for the dvi-vacana, classes 2, 3, 5, 7, 8, and 9 (and optionally class 6) use atī rather than antī.

**PRESENT ACTIVE  
PARTICIPLE  
FEMININE**

Root:  $\sqrt{\text{gam}}$  (go) 1P

Present Active Participle Stem: **gacchanti** (going) **stri-liṅga**

prathamā	गच्छन्ती	गच्छन्त्यौ	गच्छन्त्यः
dvitiyā	गच्छन्तीम्	गच्छन्त्यौ	गच्छन्तीः
tṛtiyā	गच्छन्त्या	गच्छन्तीभ्याम्	गच्छन्तीभिः
caturthī	गच्छन्त्यै	गच्छन्तीभ्याम्	गच्छन्तीभ्यः
pañcamī	गच्छन्त्याः	गच्छन्तीभ्याम्	गच्छन्तीभ्यः
ṣaṣṭhī	गच्छन्त्याः	गच्छन्त्योः	गच्छन्तीनाम्
saptami	गच्छन्त्याम्	गच्छन्त्योः	गच्छन्तीषु
sambodhana	गच्छन्ति	गच्छन्त्यौ	गच्छन्त्यः
	eka	dvi	bahu

Note that classes 2, 3, 5, 7, 8, and 9 (and optionally class 6) use **ati** rather than **anti**.

**AYAM****MASCULINE**

Stem: ayam (पुम्-लिंग) this

prathamā	अयम्	इमौ	इमे
dvitiyā	इमम्	इमौ	इमान्
trtiyā	अनेन	आभ्याम्	एभिः
caturthī	अस्यै	आभ्याम्	एभ्यः
pañcamī	अस्मात्	आभ्याम्	एभ्यः
ṣaṣṭhī	अस्य	अनयोः	एषाम्
saptamī	अस्मिन्	अनयोः	एषु
	eka	dvi	bahu

**IDAM****NEUTER**

Stem: idam (napumsaka-liṅga) this

prathamā	इदम्	इमे	इमानि
----------	------	-----	-------

dvitiyā	इदम्	इमे	इमानि
---------	------	-----	-------

trtiyā	अनेन	आभ्याम्	एभिः
--------	------	---------	------

caturthī	अस्मै	आभ्याम्	एभ्यः
----------	-------	---------	-------

pañcamī	अस्मात्	आभ्याम्	एभ्यः
---------	---------	---------	-------

sasṭhi	अस्य	अनयोः	एषाम्
--------	------	-------	-------

saptami	अस्मिन् [ ] eka	अनयोः [ ] dvi	एषु [ ] bahu
---------	-----------------------	---------------------	--------------------

## IYAM

## FEMININE

Stem: iyam (strī-*liṅga*) this

prathamā	इयम्	इमे	इमाः
dvitiyā	इमाम्	इमे	इमाः
tr̥tiyā	अनया	आभ्याम्	आभिः
caturthī	अस्यै	आभ्याम्	आभ्यः
pañcamī	अस्याः	आभ्याम्	आभ्यः
śaṣṭhi	अस्याः	अनयोः	आसाम्
saptami	अस्याम्	अनयोः	आसु
	eka	dvi	bahu

**ENA****MASCULINE**Stem: **ena** (*pum-liqñga*) this

<b>dvitīyā</b>	एनम्	एनौ	एनान्
----------------	------	-----	-------

<b>tr̥tiyā</b>	एनेन
----------------	------

<b>ṣaṣṭhī</b>	एनयोः
---------------	-------

<b>saptamī</b>	एनयोः
----------------	-------

[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
eka	dvi	bahu

**ENA****NEUTER**Stem: **ena** (*napuṁsaka-liṅga*) this

<b>dvitīyā</b>	एनत्	एने	एनानि
----------------	------	-----	-------

<b>tr̥tiyā</b>	एनेन
----------------	------

<b>ṣaṣṭhī</b>	एनयोः
---------------	-------

<b>saptamī</b>	एनयोः
----------------	-------

[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
eka	dvi	bahu

**ENA****FEMININE**Stem: **ena** (*stri-liṅga*) this

dvitiyā एनाम् एने एनाः

tṛtiyā एनया

śaṣṭhi एनयोः

saptami एनयोः

eka द्वि बहु

## CARDINAL NUMBERS

śūnya	०	0
ekādaśa	११	11
dvādaśa	१२	12
trayodaśa	१३	13
caturdaśa	१४	14
pañcadaśa	१५	15
ṣodaśa	१६	16
saptadaśa	१७	17
aṣṭādaśa	१८	18
navadaśa	१९	19
vimśati	२०	20
ekavimśati	२१	21
dvāvimśati	२२	22
trayovimśati	२३	23
caturvimśati	२४	24
pañcavimśati	२५	25
ṣaḍvimśati	२६	26
saptavimśati	२७	27
aṣṭāvimśati	२८	28
navavimśati	२९	29
trimśat	३०	30
catvārimśat	४०	40

<i>pačašat</i>	२०	50
<i>şaṣṭi</i>	६०	60
<i>saptati</i>	७०	70
<i>aśti</i>	८०	80
<i>navati</i>	९०	90
<i>śatam</i>	१००	100
<i>dviśatam</i>	२००	200
<i>sahasram</i>	३०००	1,000
<i>lakṣa</i>	४०००००	100,000

## TRI

Stem: tri (mas., n., fem.) three

<i>prathamā</i>	<i>trayaḥ</i>	<i>triṇī</i>	<i>tisraḥ</i>
<i>dvitiyā</i>	<i>trīn</i>	<i>triṇī</i>	<i>tisraḥ</i>
<i>trtiyā</i>	<i>tribhiḥ</i>	<i>tribhiḥ</i>	<i>tisṛbhīḥ</i>
<i>caturthī</i>	<i>tribhyāḥ</i>	<i>tribhyāḥ</i>	<i>tisṛbhyāḥ</i>
<i>pañcamī</i>	<i>tribhyāḥ</i>	<i>tribhyāḥ</i>	<i>tisṛbhyāḥ</i>
<i>şaṣṭhī</i>	<i>trayāṇām</i>	<i>trayāṇām</i>	<i>tisṛṇām</i>
<i>saptamī</i>	<i>triṣu</i>	<i>triṣu</i>	<i>tisṛṣu</i>
<i>sambodhana</i>	<i>trayaḥ</i>	<i>triṇī</i>	<i>tisraḥ</i>
		Masculine	Neuter
			Feminine

**CATUR**Stem: **catur** (mas., n., fem.) four

<b>prathamā</b>	<b>catvārah</b>	<b>catvāri</b>	<b>catasrah</b>
<b>dvitīyā</b>	<b>caturah</b>	<b>catvāri</b>	<b>catasrah</b>
<b>trtīyā</b>	<b>caturbhih</b>	<b>caturbhih</b>	<b>catasrbhih</b>
<b>caturthī</b>	<b>caturbhyah</b>	<b>caturbhyah</b>	<b>catasrbhyah</b>
<b>pañcamī</b>	<b>caturbhyah</b>	<b>caturbhyah</b>	<b>catasrbhyah</b>
<b>śaṣṭhī</b>	<b>caturñām</b>	<b>caturñām</b>	<b>catasrnām</b>
<b>saptamī</b>	<b>caturṣu</b>	<b>caturṣu</b>	<b>catasrsu</b>
<b>sambodhana</b>	<b>catvārah</b>	<b>catvāri</b>	<b>catasrah</b>
		Masculine	Neuter
			Feminine

**PAÑCA**Stem: **pañca** (all genders) five

<b>prathamā</b>	<b>pañca</b>
<b>dvitīyā</b>	<b>pañca</b>
<b>trtīyā</b>	<b>pañcabhih</b>
<b>caturthī</b>	<b>pañcabhyah</b>
<b>pañcamī</b>	<b>pañcabhyah</b>
<b>śaṣṭhī</b>	<b>pañcāñām</b>
<b>saptamī</b>	<b>pañcasu</b>
<b>sambodhana</b>	<b>pañca</b>

**SAS**Stem: **śaś** (all genders) six

prathamā	śat
dvitiyā	śat
trtiyā	śadbhiḥ
caturthī	śadbhyāḥ
pañcamī	śadbhyāḥ
śaṣṭhī	śannām
saptamī	śatsu
sambodhana	śat

**ASTA**Stem: **aṣṭa** (all genders) eight

prathamā	aṣṭa / aṣṭau
dvitiyā	aṣṭā / aṣṭau
trtiyā	aṣṭabhiḥ / aṣṭābhiḥ
caturthī	aṣṭabhyāḥ / aṣṭābhyāḥ
pañcamī	aṣṭabhyāḥ / aṣṭābhyāḥ
śaṣṭhī	aṣṭānām
saptamī	aṣṭasu / aṣṭāsu
sambodhana	aṣṭa / aṣṭau

The declension for 7 and 9 – 19 follows the declension of **pañca**.

## PREFIXES

<b>अति</b>	across, beyond, surpassing, past
<b>अधि</b>	above, over, on
<b>अनु</b>	after, following
<b>अप</b>	away, off
<b>अपि</b>	on, close on
<b>अभि</b>	to, against
<b>अव</b>	down, away, off
<b>आ</b>	back, return, to, fully
<b>उद्</b>	up, up out
<b>उप</b>	towards, near, subordinate
<b>दुस्</b>	ill, bad, difficult, hard
<b>नि</b>	down, into
<b>निस्</b>	out from, forth, without, entirely
<b>परा</b>	away, forth, along, off
<b>परि</b>	around, about

---

प्र	forward, onward, forth
प्रति	back to, in reverse direction
वि	apart, away, out
सम्	together
सु	well, very, good, right, easy

NUMERALS	Numerals	Cardinal Numbers	
CARDINAL NUMBERS		one	एक
	१	two	द्वि
	२	three	त्रि
	३	four	चतुर्
	४	five	पञ्च
	५ (५)	six	षष्ठि
	६	seven	सप्त
	७	eight	अष्ट
	८ (८)	nine	नव
	९ (९)	ten	दश
ORDINAL NUMBERS	First	प्रथम	षष्ठि
	Second	द्वितीय	सप्तम
	Third	तृतीय	अष्टम
	Fourth	चतुर्थ or तुरीय	नवम
	Fifth	पञ्चम	दशम

**SANDHI  
VOWELS**
**FINAL VOWELS**

ā	ī	ū	r	e	ai	au	INITIAL VOWELS
---	---	---	---	---	----	----	-------------------

ā	ya	va	ra	e	ā	a	āva	a
ā	yā	vā	rā	a	ā	ā	āvā	ā
e	ī	vi	ri	a	i	ā	āvi	i
e	ī	vī	rī	a	ī	ā	āvī	ī
o	yu	ū	ru	a	u	ā	āvu	u
o	yū	ū	rū	a	ū	ā	āvū	ū
ar	yṛ	vṛ	r̄	a	r̄	ā	āvṛ	r̄
ai	ye	ve	re	a	e	ā	āve	e
ai	yai	vai	rai	a	ai	ā	āvai	ai
au	yo	vo	ro	a	o	ā	āvo	o
au	yau	vau	rau	a	au	ā	āvau	au

**SANDHI  
FINAL h**
**Final letters of first word:**

		Any vowel h or r (except ah and āh)	āh	ah	Initial letter of second word:
r	—	ā	—	a <sup>2</sup>	vowels (a)
r	—	ā	—	o	g/gh
r	—	ā	—	o	j/jh
r	—	ā	—	o	d/dh
r	—	ā	—	o	d/dh
r	—	ā	—	o	b/bh (b)
r	—	ā	—	o	nasals (n/m)
r	—	ā	—	o	y/v
r	—	ā	—	o	r
r	—	ā	—	o	l
r	—	ā	—	o	h
h	—	āh	—	ah	k/kh
ś	—	āś	—	āś	c/ch
ṣ	—	āṣ	—	āṣ	t/t̪h
s	—	ās	—	as	t/t̪h
h	—	āh	—	ah	p/ph (c)
h	—	āh	—	ah	ś
h	—	āh	—	ah	ṣ/s
h	—	āh	—	ah	end of line

(1) The h disappears, and if i or u precedes, it becomes ī or ū.

The r disappears, and if a, i, or u precedes, it becomes ā, ī, or ū.

(2) Except that ah + a = o' For example:

रामः + अत्र = रामोऽत्र

rāmah + atra = rāmo 'tra

Remember that final s follows the same rules as final h.

**SANDHI****FINAL h**

a	ā	
i	ī	
u	ū	(a)
r	ī	Vowels
l		
e	ai	
o	au	

h	ka	kha	ga	gha	ñā	
s	ca	cha	ja	jha	ñā	
ś	ṭa	ṭha	ḍa	ḍha	ṇa	
s	ta	tha	da	dha	na	
h	pa	pha	ba	bha	ma	
			ya	ra	la	va
h	śa	ṣa	sa	ha		
h	end of line					

(c) Unvoiced consonant | (b) Voiced consonant

(a) If the second word begins in a vowel:

ah becomes a (except ah + a = o')

āh becomes ā

vowel h becomes r

(b) If the first letter of the second word is a voiced consonant:

ah becomes o

āh becomes ā

vowel h becomes r (except before a word beginning in r)

(c) If the first letter of the second word is an unvoiced consonant,

the h (with any vowel in front of it) changes to the letter in  
the far left column.

**SANDHI  
FINAL M, N, T**

Final letter of first word:

t	n	m	Initial letter of second word:
d	n <sup>1</sup>	m	vowels
d	n	m	g/gh
j	ñ	m	j/jh
d̄	n	m	d̄/dh
d̄	n	m	d/dh
d̄	n	m	b/bh
n	n	m	nasals (n/m)
d̄	n	m	y/v
d̄	n	m	r
l	ml	m	l
d(dh) <sup>3</sup>	n	m	h
<hr/>			
t	n	m	k/kh
c	mś	m	c/ch
t̄	mʂ	m	t̄/ṭh
t̄	mʂ	m	t̄/th
t̄	n	m	p/ph
c(ch) <sup>4</sup>	ñ(ch) <sup>2</sup>	m	ś
t̄	n	m	s/s
t̄	n	m	end of line

1. If the vowel before the n is short, the n becomes nn.
2. The following ś may become ch.
3. The following h becomes dh.
4. The following ś becomes ch

**SANDHI**  
**FINAL N**

Final n remains unchanged unless the following letter is in bold.

Then:

n becomes

	a	ā	n becomes
	i	ī	
	u	ū	nn (e)
	r	ṛ	(if preceded by a short vowel)
	l		
	e	ai	
	o	au	
	ka	kha	ga gha īna
(a) mś	ca	cha	ja jha īna
(b) mṣ	ṭa	ṭha	ḍa ḍha ᫃na
(c) ms	ta	tha	da dha na
	pa	pha	ba bha ma
			ya ra la va
(d) ī (ch) śa	śa	sa	ha
			end of line

(a) n + ca = mśca ; n + cha = mścha

(b) n + ṭa = mṣṭa ; n + ṭha = mṣṭha

(c) n + ta = msta ; n + tha = mstha

(d) n + śa = īśa or īcha

(e) an + a = anna

an + i = anni

ān + u = ānu

(f) n + ja = īja ; n + jha = ījha

(g) n + ḍa = ḍa ; n + ḍha = ḍha

(h) n + la = mlla

**SANDHI**  
**FINAL T**

t remains t  
except:

t changes  
to d except:

			a	ā		
			i	ī		
			u	ū		
			r̥	ṛ̥		
			l̥	ṝ̥		
			e	ai		
			o	au	(before all nasals)	
					n	(d)
		ka	kha		ga	gha
(a) c	ca	cha		ja	jha	ñna
(b) t̥	ṭa	ṭha		ḍa	ḍha	ṇna
	ta	tha		da	dha	na
	pa	pha		ba	bha	ma
				ya	ra	la
(c) c (ch) śa	śa	sa		ha		va
						I (g)
						d (dh) (h)
						end of line

- (a) t + ca = cca ; t + cha = ccha
- (b) t + ṭa = ṭṭa ; t + ṭha = ṭṭha
- (c) t + śa = ccha
- (d) t + all nasals = nnasal
- (e) t + ja = jja ; t + jha = jjha
- (f) t + ḍa = ḍḍa ; t + ḍha = ḍḍha
- (g) t + la = lla
- (h) t + ha = ddha (ha becomes dha.)

**SANDHI****FINAL M**

- (a) If the next word begins in a consonant, the **m** becomes **m̐** and is pronounced (and could be written) as the nasal corresponding to the first letter of the next word.
- (b) If the next word begins in a vowel or is at the end of a line, the **m** remains the same. The **m** remains the same because the mouth is not preparing to close at a specific point of contact as it would if the next word began with a consonant.

**SANDHI****FINAL R**

- (a) Before a word beginning with a voiced letter (other than **r**), the **r** remains the same.
- (b) Before an unvoiced letter or the end of a line, **r** follows the same rules as final **h**.
- (c) Final **r**, whether original or derived from **h**, cannot stand before another **r**. The final **r** is dropped and the vowel before it made long if it is short.

**FINAL P, T, K**

- (a) Before a voiced sound these letters become voiced, and before an unvoiced sound they remain the same.
- (b) Before a nasal these letters become the nasal of their row (**varga**).
- (c) Before **h** these letters become voiced and the **h** becomes their voiced aspirated counterpart.

**FINAL ñ**

(a) Like final **n**, final **ñ** becomes **ññ** before vowels if the **ñ** is preceded by a short vowel.

**INITIAL CH**

(a) Initial **ch** becomes **cch** if the first word ends in a short vowel.  
The **ch** also becomes **cch** after the preposition **ā** and **mā**.

**INTERNAL SANDHI****S TO Š**

any vowel   in spite of   changes s   unless final
(but a or ā),   intervening   to š   or followed
k, or r   m or h       by r

**N TO Ñ**

r   unless c, ch, j, jh, ñ,   changes n   if followed by
ṛ   t, ṭh, d, ḍh, ṙ,   to ñ   vowels, m, y,
ṝ   t, th, d, dh,       v, or n
or š   l, š, s interferes

## VERB ROOTS

**अद्**

$\sqrt{ad}$  (2P) **atti** (pres. indict.) he eats,  
**jagdhvā** (gerund), **atsyati** (future),  
**adyate** (passive), **jagdha**, **-jagdhyā** (p.p.p.),  
**attā** (periphrasic future), **attavya**, **adaniya**,  
**adya** (gerundive), **āda** (perfect), **attum**  
(infinitive), **ādayati** (causative), **jighatsati**  
(desirative), **aghusat** (aorist)

**अर्ह**

$\sqrt{arh}$  (1P) **arhati** (pres. indict.) he is  
worthy, **arhitvā** (gerund), **arhiyati** (future),  
**arhyate** (passive), **arhita**, **-arghya** (p.p.p.),  
**arhayitā** (periphrasic future), **arhaniya**  
(gerundive) **ānarha** (perfect), **arhitum**  
(infinitive), **arhayati** (causative), **arjihisati**  
(desirative), **ārhit** (aorist)

**अस्**

$\sqrt{as}$  (2P) **asti** (pres. indict.) he, she, it is,  
**āsa** (perfect)

**आप्**

$\sqrt{\bar{a}p}$  (5P) **āpnoti** (pres. indict.) he obtains,  
**āptvā** (gerund), **āpsyati** (future), **āpyate**  
(passive), **āpta**, **-āpya** (p.p.p.), **āptā**  
(periphrasic future), **āpaniya**, **āptavya**, **āpya**  
(gerundive), **āpa** (perfect), **āptum** (infinitive),  
**āpayati** (causative), **īpsati** (desirative), **āpat**  
(aorist)

आस्

$\sqrt{ās}$  (2Ā) **āste** (pres. indict.) he sits,  
**āsitvā** (gerund), **āsiyate** (future), **āsyate** (passive), **āsita**, **-āsyā** (p.p.p.), **āsitā** (periphrasic future), **āsanīya**, **āsitavya**, **āsyā** (gerundive), **āsa** (perfect), **āsitum** (infinitive), **āsayati** (causative), **āsisiṣate** (desirative), **āsiṣṭa** (aorist)

इ

$\sqrt{i}$  (2P) **eti** (pres. indict.) he goes,  
**itvā** (gerund), **esyati** (future), **iyate** (passive), **ita**, **-itya** (p.p.p.), **etā** (periphrasic future), **etavya**, **eya** (gerundive), **iyāya** (perfect), **etum** (infinitive), **āyayati** (causative), **iyışati** (desirative), **aiṣit** (aorist)

इष्

$\sqrt{iṣ}$  (6P) **icchatī** (pres. indict.) he wishes, desires, **iṣtvā** (gerund), **eşiṣyatī** (future), **iṣyāte** (passive), **iṣita**, **-iṣya** (p.p.p.), **iṣitā** (periphrasic future), **eşitanīya**, **eşitavya**, **eşya** (gerundive), **iyeṣā** (perfect), **eşitum** (infinitive), **eşayati** (causative), **eşisiṣati** (desirative), **aiṣit** (aorist)

कृ

$\sqrt{kṛ}$  (8U) **karoti**, **kurute** (pres. indict.) he makes, does, performs, **kṛtvā**, **-kṛtya** (gerund), **kariṣyatī** (future), **kriyate** (passive), **kṛta** (p.p.p.), **kartā** (periphrasic future), **karaniya**, **kartavya**, **kārya** (gerundive), **cakāra** (perfect), **kartum** (infinitive), **kārayati** (causative), **cikırṣati** (désirative), **akārṣit** (aorist)

**क्री**

√**kri** (9U) **kriṇāti**, **kriṇīte** (pres. indict.) he buys, **kṛītvā** (gerund), **kresyati** (future), **kriyate** (passive), **krita**, -**kriya** (p.p.p.), **kretā** (periphrastic future), **krayaniya**, **kretavya**, **kreya** (gerundive), **cikāya** (perfect), **kretum** (infinitive), **krāpayati** (causative), **cikriṣati** (desirative), **akraiṣit** (aorist)

**गम्**

√**gam** (1P) **gacchati** (pres. indict.) he goes, **gatvā** (gerund), **gamiṣyati** (future), **gamyate** (passive), **gata**, -**gamyā**, -**gatyā** (p.p.p.), **gantā** (periphrastic future), **gamaniya**, **gantavya**, **ganya** (gerundive), **jagāma** (perfect), **gantum** (infinitive), **gamayati** (causative), **jigamiṣati** (desirative), **agamat** (aorist)

**गुप्**

√**gup** (1P) **gopāyati** (pres. indict.) he protects, **guptvā**, **gopitvā** (gerund), **gopiṣyati**, **gopsyati** (future), **gupyate** (passive), **gupta**, **gupita**, -**gupya** (p.p.p.), **gopāyitā**, **gopitā**, **goptā** (periphrastic future), **gopaniya**, **goptavya**, **gopya** (gerundive), **jugopa** (perfect), **goptum**, **gopitum** (infinitive), **gopayati** (causative), **jugopiṣati** (desirative), **agaupsit** (aorist)

**गै**

√**gai** (1P) **gāyati** (pres. indict.) he sings, **gītvā** (gerund), **gāsyati** (future), **giyate** (passive), **gīta**, -**gāya** (p.p.p.), **gātā** (periphrastic future), **gāniya**, **gātavya**, **geya** (gerundive), **jagau** (perfect), **gātum** (infinitive), **gāpayati** (causative), **jigāsati** (desirative), **agāsít** (aorist)

चिन्त्

√cint (10U) cintayati -te (pres. indict.) he thinks, cintayitvā (gerund), cintayısyati (future), cintyate (passive), cintita, -cintya (p.p.p.) cintayitā (periphrastic future), cintayitavya, cintaniya, cintya, (gerundive), cintayām (perfect), cintayitum (infinitive), acicintat (aorist)

चुर्

√cur (10U) corayati -te (pres. indict.) he steals, corayitvā (gerund), corayısyati (future), coryate (passive), corita, -corya (p.p.p.), corayitā (periphrastic future), coraniya, corayitavya, corya (gerundive), corayām (perfect), corayitum (infinitive), cucorayısatı (desirative), acūcurat (aorist)

जन्

√jan (4Ā) jāyate (pres. indict.) he is born, janitvā (gerund), janısyate (future), janyate (passive), jāta, -janya (p.p.p.), janitā (periphrastic future), janitavya, janya (gerundive), jajñe (perfect), janitum (infinitive), janayati (causative), jjanişate (desirative), ajaniṣṭa (aorist)

जि

√ji (1P) jayati (pres. indict.) he conquers, jitvā (gerund), jeşyati, jayısyati (future), jiyyate (passive), jita, -jitya (p.p.p.), jetā (periphrastic future), jetavya, jitya, jeya (gerundive), jigāya (perfect), jetum (infinitive), jāpayat (causative), jığışati (desirative), ajaişit (aorist)

जीव्

$\sqrt{jiv}$  (1P) **jivati** (pres. indict.) he lives,  
**jīvitvā** (gerund), **jīviṣyati** (future), **jīvyate** (passive), **jīvita**, -**jīvyā** (p.p.p.), **jīvitā** (periphrastic future), **jīvaniya**, **jīvitavya**, **jīvyā** (gerundive), **jījīva** (perfect), **jīvitum** (infinitive), **jīvayati** (causative), **jījīviṣati** (desirative), **ajīvit** (aorist)

ज्ञा

$\sqrt{jñā}$  (9U) **jānāti**, **jānīte** (pres. indict.) he knows,  
**jñātvā** (gerund), **jñāsyati** (future), **jñāyate** (passive), **jñāta**, -**jñāya** (p.p.p.), **jñātā** (periphrastic future), **jñātavya**, **jñeya** (gerundive) **jajñau** (perfect), **jñātum** (infinitive), **jñāpayati** (causative), **jijñāsatī** (desirative), **ajyāsit** (aorist)

तन्

$\sqrt{tan}$  (8U) **tanoti**, **tanute** (pres. indict.) he stretches, spreads, goes, **tantvā**, **tanitvā**, (gerund), **taniṣyati** (future), **tanyate** (passive), **tata**, -**tatya**, **tāya** (p.p.p.), **tanitā** (periphrastic future), **tanitavya**, **tanya** (gerundive), **tatāna** (perfect), **tantum**, **tanitum** (infinitive), **tānayati** (causative), **tataniṣati** (desirative), **atānīt** (aorist)

तुद्

$\sqrt{tud}$  (6U) **tudati** -**te** (pres. indict.) he pushes, strikes, **tuttvā** (gerund), **totsyate** (future), **tudyate** (passive), **tunna**, -**tudya** (p.p.p.), **tottā** (periphrastic future), **todya** (gerundive), **tutoda** (perfect), **toditum** (infinitive), **todayati** (causative), **tututsati** (desirative), **atautsīt** (aorist)

तुष्

√**tuṣ** (4P) **tuṣyati** (pres. indict.) he is satisfied, contented, **tuṣṭvā** (gerund), **tokṣyati** (future), **tuṣyate** (passive), **tuṣṭa**, **-tuṣya** (p.p.p.), **toṣṭā** (periphrastic future), **toṣaṇiya**, **toṣṭavya**, **toṣya** (gerundive), **tutoṣa** (perfect), **toṣṭum** (infinitive), **toṣayati** (causative), **tutukṣati** (desirative), **atuṣat** (aorist)

तृ

√**tṛ** (1P) **tarati** (pres. indict.) he crosses over, **tīrvā** (gerund), **tariṣyati** (future), **tiryate** (passive), **tīrṇa**, **-tīrya** (p.p.p.), **taritā** (periphrastic future), **taritavya**, **tāraṇiya**, **tārya** (gerundive), **tatāra** (perfect), **tartum**, **taritum** (infinitive), **tārayati** (causative), **titīrṣati** (desirative), **atārit**, **atārṣit** (aorist)

त्यज्

√**tyaj** (1P) **tyajati** (pres. indict.) he abandons, **tyaktvā** (gerund), **tyakṣyati** (future), **tyajyate** (passive), **tyakta** (p.p.p.), **tyaktā** (periphrastic future), **tyajaniya**, **tyaktavya**, **tyājya** (gerundive), **tatyāja** (perfect), **tyaktum** (infinitive), **tyājayati** (causative), **tityakṣati** (desirative), **atyākṣit** (aorist)

दा

√**dā** (3U) **dadāti**, **datte** (pres. indict.) he gives, **dattvā** (gerund), **dāsyati** (future), **dīyate** (passive), **datta**, **-dāya** (p.p.p.), **dātā** (periphrastic future), **dāniyā**, **dātavya**, **deya** (gerundive), **dadau** (perfect), **dātum** (infinitive), **dāpayati** (causative), **ditsati** (desirative), **adāt** (aorist)

दिव्

√**div** (4P) **dīvati** (pres. indict.) he plays,  
shines, increases, **deviṣyati** (future), **dīvate**  
(passive), **dyūna**, -**divya** (p.p.p.), **devitā**  
(periphrasic future), **devitavya** (gerundive),  
**dideva** (perfect), **devitum** (infinitive),  
**devayati** (causative), **adevit** (aorist)

दृश्

√**drś** (1P) **paśyati** (pres. indict.) he sees,  
**dṛṣṭvā** (gerund), **drakṣyati** (future), **dṛṣyate**  
(passive), **dṛṣṭa**, -**dṛṣya** (p.p.p.), **dṛṣṭā**  
(periphrasic future), **draṣṭavya**, **darśaniya**,  
**dṛṣya** (gerundive), **dadarśa** (perfect),  
**draṣṭum** (infinitive), **darśayati** (causative),  
**didṛkṣate** (desirative), **adrākṣit** (aorist)

द्विष्

√**dviṣ** (2U) **dveṣti**, **dviste** (pres. indict.) he  
hates, **dviṣṭā** (gerund), **dvekṣyati** (future),  
**dviṣyate** (passive), **dviṣṭa**, -**dviṣya** (p.p.p.),  
**dviṣyste** (periphrasic future), **dveṣaniya**,  
**dveṣya** (gerundive), **didveṣa** (perfect),  
**dveṣṭum** (infinitive), **dveṣayati** (causative),  
**didvikṣati** (desirative), **advikṣat** (aorist)

धा

√**dhā** (3U) **dadhāti**, **dhatte** (pres. indict.) he  
places, **dhityā**, **hitvā** (gerund), **dhāsyati**  
(future), **dhiyate** (passive), **hita**, -**dhāya**  
(p.p.p.), **dhātā** (periphrasic future),  
**dhātavya**, **dhāniya**, **dheya** (gerundive),  
**dadhau** (perfect), **dhātum** (infinitive),  
**dhāpayati** (causative), **dhitsati** (desirative),  
**adhāt** (aorist)

धृ

√**dhṛ** (1U) **dharati** -te (pres. indict.) he holds, **dhṛtvā** (gerund), **dhariṣyati** (future), **dhriyate** (passive), **dhṛta**, **-dhṛtya** (p.p.p.), **dhartā** (periphrasic future), **dhāraniya**, **dhartavya**, **dhārya** (gerundive), **dadhāra** (perfect), **dhartum** (infinitive), **dhārayati** (causative), **didhariṣati** (desirative), **adhārṣit** (aorist)

नन्द

√**nand** (1P) **nandati** (pres. indict.) he exults, rejoices, **nandiṣyati** (future), **nandyate** (passive), **nandita**, **-nandya** (p.p.p.), **nanditā** (periphrasic future), **nandaniya**, **nandya** (gerundive), **nananda** (perfect), **nanditum** (infinitive), **nandayati** (causative), **ninandiṣati** (desirative), **anandit** (aorist)

नी

√**nī** (1U) **nayati** -te (pres. indict.) he leads, **nītvā** (gerund), **neṣyati** (future), **nīyate** (passive), **nīta**, **-nīya** (p.p.p.), **netā** (periphrasic future), **nayaniya**, **netavya**, **neya** (gerundive), **nīnāya** (perfect), **netum** (infinitive), **nāyayati** (causative), **niniṣati** (desirative), **anaiṣit** (aorist)

पठ्

√**paṭh** (1P) **paṭhati** (pres. indict.) he reads, **paṭhitvā** (gerund), **paṭhiṣyati** (future), **paṭhyate** (passive), **paṭhita**, **-paṭhya** (p.p.p.), **paṭhitā** (periphrasic future), **paṭhitavya**, **paṭhanīya**, **paṭhya** (gerundive), **papāṭha** (perfect), **paṭhitum** (infinitive), **paṭhayati** (causative), **pipaṭhiṣati** (desirative), **aphāṭhit** (aorist)

**पद्**

√pad (4Ā) **padyate** (pres. indict.) he goes, attains, **pattvā** (gerund), **patsyate** (future), **padyate** (passive), **panna**, -**padya** (p.p.p.), **paṭitā** (periphrastic future), **pādanīya**, **pattavya**, **pādya** (gerundive), **pede** (perfect), **pattum** (infinitive), **pādayati** (causative), **pitsate** (desirative), **apatta** (aorist)

**पश्**

√paś (1P) **paśyati** (pres. indict.) he sees

**पा**

√pā (1P) **pibati** (pres. indict.) he drinks, **pītvā** (gerund), **pāsyati** (future), **pīyate** (passive), **pīna**, -**pīya** (p.p.p.), **pātā** (periphrastic future), **pāniya**, **pātavya**, **peya** (gerundive), **papau** (perfect), **pātum** (infinitive), **pāyayati** (causative), **pipāsatī** (desirative), **apāt** (aorist)

**प्रछ्**

√prach (6P) **prēchati** (pres. indict.) he asks, **prētvā** (gerund), **prakṣyati** (future), **prēchhyate** (passive), **prṣṭa**, -**prēchya** (p.p.p.), **praṣṭā** (periphrastic future), **praṣṭavya**, **prēchya** (gerundive), **papraccha** (perfect), **praṣṭum** (infinitive), **pracchayati** (causative), **piprēchiṣati** (desirative), **aprākṣit** (aorist)

बुध्

√**budh** (1U) **bodhati** -te (pres. indict.) he knows, **buddhvā** (gerund), **bodhiyatī** (future), **bhudyate** (passive), **buddha**, **-budhya** (p.p.p.), **bodhitā** (periphrastic future), **bodhaniya**, **bodhitavya**, **bodhya** (gerundive), **bubodha** (perfect), **bodhitum** (infinitive), **bodhayati** (causative), **bubodhiyatī** (desirative), **abhodit** (aorist)

ब्रू

√**brū** (2U) **bravīti**, **brūte** (pres. indict.) he speaks

भाष्

√**bhāṣ** (1Ā) **bhāṣate** (pres. indict.) he speaks, **bhāṣitvā** (gerund), **bhāṣiyate** (future), **bhāṣyate** (passive), **bhāṣita**, **-bhāṣya** (p.p.p.), **bhāṣitā** (periphrastic future), **bhāṣitavya**, **bhāṣaniya**, **bhāṣya** (gerundive), **babbhāṣe** (perfect), **bhāṣitum** (infinitive), **bhāṣayati** (causative), **bibhāṣiṣate** (desirative), **abhāṣiṣṭa** (aorist)

भू

√**bhū** (1P) **bhavati** (pres. indict.) he is, **bhūtvā** (gerund), **bhaviyatī** (future), **bhūyate** (passive), **bhūta**, **-bhūya** (p.p.p.), **bhavitā** (periphrastic future), **bhavaniya**, **bhavitavya**, **bhāvya** (gerundive), **babbhūva** (perfect), **bhavitum** (infinitive), **bhāvayati** (causative), **bubhūṣati** (desirative), **abhūt** (aorist)

मन्

√**man** (4Ā) **manyate** (pres. indict.) he thinks, **manitvā**, **matvā** (gerund), **mamṣyate** (future), **manyate** (passive), **mata**, **-manya**, **-matya** (p.p.p.), **mantā** (periphrastic future), **mantavya**, **mānaniya**, **mānya** (gerundive), **mene** (perfect), **manitum**, **mantum** (infinitive), **mānayati** (causative), **mimamṣate** (desirative), **amamsta**, **amata** (aorist)

मुच्

√**muc** (6U) **muñcati -te** (pres. indict.) he releases, liberates, **muktvā** (gerund), **mokṣyati** (future), **mucyate** (passive), **mukta**, **-mucya** (p.p.p.), **muktā** (periphrastic future), **mocaniya**, **moktavya**, **mocya** (gerundive), **mumoca** (perfect), **moktum** (infinitive), **mocayati** (causative), **mumukṣati** (desirative), **amucat** (aorist)

युज्

√**yuj** (7U) **yunakti**, **yuñkte** (pres. indict.) he unites, **yuktvā** (gerund), **yokṣyati** (future), **yujyate** (passive), **yukta**, **-yujya** (p.p.p.), **yoktā** (periphrastic future), **yoktavya**, **yojanīya**, **yojya** (gerundive), **yuyoja** (perfect), **yoktum** (infinitive), **yojayati** (causative), **yuyuksati** (desirative), **ayujat** (aorist)

रम्

√**ram** (1Ā) **ramate** (pres. indict.) he enjoys, **rantvā**, **ratvā** (gerund), **ramṣyate** (future), **ramyate** (passive), **rata**, **-ramya**, **-ratya** (p.p.p.), **rantā** (periphrastic future), **ramañīya**, **rantavya**, **ramya** (gerundive), **reme** (perfect), **rantum** (infinitive), **ramayati** (causative), **riramṣate** (desirative), **aramsta** (aorist)

रुध्

√rudh (7U) ruṇaddhi, rundhe (pres. indict.) he blocks, opposes, ruddhvā (gerund), rotsyati (future), rudhyate (passive), ruddha, -rudhya (p.p.p.), roddhā (periphrasic future), rodhya (gerundive), rurodha (perfect), roddhum (infinitive), rodhayati (causative), rurutsati (desirative), arudhat (aorist)

लभ्

√labh (1Ā) labhate (pres. indict.) he obtains, labdhvā (gerund), lapsyate (future), labhyate (passive), labdha, -labhya (p.p.p.), labdhā (periphrasic future), labhya, labdhavya, labhaniya (gerundive), lebhe (perfect), labdhum (infinitive), lambhayati (causative), lipsate (desirative), alabdfa (aorist)

वच्

√vac (2P) vakti (pres. indict.) he says, uktvā (gerund), vakṣyati (future), ucyate (passive), ukta, -ucya (p.p.p.), vaktā, vācayitā (periphrasic future), vācaniya, vaktavya, vācya (gerundive), uvāca (perfect), vaktum (infinitive), vācayati (causative), vivakṣati (desirative), avocat (aorist)

वद्

√vad (1P) vadati (pres. indict.) he speaks, uditvā (gerund), vadiṣyati (future), udyate (passive), udita, -udya (p.p.p.), vaditā (periphrasic future), vaditavya, vādaniya, vadya (gerundive), uvāda (perfect), vaditum (infinitive), vādayati (causative), vivadiṣati (desirative), avādīt (aorist)

**वस्**

√**vas** (1P) **vasati** (pres. indict.) he lives,  
**uṣitvā** (gerund), **vatsyati** (future), **uṣyate**  
 (passive), **uṣita**, **-uṣya** (p.p.p.), **vastā**  
 (periphrastic future), **vastavya**, **vāsanīya**  
**vāsyā** (gerundive), **uvāsa** (perfect), **vas(i)tum**  
 (infinitive), **vāsayati** (causative), **vivatsati**  
 (desirative), **avātsit** (aorist)

**विज्**

√**vij** (6Ā) **vijate** (pres. indict.) he fears,  
**vijiṣyati** (future), **vijyate** (passive), **vigna**, **-vijya**  
 (p.p.p.), **vijitā** (periphrastic future), **vivije**  
 (perfect), **vijitum** (infinitive), **vejayati** (causative),  
**vivijiṣati** (desirative), **avijit** (aorist)

**विद्**

√**vid** (4Ā) **vidyate** (pres. indict.) he is,  
**vetsyate** (future), **vidyate** (passive), **vitta**, **-vidya**  
 (p.p.p.), **veptā** (periphrastic future), **vivide**  
 (perfect), **vivitsate** (desirative), **avitta** (aorist)

**विश्**

√**viś** (6P) **viśati** (pres. indict.) he enters  
**viṣṭvā** (gerund), **vekṣyati** (future), **viṣyate**  
 (passive), **viṣṭa**, **-viṣya** (p.p.p.), **veṣṭā**  
 (periphrastic future), **veṣaniya**, **veṣṭavya**,  
**veṣya** (gerundive), **viveṣa** (perfect), **veṣṭum**  
 (infinitive), **veṣayati** (causative), **vivikṣati**  
 (desirative), **avikṣat** (aorist)

**वृत्**

√**vṛt** (1Ā) **vartate** (pres. indict.) he is,  
**vṛttvā** (gerund), **vartisyate** (future), **vrtyate**  
 (passive), **vṛtta**, -**vṛtya** (p.p.p.), **vartitā**  
 (periphrastic future), **vartaniya**, **vartitavya**,  
**vartya** (gerundive), **vavarta** (perfect),  
**vartitum** (infinitive), **vartayati** (causative),  
**vivartisate** (desirative), **avṛtat** (aorist)

**व्रज्**

√**vraj** (1P) **vrajati** (pres. indict.) he goes, he  
 walks, **vrajitvā** (gerund), **vrajiṣyati** (future),  
**vrajyate** (passive), **vrajita**, -**vrajya** (p.p.p.),  
**vrajitā** (periphrastic future), **vrajya**  
 (gerundive), **vavrāja** (perfect), **vrajitum**  
 (infinitive), **vrajayati** (causative), **vivrajiṣati**  
 (desirative), **avrājīt** (aorist)

**शक्**

√**śak** (5P) **śaknoti** (pres. indict.) he is able,  
**śaktvā** (gerund), **śakiṣyati**, **śakṣyati** (future),  
**śakyate** (passive), **śakta**, **śakta**, -**śakya**  
 (p.p.p.), **śaktā** (periphrastic future), **śakya**  
 (gerundive), **śaśāka** (perfect) **śakitum**,  
**śaktum** (infinitive), **śākayati** (causative),  
**śikṣati** (desirative), **aśakat** (aorist)

**शुभ्**

√**śubh** (1Ā) **śobhate** (pres. indict.) he shines,  
**śobhitvā** (gerund), **śobhiṣyati** (future),  
**śobhita**, **subhita** (p.p.p.), **śobhitā**  
 (periphrastic future), **śobhaniya** (gerundive),  
**śuśobha** (perfect), **śobhitum** (infinitive),  
**śobhayati** (causative), **śuśobhiṣate**  
 (desirative), **aśusat** (aorist)

श्रु-

$\sqrt{sru}$  (5P) **śrṇoti** (pres. indict.) he hears,  
**śrutvā** (gerund), **śroṣyati** (future), **śrūyate**  
 (passive), **śruta**, -**śrutya** (p.p.p.), **śrotā**  
 (periphrastic future), **śravaniya**, **śrotavya**,  
**śravya** (gerundive), **śuśrāva** (perfect),  
**śrotum** (infinitive), **śrāvayati** (causative),  
**śuśrūṣate** (desirative), **aśrauṣit** (aorist)

सु-

$\sqrt{su}$  (5U) **sunoti**, **sunute** (pres. indict.) he  
 presses, **sutvā** (gerund), **soṣyati** (future),  
**sūyate** (passive), **suta**, -**suya** (p.p.p.), **sotā**  
 (periphrastic future), **sotavya** (gerundive),  
**susāva** (perfect), **sotum** (infinitive), **sāvayati**  
 (causative), **susūṣati** (desirative), **asauṣit**  
 (aorist)

सृज्-

$\sqrt{sṛj}$  (6P) **sṛjati** (pres. indict.) he creates,  
 emits, **sṛṣtvā** (gerund), **sṛakṣyati** (future),  
**sṛjyate** (passive), **sṛṣṭa**, -**sṛjya** (p.p.p.),  
**sṛastā** (periphrastic future), **sṛastavya**, **sarjya**  
 (gerundive), **sasarja** (perfect), **sṛastum**  
 (infinitive), **sarjayati** (causative), **sisṛkṣati**  
 (desirative), **asṛākṣit** (aorist)

सेव्-

$\sqrt{sev}$  (1Ā) **sevate** (pres. indict.) he serves,  
**sevitvā** (gerund), **seviṣyate** (future), **sevyate**  
 (passive), **sevita**, -**sevyā** (p.p.p.), **sevaniya**,  
**sevitavya**, **sevyā** (gerundive), **siṣeve** (perfect),  
**sevitum** (infinitive), **sevayati** (causative),  
**siṣevisate** (desirative), **aseviṣṭa** (aorist)

स्था

√sthā (1P) tiṣṭhati (pres. indict.) he stands,  
sthitvā (gerund), sthāsyati (future), sthiyate  
(passive), sthita, -sthāya (p.p.p.), sthātā  
(periphrasic future), sthātavya, stheya  
(gerundive), tasthau (perfect), sthātum  
(infinitive), sthāpayati (causative), tiṣṭhāsatī  
(desirative), asthāt (aorist)

स्मि

√smi (1Ā) smayate (pres. indict.) he smiles,  
smitvā (gerund), smesyate (future), smīyate  
(passive), smita, -smitya, -smayitya  
(p.p.p.), smetā (periphrasic future),  
smayaniya, smetavya, smāya (gerundive),  
siṣṭmiye (perfect), smetum (infinitive),  
smāyayati (causative), sismayıṣate  
(desirative), asmeṣṭa (aorist)

स्मृ

√smṛ (1P) smarati (pres. indict.) he  
remembers, smṛtvā (gerund), smariyati  
(future), smaryate (passive), smṛta, -smṛtya  
(p.p.p.), smartā (periphrasic future),  
smaraniya, smartavya, smarya (gerundive),  
sasmāra (perfect), smartum (infinitive),  
smārayati (causative), susmūrṣate  
(desirative), asmārṣite (aorist)

हन्

√han (2P) hanti (pres. indict.) he kills,  
hatvā (gerund), hanisyati (future), hanyate  
(passive), hata, -hanya, -hatya (p.p.p.),  
hantā (periphrasic future), hantavya  
(gerundive), jaghāna (perfect), hantum  
(infinitive), ghātayati (causative), jighāṃsatī  
(desirative), avadhīt (aorist)

हस्

✓ **has** (1P) **hasati** (pres. indict.) he laughs,  
**hasitvā** (gerund), **hasiyati** (future), **hasyate**  
 (passive), **hasita**, **-hasya** (p.p.p.), **hasitā**  
 (periphrastic future), **hasaniya**, **hasitavya**,  
**hāsyā** (gerundive), **janāsa** (perfect), **hasitum**  
 (infinitive), **hāsayati** (causative), **jihasiṣati**  
 (desirative), **ahasit** (aorist)

हा

✓ **hā** (3P) **jahāti** (pres. indict.) he abandons,  
**hitvā** (gerund), **hāsyati** (future), **hiyate**  
 (passive), **hīna**, **-haya** (p.p.p.), **hātā**  
 (periphrastic future), **hātavya**, **heya**  
 (gerundive), **jahau** (perfect), **hātum**  
 (infinitive), **hāpayati** (causative), **jihāsatī**  
 (desirative), **ahā(sī)t** (aorist)

हु

✓ **hu** (3P) **juhoti** (pres. indict.) he offers,  
**hutvā** (gerund), **hoşyati** (future), **hūyate**  
 (passive), **huta**, **-hūya** (p.p.p.), **hotā**  
 (periphrastic future), **hotavya**, **havya**  
 (gerundive), **juhāva** (perfect), **hotum**  
 (infinitive), **hāvayati** (causative), **juhūsatī**  
 (desirative), **ahauṣīt** (aorist)

हर

✓ **hṛ** (1U) **harati -te** (pres. indict.) he takes,  
**hṛtvā** (gerund), **harişyati** (future), **hriyate**  
 (passive), **hṛta**, **-hṛtya** (p.p.p.), **hartā**  
 (periphrastic future), **haraniya**, **hartatyā**,  
**hāryā** (gerundive), **jahāra** (perfect), **hartum**  
 (infinitive), **hārayati** (causative), **jihirṣati**  
 (desirative), **ahārṣīt** (aorist)

## VERB CLASSES

## CLASS 1

Root:  $\sqrt{bhū}$  'be' Present stem: **bhava**

	Parasmaipada			Ātmanepada		
Present						
<b>bhavati</b>	<b>bhavataḥ</b>	<b>bhavanti</b>	<b>bhavate</b>	<b>bhavete</b>	<b>bhavante</b>	<b>bhavante</b>
<b>bhavasi</b>	<b>bhavathāḥ</b>	<b>bhavatha</b>	<b>bhavase</b>	<b>bhavethe</b>	<b>bhavadhvē</b>	<b>bhavadhvē</b>
<b>bhavāmi</b>	<b>bhavāvah</b>	<b>bhavāmaḥ</b>	<b>bhave</b>	<b>bhavāvahē</b>	<b>bhavāmahe</b>	<b>bhavāmahe</b>
Imperfect						
<b>abhavat</b>	<b>abhavatām</b>	<b>abhavan</b>	<b>abjavata</b>	<b>abhavetām</b>	<b>abjavanta</b>	<b>abjavanta</b>
<b>abhavah</b>	<b>abhavatam</b>	<b>abhavata</b>	<b>abjavathāḥ</b>	<b>abhavethām</b>	<b>abjavadhvam</b>	<b>abjavadhvam</b>
<b>abhavam</b>	<b>abhavāva</b>	<b>abhavāma</b>	<b>abhave</b>	<b>abhavāvahi</b>	<b>abhavāmahī</b>	<b>abhavāmahī</b>
Imperative						
<b>bhavatu</b>	<b>bhavatām</b>	<b>bhavantu</b>	<b>bhavatām</b>	<b>bhavetām</b>	<b>bhavantām</b>	<b>bhavantām</b>
<b>bhava</b>	<b>bhavatam</b>	<b>bhavata</b>	<b>bhavasva</b>	<b>bhavethām</b>	<b>bhavadhvam</b>	<b>bhavadhvam</b>
<b>bhavāni</b>	<b>bhavāva</b>	<b>bhavāma</b>	<b>bhavai</b>	<b>bhavāvahai</b>	<b>bhavāmahai</b>	<b>bhavāmahai</b>
Optative						
<b>bhavet</b>	<b>bhavetām</b>	<b>bhaveyuh</b>	<b>bhaveta</b>	<b>bhaveyātām</b>	<b>bhaveran</b>	<b>bhaveran</b>
<b>bhaveḥ</b>	<b>bhavetam</b>	<b>bhaveta</b>	<b>bhavethāḥ</b>	<b>bhaveyātām</b>	<b>bhavedhvam</b>	<b>bhavedhvam</b>
<b>bhaveyam</b>	<b>bhaveva</b>	<b>bhavema</b>	<b>bhaveya</b>	<b>bhavevahi</b>	<b>bhavemahi</b>	<b>bhavemahi</b>

## CLASS 2

Root: √ad, 'eat' Present stem: at, at

	Parasmaipada			Ātmanepada	
Present					
<u>atti</u>	attah	adanti	atte	adāte	adate
<u>atsi</u>	atthah	attha	atse	adāthe	addhve
<u>admi</u>	advah	admaḥ	ade	advahe	admahe
Imperfect					
<u>ādat</u>	āttām	ādan	ātta	ādātām	ādata
<u>ādah</u>	āttam	ātta	ātthāḥ	ādāthām	āddhvam
<u>ādam</u>	ādva	ādma	ādi	ādvahi	ādmahi
Imperative					
<u>attu</u>	attām	adantu	attām	adātām	adatām
<u>addhi</u>	attam	atta	atsva	adāthām	addhvam
<u>adāni</u>	<u>adāva</u>	<u>adāma</u>	<u>adai</u>	<u>adāvahai</u>	<u>adāmahai</u>
Optative					
<u>adyāt</u>	adyātām	adyuh	adīta	adīyātām	adīran
<u>adyāh</u>	adyātam	adyāta	adīthāḥ	adīyāthām	adīdhvam
<u>adyām</u>	adyāva	adyāma	adīya	adīvahi	adīmahi

## CLASS 3

Root: *√hu*, 'offer' Present stem: **juho, juhu**

**Parasmaipada****Ātmanepada**

## Present

<b><u>juhoti</u></b>	<b>juhutah</b>	<b>juhuati</b>	<b>juhute</b>	<b>juhvāte</b>	<b>juhvate</b>
<b><u>juhosī</u></b>	<b>juhuthah</b>	<b>juhutha</b>	<b>juhuše</b>	<b>juhvāthe</b>	<b>juhudhve</b>
<b><u>juhomī</u></b>	<b>juhuvaḥ</b>	<b>juhumah</b>	<b>juhve</b>	<b>juhuvahe</b>	<b>juhumahē</b>

## Imperfect

<b><u>ajuhot</u></b>	<b>ajuhutām</b>	<b>ajuhavuḥ</b>	<b>ajuhuta</b>	<b>ajuhvātām</b>	<b>ajuhvata</b>
<b><u>ajuhoh</u></b>	<b>ajuhutam</b>	<b>ajuhuta</b>	<b>ajuhuthah</b>	<b>ajuhvāthām</b>	<b>ajuhudhvam</b>
<b><u>ajuhavam</u></b>	<b>ajuhuva</b>	<b>ajuhuma</b>	<b>ajuhvi</b>	<b>ajuhuvahi</b>	<b>ajuhumahi</b>

## Imperative

<b><u>juhotu</u></b>	<b>juhutām</b>	<b>juhvatu</b>	<b>juhutām</b>	<b>juhvātām</b>	<b>juhvatām</b>
<b><u>juhudhi</u></b>	<b>juhutam</b>	<b>juhuta</b>	<b>juhuṣva</b>	<b>juhvāthām</b>	<b>juhudhvam</b>
<b><u>juhavāni</u></b>	<b>juhavāva</b>	<b>juhavāma</b>	<b>juhavai</b>	<b>juhavāvahai</b>	<b>juhavāmahai</b>

## Optative

<b><u>juhuyāt</u></b>	<b>juhuyātām</b>	<b>juhuyuḥ</b>	<b>juhvīta</b>	<b>juhvīyātām</b>	<b>juhvīran</b>
<b><u>juhuyaḥ</u></b>	<b>juhuyātam</b>	<b>juhuyāta</b>	<b>juhvīthah</b>	<b>juhvīyāthām</b>	<b>juhvīdhvam</b>
<b><u>juhuyām</u></b>	<b>juhuyāva</b>	<b>juhuyāma</b>	<b>juhvīya</b>	<b>juhvīvahi</b>	<b>juhvīmahī</b>

## CLASS 4

Root:  $\sqrt{div}$  'play' Present stem:  $\bar{d}ivya$

Parasmaipada			Ātmanepada		
Present					
$\bar{d}ivyati$	$\bar{d}ivyatāḥ$	$\bar{d}ivyanti$	$\bar{d}ivyate$	$\bar{d}ivyete$	$\bar{d}ivyante$
$\bar{d}ivyasi$	$\bar{d}ivyathāḥ$	$\bar{d}ivyatha$	$\bar{d}ivyase$	$\bar{d}ivyethe$	$\bar{d}ivyadhve$
$\bar{d}ivyāmi$	$\bar{d}ivyāvah$	$\bar{d}ivyāmaḥ$	$\bar{d}ivye$	$\bar{d}ivyāvahē$	$\bar{d}ivyāmahe$
Imperfect					
$\bar{a}\bar{d}ivyat$	$\bar{a}\bar{d}ivyatām$	$\bar{a}\bar{d}ivyan$	$\bar{a}\bar{d}ivyata$	$\bar{a}\bar{d}ivyetām$	$\bar{a}\bar{d}ivyanta$
$\bar{a}\bar{d}ivyah$	$\bar{a}\bar{d}ivyatam$	$\bar{a}\bar{d}ivyata$	$\bar{a}\bar{d}ivyathāḥ$	$\bar{a}\bar{d}ivyethām$	$\bar{a}\bar{d}ivyadhvam$
$\bar{a}\bar{d}ivyam$	$\bar{a}\bar{d}ivyāva$	$\bar{a}\bar{d}ivyāma$	$\bar{a}\bar{d}ivye$	$\bar{a}\bar{d}ivyāvahi$	$\bar{a}\bar{d}ivyāmahi$
Imperative					
$\bar{d}ivyatū$	$\bar{d}ivyatām$	$\bar{d}ivyantu$	$\bar{d}ivyatām$	$\bar{d}ivyetām$	$\bar{d}ivyantām$
$\bar{d}ivya$	$\bar{d}ivyatam$	$\bar{d}ivyata$	$\bar{d}ivyasva$	$\bar{d}ivyethām$	$\bar{d}ivyadhvam$
$\bar{d}ivyāni$	$\bar{d}ivyāva$	$\bar{d}ivyāma$	$\bar{d}ivyai$	$\bar{d}ivyāvahai$	$\bar{d}ivyāmahai$
Optative					
$\bar{d}ivyet$	$\bar{d}ivyetām$	$\bar{d}ivyeyuh$	$\bar{d}ivyeta$	$\bar{d}ivyeyatām$	$\bar{d}ivyeran$
$\bar{d}ivyeh$	$\bar{d}ivyetam$	$\bar{d}ivyeta$	$\bar{d}ivyethāḥ$	$\bar{d}ivyeyāthām$	$\bar{d}ivyedhvam$
$\bar{d}ivyeyam$	$\bar{d}ivyeva$	$\bar{d}ivyema$	$\bar{d}ivyeya$	$\bar{d}ivyevahi$	$\bar{d}ivyemahi$

## CLASS 5

Root:  $\sqrt{su}$ , 'press' Present stem: suno, sunu

## Parasmaipada

## Present

<u>sunoti</u>	sunutah	sunvanti	sunute	sunvāte	sunvate
<u>sunosi</u>	sunuthah	sunutha	sunuṣe	sunvāthe	sunudhve
<u>sunomi</u>	sunuvah	sunumah	sunve	sunuvahē	sunumahe

## Imperfect

<u>asunot</u>	asunutām	asunvan	asunuta	asunvātām	asunvata
<u>asunoh</u>	asunutam	asunuta	asunuthah	asunvāthām	asunudhvam
<u>asunavam</u>	asunuva	asunuma	asunvi	asunuvahi	asunumahi

## Imperative

<u>sunotu</u>	sunutām	sunvantu	sunutām	sunvātām	sunvatām
<u>sunu</u>	sunutam	sunuta	sunuṣva	sunvāthām	sunudhvam
<u>sunavāni</u>	<u>sunavāva</u>	<u>sunavāma</u>	<u>sunavai</u>	<u>sunavāvahai</u>	<u>sunavāmahai</u>

## Optative

<u>sunuyāt</u>	sunuyātām	sunuyuh	sunvīta	sunvīyātām	sunvīran
<u>sunuyāh</u>	sunuyātam	sunuyāta	sunvīthah	sunvīyāthām	sunvīdhvam
<u>sunuyām</u>	sunuyāva	sunuyāma	sunvīya	sunvīvahi	sunvīmahai

## Ātmanepada

## CLASS 6

Root:  $\sqrt{tud}$  'push' Present stem: tuda

## Parasmaipada

## Ātmanepada

## Present

tudati	tudataḥ	tudanti	tudate	tudete	tudante
tudasi	tudathaḥ	tudatha	tudase	tudethe	tudadhve
tudāmi	tudāvah	tudāmah	tude	tudāvahē	tudāmahe

## Imperfect

atudat	atudatām	atudan	atudata	atudetām	atudanta
atudah	atudatam	atudata	atudathāḥ	atudethām	atudadhvam
atudam	atudāvā	atudāma	atude	atudāvahi	atudāmahi

## Imperative

tudatu	tudatām	tudantu	tudatām	tudetām	tudantām
tuda	tudatam	tudata	tudasva	tudethām	tudadhvam
tudāni	tudāvā	tudāma	tudai	tudāvahai	tudāmahai

## Optative

tudet	tudetām	tudeyuḥ	tudeta	tudeyātām	tuderan
tudeḥ	tudetam	tudeta	tudethāḥ	tudeyāthām	tudedhvam
tudeyam	tudeva	tudema	tudeya	tudevahi	tudemahi

## CLASS 7

Root:  $\sqrt{rudh}$ , 'block' Present stem: **runadh**, **rundh**

	Parasmaipada			Ātmanepada		
Present						
<u>runaddhi</u>	runddhah	rundhanti	runddhe	rundhāte	rundhate	
<u>runatsi</u>	runddhah	runddha	runtse	rundhāthe	runddhve	
<u>runadhmi</u>	rundhvah	rundhmah	rundhe	rundhvahē	rundhmahe	
Imperfect						
<u>arunat</u>	arunddhām	arundhan	arundha	arundhātām	arundhata	
<u>arunat</u>	arunddhām	arunddhā	arunddhāh	arundhāthām	arunddhvam	
<u>arunadhām</u>	arundhva	arundhma	arundhi	arundhvahi	arundhmahi	
Imperative						
<u>runaddhu</u>	runddhām	rundhantu	runddhām	rundhātām	rundhatām	
<u>runddhī</u>	runddhām	runddha	runtsva	rundhāthām	runddhvam	
<u>runadhāni</u>	rundhāva	rundhāma	runadhai	<u>runadhāyahai</u>	<u>runadhāmahai</u>	
Optative						
<u>rundhyāt</u>	rundhyātām	rundhyuh	rundhīta	rundhīyātām	rundhīran	
<u>rundhyāh</u>	rundhyātām	rundhyāta	rundhīthāh	rundhīyāthām	rundhīdhvam	
<u>rundhyām</u>	rundhyāva	rundhyāma	rundhīya	rundhīvahi	rundhīmahi	

## CLASS 8

Root:  $\sqrt{tan}$ , 'stretch' Present stem: **tano**, **tanu**

**Parasmaipada****Ātmanepada**

## Present

<b><u>tanoti</u></b>	<b>tanutah</b>	<b>tanvanti</b>	<b>tanute</b>	<b>tanvāte</b>	<b>tanvate</b>
<b><u>tanośi</u></b>	<b>tanuthah</b>	<b>tanutha</b>	<b>tanuše</b>	<b>tanvāthe</b>	<b>tanudhvē</b>
<b><u>tanomi</u></b>	<b>tanuvah</b>	<b>tanumah</b>	<b>tanve</b>	<b>tanuvahē</b>	<b>tanumahe</b>

## Imperfect

<b><u>atanot</u></b>	<b>atanutām</b>	<b>atanvan</b>	<b>atanuta</b>	<b>atanvātām</b>	<b>atanvata</b>
<b><u>atanoh</u></b>	<b>atanutam</b>	<b>atanuta</b>	<b>atanuthah</b>	<b>atanvāthām</b>	<b>atanudhvam</b>
<b><u>atanavam</u></b>	<b>atanuva</b>	<b>atanuma</b>	<b>atanvi</b>	<b>atanuvahi</b>	<b>atanumahi</b>

## Imperative

<b><u>tanotu</u></b>	<b>tanutām</b>	<b>tanvantu</b>	<b>tanutām</b>	<b>tanvātām</b>	<b>tanvatām</b>
<b><u>tanu</u></b>	<b>tanutam</b>	<b>tanuta</b>	<b>tanuṣva</b>	<b>tanvāthām</b>	<b>tanudhvam</b>
<b><u>tanavāni</u></b>	<b><u>tanavāva</u></b>	<b><u>tanavāma</u></b>	<b><u>tanavai</u></b>	<b><u>tanavāvahai</u></b>	<b><u>tanavāmahai</u></b>

## Optative

<b><u>tanuyāt</u></b>	<b>tanuyātām</b>	<b>tanuyuh</b>	<b>tanvīta</b>	<b>tanvīyātām</b>	<b>tanvīran</b>
<b><u>tanuyāh</u></b>	<b>tanuyātam</b>	<b>tanuyāta</b>	<b>tanvīthah</b>	<b>tanvīyāthām</b>	<b>tanvīdhvam</b>
<b><u>tanuyām</u></b>	<b>tanuyāva</b>	<b>tanuyāma</b>	<b>tanvīya</b>	<b>tanvīvahi</b>	<b>tanvīmahai</b>

## CLASS 9

Root: √*kri*, 'buy' Present stem: *krīṇā*, *krīṇī*, *krīṇ*

## Parasmaipada

## Ātmanepada

## Present

<i>krīṇāti</i>	<i>krīṇītaḥ</i>	<i>krīṇanti</i>	<i>krīṇīte</i>	<i>krīṇāte</i>	<i>krīṇate</i>
<i>krīṇāsi</i>	<i>krīṇīthah</i>	<i>krīṇītha</i>	<i>krīṇīṣe</i>	<i>krīṇāthe</i>	<i>krīṇīdhve</i>
<i>krīṇāmi</i>	<i>krīṇīvah</i>	<i>krīṇīmah</i>	<i>krīṇe</i>	<i>krīṇīvahē</i>	<i>krīṇīmahe</i>

## Imperfect

<i>akrīṇāt</i>	<i>akrīṇītām</i>	<i>akrīṇan</i>	<i>akrīṇīta</i>	<i>akrīṇātām</i>	<i>akrīṇata</i>
<i>akrīṇāh</i>	<i>akrīṇītām</i>	<i>akrīṇīta</i>	<i>akrīṇīthah</i>	<i>akrīṇāthām</i>	<i>akrīṇīdhvam</i>
<i>akrīṇām</i>	<i>akrīṇīvā</i>	<i>akrīṇīma</i>	<i>akrīṇī</i>	<i>akrīṇīvahī</i>	<i>akrīṇīmahi</i>

## Imperative

<i>krīṇātu</i>	<i>krīṇītām</i>	<i>krīṇantu</i>	<i>krīṇītām</i>	<i>krīṇātām</i>	<i>krīṇatām</i>
<i>krīṇīhi</i>	<i>krīṇītām</i>	<i>krīṇīta</i>	<i>krīṇīṣva</i>	<i>krīṇāthām</i>	<i>krīṇīdhvam</i>
<i>krīṇāni</i>	<i>krīṇāvā</i>	<i>krīṇāma</i>	<i>krīṇai</i>	<i>krīṇāvahai</i>	<i>krīṇāmahai</i>

## Optative

<i>krīṇīyāt</i>	<i>krīṇīyātām</i>	<i>krīṇīyuḥ</i>	<i>krīṇīta</i>	<i>krīṇīyātām</i>	<i>krīṇīran</i>
<i>krīṇīyāh</i>	<i>krīṇīyātām</i>	<i>krīṇīyāta</i>	<i>krīṇīthah</i>	<i>krīṇīyāthām</i>	<i>krīṇīdhvam</i>
<i>krīṇīyām</i>	<i>krīṇīyāvā</i>	<i>krīṇīyāma</i>	<i>krīṇīya</i>	<i>krīṇīvahī</i>	<i>krīṇīmahi</i>

## CLASS 10

Root: *√cur* 'steal' Present stem: **coraya**

Parasmaipada			Ātmanepada		
Present					
corayati	corayataḥ	corayanti	corayate	corayete	corayante
corayasi	corayathāḥ	corayatha	corayase	corayethē	corayadhve
corayāmi	corayāvah	corayāmāḥ	coraye	corayāvahē	corayāmahe
Imperfect					
acorayat	acorayatām	acorayan	acorayata	acorayetām	acorayanta
acorayah	acorayatam	acorayata	acorayathāḥ	acorayethām	acorayadhvam
acorayam	acorayāva	acorayāma	acoraye	acorayāvahi	acorayāmahi
Imperative					
corayatu	corayatām	corayantu	corayatām	corayetām	corayantām
coraya	corayatam	corayata	corayasva	corayethām	corayadhvam
corayāni	corayāva	corayāma	corayai	corayāvahai	corayāmahai
Optative					
corayet	corayetām	corayeyuh	corayeta	corayeyatām	corayeran
corayeh	corayetam	corayeta	corayethāḥ	corayeyāthām	corayedhvam
corayeyam	corayeva	corayema	corayeya	corayevahi	corayemahi

**VERB ENDINGS**  
**CLASSES 1, 4, 6, 10**

	Parasmaipada			Ātmanepada		
Present						
ति	तस्	अन्ति	ते	इते	अन्ते	
सि	थस्	थ	से	इथे	ध्वे	
मि	वस्	मस्	इ	वहे	महे	
Imperfect						
त्	ताम्	अन्	त	इताम्	अन्त	
स्	तम्	त	थाः	इथाम्	ध्वम्	
अम्	व	म	इ	वहि	महि	
Imperative						
तु	ताम्	अन्तु	ताम्	इताम्	अन्ताम्	
-	तम्	त	स्व	इथाम्	ध्वम्	
आनि	आव	आम	ऐ	आवहे	आमहे	
Optative						
ईत्	ईताम्	ईयुस्	ईत	ईयाताम्	ईरन्	
ईस्	ईतम्	ईत	ईथास्	ईयाथाम्	ईध्वम्	
ईयम्	ईव	ईम्	ईय	ईवहि	ईमहि	

**VERB ENDINGS**  
**CLASSES 2, 3, 5, 7, 8, 9**

Parasmaipada			Ātmanepada		
<b>Present</b>			<b>Ātmanepada</b>		
ति	तस्	आन्ति	ते	आते	आते
सि	थस्	थ	से	आथे	ध्वे
मि	वस्	मस्	ए	वहे	महे
<b>Imperfect</b>					
त्	ताम्	आन्	त	आताम्	आत
स्	तम्	त	थास्	आथाम्	ध्वम्
अम्	व	म	इ	वहि	महि
<b>Imperative</b>					
तु	ताम्	आन्तु	ताम्	आताम्	आताम्
हि	तम्	त	स्व	आथाम्	ध्वम्
आनि	आव	आम	ऐ	आवहै	आमहै
<b>Optative</b>					
यात्	याताम्	युस्	ईत	ईयाताम्	ईरन्
यास्	यअतम्	यात	ईथास्	ईयाथाम्	ईध्वम्
याम्	याव	याम	ईय	ईवहि	ईमहि

The present indicative ātmanepada endings for classes 2, 3, 5, 7, 8, and 9:

prathama	ते	आते	अते
madhyama	से	आथे	ध्वे
uttama	ए	वहे	महे

Root: √tan Class 8 (stretch) Present Indicative ātmanepada

prathama	तनुते tanute tanu+te	तन्वाते tanvāte tanu+āte	तन्वते tanvate tanu+ate
madhyama	तनुषे tanuṣe tanu+se	तन्वाथे tanvāthe tanu+āthe	तनुध्वे tanudhvē tanu+dhve
uttama	तन्वे tanve tanu+e	तनुवहे tanuvahe tanu+vahe	तनुमहे tanumahe tanu+mah
	eka	dvi	bahu

Notice that all forms are weak. Notice that the third person plural has no **n** (**ate** rather than **ante**). Notice also that the second and third person dual are slightly different than classes 1, 4, 6, and 10.

The imperfect middle endings for classes 2, 3, 5, 7, 8, and 9:

prathama	त ta	आताम् ātām	अत at
madhyama	धास् dhas	आथाम् āthām	ध्वम् dhvam
uttama	इ i	वहि vahi	महि mahi

Root:  $\sqrt{tan}$  Class 8 (stretch) Imperfect ātmanepada

prathama	अतनुत atanuta a+tanu+ta	अतन्वाताम् atanvātām a+tanu+ātām	अतन्वत atanvata a+tanu+ata
madhyama	अतनुथाः atanuthāḥ a+tanu+thāḥ	अतन्वाथाम् atanvāthām a+tanu+āthām	अतनुध्वम् atanudhvam a+tanu+dhvam
uttama	अतन्वि atanvi a+tanu+i	अतनुवहि atanuvahi a+tanu+vahi	अतनुमहि atanumahi a+tanu+mahi

— eka —      — dvi —      — bahu —

Notice that while the imperfect active verbs for these classes are strong in the singular, all imperfect middle verbs are weak.

The imperfect middle endings for classes 2, 3, 5, 7, 8, and 9:

prathama	त	आताम्	अत
madhyama	धास्	आथाम्	ध्वम्
uttama	इ	वहि	महि

Root: √tan Class 8 (stretch) Imperfect ātmanepada

prathama	अतनुत्	अतन्वाताम्	अतन्वत्
	atanuta a+tanu+ta	atanvātām a+tanu+ātām	atanvata a+tanu+ata
madhyama	अतनुथाः	अतन्वाथाम्	अतनुध्वम्
	atanuthāḥ a+tanu+thās	atanvāthām a+tanu+āthām	atanudhvam a+tanu+dhvam
uttama	अतन्वि	अतनुवहि	अतनुमहि
	atanvī a+tanu+i	atanuvahi a+tanu+vahi	atanumahi a+tanu+mahi
	eka	dvi	bahu

Notice that while the imperfect active verbs for these classes are strong in the singular, all imperfect middle verbs are weak.

Root: √kr 8P (do) Present Indicative parasmaipada

prathama	करोति <u>karoti</u> kar+o+ti	कुरुतः kurutah kur+u+tas	कुर्वन्ति kurvanti kur+v+anti
madhyama	करोषि <u>karosi</u> kar+o+si	कुरुथः kuruthah kur+u+thas	कुरुथ kurutha kur+u+tha
uttama	करोमि <u>karomi</u> kar+o+mi	कुर्वः kurvah kur-u+vas	कुर्मः kurmah kur-u+mas
	eka	dvi	bahu

Root: √kr 8P (do) Imperfect parasmaipada

prathama	अकरोत् <u>akarot</u> a+kar+o+t	अकुरुताम् akurutām a+kur+u+tām	अकुर्वन् akurvan a+kur+u+an
madhyama	अकरोः <u>akaroh</u> a+kar+o+s	अकुरुतम् akurutam a+kur+u+tam	अकुरुत akuruta a+kur+u+ta
uttama	अकरवम् <u>akaravam</u> a+kar+o+am	अकुर्व akurva a+kur+va	अकुर्म akurma a+kur+ma
	eka	dvi	bahu

Root:  $\sqrt{kṛ}$  8P (do) Present Indicative **parasmaipada**

<b>prathama</b>	<b>करोति</b> <u><b>karoti</b></u> kar+o+ti	<b>कुरुतः</b> <b>kurutah</b> kur+u+tas	<b>कुर्वन्ति</b> <b>kurvanti</b> kur+v+anti
<b>madhyama</b>	<b>करोषि</b> <u><b>karosi</b></u> kar+o+si	<b>कुरुथः</b> <b>kuruthah</b> kur+u+thas	<b>कुरुथ</b> <b>kurutha</b> kur+u+tha
<b>uttama</b>	<b>करोमि</b> <u><b>karomi</b></u> kar+o+mi	<b>कुर्वः</b> <b>kurvah</b> kur-u+vas	<b>कुर्मः</b> <b>kurmaḥ</b> kur-u+mas

Root:  $\sqrt{kṛ}$  8P (do) Imperfect **parasmaipada**

<b>prathama</b>	<b>अकरोत्</b> <b>akarot</b> a+kar+o+t	<b>अकुरुताम्</b> <b>akurutām</b> a+kur+u+tām	<b>अकुर्वन्</b> <b>akurvan</b> a+kur+u+an
<b>madhyama</b>	<b>अकरोः</b> <b>akaroh</b> a+kar+o+s	<b>अकुरुतम्</b> <b>akurutam</b> a+kur+u+tam	<b>अकुरुत</b> <b>akuruta</b> a+kur+u+ta
<b>uttama</b>	<b>अकरवम्</b> <b>akaravam</b> a+kar+o+am	<b>अकुर्व</b> <b>akurva</b> a+kur+va	<b>अकुर्म</b> <b>akurma</b> a+kur+ma
	<b>eka</b>	<b>dvi</b>	<b>bahu</b>

## VOCABULARY

<b>अग्निः</b>	agnih̄ (mas.)	fire
<b>अङ्गं</b>	aṅgam (n.)	limb
<b>अङ्गिरस्</b>	aṅgiras (mas.)	Aṅgiras (a ṛṣi)
<b>अति</b>	ati (prefix)	across, beyond, surpassing
<b>अतिथिः</b>	atithih̄ (mas.)	guest
<b>अतीव</b>	atīva (ind.)	very
<b>अत्र</b>	atra (ind.)	here
<b>अद्</b>	ad̄ (2P) atti	he eats
<b>अधि</b>	adhi (prefix)	above, over, on
<b>अनु</b>	anu (prefix)	after, following
<b>अन्तर्</b>	antar (prefix)	within, between
<b>अन्य</b>	anya (mfn adj.)	other
<b>अप</b>	apa (prefix)	away, off
<b>अपि</b>	api (prefix)	on, close on
<b>अपि</b>	api (ind.)	also, too
<b>अभि</b>	abhi (prefix)	to, against
<b>अभिस्नेहः</b>	abhisnehaḥ (mas.)	undue fondness, attraction
<b>अमृतम्</b>	amṛtam (n.)	immortality
<b>अयम्</b>	ayam (mas. pro.)	this
<b>अर्जुनः</b>	arjunah̄ (mas.)	Arjuna

## VOCABULARY

<b>अग्निः</b>	<b>agnih</b> (mas.)	fire
<b>अङ्गं</b>	<b>aṅgam</b> (n.)	limb
<b>अङ्गिरस्</b>	<b>aṅgiras</b> (mas.)	Aṅgiras (a ṛṣi)
<b>अति</b>	<b>ati</b> (prefix)	across, beyond, surpassing
<b>अतिथिः</b>	<b>atithih</b> (mas.)	guest
<b>अतीव</b>	<b>atīva</b> (ind.)	very
<b>अत्र</b>	<b>atra</b> (ind.)	here
<b>अद्</b>	<b>√ad</b> (2P) <b>atti</b>	he eats
<b>अधि</b>	<b>adhi</b> (prefix)	above, over, on
<b>अनु</b>	<b>anu</b> (prefix)	after, following
<b>अन्तर्</b>	<b>antar</b> (prefix)	within, between
<b>अन्य</b>	<b>anya</b> (mfñ adj.)	other
<b>अप</b>	<b>apa</b> (prefix)	away, off
<b>अपि</b>	<b>api</b> (prefix)	on, close on
<b>अपि</b>	<b>api</b> (ind.)	also, too
<b>अभि</b>	<b>abhi</b> (prefix)	to, against
<b>अभिस्नेहः</b>	<b>abhisnehah</b> (mas.)	undue fondness, attraction
<b>अमृतम्</b>	<b>amṛtam</b> (n.)	immortality
<b>अयम्</b>	<b>ayam</b> (mas. pro.)	this
<b>अर्जुनः</b>	<b>arjunah</b> (mas.)	Arjuna

<b>अर्थः</b>	<b>arthah</b> (mas.)	object, purpose
<b>अर्ह</b>	<b>√arh</b> (1P) arhati	he is worthy
<b>अल्प</b>	<b>alpa</b> mf(ā)n (adj.)	little
<b>अव</b>	<b>ava</b> (prefix)	down, away, off
<b>अव गम्</b>	<b>ava + √gam</b> avagacchati	he understands
<b>अविद्या</b>	<b>avidyā</b> (fem.)	ignorance
<b>अश्वः</b>	<b>aśvah</b> (mas.)	horse
<b>अश्वकः</b>	<b>aśvakah</b> (mas.)	colt
<b>अष्ट</b>	<b>aṣṭa</b>	eight
<b>अष्टम</b>	<b>aṣṭama</b> mf(i)n (adj.)	eighth
<b>अस्</b>	<b>√as</b> (2P) asti	he, she, it is
<b>असिद्धिः</b>	<b>asiddhiḥ</b> (mas.)	failure
<b>अस्मद्</b>	<b>asmad</b> (pro.)	we (used in compounds)
<b>अहिंसा</b>	<b>ahimsā</b> (fem.)	non-injury
<b>अहो</b>	<b>aho</b> (ind.)	aha, hey!
<b>आ</b>	<b>ā</b> (prefix)	back, return
<b>आ गम्</b>	<b>ā + √gam</b> āgacchati	he comes
<b>आ नी</b>	<b>ā + √nī</b> ānayati	he brings
<b>आचार्यः</b>	<b>ācāryah</b> (mas.)	teacher
<b>आत्मन्</b>	<b>ātman</b> (mas.)	Self
<b>आदित्यः</b>	<b>ādityah</b> (mas.)	sun

<b>आदित्यवत्</b>	ādityavat (adv.)	like the sun
<b>आनन्दः</b>	ānandah (mas.)	joy, bliss
<b>आप्</b>	√āp (5P) āpnoti	he obtains
<b>आस्</b>	√ās (2Ā) āste	he sits
<b>इ</b>	√i (2P) eti	he goes
<b>इति</b>	iti (ind.)	(end of quote)
<b>इदम्</b>	idam (n. pro.)	this
<b>इन्द्रियम्</b>	indriyam (n.)	sense
<b>इयम्</b>	iyam (fem. pro.)	this
<b>इव</b>	iva (ind.)	as if, like
<b>इष्</b>	√iṣ (6P) icchati	he wishes, desires
<b>इह</b>	iha (ind.)	here, in this world
<b>उद्</b>	ud (prefix)	up, up out
<b>उद् भू</b>	ud + √bhū udbhavati	he is born
<b>उद् स्था</b>	ud + √sthā uttiṣṭhati	he stands up
<b>उप</b>	upa (prefix)	towards
<b>उप गम्</b>	upa + √gam upagacchati	he goes toward, approaches
<b>उभ</b>	ubha (mfñ adj.)	both (used in the dual)
<b>ऋषिः</b>	r̥ṣih (mas.)	seer, sage
<b>एक</b>	eka	one
<b>एतद्</b>	etad (mfñ pro.)	this

<b>एन</b>	<b>ena</b> (pro.)	this
<b>एव</b>	<b>eva</b> (ind.)	only, ever
<b>एवम्</b>	<b>evam</b> (ind.)	thus, in this way
<b>क</b>	<b>ka</b> (mas.pro.)	who, what
<b>कथम्</b>	<b>katham</b> (ind.)	how
<b>कथा</b>	<b>kathā</b> (fem.)	story
<b>कदा</b>	<b>kadā</b> (ind.)	when
<b>कन्या</b>	<b>kanyā</b> (fem.)	girl
<b>करणम्</b>	<b>karanam</b> (n.)	means of action, instrument
<b>कर्तृ</b>	<b>kartr̥</b> (mas.)	maker, doer
<b>कर्त्री</b>	<b>kartri</b> (fem.)	maker, doer
<b>कर्मन्</b>	<b>karman</b> (n.)	action
<b>कलिलः</b>	<b>kalilah</b> (mas.)	mire, thicket
<b>कविḥः</b>	<b>kaviḥ</b> (mas.)	poet
<b>का</b>	<b>kā</b> (fem. pro.)	who, what
<b>कामः</b>	<b>kāmah</b> (mas.)	desire
<b>काव्यम्</b>	<b>kāvyam</b> (n.)	poetry
<b>किम्</b>	<b>kim</b> (n. pro.)	what, how, why
<b>कीर्तिः</b>	<b>kirtih</b> (fem.)	glory, fame
<b>कुत्र</b>	<b>kutra</b> (ind.)	where
<b>कुपित</b>	<b>kupita mf(ā)n</b> (adj.)	angry

<b>कुलम्</b>	<b>kulam</b> (n.)	family
<b>कूर्मः</b>	<b>kūrmah</b> (mas.)	tortoise, turtle
<b>कृ</b>	<b>√kr</b> (8U) <b>karoti, kurute</b>	he makes, does, performs
<b>कृष्णः</b>	<b>kṛṣṇah</b> (mas.) mf(ā)n adj.	Kṛṣṇa, black
<b>कौशलम्</b>	<b>kauśalam</b> (n.)	skill, good fortune, prosperity
<b>क्री</b>	<b>√kri</b> (9U) <b>kriṇāti, kriṇīte</b>	he buys, purchases
<b>क्रोधः</b>	<b>krodhah</b> (mas.)	anger
<b>क्षेमः</b>	<b>kṣemah</b> (mas.)	security, prosperity
<b>गजः</b>	<b>gajah</b> (mas.)	elephant
<b>गम्</b>	<b>√gam</b> (1P) <b>gacchati</b>	he goes
<b>गुणः</b>	<b>gunah</b> (mas.)	quality, attribute, strand
<b>गुप्</b>	<b>√gup</b> (1P) <b>gopāyati</b>	he protects
<b>गुरुः</b>	<b>guruḥ</b> (mas.) mf(vī)n adj.	teacher, heavy
<b>गृहम्</b>	<b>gr̥ham</b> (n.)	house
<b>गै</b>	<b>√gai</b> (1P) <b>gāyati</b>	he sings
<b>गो</b>	<b>go</b> (mas.)	bull
<b>गो</b>	<b>go</b> (fem.)	cow
<b>ग्रामः</b>	<b>grāmah</b> (mas.)	village
<b>च</b>	<b>ca</b> (ind.)	and
<b>चक्षुस्</b>	<b>cakṣus</b> (n.)	eye

<b>चतुर्</b>	catur	four
<b>चतुर्थ</b>	caturtha mf(ī)n (adj.)	fourth
<b>चन</b>	cana (ind.)	(marks indefinite after ka, etc.)
<b>चन्द्रः</b>	candraḥ (mas.)	moon
<b>चिन्त्</b>	√cint (10U) cintayati -te	he thinks
<b>चित्</b>	cit (ind.)	(marks indefinite after ka, etc.)
<b>चुर्</b>	√cur (10U) corayati -te	he steals
<b>चेद्</b>	ced (ind.)	if (placed after the word it refers to)
<b>चेतस्</b>	cetas (n.)	mind, thought
<b>छाया</b>	chāyā (fem.)	shadow
<b>जन्</b>	√jan (4Ā) jāyate	he is born
<b>जन्मन्</b>	janman (n.)	birth, origin, rebirth
<b>जलम्</b>	jalam (n.)	water
<b>जि</b>	√ji (1P) jayati	he conquers
<b>जीव्</b>	√jīv (1P) jīvati	he lives
<b>जीवः</b>	jīvah (mas.)	living individual
<b>ज्ञा</b>	√jñā (9U) jānāti, jānīte	he knows
<b>ज्ञानम्</b>	jñānam (n.)	knowledge
<b>ज्योतिस्</b>	jyotis (n.)	light, flame
<b>ततः</b>	tataḥ (ind.)	therefore

<b>तत्र</b>	tatra (ind.)	there
<b>तथा</b>	tathā (ind.)	so, therefore
<b>तद्</b>	tad (pro.)	he, she, it (used in compounds)
<b>तदा</b>	tadā (ind.)	then
<b>तन्</b>	√tan (8U) tanoti, tanute	he stretches, spreads, goes
<b>तपस्</b>	tapas (n.)	austerity, increasing heat
<b>तमस्</b>	tamas (n.)	darkness, dullness
<b>तु</b>	tu (ind.)	but (not placed first in a sentence)
<b>तुद्</b>	√tud (6U) tudati -te	he pushes, strikes
<b>तुरीय</b>	turiya mf(ā)n (adj.)	fourth
<b>तुष्</b>	√tuṣ (4P) tuṣyati	he is satisfied, contented
<b>तृ</b>	√tṛ (1P) tarati	he crosses over
<b>तृतीय</b>	tr̥tiya mf(ā)n (adj.)	third
<b>तेजस्</b>	tejas (n.)	light, splendor
<b>त्यज्</b>	√tyaj (1P) tyajati	he abandons
<b>त्रि</b>	tri	three
<b>त्वद्</b>	tvad (pro.)	you (used in compounds)
<b>दश</b>	daśa	ten
<b>दशम</b>	daśama mf(ī)n (adj.)	tenth

दा	√dā (3U) dadāti, datte	he gives
दातृ	dātṛ (mas.)	giver
दात्री	dātri (fem.)	giver
दानम्	dānam (n.)	giving
दिव्	√div (4P) dīvyati	he plays, shines, increases
दुःखम्	duḥkham (n.)	suffering
दुस्	dus (prefix)	ill, bad, difficult, hard
दूरम्	dūram (n.)	distance
दृश्	√dr̥ś (1P) paśyati	he sees
देही	dehī (mas.)	embodied one, a person (in)
द्वन्द्वम्	dvandvam (n.)	“two-by-two,” pairs of opposites
द्वि	dvi	two (follows the declension of dva)
द्वितीय	dvitiya mf(ā)n (adj.)	second
द्विष्	√dviṣ (2U) dviṣṭi -te	he hates
धनुः	dhanuh (n.)	bow (us)
धा	√dhā (3U) dadhāti, dhatte	he places
धार्मिक	dhārmika mf(ī)n (adj.)	virtuous
धीः	dhiḥ (fem.)	intellect
.धृ	√dhṛ (1U) dharati -te	he holds

<b>धेनुः</b>	<b>dhenuh</b> (fem.)	cow
<b>न</b>	<b>na</b> (ind.)	not
<b>नदी</b>	<b>nadī</b> (fem.)	river
<b>नन्द्</b>	<b>√nand</b> (1P) <b>nandati</b>	he exults, rejoices <b>ni</b>
<b>नमस्</b>	<b>namas</b> (n.)	reverence, homage
<b>नरः</b>	<b>narah</b> (mas.)	man
<b>नव</b>	<b>nava</b>	nine
<b>नवम</b>	<b>navama</b> mf(i)n (adj.)	ninth
<b>नाम</b>	<b>nāma</b> (ind.)	by name
<b>नामन्</b>	<b>nāman</b> (n.)	name
<b>नि</b>	<b>ni</b> (prefix)	down, into
<b>नि वृत्</b>	<b>ni + √vṛt</b> <b>nivartate</b>	he ceases
<b>नित्य</b>	<b>nitya</b> mf(ā)n (adj.)	eternal, continual, perpetual
<b>नित्यम्</b>	<b>nityam</b> (adv.)	always
<b>निर्वेदः</b>	<b>nirvedah</b> (mas.)	indifference
<b>निश्चल</b>	<b>niścala</b> mf(ā)n (adj.)	unmoving, steady
<b>निस्</b>	<b>nis</b> (prefix)	out, forth
<b>नी</b>	<b>√nī</b> (1U) <b>nayati -te</b>	he leads
<b>नृपः</b>	<b>nṛpah</b> (mas.)	king
<b>नौ</b>	<b>nau</b> (fem.)	ship

<b>पक्षिन्</b>	<b>pakṣin</b> (mas.)	bird
<b>पञ्च</b>	<b>pañca</b>	five
<b>पञ्चम</b>	<b>pañcama</b> mf(ī)n (adj.)	fifth
<b>पठ्</b>	<b>√paṭh</b> (1P) <b>paṭhati</b>	he reads
<b>पत्नी</b>	<b>patnī</b> (fem.)	wife
<b>पद्</b>	<b>√pad</b> (4Ā) <b>padyate</b>	he goes, attains
<b>पदम्</b>	<b>padam</b> (n.)	place, state, step, foot
<b>पर</b>	<b>para</b> (mf(ā)n adj.)	higher, beyond
<b>परा</b>	<b>parā</b> (prefix)	away, forth
<b>परि</b>	<b>pari</b> (prefix)	around, about
<b>पश्</b>	<b>√paś</b> (1P) <b>paśyati</b>	he sees
<b>पा</b>	<b>√pā</b> (1P) <b>pibati</b>	he drinks
<b>पितृ</b>	<b>pitr</b> (mas.)	father
<b>पुत्रः</b>	<b>putrah</b> (mas.)	son
<b>पुत्रिका</b>	<b>putrikā</b> (fem.)	daughter
<b>पुनर्</b>	<b>punar</b> (ind.)	again
<b>पुस्तकम्</b>	<b>pustakam</b> (n.)	book
<b>पूर्ण</b>	<b>pūrṇa</b> mf(ā)n (adj. or noun)	full, fullness
<b>पूर्व</b>	<b>pūrva</b> (mfñ adj.)	former
<b>पौत्रः</b>	<b>pautrah</b> (mas.)	grandchild
<b>प्र</b>	<b>pra</b> (prefix)	forward, onward, forth

<b>प्रच्</b>	<b>√prach (1P) pr̥cchati</b>	he asks
<b>प्रजा</b>	<b>prajā (fem.)</b>	child, subject (of a king)
<b>प्रज्ञः</b>	<b>prajñah (mas.)</b>	intellect
<b>प्रति</b>	<b>prati (prefix)</b>	back to, in reverse direction
<b>प्रति गम्</b>	<b>prati + √gam pratigacchati</b>	he goes back, returns
<b>प्रति स्था</b>	<b>prati + √sthā pratitiṣṭhati</b>	he establishes
<b>प्रथम्</b>	<b>prathama mf(ā)n (adj.)</b>	first
<b>प्र आप्</b>	<b>pra + √āp prāpnoti</b>	he gains, arrives
<b>प्रिय</b>	<b>priya mf(ā)n (adj.)</b>	dear, beloved
<b>प्रियतम्</b>	<b>priyatama (adj.)</b>	dearest
<b>प्रियतर</b>	<b>priyatara (adj.)</b>	dearer
<b>फलम्</b>	<b>phalam (n.)</b>	fruit
<b>बन्धः</b>	<b>bandhah (mas.)</b>	bondage
<b>बहु</b>	<b>bahu mf(vī or u) n (adj.)</b>	much, many
<b>बालः</b>	<b>bālah (mas.)</b>	boy
<b>बाला</b>	<b>bālā (fem.)</b>	girl
<b>बुध्</b>	<b>√budh (1U) bodhati -te</b>	he knows
<b>बुद्धिः</b>	<b>buddhiḥ (fem.)</b>	intellect, intelligence
<b>ब्रह्मन्</b>	<b>brahman (n.)</b>	the absolute
<b>ब्रू</b>	<b>√brū (2U) bravīti, brūte</b>	he speaks
<b>भगवत्</b>	<b>bhagavat mfn (adj.)</b>	fortunate, glorious

<b>भयम्</b>	<b>bhayam</b> (n.)	fear
<b>भार्या</b>	<b>bhāryā</b> (fem.)	wife
<b>भाष्</b>	<b>√bhāṣ (1Ā) bhāṣate</b>	he speaks
<b>भाषा</b>	<b>bhāṣā</b> (fem.)	description, sign
<b>भीत</b>	<b>bhīta</b> mf(ā)n (adj.)	afraid
<b>भू</b>	<b>√bhū (1P) bhavati</b>	he is
<b>भूमिः</b>	<b>bhūmih</b> (fem.)	earth
<b>भ्रातृ</b>	<b>bhrātr</b> (mas.)	brother
<b>मद्</b>	<b>mad</b> (pro.)	I (used in compounds)
<b>मन्</b>	<b>√man (4Ā) manyate</b>	he thinks
<b>मनस्</b>	<b>manas</b> (n.)	mind
<b>मनीषिन्</b>	<b>maniśin</b> (mas.)	wise person
<b>मरुत्</b>	<b>marut</b> (mas.)	wind
<b>महा</b>	<b>mahā</b> (in comp.)	great (mahā is used in compounds for mahat, or mahānt.)
<b>मातृ</b>	<b>mātr</b> (fem.)	mother
<b>माला</b>	<b>mālā</b> (fem.)	garland
<b>मित्रम्</b>	<b>mitram</b> (n.)	friend
<b>मुक्तिः</b>	<b>muktiḥ</b> (fem.)	liberation
<b>मुच्</b>	<b>√muc (6U) muñcati -te</b>	he releases, liberates
<b>मुनिः</b>	<b>munih</b> (mas.)	sage

<b>मृगः</b>	<b>mṛgah</b> (mas.)	deer
<b>मोहः</b>	<b>mohah</b> (mas.)	delusion
<b>यतः</b>	<b>yataḥ</b> (ind.)	since
<b>यत्र</b>	<b>yatra</b> (ind.)	where
<b>यथा</b>	<b>yathā</b> (ind.)	since
<b>यद्</b>	<b>yad</b> (rel. pro.)	who, what, which (declined like tad)
<b>यदा</b>	<b>yadā</b> (ind.)	when
<b>यदि</b>	<b>yadi</b> (ind.)	if
<b>युज्</b>	<b>√yuj</b> (7U) <b>yunakti, yuṅkte</b>	he unites (also found in other classes)
<b>युष्मद्</b>	<b>yuṣmad</b> (pro.)	you (used in compounds)
<b>योगः</b>	<b>yogah</b> (mas.)	union, acquisition
<b>योगिन्</b>	<b>yogin</b> (mas.)	practitioner of yoga (male)
<b>योगिनी</b>	<b>yogini</b> (fem.)	practitioner of yoga (female)
<b>रम्</b>	<b>√ram</b> (1Ā) <b>ramate</b>	he enjoys
<b>रमणीय</b>	<b>ramaṇīya</b> mf(ā)n (adj.)	pleasant
<b>रसः</b>	<b>rasah</b> (mas.)	taste, essence, nectar
<b>रागः</b>	<b>rāgah</b> (mas.)	attachment, passion, red color, melody
<b>राजन्</b>	<b>rājan</b> (mas.)	king

<b>राज्यम्</b>	<b>rājyam</b> (n.)	kingdom, real
<b>रामः</b>	<b>rāmāḥ</b> (mas.)	Rāma
<b>रुध्</b>	<b>√rudh</b> (7U) <b>runaddhi,</b> <b>rundhe</b>	he blocks, opposes
<b>लभ्</b>	<b>√labh</b> (1Ā) <b>labhate</b>	he obtains
<b>वच्</b>	<b>√vac</b> (2P) <b>vakti</b>	he says
<b>वचनम्</b>	<b>vacanam</b> (n.)	speech
<b>वद्</b>	<b>√vad</b> (1P) <b>vadati</b>	he speaks
<b>वधूः</b>	<b>vadhūḥ</b> (fem.)	woman
<b>वनम्</b>	<b>vanam</b> (n.)	forest
<b>वर्जम्</b>	<b>varjam</b> (adv.)	except
<b>वस्</b>	<b>√vas</b> (1P) <b>vasati</b>	he lives
<b>वा</b>	<b>vā</b> (ind.)	or
<b>वाक्</b>	<b>vāk</b> (fem.)	speech
<b>वापी</b>	<b>vāpi</b> (fem.)	pond
<b>वि</b>	<b>vi</b> (prefix)	apart, away, out
<b>विज्</b>	<b>√vij</b> (6Ā) <b>vijate</b>	he fears
<b>विद्</b>	<b>√vid</b> (4Ā) <b>vidyate</b>	he is
<b>विद्या</b>	<b>vidyā</b> (fem.)	knowledge
<b>विना</b>	<b>vinā</b> (ind.)	without
<b>वि नि वृत्</b>	<b>vi ni √vṛt</b> <b>viniyatate</b>	he turns away
<b>वीरः</b>	<b>vīrah</b> (mas.)	hero

<b>विश्</b>	$\sqrt{viś}$ (6P) <b>viśati</b>	he enters
<b>विषयः</b>	<b>viṣayah</b> (mas.)	concern, sphere of action, object
<b>वृत्</b>	$\sqrt{vṛt}$ (1Ā) <b>vartate</b>	he is
<b>वेदः</b>	<b>vedah</b> (mas.)	knowledge
<b>वैदिकः</b>	<b>vaidikah</b> (mas.)	scholar of the Veda
<b>व्रज्</b>	$\sqrt{vraj}$ (1P) <b>vrajati</b>	he goes, he walks
<b>शक्</b>	$\sqrt{śak}$ (5P) <b>śaknoti</b>	he is able
<b>शक्य</b>	<b>śakya</b> (mfān adj.)	possible, able
<b>शत्रुः</b>	<b>śatruh</b> (mas.)	enemy
<b>शरणम्</b>	<b>śaraṇam</b> (n.)	refuge, shelter
<b>शाश्न</b>	<b>śaśin</b> (mas.)	moon
<b>शान्तिः</b>	<b>śāntih</b> (fem.)	peace
<b>शास्त्रम्</b>	<b>śāstram</b> (n.)	scripture
<b>शिष्यः</b>	<b>śisyah</b> (mas.)	student
<b>शीघ्र</b>	<b>śīghra</b> mf(ā)n (adj.)	swift
<b>शुक्ल</b>	<b>śukla</b> mf(ā)n (adj.)	white
<b>शुभ्</b>	$\sqrt{śubh}$ (1Ā) <b>śobhate</b>	he shines
<b>शुभम्</b>	<b>śubham</b> (n.)	the good, the pleasant
<b>शोभन</b>	<b>śobhana</b> mf(ā or ī)n (adj.)	shining, bright, beautiful
<b>श्रु</b>	$\sqrt{śru}$ (5P) <b>śṛṇoti</b>	he hears

<b>श्रुतिः</b>	<b>śrutih</b> (fem.)	Veda, scripture
<b>श्रीः</b>	<b>śriḥ</b> (fem.)	radiance, splendor
<b>षष्</b>	<b>ṣas</b>	six
<b>षष्ठ</b>	<b>ṣaṣṭha</b> mf(i)n (adj.)	sixth
<b>सञ्जः</b>	<b>saṅgah</b> (mas.)	attachment, clinging
<b>सत्त्वम्</b>	<b>sattvam</b> (n.)	purity
<b>सत्यम्</b>	<b>satyam</b> (n.)	truth
<b>सप्त</b>	<b>sapta</b>	seven
<b>सप्तम</b>	<b>saptama</b> mf(i)n (adj.)	seventh
<b>सम्</b>	<b>sam</b> (prefix)	together
<b>सम् ह</b>	<b>sam √ hr</b> samharate	he withdraws, takes together
<b>सम</b>	<b>sama</b> mf(ā)n (adj.)	balanced, equal, same
<b>समत्वम्</b>	<b>samatvam</b> (n.)	balance, equanimity
<b>समाधिः</b>	<b>saṁādhiḥ</b> (mas.)	transcendental awareness
<b>सर्गः</b>	<b>sargah</b> (mas.)	creation
<b>सर्व</b>	<b>sarva</b> (mf n adj.)	all
<b>सर्वत्र</b>	<b>sarvatra</b> (ind.)	everywhere, always
<b>सर्वशः</b>	<b>sarvaśah</b> (ind.)	on all sides, completely
<b>सह</b>	<b>saha</b> (ind.)	with
<b>सिद्धः</b>	<b>siddhah</b> mf(ā)	one who attains perfection

<b>सिद्धिः</b>	<b>siddhiḥ</b> (mas.)	perfection, attainment, proof
<b>सीता</b>	<b>sītā</b> (fem.)	Sītā
<b>सु</b>	<b>su</b> (prefix)	well, very, good, right, easy
<b>सु</b>	<b>√su</b> (5U) <b>sunoti, sunute</b>	he presses
<b>सुखम्</b>	<b>sukham</b> (n.)	happiness
<b>सुखम्</b>	<b>sukham</b> (adv.)	happily
<b>सुन्दर</b>	<b>sundara</b> mf(ī)n (adj.)	beautiful
<b>सूक्तम्</b>	<b>sūktam</b> (n.)	hymn
<b>सूर्यः</b>	<b>sūryah</b> (mas.)	sun
<b>सृज्</b>	<b>√srj</b> (6P) <b>srjati</b>	he creates, emits
<b>सेना</b>	<b>senā</b> (fem.)	army
<b>सेव्</b>	<b>√sev</b> (1Ā) <b>sevate</b>	he serves
<b>स्था</b>	<b>√sthā</b> (1P) <b>tiṣṭhati</b>	he stands
<b>स्पृहा</b>	<b>spṛhā</b> (fem.)	longing, desire
<b>स्मि</b>	<b>√smi</b> (1Ā) <b>smayate</b>	he smiles
<b>स्मृ</b>	<b>√smṛ</b> (1P) <b>smarati</b>	he remembers
<b>स्व</b>	<b>sva</b> (mf <sub>n</sub> adj.)	own
<b>स्वसृ</b>	<b>svasṛ</b> (fem.)	sister
<b>हन्</b>	<b>√han</b> (2P) <b>hanti</b>	he kills
<b>हविस्</b>	<b>havis</b> (n.)	oblation

<b>हस्</b>	√ <b>has</b> (1P) <b>hasati</b>	he laughs
<b>हस्तः</b>	<b>hastah</b> (mas.)	hand
<b>हस्तिन्</b>	<b>hastin</b> (mas.)	elephant
<b>हा</b>	√ <b>hā</b> (3P) <b>jahāti</b>	he abandons
<b>हेतुः</b>	<b>hetuh</b> (mas.)	cause, motive
<b>हि</b>	<b>hi</b> (ind.)	indeed, certainly, for (not first in a sentence)
<b>हिरण्यमय</b>	<b>hiranyamaya</b> (adj.)	made of gold, golden
<b>हु</b>	√ <b>hu</b> (3P) <b>juhoti</b>	he offers
<b>हृ</b>	√ <b>hṛ</b> (1U) <b>harati -te</b>	he takes

## ENGLISH-SANSKRIT

## VOCABULARY

abandon	त्यज्	$\sqrt{tyaj}$ (1P) tyajati
abandon	हा	$\sqrt{hā}$ (3P) jahāti
able	शक्	$\sqrt{śak}$ (5P) śaknoti
able, possible	शक्त्य	śakya (mf ā n adj.)
above, over, on	अधि	adhi (prefix)
absolute	ब्रह्मन्	brahman (n.)
acquisition, union	योगः	yogah (mas.)
across, beyond, surpassing	अति	ati (prefix)
action	कर्म	karma (n.)
afraid	भीत	bhīta (mf ā n adj.)
after, following	अनु	anu (prefix)
again	पुनर्	punar (ind.)
against	अभि	abhi (prefix)
aha, hey!	अहो	aho (ind.)
all	सर्व	sarva (mf n adj.)
also, too, to	अपि	api (ind.)
always	नित्यम्	nityam (adv.)
always, everywhere	सर्वत्र	sarvatra (ind.)
Angiras	अङ्गिरस्	aṅgiras (mas.)
and	च	ca (ind.)

anger	<b>क्रोधः</b>	krodhah (mas.)
angry	<b>कुपित</b>	kupita (mf ā n adj.)
apart, away, out	<b>वि</b>	vi (prefix)
approach, go toward	<b>उप गम्</b>	upa + √gam upagacchati
Arjuna	<b>अर्जुनः</b>	arjunah (mas.)
around, about	<b>परि</b>	pari (prefix)
arrive, gain	<b>प्र आप्</b>	pra + √āp prāpnoti
as if, like	<b>इव</b>	iva (ind.)
ask	<b>प्रछ</b>	√prach (6P) pṛcchati
attachment, passion, red color, melody	<b>रागः</b>	rāgah (mas.)
attachment, clinging	<b>सङ्गः</b>	saṅgah (mas.)
attain, go	<b>पद्</b>	√pad (4Ā) padyate
attraction, undue fondness	<b>अभिस्नेह</b>	abhisneha (mas.)
attribute, quality, strand	<b>गुणः</b>	guṇah (mas.)
austerity, increasing heat	<b>तपस्</b>	tapas (n.)
away, off	<b>अप</b>	apa (prefix)
away, down, off	<b>अव</b>	ava (prefix)
away, forth	<b>परा</b>	parā (prefix)
back, return	<b>आ</b>	ā (prefix)
bad, ill, difficult, hard	<b>दुस्</b>	dus (prefix)

back to, in reverse direction	<b>प्रति</b>	prati (prefix)
balance, equanimity	<b>समत्वम्</b>	samatvam (n.)
balanced, equal, same	<b>सम</b>	sama (mf ā n adj.)
beautiful	<b>सुन्दर</b>	sundara (mf ī n.)
beloved, dear	<b>प्रिय</b>	priya (mf ā n adj.)
between, within	<b>अन्तर्</b>	antar (prefix)
beyond, higher	<b>पर</b>	para (mf ā n adj.)
bird	<b>पक्षिन्</b>	pakṣin (mas.)
birth, origin, rebirth	<b>जन्मन्</b>	janman (n.)
black	<b>कृष्णा</b>	kṛṣṇa (mf ā n adj.)
bliss, joy	<b>आनन्द</b>	ānanda (mas.)
block, oppose	<b>रुध्</b>	√rudh (7U) ruṇaddhi, rundhe
bondage	<b>बन्धः</b>	bandhaḥ (mas.)
book	<b>पुस्तकम्</b>	puṣṭakam (n.)
born	<b>उद्भू</b>	ud + √bhū udbhavati
born	<b>जन्</b>	√jan (4Ā) jāyate
both (used in the dual)	<b>उभ</b>	ubha (mfn adj.)
bow	<b>धनुस्</b>	dhanus (n.)
boy	<b>बालः</b>	bālaḥ (mas.)
bright, beautiful, shining	<b>शोभन</b>	śobhana (mf ā or ī n adj.)
bring	<b>आनी</b>	ā + √nī ānayati

brother	भ्रातृ	bhrātṛ (mas.)
bull	गो	go (mas.)
but (not placed first in a sentence)	तु	tu (ind.)
buys, purchases	क्री	√krī (9U) krīnāti, krīnīte
cana (marks indefinite after ka, etc.)	चन	cana (ind.)
cause, motive	हेतुः	hetuh (mas.)
cease	नि वृत्	ni + √vṛt nivartate
certainly, indeed, for (never first in a sentence)	हि	hi (ind.)
child, subject (of a king)	प्रजा	prajā (fem.)
clinging, attachment	सङ्गः	saṅgah (mas.)
cit (marks indefinite after ka, etc.)	चित्	cit (ind.)
color, attachment, passion, red melody	रागः	rāgah (mas.)
colt	अश्वकः	aśvakah (mas.)
comes	आ गम्	ā + √gam āgacchati
completely, on all sides	सर्वशः	sarvaśah (ind.)
concern, sphere of action, object	विषयः	vिषayah (mas.)
conquer	जि	√ji (1P) jayati
contented, satisfied	तुष्	√tuṣ (4P) tuṣyati
continual, eternal, perpetual	नित्य	nitya (mf ā n adj.)
cow	गो	go (fem.)

cow	धेनुः	dhenuḥ (fem.)
create, emit	सृज्	√sṛj (6P) sṛjati
creation	सर्गः	sargah (mas.)
crosses over	तृ	√tṛ (1P) tarati
darkness, dullness	तमस्	tamas (n.)
daughter	पुत्रिका	putrikā (fem.)
dear, beloved	प्रिय	priya (mf ā n adj.)
dearer	प्रियतर	priyatara (adj.)
dearest	प्रियतम्	priyatama (adj.)
deer	मृगः	mrgah (mas.)
delusion	मोहः	mohah (mas.)
description, sign	भाषा	bhāṣā (fem.)
desire	कामः	kāmah (mas.)
desire, longing	स्पृहा	sprhā (fem.)
desires, wishes	इष्	√iṣ (6P) icchatī
difficult, ill, bad, hard	दुस्	dus (noun prefix)
distance	दूरम्	dūram (n.)
doer, maker	कर्तृ	kartṛ (mas.)
does, makes	कृ	√kṛ (8U) karoti, kurute
down, away, off	अव	ava (prefix)
down, into	नि	ni (prefix)

drink	पा	√ <b>pā</b> (1P) pibati
earth	भूमिः	<b>bhūmiḥ</b> (fem.)
easy, well, very good, right	सु	<b>su</b> (prefix)
eat	अद्	√ <b>ad</b> (2P) atti
eight	अष्ट	<b>aṣṭa</b>
eighth	अष्टम	<b>aṣṭama</b> (mf ī n adj.)
elephant	गजः	<b>gajah</b> (mas.)
elephant	हस्तिन्	<b>hastin</b> (mas.)
embodied one, a person	देहिन्	<b>dehin</b> (mas.)
emit, create	सृज्	√ <b>sṛj</b> (6P) sṛjati
(end of quote)	इति	<b>iti</b> (ind.)
enemy	शत्रुः	<b>śatruḥ</b> (mas.)
enjoy	रम्	√ <b>ram</b> (1Ā) ramate
enter	विश्	√ <b>viś</b> (6P) viśati
equal, balanced, same	सम	<b>sama</b> (mf ā n adj.)
equanimity, balance	समत्वम्	<b>samatvam</b> (n.)
establish	प्रति स्था	<b>prati + √sthā</b> pratitiṣṭhati
essence, taste, nectar	रसः	<b>rasah</b> (mas.)
eternal, continual, perpetual	नित्य	<b>nitya</b> (mf ā n)
ever, only	एव	<b>eva</b> (ind.) (adj.)

every	सर्वं	sarva (mf n adj.)
everywhere, always	सर्वत्र	sarvatra (ind.)
except	वर्जम्	varjam (adv.)
exult, rejoice	नन्द्	√nand (1P) nandati
eye	चक्षुस्	cakṣus (n.)
failure	आसिद्धिः	asiddhiḥ (mas.)
fame, glory	कीर्तिः	kīrtiḥ (fem.)
family	कुलम्	kulam (n.)
father	पितृ	pitṛ (mas.)
fear	भयम्	bhayam (n.)
fears	विज्	√vij (6Ā) vijate
fifth	पञ्चम	pañcama (mf ī n adj.)
fire	आग्निः	agniḥ (mas.)
first	प्रथम	prathama (mf ā n adj.)
five	पञ्च	pañca
flame, light	ज्योतिस्	jyotis (n.)
foot, place, state, step	पदम्	padam (n.)
for, indeed, certainly	हि	hi (ind.)
forest	वनम्	vanam (n.)
former	पूर्व	pūrva (mf n adj.)
forth, away	परा	parā (prefix)

forth, out	<b>निस्</b>	nis (prefix)
fortunate, glorious	<b>भगवत्</b>	bhagavat (mf <sub>n</sub> )
forward, onward, forth	<b>प्र</b>	pra (prefix)
four	<b>चतुर्</b>	catur
fourth	<b>चतुर्थ</b>	caturtha (mf ī n adj.)
fourth	<b>तुरीय</b>	turiya (mf ā n adj.)
friend	<b>मित्रम्</b>	mitram (n.)
fruit	<b>फलम्</b>	phalam (n.)
full	<b>पूर्णा</b>	pūrnā (mf ā n adj.)
fullness	<b>पूर्णा</b>	pūrnā (mf ā n noun)
gain, arrive	<b>प्र आप्</b>	pra + √āp prāpnoti
garland	<b>माला</b>	mālā (fem.)
girl	<b>कन्या</b>	kanyā (fem.)
girl	<b>बाला</b>	bālā (fem.)
giver	<b>दातृ</b>	dātṛ (mas.)
giver	<b>दात्री</b>	dātri (fem.)
gives	<b>दा</b>	√dā (3U) dadāti, datte
giving	<b>दानम्</b>	dānam (n.)
glorious, fortunate	<b>भगवत्</b>	bhagavat (mf <sub>n</sub> adj.)
glory, fame	<b>कीर्तिः</b>	kīrtih (fem.)
go	<b>इ</b>	√i (2P) eti

go	गम्	√gam (1P) gacchati
go, attain	पद्	√pad (4Ā) padyatē
go, spread	तन्	√tan (8U) tanoti, tanute
go, walk	व्रज्	√vraj (1P) vrajati
go back, return	प्रति गम्	prati + √gam pratigacchati
go toward, approach	उप गम्	upa + √gam upagacchati
good, pleasant	शुभम्	śubham (n.)
good fortune, skill, prosperity	कौशलम्	kauśalam (n.)
grandchild	पौत्रः	pautrah (mas.)
great ( <b>mahā</b> is used in compounds for <b>mahat</b> or <b>mahānt</b> .)	महा	mahā (in comp.)
guest	अतिथिः	atithih (mas.)
golden, made of gold	हिरण्यमय	hiranyamaya (adj.)
hard, ill, bad, difficult	दुस्	dus (prefix)
hates	द्विष्	√dviṣ (2U) dviṣṭi, dviṣṭe
happily	सुखम्	sukham (adv.)
happiness	सुखम्	sukham (n.)
hand	हस्तः	hastah (mas.)
he, she, it (used in compounds)	तद्	tad (pro.)
hear	श्रु	√śru (5P) śṛṇoti
heavy, teacher	गुरुः	guruḥ (mas.)
here	अत्र	atra (ind.)

here, in this world	इह	iha (ind.)
hero	वीरः	vīrah (mas.)
higher, beyond	पर	para (mf ā n adj.)
hold	धृ	√dhṛ (1U) dharati -te
homage, reverence	नमस्	namas (n.)
horse	अश्वः	aśvah (mas.) (mf vi n adj.)
house	गृहम्	gr̥ham (n.)
how	कथम्	katham (ind.)
how, what, why	किम्	kim (n.)
hymn	सूक्तम्	sūktam (n.)
I (used in compounds)	मद्	mad (pro.)
if	यदि	yadi (ind.)
if (placed after the word it refers to)	चेद्	ced (ind.)
ignorance	अविद्या	avidyā (fem.)
ill, bad, difficult, hard	दुस्	dus (prefix)
immortality	अमृतम्	amṛtam (n.)
increases	दिव्	√div (4P) divyati
indeed, certainly, for	हि	hi (ind.)
indifference	निर्वेदः	nirvedah (mas.)
instrument, means of action	करणम्	karaṇam (n.)
intellect	धी	dhī (fem.)

intellect	प्रज्ञः	prajñāḥ (mas.)
intellect, intelligence	बुद्धिः	buddhiḥ (fem.)
into, down	नि	ni (prefix)
is	भू	√bhū (1P) bhavati
is	विद्	√vid (4Ā) vidyate
is	वृत्	√vṛt (1Ā) vartate
is	अस्	√as (2P) asti
it, he, she	तद्	tad (pro.)
joy, bliss	आनन्दः	ānandah (mas.)
kill	हन्	√han (2P) hanti
king	नृपः	nṛpah (mas.)
king	राजन्	rājan (mas.)
kingdom, real	राज्यम्	rājyam (n.)
knowledge	ज्ञानम्	jñānam (n.)
knowledge	वेदः	vedah (mas.)
knowledge	विद्या	vidyā (fem.)
know	ज्ञा	√jñā (9U) jānāti, jānīte
know	बुध्	√budh (1U) bodhati -te
Kṛṣṇa	कृष्णः	kṛṣṇah (mas.)
laugh	हस्	√has (1P) hasati
lead	नी	√nī (1U) nayati -te

liberate, release	मुच्	√muc (6U) muñcati -te
liberation	मुक्तिः	muktiḥ (fem.)
light, flame	ज्योतिस्	jyotis (n.)
light, splendor	तेजस्	tejas (n.)
like the sun	आदित्यवत्	ādityavat̄ (adv.)
limb	अङ्गम्	aṅgam (n.)
little	अल्प	alpa (mf ā n adj.)
live	वस्	√vas (1P) vasati
live	जीव्	जीवि (1P) jīvati
living individual	जीवः	jīvah (mas.)
longing, desire	स्पृहः	spr̄nah (mas.)
made of gold, golden	हिरण्यमय	hiranyaṁaya (adj.)
maker, doer	कर्तृ	kartṛ (mas.)
maker, doer	कर्त्री	kartri (fem.)
make, do	कृ करोति	√kr̄ (8U) karoti, kurute
man	नरः	narah (mas.)
means of action, instrument	करणम्	karaṇam (n.)
melody, attachment, passion, red color	रागः	rāgah (mas.)
mind	मनस्	manas (n.)
mind, thought	चेतस्	cetas (n.)
mire, thicket	कलिलः	kalilah (mas.)

moon	चन्द्रः	candraḥ (mas.)
moon	शशिन्	śaśin (mas.)
mother	मातृ	mātṛ (fem.)
motive, cause	हेतुः	hetuh (mas.)
much, many	बहु	bahu (mf vī or u n adj.)
name	नामन्	nāman (n.)
name, (by)	नाम	nāma (ind.)
nectar, taste, essence	रसः	rasah (mas.)
nine	नव	nava
ninth	नवम	navama (mf ī n adj.)
non-injury	अहिंसा	ahimsā (fem.)
not	न	na (ind.)
object, purpose	अर्थः	arthah (mas.)
object, concern, sphere of action	विषयः	viṣayah (mas.)
oblation	हविस्	havis (n.)
obtain	आप्	√āp (5P) āpnoti
obtain	लभ्	√labh (1Ā) labhate
off, down, away	अव	ava (prefix)
offer	हु	√hu (3P) juhoti
on, close on	अपि	api (prefix)
one	एक	eka

only, ever	एव	eva (ind.)
onward, forward, forth	प्र	pra (prefix)
oppose, block	रुध्	√rudh (7U) ruṇaddhi, rundhe
opposites, pairs of, “two-by-two”	द्वन्द्वम्	dvandvam (n.)
or	वा	vā (ind.)
origin, birth, rebirth	जन्मन्	janman (n.)
other	अन्य	anya (mfñ adj.)
out, apart, away	वि	vi (prefix)
out, forth	निस्	nis (prefix)
own	स्व	sva (mfñ adj.)
passion, attachment, red color, melody	रागः	rāgah (mas.)
perform	कृ	√kr (8U) karoti, kurute
perpetual, eternal, continual	नित्य	nitya (mf ā n adj.)
peace	शान्तिः	śāntih (fem.)
perfection, attainment, proof	सिद्धिः	siddhih (mas.)
perfection, one who attains	सिद्धः	siddhah (mas. fem. ā)
place	धा	√dhā (3U) dadhāti, dhatte
place, state, step, foot	पदम्	padam (n.)
play, shine	दिव्	√div (4P) divyati
pleasant	रमणीय	ramaṇīya (mf ā n adj.)
pleasant (the), the good	शुभम्	śubham (n.)

poet	<b>कवि:</b>	kavīḥ (mas.)
poetry	<b>काव्यम्</b>	kāvyaṁ (n.)
pond	<b>वापी</b>	vāpi (fem.)
possible, able	<b>शक्य</b>	śakya (mf ā n adj.)
practitioner of yoga (male)	<b>योगिन्</b>	yogin (mas.)
practitioner of yoga (female)	<b>योगिनी</b>	yoginī (fem.)
proof, perfection, attainment	<b>सिद्धिः</b>	siddhiḥ (mas.)
prosperity, security	<b>क्षेमः</b>	kṣemah (mas.)
prosperity, skill, good fortune	<b>कौशलम्</b>	kauśalam (n.)
protect	<b>गुप्</b>	√gup (1P) gopāyati
press	<b>सु</b>	√su (5U) sunoti, sunute
purchase, buy	<b>क्र</b>	√kri (9U) krīṇāti, krīṇite
purity	<b>सत्त्वम्</b>	sattvam (n.)
purpose, object	<b>अर्थः</b>	arthah (mas.)
push, strike	<b>तुद्</b>	√tud (6U) tudati -te
quality, attribute, strand	<b>गुणः</b>	guṇah (mas.)
radiance, splendor	<b>श्री</b>	śrī (fem.)
Rāma	<b>रामः</b>	rāmah (mas.)
read	<b>पठ्</b>	√paṭh (1P) paṭhati
real, kingdom	<b>राज्यम्</b>	rājyam (n.)
rebirth, birth, origin	<b>जन्मन्</b>	janman (n.)

red color, attachment, melody	रागः	rāgah (mas.)
refuge, shelter	शरणम्	śaraṇam (n.)
rejoice, exult	नन्द्	√nand (1P) nandati
release, liberate	मुच्	√muc (6U) muñcati -te
remember	स्मृ	√smṛ (1P) smarati
return, back	आ	ā (prefix)
returns, goes back	प्रति गम्	prati + √gam pratigacchati
reverence, homage	नमस्	namas (n.)
well, very good, right, easy	सु	su (prefix)
river	नदी	nadī (fem.)
sage	मुनिः	muniḥ (mas.)
sage, seer	ऋषिः	rṣiḥ (mas.)
same, balanced, equal	सम	sama (mf ā n adj.)
satisfy	तुष्	√tuṣ (4P) tuṣyati
says	वच्	√vac (2P) vakti
scholar of the Veda	वैदिकः	vaidikah (mas.)
scripture	शास्त्रम्	śāstram (n.)
scripture, Veda	श्रुतिः	śrutiḥ (fem.)
second	द्वितीय	dvitiya (mf ā n adj.)
security, prosperity	क्षेमः	kṣemah (mas.)
seer, sage	ऋषिः	rṣiḥ (mas.)

see	दृश्	$\sqrt{dṛś}$ (1P) paśyati
see	पश्	$\sqrt{paś}$ (1P) paśyati
Self	आत्मन्	ātman (mas.)
sense	इन्द्रियम्	indriyam (n.)
serve	सेव्	$\sqrt{sev}$ (1Ā) sevate
seven	सप्त	sapta
seventh	सप्तम	saptama (mf ī n adj.)
shadow	छाया	chāyā (fem.)
she, he, it (used in compounds)	तद्	tad (pro.)
shelter, refuge	शरणम्	śaraṇam (n.)
shine, play	दिव्	$\sqrt{div}$ (4P) divyati
shine	शुभ्	$\sqrt{śubh}$ (1Ā) śobhate
shining, bright, beautiful	शोभन	śobhana (mf ā or ī n adj.)
ship	नौ	nau (fem.)
sign, description	भाषा	bhāṣā (fem.)
since	यतः	yataḥ (ind.)
since	यथा	yathā (ind.)
sing	गै	$\sqrt{gai}$ (1P) gāyati
Sītā	सीता	sītā (fem.)
sits	आस्	$\sqrt{ās}$ (2Ā) āste
six	षष्	ṣas

sixth	षष्ठि	ṣaṣṭha (mf ī n adj.)
sister	स्वसृ	svasṛ (fem.)
skill, good fortune, prosperity	कौशलम्	kauśalam (n.)
smile	स्मि	√smi (1Ā) smayate
so, therefore	तथा	tathā (ind.)
son	पुत्रः	putraḥ (mas.)
speak	ब्रू	√brū (2P) bravīti
speak	भाष्	√bhāṣ (1Ā) bhāṣate
speak	वद्	√vad (1P) vadati
speech	वचनम्	vacanam (n.)
speech	वाक्	vāk (fem.)
sphere of action, concern, object	विषयः	viṣayah (mas.)
splendor, light	तेजस्	tejas (n.)
splendor, radiance	श्री	śrī (fem.)
spread, stretch, go	तन्	√tan (8U) tanoti, tanute
stand	स्था	√sthā (1P) tiṣṭhati
stand up	उद् स्था	ud + √sthā uttiṣṭhati
state, step, place, foot	पदम्	padam (n.)
steal	चुर्	√cur (10U) corayati -te
step, state, place, foot	पदम्	padam (n.)
story	कथा	kathā (fem.)

strand, quality, attribute	गुणः	guṇah (mas.)
stretch, spread, go	तन्	√tan (8U) tanoti, tanute
strike, push	तुद्	√tud (6U) tudati -te
student	शिष्यः	śiṣyāḥ (mas.)
subject (of a king), child	प्रजा	prajā (fem.)
suffering	दुःखम्	duḥkham (n.)
sun	सूर्यः	sūryāḥ (mas.)
swift	शीघ्र	śīghra (mf ā n adj.)
take	ह	√hṛ (1U) harati -te
take together, withdraw	सम्	sam √hṛ samharate
taste, essence, nectar	रसः	rasah (mas.)
teacher	आचार्यः	ācāryāḥ (mas.)
teacher	गुरुः	guruḥ (mas, fem vi)
ten	दश	daśa
tenth	दशम	daśama (mf ī n adj.)
then	तदा	tadā (ind.)
there	तत्र	tatra (ind.)
therefore	ततः	tataḥ (ind.)
therefore, so	तथा	tathā (ind.)
thicket, mire	कलिलः	kalilah (mas.)
think	चिन्त्	√cint (10U) cintayati -te

think	मन्	$\sqrt{man}$ (4Ā) <b>manyate</b>
third	तृतीय	tr̥tiya (mf ā n adj.)
this	अयम्	ayam (mas. pro.)
this	इदम्	idam (n. pro.)
this	इयम्	iyam (fem. pro.)
this	एतद्	etad (mfn pro.)
this	एन	ena (pro.)
thought, mind	चेतस्	cetas (n.)
three	त्रि	tri
thus, in this way	एवम्	evam (ind.)
together	सम्	sam (prefix)
tortoise, turtle	कूर्मः	kūrmah (mas.)
towards	उप	upa (prefix)
transcendental awareness	समाधिः	samādhih (mas.)
truth	सत्यम्	satyam (n.)
turn away	वि नि वृत्	vi ni $\sqrt{vṛt}$ vinivartate
turtle, tortoise	कूर्मः	kūrmah (mas.)
two (follows the declension of dva)	द्वि	dvi
understand	अव गम्	ava + $\sqrt{gam}$ avagacchati
undue fondness, attraction	अभिस्नेहः	abhisnehaḥ (mas.)
union, acquisition	योगः	yogah (mas.)

unite (also found in other classes)	युज्	√ <i>yuj</i> (7U) <i>yunakti</i> , <i>yuñkte</i>
up, up out	उद्	<b>ud</b> (prefix)
Veda, scripture	श्रुतिः	śrutih (fem.)
very	अतीव	<i>atīva</i> (ind.)
very good, well, right, easy	सु	<b>su</b> (prefix)
village	ग्रामः	grāmaḥ (mas.)
virtuous	धार्मिक	dhārmika (mf ī n adj.)
walk, go	व्रज्	√ <i>vraj</i> (1P) <i>vrajati</i>
water	जलम्	<i>jalam</i> (n.)
we (used in compounds)	अस्मद्	<i>asmad</i> (pro.)
well, very good, right, easy	सु	<b>su</b> (prefix)
what, how, why	किम्	<b>kim</b> (n.)
what, who, which	यद्	<b>yad</b> (rel. pro.)
when	कदा	<i>kadā</i> (ind.)
when	यदा	<i>yadā</i> (ind.)
where	कुत्र	<i>kutra</i> (in.d)
where	यत्र	<i>yatra</i> (in.d)
which, what, who	यद्	<b>yad</b> (rel.. pro.)
white	शुक्ल	<i>sukla</i> (mf ā n adj.)
who,what	क	<b>ka</b> (mas.)
who, what	का	<b>kā</b> (fem.)

who, what, which	यद्	yad (rel. pro.) (declined like tad)
why, what, how	किम्	kim (n.)
wife	पत्नी	patnī (fem.)
wife	भार्या	bhāryā (fem.)
wind	मरुत्	marut (mas.)
wise person	मनीषिन्	manīśin (mas.)
wish, desire	इष्	√iṣ (6P) icchati
with	सह	saha (ind.)
withdraw, take together	सम् ह	sam √hṛ samharate
within, between	अन्तर्	antar (prefix)
without	विना	vinā (ind.)
woman	वधूः	vadhūḥ (fem.)
worthy	अर्ह	√arh (1P) arhati
you (used in compounds)	त्वद्	tvad (pro.)
you (used in compounds)	युष्मद्	yuṣmad (pro.)

INDEX OF GRAMMATICAL TERMS	PAGE (includes Part One and Part Two)
<b>akṣara:</b> syllable	3 (Part One); 4, 63 (Part Two)
<b>akṣara-samāmnāya:</b> "enumeration of letters," alphabet	63 (Part Two)
<b>aghoṣa:</b> unvoiced	10 (Part One)
<b>aṅga:</b> stem, base	5 (Part One)
<b>anadyatana:</b> "not of today," periphrastic future, first future	112, 155 (Part Two)
<b>anudātta:</b> unraised tone	27 (Part One)
<b>anunāsika:</b> nasal	10 (Part One)
<b>anupradāna:</b> external effort	111 (Part Two)
<b>anusvāra:</b> "after sound," m, nasal sound	20 (Part One)
<b>antahstha:</b> "in-between," semi-vowel	19 (Part One)
<b>abhyāsa:</b> "doubling," reduplication	72 (Part Two)
<b>ayogavāha:</b> "formed in union with a"	133 (Part Two)
<b>ardha-sprṣṭa:</b> "half contacted," (referring to sibilants)	19 (Part One)
<b>alpa-prāṇa:</b> unaspirated	10 (Part One)
<b>avagraha:</b> "separation, pause," ( ) represents a missing a	90, 183 (Part One)
<b>avyaya:</b> indeclinable word	6 (Part One)
<b>avyayībhāva:</b> compound composed of an indeclinable and a nominal	236 (Part One)
<b>ākhyāta:</b> "declared," verb	x (Part One)
<b>āgama:</b> augment	188 (Part One)
<b>ātmanepada:</b> "word for oneself," middle endings, middle voice	25, 112 (Part One)
<b>ābhyanṭara prayatna:</b> internal effort	110 (Part Two)
<b>itaretara-dvandva:</b> compound whose members are viewed separately	211, 235 (Part One)
<b>īṣat-sprṣṭa:</b> "slightly contacted," (referring to semi-vowels)	19 (Part One)
<b>udātta:</b> raised tone	27 (Part One)

- upadhmāniya:** “on-breathing,” **ḥ** before p or ph  
113 (Part One); 132 (Part Two)
- upapada-samāsa:** compound whose last member is  
an adjusted verbal root 236 (Part One); 13 (Part Two)
- upasarga:** verb prefix  
x, 188, 197 (Part One); 75, 336 (Part Two)
- upasarjana:** the subordinate member of a compound  
233 (Part One); 51 (Part Two)
- ubhayapada:** “word for both,” verb that can take  
active or middle endings 25 (Part One); 31 (Part Two)
- ūṣman:** “heat, glow,” sibilant 19 (Part One)
- oṣṭha:** lips 9 (Part One)
- oṣṭhya:** labial 9, 22 (Part One)
- kaṇṭha:** throat 9 (Part One)
- kaṇṭhya:** velar 9, 22 (Part One)
- karaṇa:** “instrument,” tongue 110 (Part Two)
- kartari prayoga:** agent construction (or active construction),  
subject is the agent of action  
34 (Part One); 34, 182 (Part Two)
- kartr̥:** agent of action 34 (Part One); 34 (Part Two)
- karmani prayoga:** passive construction 34, 182 (Part Two)
- karmadhāraya:** **tatpuruṣa** compound whose members  
refer to the same object and would be in the same case  
if the compound were dissolved 233, 236 (Part One)
- karman:** object of action 34 (Part One); 34 (Part Two)
- kāraka:** “instrument of action” 182 (Part Two)
- kartr̥:** the agent 182 (Part Two)
- karman:** the object 182 (Part Two)
- karaṇa:** the instrument 182 (Part Two)
- sampradāna:** the purpose 182 (Part Two)
- apādāna:** separation 182 (Part Two)
- adhikarana:** location 182 (Part Two)
- kṛt pratyaya:** primary suffix 7, 245 (Part Two)
- kṛtya:** gerundive suffixes 116 (Part Two)

- kṛdanta:** "having a kṛt ending," includes participles 7, 66 (Part Two)
- ktvā:** "tvā ending" for a gerund 162 (Part One)
- gaṇa:** "list, group," class of verb roots 5 (Part One); 141, 181 (Part Two)
- class of syllables 87 (Part Two)
- guṇa:** strengthened vowel 167 (Part One)
- guru:** heavy syllable 86 (Part Two)
- ghoṣavat:** voiced 10 (Part One)
- caturtha:** "fourth," fourth letter in each varga 10 (Part One)
- chandas:** meter 3, 4 (Part Two)
- gāyatrī 4 (Part Two)
- uṣṇik 4 (Part Two)
- anuṣṭubh 3, 4, 87 (Part Two)
- bṛhatī 4 (Part Two)
- pañkti 4 (Part Two)
- triṣṭubh 3, 4 (Part Two)
- jagati 4 (Part Two)
- jihvāmūliya:** "formed at the base of the tongue,"
- ḥ before k or kh 113 (Part One); 132 (Part Two)
- ṇijanta:** the causative 7, 222 (Part Two)
- tatpuruṣa:** "his man," general class of compounds whose second member is principal (The term tatpuruṣa is often used for vyadhikaraṇa-tatpuruṣa. See below.) 233, 235 (Part One)
- taddhita pratyaya:** secondary suffix 7, 247 (Part Two)
- tālavya:** palatal 9, 22 (Part One)
- tālu:** palate 9 (Part One)
- tiñ:** verb ending 5 (Part One)
- tiñanta:** "tiñ ending," verb, word taking verb endings 5 (Part One)
- ṛ̥tiya:** "third," third letter in each varga 10 (Part One)
- daṇḍa:** "stick," vertical line used in many letters, vertical line at the end of a sentence 69, 71 (Part One)

- danta:** teeth 9 (Part One)
- dantya:** dental 9, 22 (Part One)
- daśa-gaṇa:** ten classes of verbs 24, 141 (Part Two)
- √ **bhū gaṇa:** class 1 (be) 24, 364, 374 (Part Two)
- √ **ad gaṇa:** class 2 (eat) 137, 365, 375 (Part Two)
- √ **hu gaṇa:** class 3 (offer) 72, 95, 366, 375 (Part Two)
- √ **div gaṇa:** class 4 (play) 28, 367, 374 (Part Two)
- √ **su gaṇa:** class 5 (press) 120, 368, 375 (Part Two)
- √ **tud gaṇa:** class 6 (push) 29, 369, 374 (Part Two)
- √ **rudh gaṇa:** class 7 (block) 96, 370, 375 (Part Two)
- √ **tan gaṇa:** class 8 (stretch) 30, 371, 375 (Part Two)
- √ **kri gaṇa:** class 9 (buy) 140, 372, 375 (Part Two)
- √ **cur gaṇa:** class 10 (steal) 29, 373, 374 (Part Two)
- dirgha:** long vowel 2 (Part One)
- devanāgarī:** script of the “city of immortals” 4 (Part One)
- dvandva:** “two-by-two,” copulative compound; both members are principal. If compound were dissolved, members would be joined by “and.” 210, 235 (Part One)
- dvigu:** “worth two cows,” *karmadhāraya* compound that begins with a number 236 (Part One)
- dvitiya:** “second,” second letter in each *varga* 10 (Part One)
- dhātu:** root x (Part One); 347 (Part Two)
- nañ-samāsa:** negative compound 213, 236 (Part One)
- nāmadhātu:** the denominative 7, 222, 269 (Part Two)
- nāman:** “name,” nominal x (Part One)
- nāsikya:** “pertaining to the nose,” nasal sound 133 (Part Two)
- nipāta:** indeclinable, particle x (Part One)
- pañcama:** “fifth,” fifth letter in each *varga* 10 (Part One)
- pada-pāṭha:** “word-reading,” (without *sandhi*) recitation of the individual words of the *Veda* ix (Part One); 47 (Part Two)
- parasmaipada:** “word for another,” active endings,

active voice	25, 112 (Part One)
<b>pāṭha:</b> reading	ix (Part One); 46 (Part Two)
<b>samhitā-pāṭha:</b> collected reading	46 (Part Two)
<b>pada-pāṭha:</b> word reading	47 (Part Two)
<b>krama-pāṭha:</b> step reading	48 (Part Two)
<b>jaṭā-pāṭha:</b> twisted reading	48 (Part Two)
<b>ghana-pāṭha:</b> "killer" reading	48 (Part Two)
<b>pāda:</b> "foot," line	4, 87 (Part Two)
<b>puruṣa:</b> person	5, 25 (Part One)
<b>prathama:</b> "first," third	5, 25 (Part One)
<b>madhyama:</b> "middle," second	5, 25 (Part One)
<b>uttama:</b> "last," first	5, 25 (Part One)
<b>pragṛhya:</b> vowel not subject to sandhi	91, 170 (Part One)
<b>pratyaya:</b> suffix	7, 245 (Part Two)
<b>pratyayānta dhātu</b> derivative verb, secondary verb	
	222 (Part Two)
<b>prathama:</b> "first," first letter in each varga	10 (Part One)
<b>pradhāna:</b> the principal member of a compound	
	233 (Part One); 51 (Part Two)
<b>prātipadika:</b> noun stem	33 (Part One)
<b>pluta:</b> "floating," vowel held for three counts, protracted	
	2 (Part One)
<b>bahuvrīhi:</b> "much rice," compound whose principal is outside itself (he whose rice is much)	
	236 (Part One); 51 (Part Two)
<b>bāhya-pryatna:</b> external effort	111 (Part Two)
<b>bhaviṣyan:</b> simple future, second future	
	221 (Part One); 112, 155 (Part Two)
<b>bhāvavācana:</b> abstract noun	9 (Part Two)
<b>bhāve prayoga:</b> abstract construction	34 (Part Two)
<b>bhūte kṛdanta:</b> past passive participle	67 (Part Two)
<b>mahā-prāṇa:</b> aspirated	10 (Part One)
<b>mātrā:</b> count, measure, duration, quantity	
	2 (Part One); 86, 110 (Part Two)

- mūrdhan:** roof 9 (Part One)  
**mūrdhanya:** retroflex 9, 22 (Part One)  
**yañanta:** the intensive 222, 269 (Part Two)  
**yati:** pause 4, 88 (Part Two)  
**yama:** "twin," twin sound 132 (Part Two)  
**repha:** "snarl," the sound *ra* 10 (Part One)  
**lakāra:** the ten tenses and moods  
     25 (Part One); 155 (Part Two)  
**lat:** present indicative, *vartamāna*  
     24, 25 (Part One); 155 (Part Two)  
**lit:** perfect, *parokṣabhūta*  
     25 (Part One); 155, 156 (Part Two)  
**luṭ:** periphrastic future, *anadyatana*  
     25 (Part One); 112, 155 (Part Two)  
**lr̥t:** simple future, *bhaviṣyan*  
     25, 221 (Part One); 155 (Part Two)  
**leṭ:** subjunctive, *āśih* 25 (Part One); 155 (Part Two)  
**loṭ:** imperative, *ājñā* 25 (Part One); 11, 155 (Part Two)  
**lañ:** imperfect, *anadyatanabhūta*  
     25, 188 (Part One); 155 (Part Two)  
**liñ:** optative, potential, *vidhi*  
     25 (Part One); 155, 166 (Part Two)  
**luñ:** aorist, *bhūta* 25 (Part One); 155, 270 (Part Two)  
**lr̥ñ:** conditional, *samketa*  
     25 (Part One); 155, 270 (Part Two)  
**laghu:** light syllable 86 (Part Two)  
**liṅga:** "mark, characteristic," gender 73 (Part One)  

**pum-liṅga:** masculine 73 (Part One)

**stri-liṅga:** feminine 73 (Part One)

**napumṣaka-liṅga:** neuter 73 (Part One)

**luk:** loss (of case ending) 210 (Part One)  
**lyap:** 'ya ending" for a gerund with a prefix 162 (Part One)  
**vacana:** number 26 (Part One)  
**eka:** singular 5, 26, 73 (Part One)

- dvi:** dual 13, 26, 73 (Part One)  
**bahu:** plural 24, 26, 73 (Part One)  
**varga:** set, row, class 9 (Part One)  
**varṇa:** sound, phoneme, letter 2 (Part One)  
**vartamāne kṛdanta:** present participle  
     24, 202, 324 – 326 (Part Two)  
**vigraha:** analysis of a compound 211 (Part One)  
**vibhakti:** “division,” case 33, 73 (Part One)  
**prathamā:** “first,” nominative 33, 73 (Part One)  
**dvitiyā:** “second,” accusative 33, 73 (Part One)  
**tr̥tiyā:** “third,” instrumental 45, 73 (Part One)  
**caturthī:** “fourth,” dative 45, 73 (Part One)  
**pañcamī:** “fifth,” ablative 58, 73 (Part One)  
**ṣaṣṭhī:** “sixth,” genitive 58, 73 (Part One)  
**saptamī:** “seventh,” locative 72, 73 (Part One)  
**sambodhana:** “awakening, arousing,” vocative  
     (not a separate case, but a modification of the  
     nominative case) 72, 73 (Part One)  
**virāma:** “pause,” oblique stroke that removes the a 55 (Part One)  
**viśeṣana:** “qualifying,” adjective  
     129 (Part One); 134, 321 (Part Two)  
**visarga:** “letting go,” ḥ (often represents final s or r) 20 (Part One)  
**visarjaniya:** ḥ (often represents final s or r) 20 (Part One)  
**vṛtti:** aggregate formation 7 (Part Two)  
**vṛddhi:** strengthened vowel 167 (Part One)  
**vyañjana:** “manifesting,” consonant 2 (Part One)  
**vyadhikarana:** having different objects and forming  
     different cases. 234 (Part One)  
**vyadhikarana-tatpuruṣa:** compound whose members  
     refer to different objects and would be in different  
     cases if dissolved 235 (Part One)  
**vyākaraṇa:** “taken apart,” grammar  
     ix (Part One); 180 (Part Two)

- śuddha:** "pure," simple vowel 2 (Part One)
- samyukta:** "connected," complex vowel 2 (Part One)
- saṃskṛta:** "put together, perfected," Sanskrit vi, 2 (Part One)
- saṃhitā:** "togetherness," euphonic junction point 87 (Part One)
- saṃhitā-pāṭha:** "collected reading," (with sandhi) recitation of the "collected" text of the Veda ix (Part One); 46 (Part Two)
- sakarmaka dhātu:** transitive root 222 (Part Two)
- saṃkhyā:** numeral 157 (Part One); 272, 332 – 335 (Part Two)
- sandhi:** "combination, junction, connection," euphonic combination 14 (Part One)
- svara-sandhi:** vowel sandhi 87, 89, 167, 320 (Part One); 339 (Part Two)
- visarga-sandhi:** final h (s or r) sandhi 87, 108, 182, 321 (Part One); 340, 341 (Part Two)
- hal-sandhi:** consonant sandhi 87, 126, 197, 205, 218, 229, 323, 326 (Part One); 342 – 346 (Part Two) internal sandhi 97 (Part Two)
- sannanta:** the desiderative 7, 222, 252 (Part Two)
- saṃnādhi-karaṇa:** having the same object and formed with the same case 233 (Part One)
- saṃnādhi-karaṇa-tatpuruṣa:** a karmadhāraya 236 (Part One)
- saṃāsa:** "put together," compound 210 (Part One)
- saṃhāra-dvandva:** compound whose members are viewed as a whole. Last member takes neuter, singular ending. 212, 235 (Part One)
- saṃprasāraṇa:** corresponding semi-vowel. 91 (Part One)
- sarva-nāman:** "all-name," pronoun (which names anything) 128 (Part One)
- sup:** nominal ending 33, 144, 210 (Part One)
- subanta:** "sup ending," nominal, word taking case terminations 33, 129 (Part One)

- sthāna:** point of articulation 9 (Part One); 110 (Part Two)
- sparśa:** "contact," stop 9 (Part One)
- sprṣṭa:** "making complete contact," (referring to stops) 19 (Part One)
- svara:** "sounded," vowel, tone  
2, 27 (Part One); 108, 109 (Part Two)
- svarabhakti:** "fragment of sound" 133 (Part Two)
- svarita:** moving tone 27 (Part One)
- hrasva:** "dwarfish, small," short vowel 2 (Part One)

## GENERAL INDEX

	PAGE
Absolute construction	209 (Part Two)
Accent	27 (Part One)
Active endings, active voice	25, 112 (Part One)
Adjectives	129 (Part One); 134, 321 (Part Two)
Adverbs	250 (Part Two)
Agent construction (active construction)	34 (Part One); 34, 182 (Part Two)
Alphabet in <i>devanāgarī</i>	44 (Part One); 153 (Part Two)
Alphabet in roman script	22 (Part One); 132, 152 – 154 (Part Two)
Analysis of a compound	211 (Part One)
<b>anusvāra</b>	20 (Part One)
Aorist verbs	270 (Part Two)
√ <b>as</b> (active)	130, 315 (Part One)
√ <b>as</b> (imperfect)	210, 315 (Part One)
Aspirate ( <b>ha</b> )	19 (Part One)
Aspirated	10 (Part One)
Augment for imperfect	188 (Part One)
<b>avagraha</b> (')	90, 183 (Part One)
<b>bahuvrīhi</b> compound	51 (Part Two)
<b>ca</b> (placement of <b>ca</b> )	28 (Part One)
Case	33, 73 (Part One)
Nominative	33, 73 (Part One)
Accusative	33, 73 (Part One)
Instrumental	45, 73 (Part One)
Dative	45, 73 (Part One)
Ablative	58, 73 (Part One)
Genitive	58, 73 (Part One)
Locative	72, 73 (Part One)
Vocative (part of the nominative case)	72, 73 (Part One)
Causative	222 (Part Two)
Complex vowels	2 (Part One)

Compounds	210, 235 (Part One)
<b>bahuvrīhi</b>	51 (Part Two)
<b>dvandva</b>	210 (Part One)
<b>karmadhāraya</b>	233 (Part One)
<b>tatpuruṣa</b>	233 (Part One)
<b>upapada</b>	13 (Part Two)
Compounds, summary	235 (Part One)
Conditional verbs	270 (Part Two)
Demonstrative pronoun	149 (Part One)
Dental	9, 22 (Part One)
Desiderative	7, 222, 252 (Part Two)
<b>devanāgarī</b> script	4 (Part One)
Vowels	4, 12 (Part One)
Consonants	23, 32, 42 (Part One)
Vowels following consonants	55 (Part One)
Conjunct consonants	68 (Part One)
Diacritics	3 (Part One)
Direct quotation	59 (Part One)
Double accusative	46 (Part One)
<b>dus</b>	75 (Part Two)
<b>dvandva</b> compound	210, 235 (Part One)
External effort	111 (Part Two)
Gender (nominals)	73 (Part One)
Masculine	73 (Part One)
Feminine	73 (Part One)
Neuter	73 (Part One)
Genitive absolute	211 (Part Two)
Gerund	161 (Part One)
Gerundive	116 (Part Two)
<b>guṇa</b>	157 (Part One)
Half contact (sibilants)	19 (Part One)
“Have”	112 (Part One)
Imperative	11 (Part Two)
Imperfect active	188, 316 (Part One)

- Imperfect middle 199, 317 (Part One)  
 Indeclinable word 6 (Part One)  
 Indefinite pronouns 163 (Part Two)  
 Infinitive 185 (Part Two)  
**Internal sandhi** 142 (Part One) ; 97, 346 (Part Two)  
 Interrogative pronouns 162, 322 (Part Two)  
**iti** 59 (Part One)  
**iva** 149 (Part One)  
**karmadhāraya** 233, 236 (Part One)  
 Labial 9, 22 (Part One)  
 Locative absolute 209 (Part Two)  
 Long vowels 2 (Part One)  
 Loss of case ending 210 (Part One)  
 Manuscripts 23 (Part Two)  
 Memorization 46 (Part Two)  
 Meter 2 (Part One); 3, 86 (Part Two)  
 Middle endings, middle voice 25, 112 (Part One)  
 Nasal 10 (Part One)  
 Negative compound 213, 236 (Part One)  
**Nirukta** xvi (Part One)  
 Nominal, word taking case terminations 33, 129 (Part One)  
 Nominal declensions  
     Masculine **a** 74, 298 (Part One)  
     Neuter **a** 92, 299 (Part One)  
     Feminine **ā** 144, 300 (Part One)  
     Masculine **i**, feminine **i** 160, 301 (Part One)  
     Feminine **ī** 171, 302 (Part One)  
     Masculine **an** 208, 303 (Part One)  
     Neuter **an** 209, 304 (Part One)  
     Masculine **r̥**, feminine **r̥** 220, 305 (Part One)  
     Masculine **u**, feminine **u** 232, 306 (Part One)  
     Masculine **mat**, **vat** 306 (Part Two)  
     Neuter **mat**, **vat** 307 (Part Two)  
     Feminine **mat**, **vat** 308 (Part Two)

Neuter <b>as</b>	309 (Part Two)
Masculine <b>as</b> , Feminine <b>as</b>	310 (Part Two)
Masculine <b>in</b>	311 (Part Two)
Neuter <b>in</b>	312 (Part Two)
Feminine monosyllabic nouns	313 (Part Two)
Feminine nouns ending in consonants	314 (Part Two)
Masculine nouns ending in consonants	315 (Part Two)
Feminine <b>ū</b>	316 (Part Two)
Neuter <b>is</b>	317 (Part Two)
Neuter <b>us</b>	318 (Part Two)
Masculine <b>o</b> , Feminine <b>o</b>	319 (Part Two)
Feminine <b>au</b>	320 (Part Two)
Noun bases	33 (Part One)
Noun summary	73 (Part One)
Nouns in apposition	34 (Part One)
Number (verbs and nominals)	26 (Part One)
Singular	5, 26, 73 (Part One)
Dual	13, 26, 73 (Part One)
Plural	24, 26, 73 (Part One)
Numerals	157, 319 (Part One); 332, 338 (Part Two)
Optative verbs	166 (Part Two)
Ordinal numbers	158, 319 (Part One)
Palatal	9, 22 (Part One)
<b>Pāṇini</b>	xvi (Part One); 180 (Part Two)
Parsing	26, 73 (Part One)
Participles	66 (Part Two)
Future active and middle	271 (Part Two)
Gerund	161 (Part One)
Gerundive (future passive)	116 (Part Two)
Infinitive	185 (Part Two)
Past active	271 (Part Two)
Past passive	66, 67 (Part Two)
Present active	202 – 207, 324 – 326 (Part Two)
Present middle	202, 208 (Part Two)

- Passive construction 34, 182 (Part Two)  
 Perfect verbs 155, 156 (Part Two)  
 Periphrastic future verbs 112, 155 (Part Two)  
 Person (verbs)  
     Third 5, 26 (Part One)  
     Second 5, 26 (Part One)  
     First 5, 26 (Part One)  
 Point of articulation 9 (Part One)  
 Prefixes x, 188, 197, 318 (Part One); 75, 336 (Part Two)  
 Present Participle 24, 202 – 208, 324 – 326 (Part Two)  
 Present System 24, 364 – 373 (Part Two)  
     Imperative 11, 155, 364 – 373 (Part Two)  
     Imperfect 188, 199 (Part One); 155, 364 – 373 (Part Two)  
     Optative 155, 166, 364 – 373 (Part Two)  
     Present indicative  
         5, 13, 24 (Part One); 155, 364 – 373 (Part Two)  
     Present participle 202 – 208, 324 – 326 (Part Two)  
 Primary suffixes 7, 245 (Part Two)  
 Pronominal adjectives 134 (Part Two)  
 Pronoun declensions  
     I, we; **mad**, **asmad** 128, 307 (Part One); 301 (Part Two)  
     you; **tvad**, **yuşmad** 129, 308 (Part One); 302 (Part Two)  
     he; **tad** (masculine) 146, 309 (Part One); 303 (Part Two)  
     it; **tad** (neuter) 147, 310 (Part One); 304 (Part Two)  
     she; **tad** (feminine) 148, 311 (Part One); 305 (Part Two)  
     Interrogative pronouns 322 (Part Two)  
     **ayam** 327 (Part Two)  
     **ena** (masculine, neuter, feminine) 330 (Part Two)  
     **etad** 323 (Part Two)  
     **idam** 328 (Part Two)  
     **iyam** 329 (Part Two)  
 Pronouns 128 (Part One)  
 Protracted vowels 2 (Part One)  
 Reduplication 72 (Part Two)

Relative-correlative clauses	172 (Part One)
Retroflex	9, 22 (Part One)
Roots	xvi, 5, 33 (Part One)
<b>samāhāra-dvandva</b> compound	212, 235 (Part One)
<b>sandhi</b> , euphonic combination	14 (Part One)
Vowel sandhi	87, 89, 167, 320 (Part One); 339 (Part Two)
Final <b>ḥ</b> ( <b>s</b> or <b>r</b> ) sandhi	87, 108, 182, 321 (Part One); 340, 341 (Part Two)
Consonant sandhi	87, 126, 323 (Part One); 342 (Part Two)
Final <b>m</b>	197, 323 (Part One); 342 (Part Two)
Final <b>n</b>	205, 324 (Part One); 342, 343 (Part Two)
Final <b>t</b>	218, 325 (Part One); 342, 344 (Part Two)
Additonal rules	229, 326 (Part One); 345, 346 (Part Two)
Internal sandhi	142, 327 (Part One); 97, 346 (Part Two)
<b>sandhi</b> , word breaks in	127 (Part One)
Sanskrit	xi, 2 (Part One)
Semi-vowels	19 (Part One)
Short vowels	2 (Part One)
Sibilants	19 (Part One)
Simple future verbs	221 (Part One); 155 (Part Two)
Simple vowels	2 (Part One)
Slight contact (semi-vowels)	19 (Part One)
Standard nominal endings	144 (Part One)
Stem, base	5 (Part One)
Stop	9 (Part One)
<b>su</b>	75 (Part Two)
Suffixes	
Primary	7, 245 (Part Two)
Secondary	7, 247 (Part Two)
Summary sheets	
Lesson Two	17 (Part One)
Lesson Three	30 (Part One)
Lesson Four	40 (Part One)
Lesson Five	52 (Part One)

Lesson Six	65 (Part One)
Lesson Seven	84 (Part One)
Lesson Eight	101 (Part One)
Lesson Nine	118 (Part One)
Lesson Ten	136 (Part One)
<b>svara</b>	27 (Part One); 108 (Part Two)
Syllable	3 (Part One); 4, 63 (Part Two)
<b>tatpuruṣa</b> compound	233, 235 (Part One)
Tone	27 (Part One)
Unaspirated	10 (Part One)
Unraised tone	27 (Part One)
Unvoiced	10 (Part One)
<b>upadhmāniya</b>	113 (Part One)
<b>upapada</b> compound	13 (Part Two)
Velar	9, 22 (Part One)
Verb classes	141, 364 – 380 (Part Two)
Class 1 ( $\sqrt{bhū}$ )	24, 364, 374 (Part Two)
Class 2 ( $\sqrt{ad}$ )	137, 365, 375 (Part Two)
Class 3 ( $\sqrt{hu}$ )	72, 95, 366, 375 (Part Two)
Class 4 ( $\sqrt{div}$ )	28, 367, 374 (Part Two)
Class 5 ( $\sqrt{su}$ )	120, 368, 375 (Part Two)
Class 6 ( $\sqrt{tud}$ )	29, 369, 374 (Part Two)
Class 7 ( $\sqrt{rudh}$ )	96, 370, 375 (Part Two)
Class 8 ( $\sqrt{tan}$ )	30, 371, 375 (Part Two)
Class 9 ( $\sqrt{kri}$ )	140, 372, 375 (Part Two)
Class 10 ( $\sqrt{cur}$ )	29, 373, 374 (Part Two)
Verb roots	5, 312 (Part One); 141, 181, 347 (Part Two)
Verbs, derivative (secondary)	7, 222 (Part Two)
Causative	222 (Part Two)
Denominative	269 (Part Two)
Desiderative	252 (Part Two)
Intensive	269 (Part Two)
Verbs, moods	25 (Part One); 155 (Part Two)
Conditional	270 (Part Two)

---

Imperative	11 (Part Two)
Optative	166 (Part Two)
Subjunctive	155 (Part Two)
Verbs, tenses	25 (Part One); 155 (Part Two)
Aorist	270 (Part Two)
Imperfect	188, 199, 316, 317 (Part One)
Perfect	156 (Part Two)
Periphrastic future (first future)	112 (Part Two)
Present indicative	5, 13, 24 (Part One)
Simple future (second future)	221 (Part One)
<b>virāma</b>	55 (Part One)
<b>visarga (ḥ)</b>	20 (Part One)
Voice, active and middle	25, 112 (Part One)
Voiced	10 (Part One)
Vowels	2 (Part One)
<b>Vyākaraṇa</b>	xvi (Part One); 180 (Part Two)
<b>vṛddhi</b>	167 (Part One)
Word order	34, 46 (Part One)
<b>yad</b>	177 (Part One)
<b>Yāska</b>	xvi (Part One)

<b>LESSON FOUR</b>	<b>31</b>	
Alphabet:	Ten more consonants in <b>devanāgari</b>	32
Grammar:	The nominative case	33
	The accusative case	33
Vocabulary:	Nouns that end in short <b>a</b>	35
<b>LESSON FIVE</b>	<b>41</b>	
Alphabet:	The rest of the alphabet in <b>devanāgari</b>	42
Grammar:	The instrumental and dative cases	45
Vocabulary:	More nouns that end in short <b>a</b>	47
<b>LESSON SIX</b>	<b>54</b>	
Alphabet:	How vowels are formed when they follow consonants	55
Grammar:	The ablative and the genitive	58
	The use of <b>iti</b>	59
Vocabulary:	More nouns in <b>a</b>	60
<b>LESSON SEVEN</b>	<b>67</b>	
Alphabet:	Conjunct consonants	68
Grammar:	The locative and vocative	72
Vocabulary:	More nouns in <b>a</b>	75
<b>LESSON EIGHT</b>	<b>86</b>	
Alphabet:	The <b>sandhi</b> rules for combining vowels	87
Grammar:	Neuter nouns in short <b>a</b>	92
Vocabulary:	Neuter nouns	93

---

<b>LESSON NINE</b>	107	
Alphabet:	The <b>sandhi</b> rules for final <b>ḥ</b>	108
Grammar:	The middle voice and “have”	112
Vocabulary:	Verbs in the middle voice	113
<b>LESSON TEN</b>	125	
Alphabet:	The remaining <b>sandhi</b> rules	126
Grammar:	Pronouns and adjectives	128
	The verb $\sqrt{as}$	130
Vocabulary:	Adjectives and particles	132
<b>LESSON ELEVEN</b>	141	
Alphabet:	Internal <b>sandhi</b> rules	142
Grammar:	Feminine nouns in <b>ā</b>	144
	Third person pronouns	146
Vocabulary:	Feminine nouns	150
<b>LESSON TWELVE</b>	156	
Alphabet:	Numerals; cardinal and ordinal numbers	157
Grammar:	Nouns in <b>i</b> and the gerund	160
Vocabulary:	Nouns in <b>i</b>	163
<b>LESSON THIRTEEN</b>	166	
Alphabet:	The <b>sandhi</b> rules for combining vowels	167
Grammar:	Feminine nouns in <b>ī</b>	171
	Relative-correlative clauses	172
Vocabulary:	Nouns in <b>ī</b>	178
	Relative and correlative adverbs	178

<b>LESSON FOURTEEN</b>	181	
Alphabet:	The <b>sandhi</b> rules for final <b>ḥ</b>	182
Grammar:	Verb prefixes and the imperfect active	188
Vocabulary:	More verbs	191
<b>LESSON FIFTEEN</b>	195	
Alphabet:	The <b>sandhi</b> rules for final <b>m</b>	196
Grammar:	More verb prefixes	197
	The imperfect middle	199
Vocabulary:	More verbs	200
<b>LESSON SIXTEEN</b>	204	
Alphabet:	The <b>sandhi</b> rules for final <b>n</b>	205
Grammar:	Nouns in <b>an</b>	208
	The imperfect for <b>as</b>	210
	The <b>dvandva</b> compound	210
Vocabulary:	Nouns in <b>an</b> , more adjectives	214
<b>LESSON SEVENTEEN</b>	217	
Alphabet:	The <b>sandhi</b> rules for final <b>t</b>	218
Grammar:	Nouns ending in <b>r</b> , the future tense	220
Vocabulary:	Nouns in <b>r</b>	224
<b>LESSON EIGHTEEN</b>	228	
Alphabet:	All remaining <b>sandhi</b> rules	229
Grammar:	Nouns in <b>u</b>	232
	The <b>karmadhāraya</b> and <b>tatpuruṣa</b> compound	233
	Summary of compounds	235
Vocabulary:	Nouns in <b>u</b> , more adjectives	238

---

	ANSWERS TO EXERCISES	242
<b>TABLES</b>		
Masculine <b>a</b>		298
Neuter <b>a</b>		299
Feminine <b>ā</b>		300
Masculine <b>i</b> , feminine <b>i</b>		301
Feminine <b>ī</b>		302
Masculine <b>an</b>		303
Neuter <b>an</b>		304
Masculine <b>r</b> , feminine <b>r̥</b>		305
Masculine <b>u</b> , feminine <b>u</b>		306
Pronouns		307
Verbs		312
Prefixes		318
Numerals		319
<b>sandhi</b>		320
	<b>VOCABULARY</b>	328
	<b>ENGLISH-SANSKRIT VOCABULARY</b>	342
	<b>SANSKRIT QUOTATIONS</b>	352
	<b>READING FROM THE BHAGAVAD GĪTĀ</b>	371
	<b>INDEX OF GRAMMATICAL TERMS</b>	376
	<b>GENERAL INDEX</b>	382

---

## INTRODUCTION

### REASONS FOR STUDYING SANSKRIT

There are several reasons to study the subtle and refined language of Sanskrit. The sound, script, grammar, and systematic nature of the language is charming in itself, something of great beauty. The study of Sanskrit creates orderliness within the mind because Sanskrit is a highly systematic language, reflecting the orderliness of nature itself.

Most students who study Sanskrit also have an interest in the content of the Sanskrit literature. This large body of literature is enormously diverse, including such fields as philosophy, science, art, music, phonology, grammar, mathematics, architecture, history, education, and logic (to name just a few). The literature can be understood in greater depth when it is studied in its original language.

Even a little Sanskrit will give you control over English translations of the Sanskrit literature, so you will be able to decide if a crucial word has been mistranslated. While you may not become an expert translator of the Sanskrit literature, you'll find that an introductory knowledge of Sanskrit has great worth. Even a small knowledge of Sanskrit is useful when reading Sanskrit texts in English. And who knows? The study of Sanskrit could lead to something far beyond what you anticipated.

### VEDIC AND CLASSICAL SANSKRIT

Sanskrit (**samskrta**) means “perfected,” or “put together” (“put,” **kṛta** and “together,” **sam**). Sanskrit is divided into two principal parts: Vedic Sanskrit and Classical Sanskrit. The older language is Vedic Sanskrit, or Vedic, the language of the **Samhitā** and

**Brāhmaṇa.** Vedic Sanskrit begins with the **Rk-Saṃhitā**.

Classical Sanskrit, which includes several aspects, is the language of the **Bhagavad-Gītā**, **Rāmāyaṇa**, and the rest of the Sanskrit literature.

This text focuses on the beginning study of Classical Sanskrit, although several of the quotations are in Vedic Sanskrit. Normally, Vedic Sanskrit is studied after Classical Sanskrit is learned.

#### TEXTS ON SANSKRIT

Over the past several hundred years, few Western scholars have written grammars or introductory textbooks for Sanskrit. In the 17th and 18th centuries, a few introductory materials for Sanskrit were written by Jesuit missionaries living in India. Some 19th Century works are by: Bartholome (1801), Foster (1804), Colebrooke (1805), Carey (1806), Wilkens (1808), Hamilton (1814), Yates (1820), Bopp (1827), Wilson (1841), Monier-Williams (1846), Ballantyne (1862), Benfey (1863), Müller (1866), Kielhorn (1870), Whitney (1879), and Perry (1886). Some 20th Century works are by: MacDonell (1911), Renou (1942), Antoine (1954), Burrow (1955), Tyberg (1964), Gonda (1966), Hart (1972), Coulson (1976), and Goldman (1980).

#### FEATURES OF THIS TEXT

This text is written to fulfill a need that still remains, which is to make the introductory study of Sanskrit simple, concise, and systematic, thereby making it more accessible and enjoyable for a beginning student. The text is not a complete survey of Sanskrit grammar, or even a primer. It is meant to be a “pre-primer,” a step-by-step introduction to the fundamental aspects of the language.

Some of the features of this text are:

- Small, learnable steps
- Sequential organization
- A balance between alphabet, grammar, and vocabulary in each lesson
- As few unnecessary complications as possible
- Gradual integration of **sandhi** rules

After completing this text, you should be able to study any of the above Sanskrit textbooks more comfortably, or begin Part II of this text. Part II will feature the reading of selected verses from the **Bhagavad-Gītā**, accompanied by a more thorough explanation of unfamiliar rules of grammar as they are encountered in the reading. Both volumes together will cover the basic rules of Sanskrit grammar. For college classes, Part I covers the standard material for a one-semester course and Part II for the second semester. After completing Part II, the student should be able to read the **Bhagavad-Gītā** with the aid of a Sanskrit dictionary and a word-by-word English translation.

In this text, each lesson has three sections:

1. Alphabet
2. Grammar
3. Vocabulary

## ALPHABET

1. The study of any language begins with the study of the alphabet—both pronunciation and script. From the beginning, the pronunciation of Sanskrit should be relaxed and natural, without straining. One of the texts of **Śikṣā** states that Sanskrit should be

One challenge for the beginning student is learning the rules, called **sandhi** rules, which describe how the sounds of words change in different environments. In the past, students have found these rules demanding, because they cannot be used until they are memorized, and they are difficult to memorize without being used. By introducing **sandhi** in small steps that are easy to master, this text attempts to overcome this problem. Beginning in Lesson 2, the exercises will be given without **sandhi** (*pada-pāṭha*), but will also be observed with **sandhi** (*samhitā-pāṭha*). Beginning in Lesson 8, the **sandhi** rules will be given in chart form, so that the charts can be used temporarily as a quick reference to gain understanding of the general context of the rules. After using the charts for some time, it will be easy to memorize the rules, which begin in Lesson 13.

## GRAMMAR

2. The study of grammar is from **Vyākaraṇa**, of which the primary text is the **Aṣṭādhyāyī** of **Pāṇini**. The **Aṣṭādhyāyī** is a concise and complete grammar of Sanskrit, containing about 4,000 **sūtras**, or aphorisms. While **saṃskṛta** means to “put together,” **Vyākaraṇa** means to “undo” or to “take apart.” It gives the details of the structure of the language.

Many of the grammatical terms are given in Sanskrit. Memorizing these terms will be useful for several reasons. It will give you a better understanding of the tradition from which these rules came. It will allow you to feel more comfortable when studying more advanced Sanskrit textbooks, of which many use these terms. It will increase your vocabulary, which will be useful in many areas, since most of these terms are also found in other areas than grammar.

## VOCABULARY

3. According to **Yāska’s Nirukta** (the **Vedāṅga** dealing with word meaning), all Sanskrit words can be divided into four categories: verbs (**ākhyāta**), nominals (nouns, pronouns, and adjectives)

(*nāman*), prefixes (*upasarga*), and indeclinables (*nipāta*). Verbs, as well as nominals, are systematically derived from verb roots (*dhātu*), of which there are about 2,000. In this text, the limited vocabulary is aimed at eventually providing you with an entry into the reading of the *Bhagavad-Gītā* and the *Rāmāyaṇa*.

## HOW TO STUDY THIS TEXT

Review the alphabet, grammar rules, and vocabulary frequently and in a relaxed state of mind before doing the exercises. Then the exercises will be more enjoyable, with fewer difficult areas. The exercises in this text contain as few idiomatic Sanskrit expressions as possible, so that you will not be overburdened with learning too much at one time. If the exercises seem difficult, you should review more. The answers to the exercises are given in the back of the text (p. 242).

In general, you should review as often as possible during the day, taking a few minutes to bring the material to mind. If there is any hesitation in recall, immediately look at the written form, rather than straining and thus “programming” your mind to forget. The best way to memorize is to speak the words out loud, if possible. Memorization should be easy, comfortable, and frequent.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The following individuals have kindly offered inspiration and creative suggestions, and have cheerfully assisted in the preparation of this text: Bryan Aubrey, Niels Baumann, Harriet Berman, Laurie Couture, Michael Davis, Carol de Giere, Katherine Doak, Lawrence Eyre, James French, June French, Peter Freund, Elizabeth Goldfinger, Shepley Hansen, Jean Harrison, Monica Hayward, Park Hensley, Jos Hindriks, Sherry Hogue, Jan Houben, Robert Hütwohl, Alicia Isen, Vernon Katz, Lee Keng, John Kremer, John Konhaus, Sara Konhaus, Margaret Lerom, Sherry Levesque, Dawn Macheca, Richard Marsan, Devorah McKay, Meha Mehta, Christine Mosse, Anthony Naylor, Patricia Oates, Dafna O’Neill, Helen Ovens, Craig Pearson, David Reigle, Beatrice Reilly, Beth Reilly, John Roberts, Robert Roney, Frederick Rosenberg, Susan

Rosenfield, William Sands, Peter Scharf, Barney Sherman, Barbara Small, Thomas Stanley, Dale Stephens, Jan Storms, Sheila Terry, Roxie Teague, Susan Tripp, Agnes Maria Von Agris, Douglas Walker, Keith Wegman, Geoffrey Wells, Julian White, and Elinor Wolfe. Many other students who have studied this text have given valuable feedback. Peter Freund and Eric Vautier developed the *devanāgarī* and transliteration fonts used in this text. My wife, Linda, assisted in editing and offered continuous guidance and support.

The Sanskrit quotations beginning on page 352 (Part One) and the verses from the *Bhagavad Gītā* (Part Two) are from translations by Maharishi Mahesh Yogi.

## FOR FURTHER STUDY

- *Sanskrit Manual*, Roderick Buksell, Motilal Banarsi das
- *A Sanskrit-English Dictionary*, Monier Monier-Williams, Motilal Banarsi das
- *The Bhagavad Gītā*, translated by Winthrop Sargeant, State of New York University Press
- *Devavāṇīpraveśikā: Introduction to the Sanskrit Language*, Goldman and Sutherland, University of California, Berkely
- *Sanskrit, An Introduction to the Classical Language*, Michael Coulson, Teach Yourself Books, Hodder and Stoughton
- *A Sanskrit Grammar for Students*, Arthur MacDonell, Motilal Banarsi das
- *Samskrta subodhini: A Sanskrit Primer*, Madhav Deshpande, University of Michigan
- *Sanskrit: An Easy Introduction to an Enchanting Language*, Ashok Aklujkar, University of British Columbia
- *Sanskrit Grammar*, William Dwight Whitney, Motilal Banarsi das
- *Sanskrit Reader*, Charles Lanman, Motilal Banarsi das
- *A Higher Sanskrit Grammar*, M. R. Kale, Motilal Banarsi das
- *A Manual of Sanskrit Phonetics*, C. C. Uhlenbeck, Munshiram
- *A Dictionary of Sanskrit Grammar*, K. V. Abhyankar, Baroda Oriental Institute
- *A Critical Study of Sanskrit Phonetics*, Vidhata Mishra

**DEDICATION**

This book is dedicated with deep appreciation and gratitude to Maharishi Mahesh Yogi. Maharishi describes Sanskrit as the language of nature, the language of the impulses within pure consciousness, the Self. Maharishi explains how the ancient Vedic rishis of the Himalayas, fathoming the silent depth of their own pure consciousness, cognized these impulses. These cognitions were recorded in the Vedic literature, a vast body of beautiful expressions that embodies the mechanics of evolution in every field of life.

Over the years, Maharishi has emphasized the most significant passages from this literature, of which many are included in the section of this text entitled “Sanskrit Quotations.” The knowledge contained in these expressions can be found at the foundation of every culture and tradition.

From the Vedic tradition of India, Maharishi has brought to light practical procedures for experiencing pure consciousness and promoting evolution in daily life—Maharishi’s Transcendental Meditation and TM-Sidhi program. This simple, natural program has brought happiness and fulfillment to millions of people around the world, and has been verified by more than 500 scientific studies on every continent. Maharishi has provided the means for removing stress and suffering and for unfolding the full potential within every individual—for creating perfect health, progress, prosperity, and permanent peace in the world.

# 1

## LESSON ONE

Alphabet: The vowels in roman script

The first six vowels in **devanāgarī**

Grammar: How a verb is formed  
The singular ending for verbs

Vocabulary: The verbs **√gam** and **√prach**  
The word for “and”  
How to write simple sentences

**ALPHABET:**  
**VOWELS**

1. In Sanskrit, each letter represents one and only one sound (**varṇa**). In English, the letter “a” may indicate many sounds, but not so in Sanskrit. The alphabet is systematically arranged according to the structure of the mouth.
2. There are two basic divisions to the alphabet:
  - a. Vowels (**svara**, or sounded)
  - b. Consonants (**vyañjana**, or manifesting)
3. Vowels can be either short (**hrasva**) or long (**dīrgha**). Short vowels are held for one count (**mātrā**), and long vowels are held for two counts. Some vowels are called simple (**śuddha**), and some are called complex (**samyukta**).

	SHORT	LONG
Simple	a i u ṛ ṝ	ā ī ū ṝ ṝ̄
	LONG	LONG
Complex	e o	ai au

4. In Vedic Sanskrit, but rarely in Classical Sanskrit, there are also vowels held for three counts, called **pluta**, which are marked in **devanāgarī** and roman script by the short vowel followed by the numeral 3. For example: **a3**, or a times 3. You may also see it marked with a long vowel: **ā3**. **Pāṇini** (1.2.27) compares the three counts to the calling of a rooster: **u ū u3**.

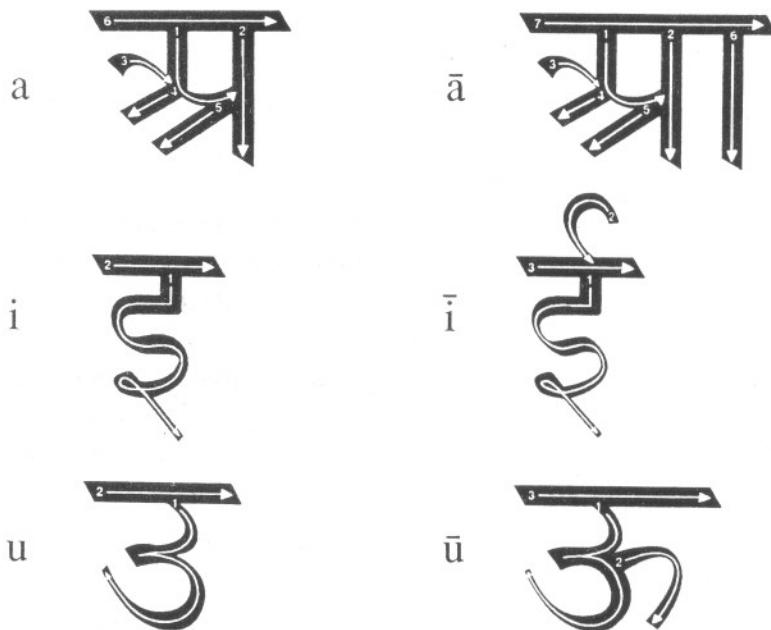
---

5. Here is the pronunciation of the vowels:

<b>a</b>	like the first “a” in	America
<b>ā</b>	like the “a” in	father
<b>i</b>	like the “ea” in	heat
<b>ī</b>	like the “ee” in	beet
<b>u</b>	like the “u” in	suit
<b>ū</b>	like the “oo” in	pool
<b>r̥</b>	like the “ri” in	river (usually not rolled)
<b>ṛ̥</b>	like the “ri” in	reed
<b>l̥</b>	like the “lry” in	jewelry
<b>e</b>	like the “a” in	gate
<b>ai</b>	like the “ai” in	aisle
<b>o</b>	like the “o” in	pole
<b>au</b>	like the “ou” in	loud

6. The lines and dots are called “diacritics,” or “diacritical marks.” They are used because the Sanskrit alphabet has more letters than the English alphabet. Diacritics are combined with roman letters to represent new sounds.
7. A vowel by itself, or a consonant or group of consonants followed by a vowel, is called a syllable (**akṣara**).

8. Sanskrit is written in the **devanāgarī** script. The word **devanāgarī** means the “city (**nāgarī**) of immortals (**deva**).” There are no capital letters.
9. The ideal way to learn the script will be to memorize approximately one letter each day, writing it 20 times or so, and putting it on a flash card (**devanāgarī** on the front and roman on the back). Continue to practice regularly with your flash cards throughout the course. Practice for small amounts of time, several times a day.
10. Here are six vowels in **devanāgarī**. The small numbers inside each letter indicate the order in drawing the various parts of the letter. In general, write left to right, top to bottom, writing the bar last. (Alternate forms for **a** and **ā** will be learned in Lesson Seven.)



**GRAMMAR:**  
**VERBS**

1. Sanskrit roots are divided into ten classes (*gāṇa*) in order to form the present stem. We will study the four classes whose stems end in **a**. The root (**dhātu**), written with  $\sqrt{}$  before it, forms a stem (**aṅga**), and the stem adds an ending (**tiñ**) to form a verb (**tiñanta**).

Root	$\sqrt{\text{gam}}$	go
Stem	<b>gaccha</b>	go
Verb	<b>gacchati</b>	he, she, or it goes  _____  __
		Stem + Ending ( <b>ti</b> )

2. Verbs are in three persons (*puruṣa*): third (**prathama**, or first), second (**madhyama**, or middle), and first (**uttama**, or last). (Students in the West have learned these upside down.)

Third person	he, she, or it
Second person	you
First person	I

3. The stem stays the same, but the ending changes for each person. This form is called the present indicative, because it is in the present tense, and it indicates. It is singular (**eka-vacana**).

Third person	<b>gacchati</b>	she goes, he goe ( <b>gaccha + ti</b> )
Second person	<b>gacchasi</b>	you go ( <b>gaccha + si</b> )
First person	<b>gacchāmi</b>	I go ( <b>gaccha + a + mi</b> )

**VOCABULARY**

1. Here is the vocabulary in Sanskrit and in English. Each verb appears in its root form, followed by the third person singular form. The stem can be found by removing the endings.

**SANSKRIT****ENGLISH**

**√gam** (root) **gacchati** (3rd per. sing.) he goes, she goes

**ca** (indeclinable\*)

and (placed after the last word of the series, or after each word) (never first in a sentence or clause)

**√prach** (root) **pr̥cchati** (3rd per. sing.) he asks, she asks

\*Some words do not have endings, and so are called “indeclinable” (**avyaya**). Included as indeclinables are: prepositions, adverbs, particles, conjunctions (like **ca**), and interjections. A few nouns (like **svasti**) are also treated as indeclinables.

2. Here are some sample sentences:

**gacchāmi**

I go. (or) I am going.

**pr̥cchati gacchāmi ca**

He asks and I go.

**pr̥cchati ca gacchāmi ca**

He asks and I go.

**gacchasi ca pr̥cchasi ca**

You go and you ask.  
(or) You go and ask.

**EXERCISES**

1. Memorize the vowels and their order in roman script. Learn to pronounce them correctly.
2. Learn to write and recognize the first six vowels in **devanāgari**.
3. Memorize the forms for the first, second, and third person singular verbs in the present indicative.
4. Memorize the vocabulary.
5. Translate the following sentences into English. Pronounce each sentence several times out loud, both before and after translating. Compare with the correct answers given on page 242.
  - a. pṛcchasi ca gacchati ca
  - b. gacchāmi pṛcchāmi ca
  - c. pṛcchati ca gacchati ca
  - d. gacchasi pṛcchāmi ca

  - e. pṛcchati pṛcchāmi ca
  - f. gacchasi ca gacchati ca
  - g. pṛcchāmi gacchasi ca
  - h. pṛcchati ca gacchāmi ca

6. Translate the following sentences into Sanskrit:
  - a. I go and I ask.
  - b. You ask and he goes.
  - c. He asks and you go.
  - d. He goes and asks.
  - e. You ask.
  - f. I ask and you go.
  - g. I go and you go
  - h. He goes and you go.

# 2

## LESSON TWO

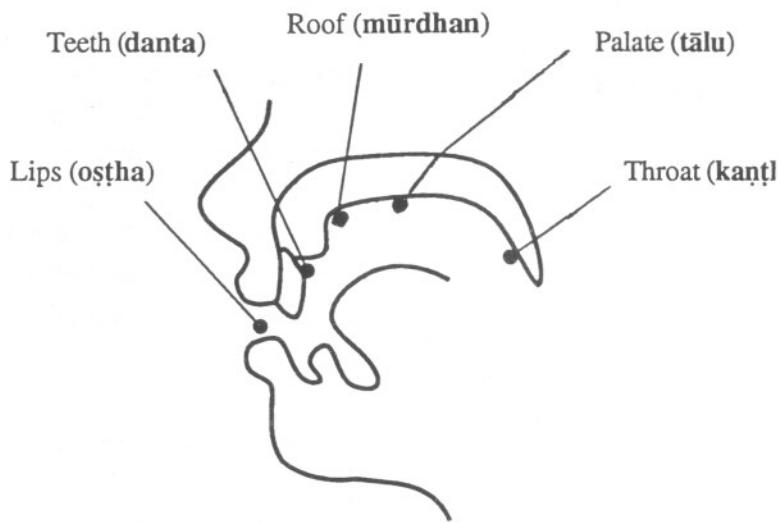
Alphabet: Most of the consonants and how they are organized  
The last seven vowels in **devanāgarī**

Grammar: Verbs in the dual

Vocabulary: More verbs  
The word for “where”

**ALPHABET:  
CONSONANTS**

1. The first 25 consonants, called stops (*sparśa*), are arranged according to five points of articulation (*sthāna*):



2. Here are the five sets (*varga*), arranged according to point of articulation. For example, all the consonants in the velar row (*ka* *varga*), are pronounced in the throat. The labial row is pronounced at the lips. The *a* is added for the sake of pronunciation.

	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th
Velar ( <i>kaṇṭhya</i> )	ka	kha	ga	gha	ṅa
Palatal ( <i>tālavya</i> )	ca	cha	ja	jha	ñā
Retroflex ( <i>mūrdhanya</i> )	ṭa	ṭha	ḍa	ḍha	ṇā
Dental ( <i>dantya</i> )	ta	tha	da	dha	nā
Labial ( <i>oṣṭhya</i> )	pa	pha	ba	bha	n̄ā
			Aspirated		Aspirated
					Voiced

3. Each set of English letters represents one Sanskrit sound. For example, **gh** is one sound. It is the aspirated, voiced velar.
4. The sound **ka** is called **kakāra** (“ka” maker). The sound **ga** is called **gakāra** (“ga” maker), and so on. The only exception is that **ra** is not called **rakāra**, but just **ra** or **repha**, “snarl.” (In the next lesson we will learn **ra**.)
5. Each row is divided into five sounds: the first (**prathama**), the second (**dvitiya**), the third (**trtiya**), the fourth (**caturtha**), and the fifth (**pañcama**). For example, **ka**, **ca**, **ṭa**, **ta**, and **pa** are all first in their rows.
6. Some sounds are aspirated (**mahā-prāṇa**)—more breath is used in pronouncing these sounds. Some are unaspirated (**alpa-prāṇa**). Some are voiced (**ghoṣavat**)—the vocal chords are used in pronouncing these sounds. Some are unvoiced (**aghoṣa**). The **ṅ**, **ñ**, **ṇ**, **n**, and **m** are called nasals (**anunāsika**).
7. Here is how the consonants are pronounced:

<b>k</b>	like the “k” in	skate
<b>kh</b>	like the “kh” in	bunkhouse
<b>g</b>	like the “g” in	go
<b>gh</b>	like the “gh” in	loghouse
<b>ṅ</b>	like the “n” in	sing
<b>c</b>	like the “c” in	cello
<b>ch</b>	like the “ch” in	charm (using more breath)
<b>j</b>	like the “j” in	just
<b>jh</b>	like the “j” in	just (using more breath)
<b>ñ</b>	like the “n” in	enjoyable

<b>t</b>	like the “t” in	stable (for this group the tongue is touching the hard palate, as in the diagram on page 9.)
<b>ṭh</b>	like the “t” in	table (using more breath)
<b>d</b>	like the “d” in	dynamic
<b>ḍh</b>	like the “dh” in	redhead (using more breath)
<b>n</b>	like the “n” in	gentle

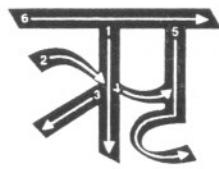
In English, we normally pronounce “t” and “d” somewhere between these two groups (retroflex and dental).

<b>t</b>	like the “t” in	stable (tongue at base of teeth)
<b>th</b>	like the “t” in	table (using breath, tongue at base of teeth)
<b>d</b>	like the “d” in	dynamic (tongue at base of teeth)
<b>dh</b>	like the “dh” in	redhead (using breath, tongue at base of teeth)
<b>n</b>	like the “n” in	gentle (tongue at base of teeth)
<b>p</b>	like the “p” in	spin
<b>ph</b>	like the “ph” in	shepherd
<b>b</b>	like the “b” in	beautiful
<b>bh</b>	like the “bh” in	clubhouse
<b>m</b>	like the “m” in	mother

8. In Vedic Sanskrit, when **da** or **dha** have vowels on both sides, they may become **la** or **lha**. The example used is that when white has crimson on both sides, the white changes its color slightly. Therefore, when **da** has a vowel on both sides, it changes to **la**. For example, **agnim ide** is found in the **Rk Samhitā** as **agnim ile**.

9. Here are the remaining vowels in devanāgarī:

ṛ



ṝ



l̥



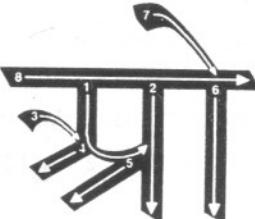
e



ai



o



au



**GRAMMAR:**  
**DUAL VERBS**

- Unlike English, Sanskrit has dual verbs. The dual (**dvi-vacana**) is formed like this:

Third person      **gacchataḥ**      those two go  
 (gaccha + tas)

Second person    **gacchathāḥ**      you two go  
 (gaccha + thas)

First person      **gacchāvah**      we two go  
 (gaccha + a + vas)

We will learn the pronunciation of **ḥ** in the next lesson. Note that the ending **tas** becomes **tah** when it forms a verb. This change is because **sandhi** is applied. (See the following page for an introduction to **sandhi**.)

- In English, interrogative words usually begin with “wh,” such as where, when, etc. In Sanskrit, interrogative words usually begin with **k**. The word for “where” is **kutra**. It is usually placed at the beginning of a sentence. The other words do not need to be rearranged to make a question out of the sentence. For example:

**kutra gacchati**  
 Where is he going?

- To translate **kutra gacchati** into English, first write “where” for **kutra** and then write “he goes” for **gacchati**. Literally it would then be translated as “Where he goes?” However, it is important to form correct English sentences. For “Where he goes?” you must write “Where is he going?” or “Where does he go?”

**VOCABULARY****SANSKRIT****ENGLISH**

**kutra** (indeclinable)

where

$\sqrt{bhū}$  (root) **bhavati** (3rd per. sing.)

he is, he becomes  
(you are, I am)

$\sqrt{vas}$  (root) **vasati** (3rd per. sing.)

he lives

$\sqrt{smṛ}$  (root) **smarati** (3rd per. sing.)

he remembers

**SANDHI**

Before doing the exercises, we will have an introduction to **sandhi** (**samdhī**), the rules for how sounds are combined. In English, we say “an apple” but “a pear.” The word “the” is often pronounced differently, depending upon the following word. For example, “the house” and “the other house.” Some sounds are modified according to their phonetic environment. In Sanskrit, many sounds make these same changes, and unlike English, all of these changes are written. The rules for these changes are called **sandhi**, which means “junction,” “putting together,” or “combination.” **Sandhi** is now an English word and appears in most English dictionaries. The Sanskrit word is **samdhī**.

The exercises in Lesson 1 are written the same even after **sandhi** rules have been applied. However, in Lesson 2 the sentences would be written differently if they were to appear in a Sanskrit text. At this point, however, you do not need to learn these rules. Just observe the sentences in parentheses, and notice that these sentences are written slightly differently with **sandhi**.

**EXERCISES**

1. Learn the five sets of consonants, their order, and their pronunciation. Learn to write the last seven vowels in **devanāgarī**.
2. Be able to identify each consonant by its classification. For example, the aspirated, voiced palatal is **jha**.
3. Learn the dual endings for verbs.
4. Learn the vocabulary.
5. Translate these sentences, using the summary sheet on page 17. Just observe the sentences in parentheses with **sandhi**. (See page 14.) Answers are given on pages 243 and 244.
  - a. **kutra vasāvah**  
(**kutra vasāvah**)
  - b. **bhavasi ca bhavāvah ca**  
(**bhavasi ca bhavāvah**)
  - c. **vasāmi smarataḥ ca**  
(**vasāmi smarataś ca**)
  - d. **pṛcchathāḥ ca smarati ca**  
(**pṛcchathaś ca smarati ca**)
  - e. **kutra gacchāvah**  
(**kutra gacchāvah**)
  - f. **kutra bhavāmi**  
(**kutra bhavāmī**)
  - g. **kutra gacchāmi**  
(**kutra gacchāmī**)

- h. **pṛcchāmi ca smarati ca**  
(*pṛcchāmi ca smarati ca*)
- i. **vasasi ca gacchāvah ca**  
(*vasasi ca gacchāvaś ca*)
- j. **kutra gacchasi**  
(*kutra gacchasi*)

6. Translate the following sentences into Sanskrit:

- a. Where are you two going?
- b. I live and those two live.
- c. We two ask and those two remember.
- d. You go and he goes.
- e. Where am I going?
- f. I am and you two are.
- g. Where are you? (Use the singular.)
- h. Where is he going?

**SUMMARY  
SHEET**

Third	<b>gacchati</b> (he, she goes)	<b>gacchataḥ</b> (they two go)
Second	<b>gacchasi</b> (you go)	<b>gacchathah</b> (you two go)
First	<b>gacchāmi</b> (I go)	<b>gacchāvah</b> (we two go)
	[_____] Singular	[_____] Dual

## VERBS

<b>√gam</b>	<b>gacchati</b>	he goes, she goes
<b>√prach</b>	<b>pṛechati</b>	he asks
<b>√bhū</b>	<b>bhavati</b>	he is
<b>√vas</b>	<b>vasati</b>	he lives
<b>√smṛ</b>	<b>smarati</b>	he remembers

## INDECLINABLES

<b>kutra</b>	where
<b>ca</b>	and

## LESSON THREE

3

### LESSON THREE

Alphabet:	The remaining letters in roman script The first ten consonants in <b>devanāgarī</b>
-----------	--

- Grammar:
  - The plural
  - The grammatical terms to describe a verb
  - Accent

## Vocabulary: More verbs

**ALPHABET:  
THE REMAINING  
LETTERS**

1. The previous consonants are sometimes referred to as “stops,” because they stop the flow of air. They are formed by “complete contact” (*sprṣṭa*). The remaining letters are consonants, but they allow more flow of air.
2. There are four consonants, formed by “slight contact” (*īsat-sprṣṭa*), called semi-vowels. They are voiced, but not aspirated: They are considered to be between vowels and consonants, and so are called **antahṣṭha**, or “in-between”:

**ya, ra, la, va**

3. The sibilants are formed by “half contact” (*ardha-sprṣṭa*). They are aspirated, but not voiced. They are called **ūṣman**, or “heated”:

**śa, ṣa, sa**

4. The aspirate (voiced, but sometimes classified as a sibilant) is:

**ha**

5. Here is how these sounds are pronounced:

<b>y</b>	like the “y” in	yes
<b>r</b>	like the “r” in	red
<b>l</b>	like the “l” in	law
<b>v</b>	like the “v” in	victory (but closer to a “w”)

ś	like the “sh” in	shine
ṣ	like the “c” in	efficient (similar to the ś)
s	like the “s” in	sweet
h	like the “h” in	hero

6. Two additional sounds are the **anusvāra** (ṁ) and the **visarga** (ḥ), which both follow vowels.
7. The **anusvāra** (ṁ) causes the last portion of the vowel before it to be nasal (like the French word “bon”). The **anusvāra** changes its sound according to the following sound. It may sound like the nasal of the set to which the sound following it belongs. For example, **saṅkhyā** is pronounced similar to **saṅkhyā**. In the dictionary, the **anusvāra** is found in the same place as the nasal to which it refers. If the **anusvāra** comes before a semi-vowel or sibilant, it is found in the dictionary before **ka**.
8. The **visarga** (ḥ), or **visarjanīya**, is an unvoiced breathing that occurs in many contexts instead of an s or r. In modern India it is often pronounced, at the end of a line, as an echo of the vowel before it. For example, after an **a** it would be a short **ha**. After an **i** it would be a short **hi**:

$$\begin{array}{lll}
 ah & = & ah^a \\
 ih & = & ih^i \\
 uh & = & uh^u
 \end{array}$$

The **jihvāmūliya** (ḥ) is sometimes used in place of a visarga before **ka** or **kha**. The **upadhmāniya** (ḥ) is sometimes used in place of a visarga before **pa** or **pha**. These letters, used more in Vedic Sanskrit, indicate a subtle difference in the breath before **ka** and **pa**, which is like breathing through the throat (ḥ) or breathing through the lips (ḥ).

9. We have now learned all the letters in their transliterated form (their roman letter equivalents). There are other ways of representing some letters. At times you may see:

śa	as	sha	śānti, shānti
r̥	as	r̥i	r̥k, rik
ñ	as	ñi	Śaṅkara, Śaṅkara
cha	as	chha	chandas, chhandas
ca	as	cha	candra, chandra

10. All the sounds can be classified according to the part of the mouth they come from:

Velar	a	ā	ka	kha	ga	gha	ñā	ha
Palatal	i	ī	e	ai	ca	cha	ja	jha
Retroflex	r̥	ṝ			ṭa	ṭha	ḍa	ḍha
Dental	l̥				ta	tha	da	dha
Labial	u	ū	o	au	pa	pha	ba	bha
					ma		na	la
							ra	sa
							ṣa	

The complex vowels are pronounced at two points of contact:  
 The sounds e (which can be said to be composed of a and i) and ai (composed of ā and i) are both velar and palatal. The sounds o (composed of a and u) and au (composed of ā and u) are both velar and labial. Also, the sound va is both dental and labial.

11. Here is the entire alphabet:

VOWELS (svara)

Simple (śuddha)	a	ā
	i	ī
	u	ū
	r̥	ṛ̥
	l̥	ṝ̥
Complex (samyukta)	e	ai
	o	au
Nasalization (anusvāra)		m̥
Aspiration (visarga)		h̥

CONSONANTS (vyañjana)

Velar (kaṇṭhya)	ka	kha	ga	gha	ñā
Palatal (tālavya)	ca	cha	ja	jha	ñā
Retroflex (mūrdhanya)ṭa	ṭha	ḍa	ḍha	ṇa	ṇa
Dental (dantya)	ta	tha	da	dha	na
Labial (oṣṭhya)	pa	pha	ba	bha	ma
Semi-vowels (antaḥstha)	ya	ra	la	va	
Sibilants (ūṣman)	śa	ṣa	sa	ha	

13. Here are the first ten consonants in devanāgarī script. Each symbol includes the sound a. For example, ka and not just k is meant by the first symbol.



The image shows five Devanagari characters: ka, kha, ga, gha, and na. Each character has stroke order arrows indicating the direction of writing. The 'ka' and 'kha' characters have three strokes: a vertical downstroke, a horizontal rightstroke, and a diagonal upstroke. The 'ga' and 'gha' characters also have three strokes. The 'na' character has two strokes: a vertical downstroke and a horizontal rightstroke.

ka        kha        ga        gha        na



The image shows five Devanagari characters: ca, cha, ja, jha, and ña. Each character has stroke order arrows indicating the direction of writing. The 'ca' and 'cha' characters have four strokes: a vertical downstroke, a horizontal rightstroke, a diagonal upstroke, and a small loop at the top. The 'ja' and 'jha' characters have four strokes. The 'ñ'a' character has three strokes: a vertical downstroke, a horizontal rightstroke, and a small loop at the top.

ca        cha        ja        jha        ña

**GRAMMAR:**  
**THE PLURAL**

1. Here is the plural (*bahu-vacana*) for the verb  $\sqrt{gam}$ :

Third person	gacchanti (gaccha - a + anti)	they (all) go
Second person	gacchatha (gaccha + tha)	you (all) go
First person	gacchāmāḥ (gaccha + a + mas)	we (all) go

Notice that the third person is **gaccha** minus **a** plus **anti**.

2. Now we have the complete conjugation (or verbal paradigm) for the present indicative (*lat*):

gacchati	gacchataḥ	gacchanti
gacchasi	gacchathāḥ	gacchatha
gacchāmi	gacchāvāḥ	gacchāmāḥ
he goes	those two go	they all go
you go	you two go	you all go
I go	we both go	we all go
Singular	Dual	Plural

Students of Sanskrit in India memorize these conjugations horizontally. Students in Europe and America have learned them vertically. It would be better to follow the system of India and memorize horizontally (for both verbs and nouns).

3. Here are the standard endings:

3rd	ti	tas	anti
2nd	si	thas	tha
1st	mi [ ]	vas [ ]	mas [ ]
	Singular	Dual	Plural

Note that when a word is formed, final s becomes h due to sandhi.

## GRAMMATICAL TERMS

4. Verbs can be classified in four basic ways: tense/mood, voice, person, and number. This is similar to, but slightly different from, how verbs are classified in English. Here is a simplified overview:

**Tense/Mood:** The tenses and modes are grouped together in the ten **lakāra**, or “I” sounds, because they are each abbreviated by Pāṇini with a word beginning with the letter “I.” We have learned the present indicative (abbreviated as **Iaṭ**). Other tense/moods are the perfect (**lit**), the periphrastic future (**lut**), the simple future (**lṛṭ**), the subjunctive (**leṭ**), the imperative (**loṭ**), the imperfect (**Iaṇ**), the optative or potential (**lin**), the aorist (**luṇ**), and the conditional (**lṛṇ**).

**Voice (upagraha):** We have learned the active voice (**parasmaipada**), which takes active endings. In Lesson 9 we will learn the middle voice (**ātmanepada**), which takes middle endings. Usually, when the fruit of an action comes back to the agent (**ātman**), the **ātmanepada** is used. When the fruit of an action goes to another person (**para**), the **parasmaipada** is used (although this distinction does not seem to be strictly followed in the literature). Some roots are conjugated in both voices (**ubhayapada**) and some usually in one voice. All the verbs we have learned so far are usually seen in the active voice.

**ACCENT**

1. Accent consists of higher and lower tones (**svara**). There is a raised tone (**udātta**), an unraised tone (**anudātta**), and a “moving” tone (**svarita**). In the **Rk Saṃhitā** the **udātta** is unmarked, the **anudātta** is marked by a low horizontal bar, and the **svarita** is marked by a high vertical bar. For example:

अग्निमीळे पुरोहितं यजस्य देवमृत्विजम्

In classical Sanskrit texts, the accents are not marked.

2. In most Sanskrit dictionaries, a mark is placed over the **udātta** for Vedic words only. For example:

Mánu  
mádhu  
rátna

3. **Pāṇini** does not give rules for stress accent.
4. For now, an important rule for proper pronunciation is to maintain a clear distinction between the short and long vowels (discussed on pages 2 and 3).

**VOCABULARY:**  
**MORE VERBS**

SANSKRIT

ENGLISH

na

not (placed before the verb)

√vad (root) vadati (3rd per. sing.)

he says, he speaks

√sthā (root) tiṣṭhati (3rd per. sing.)

he stands

All vocabulary is given in the order of the Sanskrit alphabet.

An additional rule you'll need to know to do these exercises is that if a member in a series has more than one word (such as **na gacchati**), **ca** usually comes after the first word. For example:

**gacchāmi na ca gacchati**

I go and she does not go.

You may also see **ca** at the end of a clause (less often). For example:

**gacchāmi na gacchati ca**

I go and she does not go.

**EXERCISES**

1. Learn the pronunciation and order of the semi-vowels, sibilants, **anusvāra**, and **visarga**. Learn the first ten consonants in **devanāgarī**.
2. Write, in correct order, the entire alphabet (in transliteration, or roman script).
3. Conjugate each verb we have learned, and learn the nine endings.
4. Be able to give the parsing code for each form we have learned.

5. Translate the following sentences into English, using the summary sheet on page 30. Underneath each sentence is the sentence with **sandhi**. Just observe the sentence with the **sandhi**. (Answers are on p. 245.)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a. vadati na ca vadāmi<br>(vadati na ca vadāmi)        | e. bhavathah̄ ca vasathah̄ ca<br>(bhavathaś ca vasathaś ca)     |
| b. vadathah̄ smaratah̄ ca<br>(vadathah̄ smarataś ca)   | f. kutra bhavasi<br>(kutra bhavasi)                             |
| c. na gacchanti<br>(na gacchanti)                      | g. tiṣṭhanti gacchanti ca<br>(tiṣṭhanti gacchanti ca)           |
| d. tiṣṭhāmah̄ gacchāmah̄ ca<br>(tiṣṭhāmo gacchāmaś ca) | h. na ca pṛechati na ca vadati<br>(na ca pṛechati na ca vadati) |

6. Translate these sentences into Sanskrit. Unless “two” is used, it will be understood that the plural form is intended.

- |                            |                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| a. Where are they going?   | e. Where do those two live? |
| b. We do not speak.        | f. We are not going.        |
| c. He asks and they speak. | g. I ask and they remember. |
| d. Where are we standing?  | h. Where are we?            |

**SUMMARY SHEET**

Third	<b>gacchati</b> (he, she goes)	<b>gacchataḥ</b> (they two go)	<b>gacchanti</b> (they all go)
Second	<b>gacchasi</b> (you go)	<b>gacchathah</b> (you two go)	<b>gacchatha</b> (you all go)
First	<b>gacchāmi</b> (I go)	<b>gacchāvah</b> (we two go)	<b>gacchāmah</b> (we all go)
	[_____]	[_____]	[_____]
	Singular	Dual	Plural

**VERBS**

√gam	gacchati	he goes
√prach	pṛcchati	he asks
√bhū	bhavati	he is
√vad	vadati	he speaks, he says
√vas	vasati	he lives
√sthā	tisṭhati	he stands
√smṛ	smarati	he remembers

**INDECLINABLES**

kutra	where
ca	and
na	not

*First Indian Edition: Delhi, 1994  
Second Revised Edition: Delhi, 1996  
Third Revised Edition: Delhi, 2003*

*First Published: California, 1989*

© THOMAS EGENES  
All Rights Reserved

ISBN: 81-208-1140-2

*Also available at:*

**MOTILAL BANARSIDASS**

41 U.A. Bungalow Road, Jawahar Nagar, Delhi 110 007  
8 Mahalaxmi Chamber, 22 Bhulabhai Desai Road, Mumbai 400 026  
236, 9th Main III Block, Jayanagar, Bangalore 560 011  
120 Royapettah High Road, Mylapore, Chennai 600 004  
Sanas Plaza, 1302 Baji Rao Road, Pune 411 002  
8 Camac Street, Kolkata 700 017  
Ashok Rajpath, Patna 800 004  
Chowk, Varanasi 221 001

*FOR SALE IN SOUTH AND SOUTHEAST ASIA ONLY*

Printed in India

BY JAINENDRA PRAKASH JAIN AT SHRI JAINENDRA PRESS,  
A-45 NARAINA, PHASE-I, NEW DELHI 110 028  
AND PUBLISHED BY NARENDRA PRAKASH JAIN FOR  
MOTILAL BANARSIDASS PUBLISHERS PRIVATE LIMITED,  
BUNGALOW ROAD, DELHI 110 007

Person: We have learned the three persons (*puruṣa*):

Third (prathama)	he, she, or it
Second (madhyama)	you
First (uttama)	I

Number: We have learned the three numbers (*vacana*):

Singular (eka)
Dual (dvi)
Plural (bahu)

5. Each verb may be classified according to these categories. For example, **gacchati** (he goes), is present indicative, active, third person, singular.
6. Using abbreviations, called parsing codes, we could identify **gacchati** as: pres. indic. act. 3rd per. sing.—present indicative, active, third person, singular. (This isn't as hard as it may seem, since all verbs so far are present indicative and active. All we need to determine is the person and number.)
7. Here are some examples:

<b>gacchāmi</b>	I go	pres. indic. act. 1st per. sing.
<b>bhavanti</b>	they are	pres. indic. act. 3rd per. pl.
<b>pṛcchāvah</b>	we both ask	pres. indic. act. 1st per. dual

## Egenes Урок 4.

Упражнение 4. Перевод на русский язык.

№4.	Санскрит без сандхи	Санскрит с сандхи	Русский
1.	narāḥ mṛgam smaranti	narā mṛgam smaranti	
2.	rāmaḥ aśvau gacchati	rāmo 'śvau gacchati	
3.	kutra gajāḥ vasanti	kutra gajā vasanti	
4.	narau rāmam vadataḥ	narau rāmam vadataḥ	
5.	putraḥ smarati pṛcchati vā	putraḥ smarati pṛcchati vā	
6.	rāmaḥ mṛgam gacchati	rāmo mṛgam gacchati	
7.	aśvau na vadataḥ	aśvau na vadataḥ	
8.	rāmaḥ putram vadati	rāmaḥ putram vadati	

Упражнение 5. Перевод на санскрит.

№4.	Русский	Санскрит без сандхи	Санскрит с сандхи
1.	Люди говорят антилопе (оленю).		
2.	Рама говорит лошадям.		
3.	Сын идёт к коню и останавливается (стоит).		
4.	Слоны не помнят.		
5.	Где стоят кони?		
6.	Где находится слон?		
7.	Рама говорит и сын помнит.		
8.	Они стоят или они идут.		
9.	Где стоит Рама?		
10	Рама или сын идёт.		
11	Рама и сын идут.		

## Egenes Урок 4.

Упражнение 6. Перевод на русский язык.

№	Санскрит без сандхи	Санскрит с сандхи	Русский
1.	narau putram vadataḥ	narau putraṁ vadataḥ	
2.	kutra aśvāḥ ca gajāḥ ca gacchanti	kutrāśvāś ca gajāś ca gacchanti	
3.	aśvāḥ mṛgāḥ vā gacchati	aśvo mṛgo vā gacchati	
4.	rāmaḥ putrau vadati	rāmaḥ putrau vadati	
5.	mṛgāḥ aśvāḥ gajāḥ ca gacchanti	mṛgo 'śvo gajaś ca gacchanti	
6.	putrāḥ mṛgān na smaranti	putrā mṛgān na smaranti	
7.	kutra narau vasataḥ	kutra narau vasataḥ	
8.	rāmam pṛcchāmi	rāmam pṛcchāmi	
9.	narau putrān na vadataḥ	narau putrān na vádataḥ	
10.	kutra mṛgāḥ bhavanti	kutra mṛgā bhávanti	

Упражнение 7. Перевод на санскрит.

№	Английский	Русский	Sanskrit + Sandhi
1.	Where is Rāma going?	Куда идёт Рама?	
2.	Rāma is going to the horse.	Рама идёт к лошади.	
3.	The son does not speak to the horses.	Сын не говорит лошадям.	
4.	The two elephants remember the man.	Оба слона помнят человека.	
5.	Where do the two deer live?	Где проживают оба оленя?	
6.	You go to the horse.	Ты идёшь к лошади.	
7.	Where are we standing?	Где мы стоим?	
8.	The son goes to the horses and the elephants.	Сын идёт к лошадям и слонам.	
9.	You are all speaking to the elephant.	Вы говорите слону.	
10.	The elephant does not remember.	Слон не помнит.	

## Egenes Урок 5.

Упражнение 4. Перевод на русский язык.

<b>№5.</b>	Санскрит без сандхи	Санскрит с сандхи	Русский
a.	kutra vīrāḥ tiṣṭhanti	kutra vīrāḥ tiṣṭhanti	
b.	bālau gajena saha tatra bhavataḥ		
c.	nṛpah aśvam gacchati	nṛpo 'śvam gacchati	
d.	aśvena saha vīraḥ nṛpān gacchati	aśvena saha vīro nṛpān gacchati	
e.	mṛgeṇa saha rāmaḥ vasati	mṛgeṇa saha rāmo vasati	
f.	gajaiḥ saha bālāḥ gacchanti	gajaiḥ saha bālā gacchanti	
g.	narāḥ putram vadanti	narāḥ putram vadanti	
h.	vīrāḥ mṛgān rāmam pr̥cchánti	vīrāḥ mṛgān rāmaṁ pr̥cchánti	
i.	tatra bālah nṛpāya gacchati	tatra bālo nṛpāya gacchati	

Упражнение 7. Перевод на санскрит.

<b>№4.</b>	Английский	Русский	Санскрит с сандхи
a.	The boys go to the horses.	Мальчики идут к лошадям.	
b.	The son asks the king about the deer.	Сын спрашивает царя об олене.	
c.	The king remembers the man.	Царь помнит человека.	
d.	The hero lives with the son.	Герой живёт вместе с сыном.	
e.	The boy asks the king and the king remembers.	Мальчик спрашивает царя и царь помнит.	
f.	There are no elephants with the son.	Там вместе с сыном нет слонов (не бытуют).	
g.	Where does Rāma live?	Где живёт Рама?	
h.	The king or the hero speaks to the boy.	Царь или герой говорит мальчику.	
i.	The hero goes for the boy.	Герой идёт ради мальчика.	
j.	The elephants are there with the horses.	Там слоны вместе с лошадьми.	
k.	I remember the king.	Я помню царя.	

l.	You are going there with the boy.	Ты там с мальчиком идёшь.	
----	-----------------------------------	---------------------------	--

## Упражнение 6. Перевод на русский.

65.	Санскрит без сандхи	Санскрит с сандхи	Русский
a.	aśvaiḥ saha vīraḥ gacchati	aśvaiḥ saha vīro gacchati	
b.	tatra nṛpāya narāḥ gacchanti	tatra nṛpāya narā gacchanti	
c.	vīrau tiṣṭhatāḥ vadatāḥ ca	vīrau tiṣṭhato vadataś ca	
d.	mṛgāḥ tatra vasanti	mṛgāś tatra vasanti	
e.	kutra bālābhyaṁ saha nṛpaḥ gacchati	kutra bālābhyaṁ saha nṛpo gacchati	
f.	rāmaḥ aśvam putram prcchati	ramo 'śvam putram prcchati	
g.	tatra gajāḥ na tiṣṭhanti	tatra gajā na tiṣṭhanti	
h.	vīraḥ nṛpam bālam vadati	vīro nṛpam bālam vadati	
i.	mrgaiḥ aśvaiḥ ca saha gajāḥ vasati	mrgair aśvaiś ca saha gajo vasati	
j.	kutra tiṣṭhāmaḥ	kutra tiṣṭhāmaḥ	

## Упражнение 7. Перевод на санскрит.

65.	Английский	Русский	Санскрит с сандхи
a.	The king lives there with the two boys.	Царь там обитает с двумя мальчиками.	
b.	Where are you going with the elephants?	Куда ты идёшь со слонами?	
c.	The man goes there for the horse.	Человек идет туда для коня.	
d.	The boy does not remember the king.	Мальчик не помнит царя.	
e.	I am speaking to the king about the two elephants.	Я говорю царю о двух слонах.	
f.	The king goes to the horse for the son.	Царь идет к лошади для сына.	
g.	Where are we standing?	Где мы стоим?	
h.	The man asks the boy about the horse.	Человек спрашивает мальчика о коне.	
i.	Rāma goes there for the man.	Рама там идет для человека.	
j.	Where are all the deer?	Где находятся олени?	



## Egenes Урок 6

### Грамматика

<b>iti</b>	<p>Данная частица ставится на конце цитируемого высказывания наподобие русского «дескать»:</p> <p>aśvaḥ gacchatī iti rāmaḥ vadati &gt; aśvo gacchaṭī rāmo vadati «Конь идёт,» - говорит Рама. Возможен перевод в качестве косвенной речи: Рама говорит, что конь идёт.</p>
------------	--

Лексика к упражнениям:

आ+√गम् आगच्छति	ā + √gam āgaccha-	приходить	ग्राम	grāma- <i>m.</i>	деревня
भ्रम्	bhram-	бродить	दुःख	duḥkha- <i>n.</i>	беда, горе
			अश्रु	áśru- <i>n.</i>	слеза [лит. aśara, tear, Zähre < гот. tagrs]
साधु	sādhū-	хороший	नेत्र	netra- <i>n.</i>	глаз
खलु	khálu	поистине	जाति	jāti- <i>f.</i>	рождение [лат. gens; лит. pri-gentis]
एव	evá	точно, как раз, прямо, непосредственно	रथ्या	rathyā- <i>f.</i>	улица, дорога

пример ‘для поднятия или ухудшения настроения’ [Fick 26: 7]:

असाधुः साधुर् वा भवति खलु जात्यैव पुरुषः:

asādhuḥ sādhur vā bhavati khalu jātyaivá puruṣah

Упражнение 4. Перевод на русский.

№	Devanagari	Sanskrit + Sandhi	перевод
a.	बालस्य गजो ग्रामं गच्छति	bālasya gajo grāmam gacchati	
a1.	ग्रामस्या रथ्यासु गजा bhrāmyanti	grāmasya rathyāsu gajā bhrāmyanti	

	<b>भ्राम्यन्ति</b>		
b.	<b>रामस्य पुत्रोऽश्वं गच्छति</b>	rāmasya putro 'śvam gacchati	
c.	<b>अत्राश्वो भवतीति नृपो वदति</b>	atrāśvo bhavatīti nṛpo vadati	
c1.	<b>ऋषिर् दुःखात् पुत्रं रक्षति</b>	r̥ṣir duḥkhāt putram rakṣati	
d.	<b>ग्रामात् पुत्र आगच्छति</b>	grāmāt putra ā-gacchati	
e.	<b>कुत्र गजास् तिष्ठन्तीति नृपः पृच्छति</b>	kutra gajās tiṣṭhantīti nṛpaḥ pṛcchati	
f.	<b>बालो नृपस्य ग्रामं गच्छति</b>	bālo nṛpasya grāmaṁ gacchati	
g.	<b>अत्र वीरा वसन्तीति नरा वदन्ति</b>	atra vīrā vasantīti narā vadanti	
h.	<b>कुत्र गच्छसीति रामः पृच्छति</b>	kutra gacchasīti rāmaḥ pṛcchati	
h1.	<b>बालस्य नेत्राभ्याम् अश्रूनि पतन्ति</b>	bālasya netrābh्यām aśrūni patanti	

Упражнение 5. Перевод на санскрит.

№	English	Russian	Sanskrit + Sandhi
a.	'I live here,' the son says.	'Я здесь живу' – говорит сын.	
b.	The horses and elephants	Кони и слоны приходят из	

	are coming from the village.	деревни.	
b1.		Свет идёт из города	
c.	'Do you remember the men?' the king asks the boy.	'Ты помнишь людей?', - царь спрашивает мальчика.	
d.	Rāma says that he is going to the village.	Рама говорит, что он идёт в деревню.	
e.	'I am going to the village for the boy,' says Rāma.	'Я иду в деревню для мальчика,' – говорит Рама.	
f.	Where does the hero go?	Куда идёт герой?	
g.	'The hero goes to the village', says the king.	'Герой идёт в деревню,' – говорит царь.	
h.	The son of the king lives here.	Сын царя живёт здесь.	
i.	The king's sons come from the village.	Царские сыновья приходят из деревни.	
j.	The man speaks to Rāma about the elephants.	Человек говорит Раме о слонах.	

Упражнение 6. Перевод на русский.

6.	Devanagari	Sanskrit + Sandhi	Russian
a.	नरौ ग्रामाद् आगच्छतः	narau grāmād āgacchataḥ	
b.	अत्र भवामीति बालो नृपं वदति	atra bhavāmīti bālo nṛpaṁ vadati	
c.	कुत्र वससीति वीरः पुत्रं पृच्छति	kutra vasasīti vīraḥ putram pṛcchatī	
d.	रामेण सहात्र वसामीति पुत्रो वदति	rāmeṇa sahātra vasāmīti putro vadati	
e.	नरस्य पुत्रास् तत्र तिष्ठन्ति	narasya putrās tatra tiṣṭhanti	
f.	अत्र वीरस्य गजो भवति	atra vīrasya gajo bhavati	
g.	रामं स्मरसीति बाला	rāmaṁ smarasīti bālā naram pṛcchanti	

	<b>नरं पृच्छन्ति</b>		
h.	<b>कुत्र ग्रामो भवतीति नरः पुत्रं पृच्छति</b>	kutra grāmo bhavatīti naraḥ putram pṛcchati	
i.	<b>ग्रामस् तत्र भवतीति पुत्रो नरं वदति</b>	grāmas tatra bhavatīti putro naram vadati	
j.	<b>गजाय ग्रामं गच्छामीति नरो वदति</b>	gajāya grāmam gacchāmīti naro vadati	

Упражнение 7. Перевод на санскрит.

Q6.	English	Russian	Sanskrit + Sandhi
a.	‘Where are you going?’ the king asks the boy.	‘Куда ты идёшь’ – спрашивает мальчика царь.	
b.	‘I am going to the horse,’ the boy says.	‘Я иду к коню,’ – говорит мальчик.	
c.	The king of the villages speaks to the men.	Царь деревень говорит людям.	
d.	The two boys are coming from the horse and the elephant.	Оба мальчика приходят от коня и слона.	
e.	The boy lives with Rāma.	Мальчик живёт с Рамой.	
f.	‘Here are the sons of Rāma’, says the hero.	‘Здесь находятся сыновья Рамы’, – говорит герой.	
g.	The king says that the boys are standing there.	‘Мальчики стоят там’, – говорит царь.	
h.	‘I am going to the village,’ says the son of the hero.	‘Я иду в деревню’, – говорит сын героя.	
i.	The two horses are coming here together with the two deer	Сюда приходят два коня с двумя оленями.	
j.	The king’s two horses are there.	Там находятся два царских коня.	

## Egenes Lesson 7

### Лексика

<b>आचार्य</b>	ācārya-	учитель (м.)	√पश् पश्यति	√paś- paśyati	видеть (в прош. вр. корень √dṛś)
<b>चन्द्र</b>	candra-	луна (м.)	<b>विना</b>	vinā	без (применение по модели saha)
<b>√चिन्त्</b> <b>चिन्तयति</b>	√cint-	думать	<b>शिष्य</b>	śisya-	ученик (м.)
	cintayati	он думает	<b>सूर्य</b>	sūrya-	солнце (м.)

### Упражнение 4. Перевод на русский.

№.	Devanagari	Sanskrit + Sandhi	Russian
a.	शिष्यश् चन्द्रं सूर्यं च पश्यति	śisyaś candraṁ sūryam ca pásyati	
b.	राम गजा ग्रामे तिष्ठन्ति	rāma gajā grāme tiṣṭhanti	
c.	वीरो ग्रामे वसतीत्य् आचार्यः शिष्यं वदति	vīro grāme vasatīty ācāryah śisyaṁ vadati	
d.	कुत्र चन्द्रो भवतीति पुत्रः पृच्छति	kutra candro bhavatīti putrah pṛcchāti	
e.	तत्र गजे बालौ तिष्ठतः	tatra gaje bālau tiṣṭhataḥ	
f.	पुत्र कुत्र चन्द्रो भवतीति वीरो बालं पृच्छति	putra kutra candro bhavatīti vīro bālām pṛcchāti	
g.	आचार्यस्य शिष्यस्	ācāryásya śisyas tiṣṭhati vadati ca	

	<b>तिष्ठति वदति च</b>		
h.	<b>रामेण विना वीरा ग्रामाद् आगच्छन्ति</b>	rāmeṇa vinā vīrā grāmād āgacchánti	Egenes Lesson 7
i.	<b>ग्रामे वसामीति वीरस्य बालशा चिन्तयति</b>	grāme vasāmīti vīrásya bālaś cintayati	

**Упражнение 5. Перевод на санскрит.**

Egenes Lesson 7

№	English	Russian	Sanskrit + Sandhi	Devanagari
a.	The king tells the hero that the boys are going to the village.	Царь говорит герою: ‘Мальчики идут в деревню’.		
b.	Without the king, the boys come.	Мальчики приходят без царя.		
c.	In the hand of hero is the son.	Сын в руке героя.		
d.	“Where am I?” thinks the boy.	‘Где я?’ – думает мальчик.		
e.	He asks the son of the hero where the men are.	Он спрашивает сына героя: Где люди?		
f.	The teacher tells the student that the sun is not the moon.	Учитель говорит ученику: ‘Солнце – не луна’.		
g.	The king lives in the village.	Царь живёт в деревне.		
h.	There are the elephants of the king.	Там находятся слоны царя.		

**Упражнение 6. Перевод на русский.**

Egenes Lesson 7

№.	Devanagari	Sanskrit + Sandhi	Russian
a.	<b>रामेण विना बालो ग्रामं गच्छति</b>		
b.	<b>कुत्र नृपस्य गजा</b>		

	<b>भवन्ति</b>		
c.	अत्र भवामीति बालो नं वदति		
d.	सूर्येण विना चन्द्रं न पश्यसि		
e.	आचार्यः शिष्यान् वदति		
f.	चन्द्रं पश्यामीति बालश् चिन्तयति		
g.	अत्र ग्रामाणां नृप आगच्छति		
h.	नृपो वीरस्याश्वं पश्यति		
i.	कुत्र सूर्यश् चन्द्रश् च भवत इति बालः पृच्छति		
j.	शिष्या नं न स्मरन्ति		

### Упражнение 7. Перевод на санскрит.

№	English	Russian	Sanskrit + Sandhi	Devanagari
a.	“Where are you going?” the boy asks the king’s son.	Куда ты идёшь, спрашивает мальчик царского сына.		
b	The two deer are in village.	Два оленя в деревне.		
c	The teacher speaks to the	Учитель говорит сыну героя.		Egenes Lesson 7

	hero's son.			
d	The king sees the sun and the moon.	Царь видит солнце и луну.		
e	Without the sun we do not see the moon.	Без солнца мы не видим луны.		
f	The hero is on the elephant of the king.	Герой находится на слоне царя.		
g	"We live in villages," the boys say.	Мы живём в деревнях, - говорят мальчики.		
h	Rāma goes from the horses to the elephants.	Рама идёт от лошадей к слонам.		
i	"Where are we going?" the boy asks the king.	Куда <b>мы</b> идём, - спрашивает мальчик царя.		
j	The teacher lives in the village with the students.	Учитель живёт в деревне с учениками.		

**Egenes Урок 8**  
**Śvara sandhī**  
**ТАБЛИЦА**

**сочетаний конечных гласных звуков с начальными**  
**(Правила сандхи)**

конечные	+ начальные										
	a	ā	i	ī	u	ū	r̥	e	ai	o	au
a ā	ā	ā	e	e	o	o	ar	ai	ai	au	au
i ī	ya	yā	ī	ī	yu	yū	yṛ	ye	yai	yo	yau
u ū	va	vā	vi	vī	ū	ū	vṛ	ve	vai	vo	vau
r̥ ī	ra	rā	ri	rī	ru	rū	ī	re	rai	ro	rau
e	e'	a ā ayā	a i ayi	a ī ayī	a u ayu	a ū ayū	aṛ ayṛ	a e aye	a ai ayai	a o ayo	a au ayau
ai	āya ā a	āyā ā ā	āyi ā i	āyī ā ī	āyu ā u	āyū ā ū	āyṛ ā r̥	āye ā e	āyai ā ai	āyo ā o	āyau ā au
o	o'	avā a ā	āvi a i	āvī a ī	avu a u	āvū a ū	avṛ a r̥	ave a e	avai a ai	avo a o	avau a au
au	āva ā a	āvā ā ā	āvi ā i	āvī ā ī	āvu ā u	āvū ā ū	āvṛ ā r̥	āve ā e	āvai ā ai	āvo ā o	āvau ā au

**Не подчиняются правилам сандхи:**

- Гласные i, u, e, когда они являются показателями двойственного числа.
- Конечный гласный восклицания (обычно вокатив). rāma āgacchanti ‘Рама, они приходят.’

**Лексика** (здесь все существительные среднего рода)

Egenes Урок 8.

अमृत	amṛtam	бессмертие	फल	phalam	плод
कथम्	katham	как	वन	vanam	лес
ज्ञान	jñānam	знание	शास्त्र	śāstram	письание
पठ्	paṭh-	читать	सत्य	satyam	истина
पुस्तक	pustakam	книга	सूक्त	sūktam	гимн

**Упражнение 1.** Мы выучили, что r̥ или r меняет следующий за ним n в ṣ. Это не происходит, если согласный t появляется между ними, ибо t меняет положение языка. Таким образом:

1	अमृतानि	amṛtāni	4	शास्त्राणि	sāstrāṇi
2	अमृतेन	amṛténa	5	शास्त्रेण	sāstréṇa
3	अमृतानाम्	amṛtānām	6	शास्त्राणाम्	sāstrāṇām

**Упражнение 2.** Соедините вместе следующие слова, используя правила сандхи, и затем напишите сандхированные формы в деванагари.

1	putreṇa atra	6	devau āgacchataḥ
2	saha ācāryaḥ	7	nare atra
3	tatra iti	8	vane iti
4	iti atra	9	phalāni iti
5	iti ācāryaḥ	10	smáراتि atra

**Упражнение 3.** Сделайте латинскую транслитерацию с де-санхированием.

1	गच्छतीति	6	नृपस्याश्वः
2		7	अश्वेऽत्र
3	पृच्छत्यागच्छति च	8	कुत्राश्वः
4	गच्छामीति	9	कुत्रेति
5	हस्त इति	10	गच्छत्यत्र

#### Упражнение 5. Перевод на русский.

Genesis Book 8.

8. Devanagari транскрипция перевод

रामो ग्रामाद् वनं

a. गच्छति

अमृतं ज्ञानस्य फलं

b. भवति

ज्ञानं सत्यं भवतीति

c. बालाः शास्त्रे पठन्ति

- अमृतस्य पुत्राः भवथेत्  
d. आचार्यः शिष्यान् वदति  
कथम् आचार्याः  
e. सूक्तानि स्मरन्ति  
शास्त्रेषु सत्यं  
f. पश्यामीति रामो वदति  
कुत्र सूक्तानां ज्ञानं  
g. भवतीति वीरः पुत्रं  
पृच्छति  
नृपो बालाय पुस्तकं  
h. पठति

#### Упражнение 6. Перевод на санскрит.

	английский / русский	транскрипция	Genesis Урок 8. деванагари
68.	The elephant is not the king of the forest.		
1.	Слон – не царь леса.		
2.	How do you see the moon? Как ты видишь луну?		
3.	Rāma thinks that he sees the deer.		
4.	Rama думает, что он видит оленя.		
5.	The fruit is in the hands of the boy.		
	Плод в руках мальчика.		
5.	How does the king live without Rāma?		
	Как царь живёт без Рамы?		
6.	Rāma is the king.		
	Рама – (он) царь.		
7.	The king is Rāma.		
	Царь – (он) Рама.		
8.	The hero lives in the village of the immortals.		
	Герой живёт в деревне бессмертных.		

**Упражнение 7.** Переведите предложения, сделав латинскую транскрипцию. **Egness Урок 8.**

1. कथं सूर्येण विना नरा नृपं  
पश्यन्ति।
  2. शिष्यानामाचार्यः पुस्तकं  
पठति।
  3. अत्र वने फलानि भवन्तीति  
बालो वीरं वदति।
  4. मृगो वने वसति गजश्च ग्रामे  
वसति।
  5. ज्ञानं पुस्तकेन भवतीत्याचार्य  
वदति
  6. पुस्तकेन विना शिष्यो ज्ञानं  
स्मरति।
  7. राम कुत्र मृगेण सह  
गच्छसीति पुत्रः पृच्छति।
  8. नरो बालाय पुस्तकं पठति।

Текст

**Рекет**  
Обезьяна и Крокодил.

1. तत्र गङ्गयं कुम्भीरो
  2. भवति
  3. वानरस्तटे वसति
  4. वानरः फलानि
  5. कुम्भीराय निक्षिपति
  6. कुम्भीरः फलानि

रवादति

भार्या वानरस्य

5. हृदयमिच्छति

हृदयं वृक्षे भवतीति

6. वानरो वदति

कश्चिद्दृदयं चोरयतीति

7. वानरो वदति

एवं कुम्भीरो वानरश्च

8. मित्रे तिष्ठतः:

## Egenes Lesson 9

*Vīśarga sandhī.* Правила сандхи. ātmanepada

### §1. Правила сандхи для конечного *h*.

конечное - <i>h</i> превращается в:	следующий согласный	a	ā	предшествующее - <i>ah</i> превращается в: -o если перед ним стоит краткий гласный или неглухой согласный				
		i	ī					
		u	ū					
		r̥	ṛ̥					
		!						
		e	ai					
		o	au					
<i>h</i>		ka	kha	ga	gha	ṇa		
ś		ca	cha	ja	jha	ñā		
ṣ		ṭa	ṭha	ḍa	ḍha	ṇa		
s		ta	tha	da	dha	na		
<i>h</i>		pa	pha	ba	bha	ma		
				ya	ra	la	va	
<i>h</i>	śa	ṣa	sa	ha				
<i>h</i>	конец строки							
Глухие согласные				Неглухие согласные (звонкие и плавные)				

### Лексика

एव	evá <sup>1</sup>	только (only), всегда, когда-либо (ever) <sup>2</sup>	√भाष् भाषते	√bhāṣ- bhāṣate	говорить
गृह	gr̥ham	дом	√मन् मन्यते	√man- mányate	думать, 'мнить'
जल	jalam	вода	√लभ् लभते	√labh- lábhate <sup>3</sup>	получать; добывать; приобретать

<sup>1</sup> Авест. aeva ; готск. aiv ; др.-нем. eo , io ; совр. нем. je ‘1. когда-нибудь, когда-либо, когда бы то ни было; 2. в зависимости от, смотря по’

<sup>2</sup> По Словарю Кочергиной: 1) так 2) едва, только 3) ещё 4) именно 5) же.

По Словарю М.-W.: в том числе ‘even’ (точно, ровно, как раз), ср.: just, exactly, very, same, only, even, alone, merely, immediately on, still, already. Но значение ‘ever’ не упомянуто.

<sup>3</sup> др.-гр. λάφυρον , λαμβάνω ; лат. labor ; лит. lábas , lóbis

√जि जयति	√ji- jáyati	завоёывать	√सेव् सेवते	√sev- sévate	служить
दुःख	duḥkham	страдание	सुख	sukham	счастье

ātmanepada (результат действия направлен на подлежащее-агенс)

	Sg.	Du.	Pl.
3	bhāṣate	bhāṣete	bhāṣante
2	bhāṣase	bhāṣethe	bhāṣadhve
1	bhāṣe	bhāṣāvahe	bhāṣāmahe

**Упражнение 1.** Соедините вместе следующие слова, используя правила сандхи, и затем напишите сандхированные формы в деванагари.

- |                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1 रामः गच्छति     | 6 रामः इति       |
| 2 बाला: आगच्छन्ति | 7 वेदा: स्मरन्ति |
| 3 वीरौ आगच्छतः:   | 8 पुत्रः पश्यति  |
| 4 शिष्यः अत्र     | 9 अश्वः वदति     |

**Упражнение 2.** Сделайте латинскую транслитерацию с де-санхированием.

- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1 रामो गच्छति    | 6 अश्वा आगच्छन्ति |
| 2 कुत्रागच्छसि   | 7 रामः पुत्रश्च   |
| 3 सूर्यश्चन्दश्च | 8 गजैः सह         |
| 4 गजैर्वीरः      | 9 फलयोर्जलम्      |

**Упражнение 3.** Перевод на русский.

E9.	Devanagari	Транскрипция	Перевод
a.	वीरस्य बालो भवति		
b.	सुखं ज्ञानस्य फलं भवति		
c.	शिष्या गृहाज् जलमाचार्याय लभन्ते		
d.	रामस्त्र जलाय गच्छतीति वीरो वदति		

e.	शिष्य आचार्य सेवते		
f.	शिष्या ज्ञानमाचार्याद् लभन्ते		
g.	राम कथं दुःखं जयसि		
h.	पुत्रो गृहान्वपस्याश्वेषु गच्छति		
i.	अमृतं सुखस्य फलं भवतीति चिन्तयते		
j.	आचार्यो ज्ञानस्य पुस्तकं शिष्याय पठति		

Упражнение 4. Перевод на санскрит.

№	English	Russian	Транскрипция	Devanagari
a.	The water is in Rāma's hands.	Вода в руках Рамы.		
b.	The boy reads the book.	Мальчик читает книгу.		
c.	The hero stands ever in the house of the king.	Герой стоит <b>только</b> в доме царя.		
d.	The boys obtain the fruits from the forest.	Мальчики добывают плоды из леса.		
e.	'You conquer suffering with knowledge,' the teacher says.	Ты завоёвываешь страдание при помощи знания, – говорит учитель.		
f.	From the fruit (Sg.!) the boy obtains water.	Из плода мальчик добывает воду.		
g.	'I see truth in the sun and the moon', says Rāma.	Я вижу истину в солнце и луне, – говорит Рама.		
h.	Without knowledge there is suffering.	Без знания – страдание.		
i.	'I do not come from the village,' the king's son	Я не прихожу из деревни, – говорит сын царя.		

	says.			
j.	The hero and the boy live in the forest.	Герой и мальчик живут в лесу.		

## Rāmāyaṇa

१७.	Devanagari	Транскрипция	Перевод
1.	अयोधायां दशरथो नाम नृपो वसति		
2.	दशरथस्य चत्वारः पुत्रा भवन्ति		
3.	पुत्रा रामो भरतो लक्ष्मणः शत्रुघ्नो भवन्ति		
4.	रामः सुन्दरः शान्तो वीरश्च भवति		
5.	नृपो रामे स्तिथ्यति		
6.	रामो मिथिलां लक्ष्मणेन सह गच्छति		
7.	तत्र रामः सीतां पश्यति		
8.	सीतायां स्तिथ्यामीति रामो वदति		

## Egenes Урок 10.

Местоимения (sarva-nāman).

Я (мы), ц.-слав. az, авест. azəm ; др.-гр.. ἐγώ ; готск. ik ; нем. ich ;

Case.	Sg.		Du.		Pl.		
N. я	अहम्	ahám	आवाम्	āvām	वयम्	vayam	мы
Acc. меня	मा(म्)	mā(m)	आवाम् (नौ)	āvām (nau)	अस्मान् (नस्)	asmān (nas)	нас
Inst. мной	मया	mayā	आवाभ्याम्	āvābhýām	अस्माभिस्	asmābhīs	нами
Dat. мне	मह्यम् (मे)	mahyam (me)	आवाभ्याम् (नौ)	āvābhýām (nau)	अस्माभ्यम् (नस्)	asmābhýam (nas)	нам
Abl. от меня	मत्	mat	आवाभ्याम्	āvābhýām	अस्मत्	asmat	от нас
Gen. мой	मम (मे)	mama (me)	आवयोस् (नौ)	āvayos (nau)	अस्माकम् (नस्)	asmākam (nas)	наш
Loc. у меня	मयि	mayi	आवयोस्	āvayos	अस्मासु	asmāsu	у нас

Ты (вы), др.-гр.toi ; лат. tu

Case.	Sg.		Du.		Pl.		
N. ты	त्वम्	tvam	युवाम्	yuvām	यूयम्	yūyam	вы
Acc. тебя	त्वा(म्)	tvā(m)	युवाम् (वाम्)	yuvām (vām)	युष्मान् (वस)	yuṣmān (vas)	вас
Inst. тобой	त्वया	tvayā	युवाभ्याम्	yuvābhýām	युष्माभिस्	yuṣmābhīs	вами
Dat. тебе	तुभ्यम्	tubhyam (te)	युवाभ्याम् (वाम्)	yuvābhýām (vām)	युष्माभ्यम् (वस)	yuṣmābhýam (vas)	вам
Abl. от тебя	त्वत्	tvat	युवाभ्याम्	yuvābhýām	युष्मत्	yuṣmat	от вас
Gen. твой	तव (ते)	tava (te)	युवयोस् (वाम)	yuvayos (vām)	युष्माकम् (वस)	yuṣmākam (vas)	ваш
Loc. у тебя	त्वयि	tvayi	युवयोस्	yuvayos	युष्मसु	yuṣmāsu	у вас

Парадигма спряжения в настоящем времени ( Lat ) глагола √as 'быть'.

лицо	единственное число		двойственное		множественное	
3-е	अस्ति	asti	स्तः	staḥ	सन्ति	santi
2-е	असि	asi	स्थः	stah̄	स्थ	stha
1-е	अस्मि	asmī	स्वः	svaḥ	स्मः	smaḥ

## Лексика

Egenes Урок 10.

<b>अतीव</b>	atīva	сверх меры, чрезвычайно, очень exceedingly, very; excessively, too; quite	<b>एवम्</b>	evam	так, таким образом
<b>अपि</b>	ápi	даже, even; также also, too (ставится после слова)	<b>कुपित</b>	kupita	сердитый
<b>अहो</b>	aho	Ага! Эй!	<b>धार्मिक</b>	dhārmika	благочестивый
<b>भीत</b>	bhītā	испуганный frightened, afraid	<b>पुनर्</b>	punar	снова, вновь
<b>भीम</b>	bhīmā	вселяющий страх, страшный, ужасный	<b>सुन्दर</b>	sundara	красивый (м.б. < su-nara = sūnara)

## Упражнение 1. Перевод на русский.

Egenes Урок 10.

№10.	санскрит без санххи	санскрит с санххи	перевод
1.	mama putrah gacchati		
2.	tava gajah mat tvām gacchati		
3.	mama hastau pustakesu staḥ		
4.	aham nṛpaḥ asmi		
5.	vayam aśve tiṣṭhāmaḥ		
6.	tvam mama pustakam paṭhasi		
7.	rāmaḥ tava nṛpaḥ asti		
8.	yūyam gr̥he stha		
9.	asmākam nṛpaḥ kūpitah asti		
10.	tvayā saha aham gacchāmi		
11.	dhārmikah nṛpaḥ bhītah asti		
12.	sundarah tvam		

Egenes Урок 10.

## Упражнение 2. Перевод на русский.

*Genesis Урок 10.*

№	деванагари	транскрипция	перевод
1.	नृपस्य पुत्रोऽस्ति ।		
2.	अहो रामः पुनर्वदति ।		
3.	अहमतीव भीतो भवामि ।		
4.	आचार्या अपि पुस्तकानि पठन्ति ।		
5.	अस्ति नृपो रामो नाम वने ।		
6.	कथं तव गृहं गच्छामीति शिष्यः पृच्छति		
7.	वीरो मम ग्रामं जयति ।		
8.	पुत्रः सुन्दरात्कलाजलं लभते ।		
9.	सुखेन विना दुःखमस्ति ।		
10.	सुन्दरो गज इति पुत्रो मन्यते ।		

*Genesis Урок 10.*

### Упражнение 3. Перевод на санскрит.

*Egness Урок 10.*

№	английский / русский	транскрипция	деванагари
1.	The student is not afraid of the teacher (Abl.)  Ученик не боится учителя (Abl.)		
2.	You obtain knowledge from the scriptures.  Ты получаешь знание из писаний.		
3.	'The boy is there,' says the hero to the teacher.  «Мальчик там», говорит герой учителю.		
4.	I ask the teacher about the deer.  Я спрашиваю учителя об олене.		
5.	"Where are you going?" the boy asks.  «Куда ты идёшь?» - спрашивает мальчик.		
6.	Again the hero comes to my house.  Герой вновь приходит к моему дому.		
7.	Your teacher speaks the truth.  Твой учитель говорит правду.		
8.	Our horses are standing in the village.  Наши кони стоят в деревне.		
9.	There is a king, Rāma by name, in our village.  В нашей деревне пребывает царь по имени Рама.		
10.	How do I obtain the king's horses from you?  Как я получаю коней царя от тебя?		

*Egness Урок 10.*

## Egenes Урок 11.

Местоимения (sarva-nāman).

Он (они), мужской род

Egenes Урок 11.

<i>Ell.</i>	Sg.		Du.		Pl.		
N. ОН	सः	sah	तौ	tau	ते	te <sup>1</sup>	ОНИ
Acc. его	तम्	tam <sup>2</sup>			तान्	tān	ИХ
Inst. им	तेन	téna	ताभ्याम्	tābhyaṁ	तैः	taiḥ	ИМИ
Dat. ему	तस्मै	tásmai <sup>3</sup>			तेभ्यः	tebhyaḥ	ИМ
Abl. от него	तस्मात्	tásmāt <sup>4</sup>	तयोः	tayoh <sup>6</sup>	तेषाम्	tēṣām <sup>7</sup>	ОТ НИХ
Gen. его	тस्य	tásya <sup>5</sup>			तेषु	tēṣu	ИХ
Loc. у него	тасмин्	tásmin					У НИХ

Оно (они), средний род

Egenes Урок 11.

<i>Ell.</i>	Sg.		Du.		Pl.		
N. ОНО	तत्	tat	ते	te	तानि	tāni	ОНИ
Acc. его							ИХ
Inst. им	тेन	téna	ताभ्याम्	tābhyaṁ	तैः	taiḥ	ИМИ
Dat. ему	тасмै	tásmai			तेभ्यः	tebhyaḥ	ИМ
Abl. от него	тасмात्	tásmāt	तयोः	tayoh	тесам	tēṣām	ОТ НИХ
Gen. его	тас्य	tásya			тесу	tēṣu	ИХ
Loc. у него	тасмин्	tásmin					У НИХ

<sup>1</sup> Mh.III.50.21c; 51.10d\*

<sup>2</sup> Mh 6c, 7a

<sup>3</sup> Mh.III.50.8a

<sup>4</sup> [+ tā-tas RV; Mh.III.51.5a]

<sup>5</sup> Mh.III.50.26c

<sup>6</sup> Mh.III.50.16a; 51.13c

<sup>7</sup> Mh.III.50.18c; 51.10d\*; 51.16c

## Она (они), женский род

«Genes» Урок 11.

<i>Case.</i>	<i>Sg.</i>		<i>Du.</i>		<i>Pl.</i>		
N. она	सा	sā	ते	te	ताः	tāḥ <sup>8</sup>	они
Acc. её	ताम्	tām <sup>9</sup>					их
Inst. ею	तया	táyā			ताभिस्	tābhīs	ими
Dat. ей	तस्यै	tásyai	ताभ्याम्	tābhyaṁ	ताभ्यः	tābhyaḥ	им
Abl. от неё							от них
Gen. её	तस्यास्	tásyāḥ <sup>10</sup>			तासाम्	tāsām	их
Loc. у неё	तस्याम्	tásyām	तयोः	táyoh <sup>11</sup>	तासु	tāsu	у них

## Лексика

«Genes» Урок 11.

अविद्या	avidyā	<i>f.</i> неведение, незнание	प्रजा	pra-jā	<i>f.</i> отпрыск, чадо; дети; (offspring, children); тварь, люд(и) (a creature, animal, man, mankind; people), подданный (царя; subjects of a prince)
इव	iva	как, подобно (употребляется как послелог)	बाला	bālā	<i>f.</i> девочка
कथा	kathā	<i>f.</i> рассказ	भार्या	bhāryā	<i>f.</i> жена
कन्या	kanyā	<i>f.</i> девушка	भीता	bhītā	<i>f.</i> испуганная
कुपिता	kupitā	гневная	माला	mālā	<i>f.</i> гирлянда, венок
छाया	chāyā	<i>f.</i> тень	विद्या	vidyā	<i>f.</i> знание
पुत्रिका	putrikā	<i>f.</i> дочь	सेना	senā	<i>f.</i> армия
			सीता	sītā	Сита, жена Рамы

<sup>8</sup> Mh.III.51.4c<sup>9</sup> Mh.III.50.11a; 51.4c<sup>10</sup> Mh.III.50.15a<sup>11</sup> Mh.III.50.16a; 51.13c

## Падежные окончания основ на -ā

### Образец склонения putrikā- f "дочь"

	sg.	du.	pl.
N.	putrikā		
A.	putrikā-m	putrik-é	putrikā-h
I.	putrikā-yā		putrikā-bhiḥ
D.	putrikā-yai	putrikā-bhyām	putrikā-bhyāḥ
Abl.	putrikā-yāḥ		
G.		putrikā-yoḥ	putrikā-nām
L.	putrikā-yāṁ		putrikā-su
V.	putrik-e	putrik-é	putrikā-h

Между -ā основы и окончаниями, начинающимися с гласной, появляются соединительные элементы -y- (sg., du.) и -n- (pl.). В I.sg. и G.L.du. -ā основы сокращается в -a.

В V.sg. и N.A.du. окончание -e замещает -ā основы.

	единственное число (sg.)	двойственное число (du.)	множественное число (pl.)
N.	-		-ḥ
A.	-m	-e	
I.	-ā		-bhiḥ
D.	-ai	-bhyām	-bhyāḥ
Abl.	-āḥ		
G.		-oḥ	-ām
L.	-āṁ		-su
V.	-e	=N.	=N.

### Универсальные падежные окончания

единственное число (sg.)	A. -m
двойственное число (du.)	I. D. Abl. -bhyām G. L. -os
множественное число (pl.)	I. -bhīs (но не в основах на -a) D. Abl. -bhyas G. -(n)ām L. -su

**Упражнение 1.** Написать в деванагари, исправив внутренние и внешние сандхи.

Осуществить перевод.

Egness Урок 11.

Ell.	санскрит без сандхи	санскрит с сандхи	деванагари	перевод
1.	rāmena saha			
2.	śāstrāni			
3.	phale aśve stah			
4.	sah gacchati			
5.	sah bālah āgacchati			
6.	bālah mām āgacchati			
7.	sā bālā mām āgacchati			
8.	tām gacchati			
9.	sah bālah gacchati			
10.	sā bālā gacchati			
11.	sah bālah iva gacchāmi			
12.	aho rāma			
13.	tasmin vane sah vasati			
14.	sītāyāḥ mālā			

**Упражнение 2. Перевод на русский.**

Egness Урок 11.

Ell	деванагари	транскрипция	перевод
1.	सा सेना नृपं जयति।		
2.	राम इव बालो धार्मिकोऽस्ति		
3.	तव प्रजा कथां पठति।		
4.	गजस्य च्छायायां प्रजास्तिष्ठन्ति <sup>12</sup>		
5.	नृपस्य पुत्रिका सीतास्ति।		
6.	सा आचार्यस्य भार्या सेवते।		
7.	नृपस्य पुत्रिका।		
8.	विद्यया शिष्योऽमृतं लभते।		
9.	सा बालेव सीता गृहं गच्छति।		

<sup>12</sup> ch > cch после краткой гласной.

### Упражнение 3. Перевод на санскрит.

*Egenes* Урок 11.

№	английский / русский	транскрипция	деванагари
1.	There is a girl, Sītā by name, in that village. В этой деревне есть девочка по имени Сита.		
2.	The daughter of the virtuous king is very afraid. Дочь благочестивого царя напугана.		
3.	'He tells me again', that subject says. Этот подданный говорит: «Он говорит мне снова».		
4.	'Aha! I remember that story!' the girl says. Ага! Я помню эту историю, - говорит девочка.		
5.	With knowledge, you obtain immortality; with ignorance, you obtain suffering. Знанием приобретаешь бессмертие; неведением приобретаешь страдание		
6.	Like those girls, Sītā reads books. Подобно этим девочкам, Сита читает книги.		
7.	'Where is our daughter?' the hero asks his wife. Где наша дочь? – герой спрашивает свою жену.		
8.	The wife of Rāma is Sītā. Жена Рамы – Сита.		
9.	The hero obtains a garland and thus obtains a wife. Герой достаёт гирлянду и таким образом добывает жену.		
10.	'Without Sītā, I am as if without the sun,' Rāma says. Без Ситы я как без солнца, - говорит Рама.		

## Упражнение 4. Перевод на русский.

Египет Урок 11.

### Лексика

<b>गङ्गा</b>	gaṅgā-	f. Ганг	<b>पृष्ठम्</b>	pr̥ṣṭham	<i>л.</i> спина
<b>प्रतिदिनम्</b>	pratidinam	каждый день	<b>वह्</b>	vah-	Р. нести
<b>पक्ष</b>	pakva-	зрелый, спелый	<b>मध्यम्</b>	madhyam	<i>л.</i> середина
<b>मिष्ठ</b>	miṣṭa-	сладкий dainty, delicate, sweet MBh.	<b>नयति</b>	nayati	он берёт, несёт
<b>खादितुम्</b>	khāditum	инфinitив 'кушать'	<b>नय</b>	naya	бери! неси!
<b>आगच्छ</b>	āgaccha	приди!	<b>उच्छलति</b>	ucchalati	он прыгает
<b>एवम्</b> <b>अस्तु</b>	evam astu	Да будет так!	<b>बिलम्</b>	bilam	<i>л.</i> дыра
			<b>स्म</b>	sma	переводит глагол, стоящий перед ним, из наст. вр. в прошедшее

## Текст

Egenes' Book 11.

Обезьяна и Крокодил.

1. अस्ति गङ्गायं कुम्भीरः।
2. वानरस्तस्य मित्रं गङ्गायास्तटे वसति ।
3. प्रतिदिनं वानरः पक्षानि फलानि निक्षिपति ।
4. कुम्भीरः फलानि खादति ।
5. वानरस्य हृदयं मिष्टमस्तीति कुम्भीरस्य भार्या वदति ।
6. भार्या हृदयं खादितुमिच्छति।
7. अहो वानर मम गृहमागच्छेति कुम्भीरो वानरं वदति।
8. एवमस्त्वति वानरो वदति
9. तस्य पृष्ठे कुम्भीरो वानरं वहति ।
10. गङ्गाया मध्ये कुम्भीरः सत्यं वदति।
- ११। मम हृदयं वृक्षे भवतीति वानरो भाषते।
- १२। पुनर्मा तत्र नयेति वानरो भाषते।
13. कुम्भीरो वानरं गङ्गायास्तटे नयति।
14. वानरो वृक्षमुच्छलति ।
15. वानरो वृक्षस्य बिले पश्यति।
16. कश्चिन्मम हृदयं चोरयति स्मेति वानरो वदति।
17. एवं कुम्भीरो वानरश्च मित्रे तिष्ठतः।

## Egenes Урок 12.

Числительные (saṃkhyā).

Числительные

Egenes Урок 12.

числительные			количественные числительные		
«арабские» европейские	арабские	devanāgarī	русские	санскрит devanāgarī	санскрит транслит
1	١	१	один	एक	eka-
2	٢	२	два	द्वि	dvi-
3	٣	३	три	त्रि	tri-
4	٤	४	четыре	चतुर्	catur-
5	٥	५	пять	पञ्च	pañca-
6	٦	६	шесть	षष्	ṣaṣ-
7	٧	७	семь	सप्त	sapta-
8	٨	८	восемь	अष्ट	aṣṭa-
9	٩	९	девять	नव	nava-
10	١٠	१०	десять	दश	daśa-

порядковые числительные мужского рода

१	первый	prathama- प्रथम	
२	второй	dvitīya- द्वितीय	
३	третий	tr̥tīya- तृतीय	
४	четвёртый	caturha- चतुर्ह	turiya- तुरीय
५	пятый	pañcama- पञ्चम	
६	шестой	ṣaṣṭha- षष्ठ	
७	седьмой	saptama- सप्तम	

## Egenes-Sviatopolk Урок 13.

Чередование гласных. Правила сандхи при сочетании гласных. Существительные женского рода на ī-. Определительное придаточное и коррелятивное предложение.

### Чередование гласных (подъём гласных у Бюлера).

При словоизменении и словообразовании санскрита большую роль играет чередование гласных. Оно не определяется правилами sandhi и происходит преимущественно в корнях и суффиксах, включая и основообразующие. Различаются три ступени чередования гласных: слабая ступень, ступень गुण gunā ["качество, свойство"] и ступень वृद्धि vrddhi [(от глагола *vardh* - "расти") - "приращение, рост"]. Древнеиндийские ученые исходной, основной ступеню считали слабую, из которой выводили ступени *gunā* и *vrddhi*. Исторически чередование гласных было связано с ударением. Под ударением находилась гласная в ступени *gunā*. Поэтому *европейские ученые-компаративисты* признают гласные *gunā* исходной, "нормальной" ступенью гласных, называя их средним или сильным звуковым видом (или ступенью огласовки). Из гласных средней ступени выводят слабый звуковой вид (слабая ступень) и протяженный (ступень *vrddhi*).

Трехступенчатое чередование части гласных санскрита может быть представлена в следующем виде (таблица подъёма гласных у Бюлера):

Евр.	Слабая <sup>1</sup> ступень	Средняя ступень	Протяженная ступень	Соответствующий полугласный
Инд.	-	gunā	vrddhi	
	a <sup>2</sup>	a	ā	
	ā <sup>3</sup>	ā	ā	
	i / ī	e	ai	y
	u / ū	o	au	v
	r	ar	ār	r
	!	al	āl	l

Слабая ступень	Ступень <i>gunā</i>	Ступень <i>vrddhi</i>
√vid	veda	vaidya
√div	deva	daivika
√yuj	yoga	yaugika
√dhr	dharma	dhārmika

Правила сандхи при сочетании гласных<sup>4</sup>.

a+a = ā : rāma + aśvah = rāmāśvah

i+i = ī : gacchati + iti = gacchatīti

<sup>1</sup> У Бюлера: низшая.

<sup>2</sup> У Бюлера прочерк, у Кочергиной: нуль

<sup>3</sup> Данной строки ни у Бюлера, ни у Кочергиной нет вовсе.

<sup>4</sup> В данной главе о сочетании гласных в тех случаях, когда сочетаются краткие гласные a, u, i, тем же правилам подчиняются и долгие гласные ā, ū, ī.

u+u = ū : guru + upa = gurūpa

r + r = ṛ : pitṛ + ṛṣi = pitṛṣi

Эти правила применяются в первую очередь. Затем применимы следующие правила:

### 1) DISSIMILAR VOWELS

i + гласный = **y**-гласный ('гласный' означает как долгий, так и краткий гласный)  
gacchatī + aśvam = gacchaty aśvam

u + гласный = **v**-гласный: guru + aśvam = gurv aśvam

ṛ + гласный = **r**-гласный: pitṛ + atra = pitṛ atra

### 2) e + a = e' : grāme + atra = grāme 'tra

e + V = **a** V, где V = ā, ī, ī, ū, u, e, o: grāme + iti = grāma iti

### 3) ai + гласный = **ā** гласный: tasmai + atra = tasmā atra

o редко встречается в конечной позиции до применения сандхирования

au + гласный = **āv** гласный: gajau + iti = gajāv iti

### 4) когда следом за конечным -a идут DISSIMILAR VOWELS:

a + i = e : tatra + iti = tatreti

a + u = o : kaṭha + upaniṣad = kaṭhopaniṣad

a + ṛ = ar : satya + ṛtam = satya rtam

a + e / ai = ai : tatra + eva = tatraiva

a + o / au = au : atra + okaḥ = atraukaḥ

Не подчиняются правилам сандхи:

- Гласные i, u<sup>5</sup>, e, когда они являются показателями двойственного числа: bāle āgacchataḥ 'Приходят две девушки'
- Конечный гласный восклицания (обычно вокатив). rāma āgacchanti 'Рама, они приходят.'; aho aśva 'О, конь!'

### Склонение основ на -ī и -ū.

Глава 13.

Основы на -ī и -ū всегда женского рода.

	Sg.		du.		pl.	
	-ī	-ū	-ī	-ū	-ī	-ū
N.	-	-s		-au		-as
A.		-m				-s
I.		-ā				-bhīs
D.		-ai		-bhyām		-bhyas
Abl.		-ās				
G.				-os		(-n)ām
L.		-ām				-su
V.	-i	-u	=N.		=N.	

<sup>5</sup> В данной главе о сочетании гласных в тех случаях, когда сочетаются краткие гласные a, u, i, тем же правилам подчиняются и долгие гласные ā, ū, ī.

В формах с падежными окончаниями, начинающимися с гласной, происходят внутренние sandhi.

Сопоставительная таблица склонения ж.р. на ī- и на ī-.

Egenes-Sviatopolk Урок 13.

	sg.		du.		pl.	
	bhūmi-	nadī-	bhūmi-	nadī-	bhūmi-	nadī-
N.	bhūm-īs	nad-ī	bhūm-ī	nad-yāu	bhūm-āyas	nad-yás
A.	bhūm-īm	nad-īm			bhūm-īn	nad-īs
I.	bhūm-yā	nad-yā			bhūm-ībhīs	nad-ībhīs
D.	bhūm-ái	nad-yái	bhūm-ībhīyām	nad-ībhīyām	bhūm-ībhīyas	nad-ībhīyas
Abl.	bhūm-yās	nad-yās			bhūm-īnām	nad-īnām
G.			bhūm-yós	nad-yós	bhūm-īšu	nad-īšu
L.	bhūm-yām	nad-yām				
V.	bhūm-e	nád-i	bhūm-ī = N.	nad-yāu	bhūm-āyas	nad-yás = N.

### Образцы склонения

Egenes Урок 13.

	nadī- "река"		vadhū- "невеста"
Sg.			
N.	nadī		vadhús
A.	nadīm		vadhúm
I.	nadyā		vadhvā
D.	nadyái		vadhvái
Abl.	nadyās		vadhvás
G.			
L.	nadyām		vadhvám
V.	nádi		vádhū
Du.			
N.A.V.	nadyáu		vadhváu
I.D.Abl.	nadībhīyām		vadhúbhīyām
G.L.	nadyós		vadhvós
Pl.			
N.	nadyás		vadhvás
A.	nadīs		vadhús
I.	nadībhīs		vadhúbhīs
D.	nadībhīyas		vadhúbhīyas
Abl.			
G.	nadīnām		vadhúnām
L.	nadīšu		vadhúšu
V.	=N.		=N.

Примечание: lakṣmī- nom. pr. "Лакшми" и tantrī- "струна" имеют в N.sg. окончание -s.

### Определительное придаточное и коррелятивное предложение<sup>6</sup>

Предложение «Я вижу, где живёт царь», англ. “I see where the king lives” содержит главное (Я вижу) и придаточное (где живёт царь) предложения. В санскрите определительное придаточное предложение обычно ставится перед главного коррелятивного. Первое вводится относительным наречием (неклоняемо), а второе – коррелятивным:

yatra nṛpo vasati	tatra aham paśyāmi
определительное придаточное	главное или коррелятивное предложение

yatra	nṛpo vasati	tatra	aham paśyāmi
относительное наречие		коррелятивное наречие	

Относительные наречия и их коррелятивные дуплеты (неклоняемы):

yataḥ	с тех пор как	since, when	tataḥ	тогда	therefore
yatra	где	where	tatra	там	there
yathā	после того, как; так как	since	tathā	то(гда)	so, therefore
yadā	когда	when	tadā	то(гда)	then
yadi	если	if	tadi	то	then

Примеры: 'Когда ты идёшь, тогда я помню' yadā gacchati tadā smarāmi.

'Я иду, если ты идёшь', т.е. на санскрите: 'Если ты идёшь, то (и) я иду' yadi gacchasi tadā gacchāmi.

'Ты добудешь фрукты там, где лес'; т.е. на санскрите: 'Где есть лес, там ты (и) добудешь фрукты'; yatra vanam asti tatra phalāni labhase.

Относительное местоимение yad ('кто, который') и его коррелятивный дуплет tad (заменяет местоимение 3 Sg. 'он'). Этой конструкцией переводится следующее выражение:

‘Человек, который идёт,	есть царь’.
yo naro gacchati	sa nṛpo 'sti
определительное придаточное	коррелятивное предложение

Коррелятивное местоимение иногда опускается. Местоимение yad склоняется по модели tad.

Оба местоимения 'который' (yo) и 'он' (sa) отсылают к человеку, которого называют [антешедентом](#)<sup>7</sup>.

В русском и английском антешедент ставится непосредственно перед относительным

<sup>6</sup> Придаточное предложение, выполняющее в предложении функцию определения. Образуется с помощью относительного местоимения, которое ставится в начале придаточного предложения после определяемого слова; относительное местоимение иногда может быть опущено.

<sup>7</sup> Связь между двумя элементами в тексте (предложении) в которой один из них (предшествующий, вышеназванный) является антешедентом, имеющим независимую референцию, а второй (субститут, анафор) - отсылает к предшествующему антешеденту.

местоимением ‘который’ (who). В санскрите антецедент (*nāgo*) обычно ставится после относительного местоимения ‘который’ или коррелятивного местоимения ‘он’: который человек идёт, он есть царь: yo *nāgo* gacchati sa nṛpro 'sti                       или  
который идёт, этот человек есть царь: yo gacchati sa *nāgo* nṛpro 'sti

Относительные и коррелятивные местоимения согласуются в роде и числе с антецедентом. Падеж антецедента зависит от его роли в каждом предложении. Изучим следующие примеры, проследив два варианта следующих превращений стандартной фразы:

Я вижу человека, который идёт.		
Который человек идёт, его я вижу.	или	Который идёт, этого человека я вижу.
yo naro gacchatī tam pašyāmi		yo gacchatī tam <b>naram</b> pašyāmi

Царь видит **слона**, на котором я стою. (*превращается в*)

‘На котором <a href="#">слоне</a> я стою, его царь видит’.	yasmin <a href="#">gaje</a> tişħāmi tam nṛraħ pašyati
определительное придаточное	коррелятивное предложение

*или*

‘На котором я стою, yasmims tişħāmi	этого <b>слона</b> царь видит’. tam <b>gajam</b> nrpaħ pašyatı
определительное придаточное	коррелятивное предложение

Необходимо отметить, что относительное местоимение *yad* ('кто, который') и его коррелятивный дуплет *tad* согласуются друг с другом в роде и числе, но могут различаться по падежам. Как и антецедент, относительное слово и его коррелятивный дуплет находятся в том падеже, который определяется их ролью в предложении. Изучим следующие примеры, проследив два варианта следующих превращений стандартной фразы:

Я вижу человека, с которым идёт Рама.	
С которым человеком идёт Рама, его я вижу.	С которым идёт Рама, этого человека я вижу.
yena nareṇa saha rāmo gacchati tam aham paśyāmi	и yena rāmo gacchati tam naram aham paśyāmi л
येन नरेण सह रामो गच्छति तमहं पश्यामि	येन रामो गच्छति तं नरमहं पश्यामि

Рама живёт в деревне, из которой я приезжаю.		
Из которой деревни я приезжаю, в ней Рама живёт.	и	Из которой я приезжаю, в этой деревне Рама живёт.
yasmād grāmād āgacchāmi tasmin rāmo vasati	л	yasmād āgacchāmi tasmin grāme rāmo vasati
यस्माद् ग्रामाद् आगच्छामि तस्मिन् रामो वसति।	и	यस्माद् आगच्छामि तस्मिन् ग्रामे रामो वसति।

### Местоимение yad.

Полностью соответствует местоимённому склонению tad (м., ф., п.), за исключением того факта, что masc. Nom. Sg. подчиняется обычным правилам сандхи, т.о., появляются yaḥ, yo и т.д.

Кто, что, который, мужской род.

*Egenes Урок 13.*

Чл.	Sg.		Du.		Pl.		
N. кто	यः	yaḥ	यौ	yau	ये	ye	kto
Acc. кого	यम्	yam			यान्	yān	kogo
Inst. с кем	येन	yéna	याभ्याम्	yābhyaṁ	यैः	yaiḥ	с кем
Dat. кому	यस्मै	yásmai			येभ्यः	yebhyah	кому
Abl. от кого	यस्मात्	yásmāt	ययोः	yayoh	येषाम्	yéṣām	от кого
Gen. чей	यस्य	yásya			येषु	yéṣu	чей
Loc. на ком	यस्मिन्	yásmin					на ком

### Лексика

*Egenes Урок 13.*

धार्मिकी	dhārmikī-	добродетельная	मित्रम्	mitram	п. друг
नदी	nadī-	f. река	वापी	vāpī-	f. пруд <sup>8</sup>
पत्नी	patnī-	f. жена	सुन्दरी	sundarī-	красивая

<sup>8</sup> any pond (made by scattering or damming up earth), a large oblong pond, an oblong reservoir of water, tank, pool, lake Mn. MBh.

## Упражнение 1. Перевод на русский.

*Egenes Урок 13.*

№	деванагари	транскрипция	перевод
1.	यत्र शान्तिस्तत्र सिद्धिः ।१।		
2.	या मम पत्व्याः पुत्रिकास्ति सा बालात्र वसति ।२।		
3.	सीता सुन्दरी नृपस्य पुत्रिकास्तीति रामो वदति ।३।		
4.	यथाश्चा अत्र नागच्छन्ति तथा नरा बालाश्च तत्र गच्छन्ति ।४।		
5.	नदीं गत्वा मित्रे पुस्तकानि पठतः ।५।		
6.	यदा सेना नृपं सेवते तदा धार्मिको नृपो जयति ।६।		
7.	यदि नरः सिद्धिं लभते तदा स ऋषिर्भवते ।७।		
8.	यस्तस्यातिथिर्भवति तस्मै बालाय कविः कथां पठति ।८।		
9.	नरो मित्रेण सह सुन्दरीं नदीं गच्छति ।९।		
10	यस्मादहमागच्छामि तं ग्रामं वीरः स्मरति ।१०।		

## Упражнение 2. Перевод на санскрит.

*Egnew Урок 13.*

№13.	английский / русский	транскрипция	деванагари
1.	The boy obtains water from the river. Мальчик добывает воду из реки.		
2.	The wife sees the fruit which is in the pond. Жена видит плод, который находится в пруду.		
3.	Having obtained a garland, our guest goes to the village. Добыв гирлянду, наш гость идёт в деревню.		
4.	He lives like a king when his wife serves him. Он живёт как царь, когда его жена обслуживает его.		
5.	Sītā, who is the wife of Rāma, obtains fame on earth. Сита, которая является женой Рамы, обретает славу на земле.		
6.	The virtuous king sees the boy who is coming. Благочестивый царь видит мальчика, который приходит.		
7.	The student, having thought, asks the poet about the river. Ученик, подумав, спрашивает поэта о реке.		
8.	That beautiful wife lives without suffering. Та прекрасная жена живёт без страдания.		
9.	Ignorance is like a shadow for the man who sees. Неведение как тень для человека, который видит.		
10.	When the daughter of the king comes, then the subjects stand. Когда приходит дочь царя, тогда придворные стоят.		

## Egenes-Sviatopolk Урок 14.

Правила сандхи для конечного ḥ. Глагольные префиксы (upasarga) и действительный залог имперфекта.

### Правила сандхи для конечного ḥ.

				a	ā			
				i	ī			
				u	ū			
				r̥	ṛ̥			
				!				
				e	ai			
				o	au			
ḥ		ka	kha		ga	gha	ṅa	ঙ
ś		ca	cha		ja	jha	ñā	জ
s̥		ṭa	ṭha		ḍa	ḍha	ṇā	ণ
s		ta	tha		da	dha	na	ন
ḥ		pa	pha		ba	bha	ma	
					ya	ra	la	va
ḥ	śa	ṣa	sa		ha			
конец строки								
	Незвонкие согласные				Звонкие согласные			

### Имперфект (Lañ)

Действительный залог имперфекта, Parasmaipada:

	sg.	du.	pl.
1.	ágacchām	ágacchāvā	ágacchāma
2.	ágacchāḥ	ágacchātam	ágacchāta
3.	ágacchāt	ágacchātām	ágacchān

### Лексика

### Egenes Урок 14.

деванагари	транслитерация	English	перевод	деепричастие (ind.p.)
आ+ √नी; आनयति	ā + √nī; ānayati	to bring	приносить	आनीय
√नी; नयति; -ते	√nī; U.; nayati; -te	to lead	вести	नयित्वा
उप+√गम; उपगच्छति	upa <sup>2</sup> + √gam; upagacchati	to go toward, approach	направляться, подходить, приближаться	उपगत्य; उपगम्य
√गुप; गोपायति	√gup; gopāyati	to protect	защищать; охранять	गोपित्वा

<sup>1</sup> приведена форма из эпического санскрита (*Mh.*),ср. в Брахманах: nītvā; в Атхарва-Веде: nīya.

<sup>2</sup> Avest. upa ; Gk. ὑπό ; Lat. sub ; Goth. uf ; Old Germ. ova ; Mod. Germ. ob in Obdach , obliegen

√पा; पिबति	√pā; pibati	to drink	пить	पीत्वा	pītvā
√बुध्; बोधति; -ते	√budh <sup>3</sup> ; U.; bodhati; -te <sup>4</sup>	to know to be, recognize as (with two Acc.)	узнавать, осознавать, признавать (с двумя Вин.пад.)	बुद्धा	buddhvā
प्रति+ √गम्; प्रतिगच्छति	prati + √gam; pratigacchati	to go back, return	возвращаться	प्रतिगत्य	pratigatya
√हस्; हसति	√has; hasati	to laugh	смеяться	हसित्वा	hasitvā

### Упражнение 1. Перевод на русский.

Egemes Урок 14.

№14	деванагари	транскрипция	перевод
1.	यदा शिष्यो जलमानयति तदाचार्यस्तत्पिबति		
2.	बालो वापीं गजानानयत्		
3.	यो नरो ग्राममुपगच्छति तं कविर्वदति		
4.	वीरः कुपितालृपाद्रामं गोपायतीति रामोऽवदत्		
5.	वाप्यां गजं दृष्टिरहसदहसच्च		
6.	सुन्दरीं तव पत्नीं बोधामीति कन्या वीरमवदत्		
7.	यस्मिन्नाहे पत्यवसत्तत्सा प्रत्यगच्छत्		

<sup>3</sup> Comparanda: Avest. bud ; Gk. πιθ for ( φυθ ) in πινθάνομαι , πιθέσθαι ; Slav. будěti , будrū ; Lith. budėti , budrūs ; Goth. biudan ; Germ. biotan , bieten ; Engl. Sax bēodan ; Eng. bid

<sup>4</sup> также встречается класс IV: búdhyate ( ep. also P. -ti )

8.	ऋषिः शान्तिं सत्यं सिद्धिममृतं सुखं च बोधति		
9.	वीरः सेनाया ग्रामगोपायत्		
10	सुन्दरं नृपं दृष्ट्वा बालोऽहसत्		

## Упражнение 2. Перевод на санскрит.

Genes Урок 14.

С14.	английский / русский	транскрипция	деванагари
1.	The poet read the book as if he were drinking water.		
	Поэт читал книгу как будто он пил воду.		
2.	The hero asked, "How do I protect the village from the army?"		
	Герой спросил: "Как мне защитить деревню от армии?"		
3.	How did sages live without fire?		
	Как мудрецы <b>жили</b> без огня?		
4.	If the horses go back to the river, then the boy leads them to the forest (2Ac.)		
	Если лошади возвращаются к реке, тогда мальчик ведёт их в лес (2Ac.).		
5.	When a man does not know suffering, then he approaches perfection.		
	Когда человек не знает страдания, тогда он приближается к совершенству.		
6.	The king, named Rāma, brought <b>for</b> his wife, Sītā, a garland.		
	Царь по имени Рама принёс для своей жены Ситы гирлянду.		
7.	By means of knowledge, a man conquers ignorance.		
	Посредством знания человек одолевает неведение.		
8.	The child drank the water which came from the river.		
	Ребёнок пил воду, которая пришла с реки.		

9.	Having seen the river, the girl returned to her house.		
	Увидев реку, девушка вернулась в свой дом.		
10.	The boy led the horses from the forest to the river (2Ac.).		
	Мальчик вёл лошадей из леса к реке (2Ac.).		

## Egenes-Sviatopolk Урок 15.

Правила сандхи для конечного т. Глагольные префиксы (upasarga) и средний залог имперфекта.

Правила сандхи для конечного т.

### Имперфект (Lañ)

Средний залог имперфекта, Ātmanepada:

	sg.	du.	pl.
1.	ábhāṣe	ábhāṣāvahi	ábhāṣāmahi
2.	ábhāṣathāḥ	ábhāṣethām	ábhāṣadhwam
3.	ábhāṣata	ábhāṣetām	ábhāṣanta

### Лексика

Egenes Урок 15.

деванагари	транслитерация	English	перевод	деепричастие (ind.p.)	
अ + √गम् ; अवगच्छति	ava <sup>1</sup> -√gam- (P.); avagacchati	understand, to hit upon, learn, know,	понимать, случайно об-наружить	अवगत्य अवगम्य	ava-gátya <sup>2</sup> ; ava-gámya
उद् + √भू ; उद्भवति	ud <sup>3</sup> -√bhū- (P.); udbhavati	be born	родиться	उद्भूय	ud-bhūya
उद् + √स्था; उत्तिष्ठति	ud-√sthā- (P.); uttiṣṭhati	stand up	вставать	उत्स्थाय	ut-sthāya
√रम् ; रमते	√ram (Ā.); ramate	enjoy	любоваться, получать удовольствие	रत्वा	ratvā <sup>4</sup>
√शुभ् ; शोभते	√śobh- (Ā.); śobhate	shine	блестеть, сиять, сверкать	शोभत्वा	śobhatvā
√स्मि; स्मयते	√smi-; smayate	smile	улыбаться	स्मित्वा	smitvā

### Упражнение 1. Перевод на русский.

Egenes Урок 15.

№15	деванагари	транскрипция	перевод
-----	------------	--------------	---------

<sup>1</sup> down, away, off (avatāra, crossing down); + Авест.(Zd.) ava ; Слав. ово, рус. об-(?); also the syllable aù in αύτός , αû , αῦθι ; Lat. au-t , autem.

<sup>2</sup> RV. VI, 75, 5

<sup>3</sup> up(wards), up out (udāna, upward breath) up, upwards; upon, on; over, above. (As implying separation and disjunction) out, out of, from, off, away from, apart (According to native authorities ud may also imply publicity, pride, indisposition, weakness, helplessness, binding, loosing, existence, acquisition.) + Zd. uś ; Hib. uas and in composition os , ois

<sup>4</sup> rantvā Kāv. ; -ramya or -ratya Pāñ. 6-4, 38

१.	कथामवगत्य कविरस्मयत		
२.	रामः सीता च नद्यां जलमरमेताम्		
३.	यदातिथिरुपगच्छति तदा बाला उत्तिष्ठन्ति		
४.	यदातिथिरुपागच्छत्तदा बाला उदतिष्ठन्		
५.	यत्र शान्तिस्तत्र सुखं		
६.	पुत्रिका नृपस्य गृहं उद्भवति		
७.	विद्ययाविद्यां जित्वा सूर्य इवर्षिः शोभते		
८.	अहो राम कथं तस्मिन्नाज उत्तिष्ठसीति बालोऽपृच्छत्		
९.	वने फलानि रत्वा वीरस्य पती गृहं प्रत्यगच्छत्		
१०	यो बालस्तस्य पुत्रस्तं रामो ऽस्मयत		
११	यदाचार्योऽवदत्तदा शिष्या उदतिष्ठन्		

## Упражнение 2. Перевод на санскрит.

*Egenes Урок 15.*

№	английский / русский	транскрипция	деванагари
1.	Since the guest enjoyed the fruit, (therefore) he returns to the house again.		
	Так как гость насладился плодом, (то) он вновь возвращается в дом.		
2.	Having smiled, Sītā spoke to the beautiful girl.		
	Улыбнувшись, сказала Сита красивой девушке.		
3.	Having come from the elephant, the boy approached that village.		
	Придя от слона, мальчик подходит к той деревне.		
4.	He understands that the man has a son.		
	Он понимает, что (=дескать) у человека есть сын.		
5.	After drinking the water from the fruit, the girl stands up.		
	Выпив воду из плода, девушка поднимается.		
6.	When the moon shines, then you see shadows in the forest.		
	Когда светит луна, тогда ты видишь тени в лесу.		
7.	When the boy sees the elephant, then he smiles and laughs.		
	Когда мальчик видит слона, тогда он улыбается и смеётся.		
8.	The man and his wife enjoy that beautiful house.		
	Человек и его жена наслаждаются тем красивым домом.		
9.	When his son was born, the hero smiled.		
	Когда у него родился сын, герой улыбнулся.		
10.	The girl obtained fruit from the man who is standing.		

	Девушка получила плод от человека, который стоит.		
11.	When the sun shines on the moon, then the moon shines on us.		
	Когда солнце светит на луну, тогда луна светит на нас.		

## Egenes-Sviatopolk Урок 16.

Правила сандхи для конечного п. Существительные на -an. Имперфект (Lañ) для глагола √as.

Сложные слова (композиты) типа dvandva.

### §1. Правила сандхи для конечного п.

предшествующее следующему согласному -n превращается в:	следующий согласный	a	ā	предшествующее -n превращается в: -nn если перед ним стоит краткий гласный				
		i	ī					
		u	ū					
		r	ṛ					
		!						
		e	ai					
		o	au					
		ka	kha	ga	gha	ña		-ñ
-mś		ca	cha	ja	jha	ña		-ñ
-ṁś		ṭa	ṭha	ḍa	ḍha	ṇa		-ṇ
-ṁs		ta	tha	da	dha	na		
		pa	pha	ba	bha	ma		
				ya	ra	la	va	-ml
-ñ (ch)	śa	ṣa	sa	ha				
	конец строки							
Глухие согласные				Неглухие согласные (звонкие и плавные)				

Т.о. согласный -n претерпевает превращения только, если стоит перед согласным (за исключением, разумеется, носовых ऽ ण) соответствующего ряда (скр. термин *varga*) №:

- 2) нёбным или палатальным (tālu-) согласным: च छ ज झ;
- 3) церебральным или ретрофлексным (mūrdhan-) согласным: ट ठ ड ढ;
- 4) глухого сегмента зубных или дентальных (danta-) согласных: त थ

Примеры: 1) tasmin + ca > tasmiṁś ca तस्मिंश्च; narān +ca > narāṁś ca नरांश्च

- 2) narān + ṭa > narāṁś ṭa नरांष्ट;
- 3) narān + tatra > narāṁś tatra नरांस्तत्र; katham nṛpasyāśvāṁś tvad labhāmi Как я получаю коней царя от тебя? Egenes 10:3j
- 4) narān + śobhante > narāñ chobhante नराञ्छोभन्ते  
редко narān + śobhante > narāñ śobhante नराञ्शोभन्ते
- 5) rājan + atra > rājann atra राजन्नत्र  
narān + atra > narān atra नरानन्त्र
- 6) narān + jayati > narāñ jayati नराञ्जयति

7) narān + ḍa > narāṇ ḍa नराण्ड

8) narān + labhate > narāṁl labhate नरांलभते

## §2. Сопоставительная таблица склонения на **an-** муж. и ср. родов (N). *Egenez Урок 16.*

	sg.		du.		pl.	
	Masculine	Neuter	Masculine	Neuter	Masculine	Neuter
N.	rāj-ā	nām-a	rājān-áu	nām(a)n-ī	rājān-āḥ	nām-āni
A.	rājān-āṁ	nām-a			rājñ-āḥ <sup>1</sup>	nām-āni
Inst.	rājñ-ā <sup>2</sup>	nāmn-ā			rāj-abhiḥ	nām-abhiḥ
D.	rājñ-e <sup>3</sup>	nāmn-e	rāj-abhyām	nām-abhyām	rāj-abhyāḥ	nām-abhyāḥ
Abl.	rājñ-ah <sup>4</sup>	nāmn-ah				
G.			rājñ-óḥ <sup>5</sup>	nāmn-óḥ	rājñ-ām <sup>6</sup>	nām-nām
L.	rājñ-i <sup>7</sup>	nām(a)n-i			rāj-asu	nām-asu
V.	rāj-an	nām-a(n)	rājān-áu = N.	nām(a)n-ī	rājān-āḥ	nām-āni

## §3. Имперфект (Laṇ) глагола √as:

	sg.	du.	pl.
1.	āsam	āsva	āsma
2.	āsīḥ	āstam	āsta
3.	āsīt	āstām	āsan

## §4. Основосложение. Сложные слова (**композиты**) типа dvandva<sup>8</sup>.

§4.1. Характерной чертой санскрита является сложение основ и образование сложных слов.

Сложным словом мы будем считать такое сочетание основ, при котором каждая из основ встречается в самостоятельном употреблении в языке определенного периода - т. е. в эпическом и классическом санскрите.

Как важнейшее явление санскрита сложные слова (samāsa) были изучены древнеиндийскими учеными. Грамматист Панини (rāṇīni, V-IV вв. до н.э.) и его последователи дали исчерпывающее описание и классификацию сложных слов. Типы сложения они обозначили сложными словами-terminами, почти каждый из которых является представителем одного из

<sup>1</sup> но: ātman-āḥ

<sup>2</sup> но: ātman-ā

<sup>3</sup> но: ātman-e

<sup>4</sup> но: ātman-ah

<sup>5</sup> но: ātman-ōḥ

<sup>6</sup> но: ātman-ām.

<sup>7</sup> но: ātman-i

<sup>8</sup> при подготовке данного параграфа использовались материалы Занятия XXXII учебника Кочергиной.

типов. Род композита определяется родом последней основы. Внутри сложного слова действуют правила внешних sandhi. Обычно склоняется только последний член композита, а у предшествующих ему членов отсутствует (luk) падежное окончание (sup). На письме (деванагари) сложное слово записывается в одно слово без прерываний. В транслитерации применяется дефис в том случае, когда позволяют сандхи: एकवचन eka-vacana 'единственное число'.

§4.2. Сложение **dvandva**, значение термина - "два и два" (по Эдженсу, относящийся к слову 'двойственный'). Слова dvandva являются соединением основ однородных членов предложения и переводятся на русский язык с союзом "и". В слова dvandva соединяются существительные, реже прилагательные. Dvandva могут состоять из двух и более основ.

§4.3. В dvandva, состоящих из двух основ, основа последнего существительного употребляется 1. в форме двойственного числа или 2., при собирательном значении слова (*samāhāra-dvandva*), в форме единственного числа на -am.

Например: 1. सीतारामौ sītā-rāmau 'Сита и Рама', rāma-kṛṣṇau "Рама и Кришна", 2. pāṇi-pādam "руки и ноги, конечности" [3. иногда возможны оба случая: sukhām duḥkham ca "счастье и несчастье" → sukhaduḥkham (sg.) или sukhaduḥkhe (du.).].

Тип двандвы, называемый *samāhāra*, образует окончание всегда единственного числа и среднего рода. Собирательное значение композита здесь будет превалировать над значением каждого члена в отдельности. Часто бинарные оппозиции будут выступать именно в форме *samāhāra-dvandva*:

sukhaduḥkham	vigraha	sukham duḥkham ca
счастье-несчастье	Анализ	счастье и несчастье

Двучленные dvandva, обозначающие множество предметов, могут иметь форму множественного числа.

Например: puṣṭa-phalāni *n* "цветы и плоды".

§4.4. Все композиты могут быть подвергнуты анализу (vigraha), который разложит сложное слово на составляющие: सीतारामौ sītā-rāmau 'Сита-Рама', Анализ (vigraha): सीतारामश्च sītā-rāmaśca 'Сита и Рама'. Dvandva такого типа называется *itaretara-dvandva*, поскольку она упоминает его членов в дистрибутивном смысле (каждый в отдельности). В этом типе композита последний член стоит в двойственном числе, поскольку обе персоны названы.

§4.5. Если названо более двух персон, последний член ставится во множественное число: ācārya-siṣyāḥ 'учитель-ученики'; Анализ (vigraha): ācāryaḥ-siṣyāḥ ca 'учитель и ученики'.

Dvandva, состоящие из трех и более основ существительных, всегда имеют последнюю основу в форме множественного числа.

Например: aśva-gaja-mṛgāḥ 'конь, слон и олень'; deva-gandharva-manuṣya-uraga-rākṣasāḥ - "небожители, гандхарвы, люди, демоны-змеи и ракшасы" (Mh. III.50.28ab).

При образовании dvandva существуют определенные правила расположения основ внутри сложного слова: основы, начинающиеся с гласной, занимают первые места, основы с меньшим

количеством слогов предшествуют многосложным, названия времен года следуют в их естественном порядке, названия варн (каст) располагаются начиная с высшей, перечисление родственников начинают со старшего и т. п. (см. также пример, приведенный выше).

§4.6. Род композита определяется последним его членом (как в немецком языке):

rāma-sītē	vigraha	rāmaḥ sītā ca
Рамаситэ	Анализ	Рама и Сита

§4.7. Первый член находится в форме своей основы, даже если он относится к множ. числу.

Вследствие этого иногда возникает двусмысленность, касающаяся его числа. Например:

आचार्यशिष्यः:	Учитель и студенты.
	Учителя и студент.
	Учителя и студенты.

§4.8. Слова, заканчивающиеся на –an, в композитах обычно ведут себя как слова, заканчивающиеся на –a. Например, ātmán часто сокращается до ātmá, когда он выступает в качестве 1-го члена композита. Некоторые слова, такие, как rāján, принимают окончание –a, будучи как первым, так и последним членом дсанды. Например:

राजरामौ rāja-rāmau ‘царь и Рама’; रामराजौ rāma-rājau ‘Рама и царь’

§4.9. Другой тип композита известен как отрицательный или негативный композит (nañ или негативный samāsa). Существительное отрицается приставкой a-:

विद्या vidyā ‘знание’; अविद्या avidyā ‘неведение’

§4.10. Отрижение деепричастия также образуется посредством отрицательной приставки a-. Если деепричастие начинается на a-, и в нём нет никакого префикса (преверба), то его окончание будет –tvā: अगत्वा agatvā ‘не пойдя’.

§4.11. Если слово начинается с гласной, тогда оно отрицается посредством приставки an-.

Например: अनुदित्वा anuditvā ‘не сказав’.

### Лексика

### Genesis Урок 16.

आत्मान्	ātmán	Самость, душа, Истинное Я (m.)	प्रिय	priya	дорогой (dear), любимый (beloved)
कर्मन्	karman	действие, поступок [action] (n.)	रमणीय	ramaṇīya	приятный; радостный; милый (pleasant)
कृष्ण	kṛṣṇa	чёрный	राजान्	rājan	царь m.
कृष्णः	kṛṣṇaḥ	Кришна	शुक्ल	śukla	белый
नामन्	nāman	имя (n.)	शोभन	śobhana	блестящий, яркий, красивый

## Упражнение 1. Перевод на русский.

«Egenez» Урок 16.

№	деванагари	транскрипция	перевод
1.	कृष्णोऽश्वमृगगजानगोपायत्		
2.	प्रियो राजा रामो ग्रामस्य बालानस्मयत्		
3.	कन्या प्रजां सूर्यात्तस्याश्छाययागोपायत्		
4.	य आत्मानं बोधति स कर्मणि रमते		
5.	प्रजा कृष्णस्याश्वस्य कर्महस्त		
6.	यदा सा तस्य नामावदत्तदा बाल उदतिष्ठत्		
7.	प्रियं तस्य पुत्रमुपगत्य वीरो ऽस्मयत्		
8.	बालबाले शोभनस्य राज्ञः प्रजे स्तः		
9.	शुक्ला अश्वा वन आसन्		
10.	आसीद्राजा रामो नाम ग्रामे		

## Упражнение 2. Перевод на санскрит.

«Egenez» Урок 16.

№	английский / русский	транскрипция	деванагари
1.	The black horse drinks the water from the river.		
	Черный конь пьёт воду из реки.		

2.	He who knows the Self enjoys action and inaction.		
	Тот, кто знает Самость, наслаждается деянием и не деянием.		
3.	The king's name Kṛṣṇa.		
	Имя царя – Кришна.		
4.	The king enjoys the pleasant actions of the son.		
	Царь наслаждается милыми поступками сына.		
5.	The beloved hero understood perfection and imperfection (success and failure).		
	Любимый герой постиг совершенство и не совершенство (успех и неудача).		
6.	The boy comes from the elephant and returns to the house.		
	Мальчик приходит от слона и возвращается в дом.		
7.	That which neither comes nor goes is the Self.		
	То, что ни приходит, ни идёт, есть Самость.		
8.	When the king approached, the boys and girls stood up.		
	Когда царь приблизился, мальчики и девочки встали.		
9.	The man who was the king came from the black forest.		
	Человек, который был царём, пришёл из чёрного леса.		
10.	Knowledge of the Self is knowledge also of the sun and the moon.		
	Знание Самости – это также знание солнце и луны.		

## Egenes-Sviatopolk Урок 17.

Правила сандхи для конечного t. Существительные на -t. Будущее время (L<sup>t</sup>).

### §1. Правила сандхи для конечного t.

<p>-t превращается в -t за исключением:</p>	<p>следующий согласный</p>	a	ā	<p>-t превращается в -d за исключением:</p>				
		i	ī					
		u	ū					
		r̥	ṛ					
		!						
		e	ai					
		o	au					
		ka	kha	ga	gha	ḥa		-n <sup>1</sup>
-c		ca	cha	ja	jha	ña		-j
-t		ta	tha	da	dha	ṇa		-d
		ta	tha	da	dha	na		-n
		pa	pha	ba	bha	ma		-n
				ya	ra	la	va	-l
-c (ch)	śa	ṣa	sa	ha				-d (dh)
	конец строки							
Незвонкие согласные			Звонкие согласные					

Примеры: 1) rāmāt + ca > rāmāc ca रामाच्च ;

- 2) rāmāt + ṭa > rāmāṭ ṭa रामाट् ;
- 3) rāmāt + śāstram > rāmāc śāstram रामाच्छास्त्रम्
- 4) rāmāt + manyate > rāmān manyate रामान्मन्यते
- 5) rāmāt + jalam > rāmāj jalam रामाजलम्
- 6) rāmāt + ḍa > rāmāḍ + ḍa रामाढ्डू
- 7) rāmāt + labhate > rāmāl + labhate रामाल्लभते
- 8) rāmāt + hastaḥ > rāmād + dhastah रामाद्धस्तः

<sup>1</sup> перед всеми назальными

## §2. Таблица склонения на -ṛ муж. и жен. родов. *Genesis Урок 17.*

Сильное склонение основ dātṛ- 'дающий' (м.), svasṛ- 'сестра' (ж.).

Особенности слабого склонения основ pitṛ- 'отец', mātṛ- 'мать', bhrātṛ- 'брать'.

	sg.		du.		pl.	
	Masculine		Masculine		Masculine	
N.	dāt-ā	pit-ā	dātār-áu	pitār-áu	dātār-āḥ	pitār-ah
A.	dātār-ám	pitār-ám			dātṛ-n	mātṛ-h
Inst.	dātṛ-ā		dātṛ-bhyām	dātṛ-bhyah	dātṛ-bhiḥ	
D.	dātṛ-e				dātṛ-bhyah	
Abl.	dāt-uh		dātṛ-óḥ	dātṛ-nām	dātṛ-nām	
G.					dātṛ-ṣu	
L.	dātar-i					
V.	dātar	pitar	dātār-áu = N.	pitār-áu	dātār-āḥ	pitār-ah

Двандва pitā-mātarau 'отец-мать' или mātā-pitaraу 'мать-отец', т.е. 'родители', образуется из первого члена конструкции, стоящем в Nom.Sg. Аналогично форма двойственного числа от 'отцов' pitaraу будет иметь то же значение 'родители'.

## §3. Будущее время, *Futur (Lṛ̥t̥)*:

Основа будущего времени образуется от всех глаголов по единому правилу - прибавлением к корню ударяемого суффикса -syā. Корни на согласные могут иметь варианты этого суффикса – šya или -išya. При образовании основы будущего времени от глаголов на гласные суффикс -syā прибавляется к корням на -ā, -šya - к корням на другие гласные, -išya - к корням на дифтонги или на -ar.

Например:

dā "давать" - основа будущего времени dāsyā-

kar "делать" - основа будущего времени karišyā-.

Корни, содержащие ī, ī, u, в основе будущего времени имеют эти гласные в ступени guṇa, т.е. e, o.

Например:

likh "писать" - основа будущего времени lekhišyā-

nī "вести" - основа будущего времени nešyā-

budh "будить, узнавать" - основа будущего времени bodhišyā-.

Корни, оканчивающиеся на ū, имеют в основе будущего времени o/ai, изменяющиеся перед -i в -av.

Например:

bhū "быть" - основа будущего времени bho-/bhau- + išya → bhavišya -.

Простое будущее время образуется от основы будущего времени прибавлением к ней первичных личных окончаний. Ударение падает на суффикс основы.

№	корень	Зл. ед. ч. наст. вр.	перевод	Futur (Lṛ̥t)	деепричастие	перевод
1.	√gam-	gacchatī	идти	gamiṣyātī	gatvā	пойдя
1.1	ā + √gam-	āgacchatī	приходить	ā-gamiṣyātī	ā-gamya ā-gatya	прия
1.2	ava- + √gam-	avagacchatī	понимать, случайно об-наружить	ava-gamiṣyātī	ava-gátya <sup>2</sup> ; ava-gámya	об-наружив
1.3	prati- + √gam-	pratigacchatī	возвращаться	prati-gamiṣyātī	pratigatya प्रतिगत्य	вернувшись
1.4	upa- + √gam	upagacchatī	направляться, подходить, приближаться	upa-gamiṣyātī	upa-gátya; upa-gámya	приблизивши сь
2.	√gup-	gopāyati	защищать	gopsyati	gopitvā	защитив
3.	√cint-	cintayati, cintayate	думать	cintayiṣyātī, cintayiṣyātē	cintayitvā	подумав
4.	√ji-	jayati	завоевать	jeṣyātī	jītvā जित्वा	завоевав
5.	√dr̥ś- (paś-)	paśyati	видеть	drakṣyātī	dr̥ṣṭvā दृष्ट्वा	увидев
6.	√nī;	nayati; -te	вести	neṣyātī; -te	nayitvā <sup>3</sup> नयित्वा	
6.1	ā + √nī	ānayati	приносить	ā-neṣyātī	ānīya आनीय	
7.	√paṭh-	paṭhatī	читать	paṭhiṣyātī	paṭhitvā	прочитав
8.	√pā-	pibati	пить	pāṣyātī	pītvā पीत्वा	выпив
9.	√prach-	pr̥cchati	спрашивать	prakṣyātī	pr̥ṣtvā	спросив
10.	√budh-;	bodhatī; -te	узнавать, осознавать, признавать	bodhiṣyātī, bodhiṣyātē	buddhvā बुद्ध्वा	узнав
11.	√bhāṣ-	bhāṣate	говорить	bhāṣiṣyātē	bhāṣitvā	сказав
12.	√bhū-	bhavati	быть	bhaviṣyātī	bhūtvā	будучи
13.	√man-	manyate	мыслить	mamṣyātē	matvā	помыслив
14.	√ram-	ramate	любоваться, получать удовольствие	ramṣyātē	ratvā <sup>4</sup> रत्वा	получив удовольствие
15.	√labh-	labhate	приобретать	lapsyātē	labdhvā लङ्घ्वा	приобретя
16.	√vad-	vadati	говорить	vadiṣyātī	uditvā	сказав
17.	√vas-	vasati	обитать	vatsyātī	us̥itvā उषित्वा	пожив
18.	√śubh-	śobhate; -ti <sup>5</sup> ; śumbhātī	блестеть, сиять, сверкать	śobhiṣyātī	śobhatvā शोभत्वा	сверкнув
19.	√sev-	sevate	служить	seviṣyātē	sevitvā सेवित्वा	обслужив
20.	√sthā-	tis̥thati	стоять	sthāṣyātī	sthitvā	встав

<sup>2</sup> RV. VI, 75, 5

<sup>3</sup> приведена форма из эпического санскрита (*Mh.*), ср. в Брахманах: nītvā; в Атхарва-Веде: nīya.

<sup>4</sup> rantvā Kāv. ; -ramya or -ratya Pāṇ. 6-4, 38

<sup>5</sup> только в эпическом санскрите

21.	√smi-	sma <sup>y</sup> ate	улыбаться	sm <sup>e</sup> syáte	smitvā स्मित्वा	улыбнувшись
22.	√smṛ-	smarati	помнить	smariṣyáti	smṛtvā	помня
23.	√has-	hasati	смеяться	hasiṣyáti	hasitvā हसित्वा	засмеявшись

## Лексика

Genesis Урок 17.

कदा	kadā	‘когда’	दात्री	dātrī-	‘дающая’
कर्तृ	kartr-	<i>m.</i> ‘делающий, творец’	पितृ	pitr-	‘отец’
कर्त्री	kartrī-	<i>f.</i> ‘делающая’	भ्रातृ	bhrātrī-	‘брать’
कुलम्	kulam	<i>n.</i> ‘семья’	मातृ	mātr-	<i>f.</i> ‘мать’
दातृ	dātr-	<i>m.</i> ‘дающий’	स्वसृ	svasr-	<i>f.</i> ‘сестра’
उत्सव	ut-savá-	<i>m.</i> праздник, a festival, jubilee	श्वशुर	śvásura-	свёкор, a father-in-law, husband's or wife's father
वारिम्	vārim	<i>n.</i> вода <sup>6</sup>	निवस्	ni-√vas-	обитать, жить вместе с кем-л. в (Loc.) <sup>7</sup>
ह	√hr-	брать, уносить <sup>8</sup>	सखी	sakhī	<i>f.</i> подруга
अपहृ	apa-√hr-	отнимать, удалять	आराम	ārāma-	<i>m.</i> сад (под открытым небом, Luftgarten)
नौ	naú-	<i>f.</i> корабль	निशा	niśā-	<i>f.</i> ночь
क्रीडन	krīḍana-	<i>n.</i> «игра, playing»	तमस्क	tamaska-	<i>m./n.</i> darkness

## Упражнение 1. Перевод на русский.

Genesis Урок 17.

<sup>6</sup> water, rain, fluid, fluidity Mn. MBh<sup>7</sup> to sojourn, pass or spend time, dwell or live or be in<sup>8</sup> to take, bear, carry; to take away, carry off, seize, deprive of, steal [Gk. χείρ]

№	деванагари	транскрипция	перевод
1.	मम पिता तत्र गमिष्यतीति बालस्तस्य मातरमवदत् ।१।		
2.	कदा तव भ्राता जलं लप्स्यत इति पितापृच्छत् ।२।		
3	पितामातरौ जलात्कुलं गोप्स्यतः ।३।		
4	कदा वनादागमिष्यसीति रामस्तस्य भ्रातरमपृच्छत् ।४।		
5	तस्य पितरं सेवित्वा रामो राजा भविष्यति ।५।		
6	यदा तस्या भ्रातरं मन्यते तदा सा स्मयते ।६।		
7	माता तस्याः प्रजायै सुखस्य दात्री भवति ।७।		
8	य आत्मानं जयति स शान्तेः कर्ता ।८।		
9	जलं पीत्वा तस्य मातुः पुस्तकं पठिष्ठति ।९।		
10	भ्रात्रा सह रामो वने वत्स्यति ।१०।		
11	राज्ञो गृह उत्सवो भवत् ।११।		
12	वायुर्वारौ नावं हरति ।१२।		

13	राज्ञः सुता सखीभिः सहारामे क्रीडनाय गच्छति स्म ।१३।		
14	सूर्यो निशायास्तमस्कमपहरति ।१४।		
15	श्वशुर्गृहे कन्ये न्यवसताम्		
16	पित्रोर्गृहे सुखेन वसामः		
17	शास्त्रस्य कर्त्रै पाणिनये नामः		

### Упражнение 2. Перевод на санскрит.

*Genesis Book 17.*

№	английский / русский	транскрипция	деванагари
1.	When my sister was born, she smiled at my mother.		
	Когда родилась моя сестра, она улыбнулась моей матери.		
2.	My family's name is from the name of a seer.		
	Имя моей семьи (происходит) от имени провидца.		
3.	'When will I speak to the king?' her father thought.		
	'Когда я скажу царю?' – думал её отец.		
4.	Her father's wife is her mother.		
	Жена её отца – её мать.		
5.	My father is the maker of peace in our family.		
	Мой отец – творец мира в нашей семье.		
6.	The brother and sister will obtain fruit from the forest.		
	Брат и сестра добудут плод из леса.		
7.	The hero will protect the king from the fire in the forest.		
	Герой защитит царя от огня в лесу.		
8.	The son of the king has no brothers.		
	У сына царя нет братьев.		
9.	When will the students obtain knowledge from the virtuous teacher?		
	Когда ученики получат знание от добродетельного учителя?		
10.	'I have seen you in the pond', the king says to the beautiful son.		
	'Я видел тебя в пруду' – говорит царь прекрасному сыну.		

८	восьмой	aṣṭama- अष्टम
९	девятый	navama- नवम
१०	десятый	daśama- दशम

Парадигма склонения основы м. и ж. р. на i-.

	sg.		du.		pl.	
	m	f	m	f	m	f
N.	pāṇ-íś	kīrt-íś	pāṇ-ī	kīrt-ī	pāṇ-áyas	kīrt-áyas
A.	pāṇ-ím	kīrt-ím			pāṇ-īn	kīrt-īn
I.	pāṇ-íñā	kīrt-yā	pāṇ-íbhyaṁ	kīrt-íbhyaṁ	pāṇ-íbhis	kīrt-íbhis
D.	pāṇ-áye	kīrt-yai			pāṇ-íbhyaṁ	kīrt-íbhyaṁ
Abl.	pāṇ-éś	kīrt-yās	pāṇ-yóś	kīrt-yóś	pāṇ-īñām	kīrt-īñām
G.					pāṇ-íṣu	kīrt-íṣu
L.	pāṇ-áu	kīrt-yām /áu	pāṇ-ī = N. = kīrt-ī		pāṇ-áyas = N. = kīrt-áyas	
V.	pāṇ-e	kīrt-e				

Падежные окончания основ на -i и -u.

	sg.			du.			pl.					
	m	f	n	m	f	n	m	f	n			
N.	-s	=ОСН.		-ī / -ū	-nī		-as		-īni/-ūni			
A.	-m						-īn / -ūn	-īs / -ūs				
I.	-nā	-ā	-nā	-bhyaṁ			-bhis					
D.	-e	-ne	-ne				-bhyas					
Abl.	-s	-nas		-os	-nos		-īñām / -ūñām					
G.							-ṣu					
L.	-au	-ni	-ni	=N.			=N.					
V.	-	=ОСН.										

При склонении основ на -i и -u следует учитывать:

- Чередование гласной основы:
- а) в Abl.-G. и V.sg. m и f гласная основы выступает в ступени guṇa, т. е. i → e, u → o.
  - б) в D.sg. m и f в N.V. pl. m и f гласная основы выступает в ступени guṇa, изменяясь перед гласной окончания, т. е. e → ai, o → au.
  - в) в L.sg. m и f основ на -u гласная основы выступает в ступени vr̥ddhi, т.е. u → au. В L.sg. m и f основ на -i по аналогии с основами на -u гласная основы замещается -au.

- 2) Sandhi гласной основы перед падежными окончаниями, начинающимися с гласной, т. е.  
I.sg. *f*, D.sg. *m* и *f*, G.-L. du. *m* и *f*, N.pl. *m* и *f*.
- 3) Удлинение гласной основы:  
а) в N.A.V.du. *m* и *f*(без присоединения окончания)  
б) в G.pl. всех родов, в N.A.pl. *n* и в A.pl. *m* и *f* (перед падежными окончаниями).

### Сопоставительная таблица склонения на а- и на ī-.

*Egneres Урок 12.*

	sg.		du.		pl.	
	nara-	agni-	nara-	agni-	nara-	agni-
N.	<b>nar-ās</b>	<b>agn-īs</b>	<b>nar-āu</b>	<b>agn-ī</b>	<b>nar-ās</b>	<b>agn-āyas</b>
A.	<b>nar-ām</b>	<b>agn-īm</b>			<b>nar-ān</b>	<b>agn-īn</b>
I.	<b>nar-ēṇa<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>agn-īnā</b>	<b>nar-ābhyaṁ</b>	<b>agn-ībhyaṁ</b>	<b>nar-ais</b>	<b>agn-ībhis</b>
D.	<b>nar-āya</b>	<b>agn-īye</b>			<b>nar-ēbhyaṁ</b>	<b>agn-ībhyaṁ</b>
Abl.	<b>nar-ād</b>	<b>agn-ēs</b>	<b>nar-āyos</b>	<b>agn-yōs</b>	<b>agn-īnām<sup>2</sup></b>	<b>agn-īnām</b>
G.	<b>nar-āsyā</b>				<b>nar-ēṣu</b>	<b>agn-īṣu</b>
L.	<b>nar-e</b>	<b>agn-āu</b>	<b>nar-āu = N.</b>	<b>agn-ī = N.</b>	<b>nar-ās</b>	<b>agn-āyas = N.</b>
V.	<b>nar-a</b>	<b>agn-e</b>				

### Деепричастие (санскр. ktvānta; англ. gerund).

*Egneres Урок 12.*

uditvā rāmo gacchati 'Сказав, Рама идёт'

gajam dr̥ṣtvā jalām labdhvā rāmo gacchati 'Увидев слона, достав воду, Рама идёт'.

Формы деепричастий (*√as-* деепричастий не образует):

№	корень	Зл. ед. ч. наст. вр.	деепричастие	русский перевод
1.	ā + √gam-	āgacchati	āgam <b>y</b> a   āga <b>t</b> ya	придя
2.	√gam-	gacchati	gatvā	пойдя
3.	√cint-	cintayati, -te	cintayitvā	подумав
4.	√jī-	jayati	jitvā <b>जित्वा</b>	завоевав
5.	√dr̥ś- (paś-)	paśyati	dr̥ṣtvā <b>दृश्वा</b>	увидев
6.	√paṭh-	paṭhati	paṭhitvā	прочитав
7.	√prach-	pr̥cchati	pr̥ṣtvā	спросив

<sup>1</sup> но: **gaj-ēna; van-ēna.**

<sup>2</sup> но: **gaj-ānām; van-ānām.**

8.	$\sqrt{bhāś-}$	bhāśate	bhāśitvā	сказав
9.	$\sqrt{bhū-}$	bhavati	bhūtvā	будучи
10.	$\sqrt{man-}$	manyate	matvā	помыслив
11.	$\sqrt{labh-}$	labhate	labdhvā <small>लभ्वा</small>	приобретя
12.	$\sqrt{vad-}$	vadati	uditvā	сказав
13.	$\sqrt{vas-}$	vasati	uṣitvā	пожив
14.	$\sqrt{sev-}$	sevate	sevitvā	обслужив
15.	$\sqrt{sthā-}$	tiṣṭhati	sthitvā	встав
16.	$\sqrt{smṛ-}$	smarati	smṛtvā	помня

## Лексика

*Egness Урок 12.*

अग्नि	agni-	<i>m.</i> огонь	कीर्ति	kīrti-	<i>f.</i> слава, известность; (синоним. श्रवं śravā- <i>m.</i> с оттенком 'молва, слух')
अतिथि	atithi-	<i>m.</i> гость	भूमि	bhūmi-	<i>f.</i> земля
ऋषि	r̥ṣi-	<i>m.</i> пророк, мудрец	शान्ति	śānti-	<i>f.</i> мир; умиротворение
कवि	kavi-	<i>m.</i> поэт	सिद्धि	siddhi-	<i>f.</i> совершенство
सिद्ध	siddha-	<i>m.</i> достигающий совершенства	सिद्धा	siddhā-	<i>f.</i> достигающая совершенства

## Упражнение 1. Перевод на русский.

*Egenez Урок 12.*

№	деванагари	транскрипция	перевод
1.	अग्निं दृष्ट्वा गृहादश्वो गच्छति		
2.	शिष्यो ग्रामे वसति		
3.	ऋषयः शास्त्राणां सूक्तानि पश्यन्ति		
4.	नृपो दशममतिथिं सेवते		
5.	ग्रामं जित्वा वीरः कीर्तिं लभते		
6.	सिद्धो ग्रामे वसति		
7.	अहो राम कुत्र गच्छसीति द्वितीयो वीरः पृच्छति		
8.	पुस्तकं पठित्वा कविस्तच्चिन्तयति		
9.	सत्येन सह शान्तिरागच्छति		
10	भूमौ वसाम इति प्रजा वदन्ति		

## Упражнение 2. Перевод на санскрит.

*Egenez Урок 12.*

№.	английский / русский	транскрипция	деванагари
1.	After conquering the army, the hero obtains fame on earth.		
	Победив армию, герой обретает славу на земле.		
2.	Like Sītā and Rāma, the student goes to the forest.		
	Подобно Сите и Раме ученик		

	идёт в лес.		
3.	After serving her third guest, Sītā speaks to Rāma.  Обслужив своего (ейного) третьего гостя, Сита говорит Раме.		
4.	In the story, Rāma obtains fame.  В рассказе Рама обретает славу.		
5.	The hero does not conquer ignorance.  Герой не одолевает невежества.		
6.	The king, Rāma by name, is very virtuous.  Царь по имени Рама очень благочестив.		
7.	„How do you obtain perfection?” the second student asks.  «Как ты добиваешься совершенст-ва?» - спрашивает второй ученик.		
8.	Having lived in the forest with his wife, the king, Rāma by name, goes to the village.  Пожив в лесу со своей женой, царь по имени Рама идёт в деревню.		
9.	Having obtained peace, perfection, and glory, the seer goes to the beautiful forest.  Обретя мир, совершенство и славу, провидец идет в прекрасный лес.		
10.	Thus having seen his wife on the elephant, the hero goes to her.  Таким образом, увидев свою жену на слоне, герой идёт к ней.		



## CONTENTS

	PAGE
<b>INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>xi</b>
<b>LESSON ONE</b>	<b>1</b>
Alphabet:	The vowels in roman script
	2
	The first six vowels in <b>devanāgari</b>
	4
Grammar:	How a verb is formed
	5
	The singular ending for verbs
	5
Vocabulary:	The verbs $\sqrt{\text{gam}}$ and $\sqrt{\text{prach}}$
	6
	The word for “and”
	6
	How to write simple sentences
	6
<b>LESSON TWO</b>	<b>8</b>
Alphabet:	Most of the consonants and how they are organized
	9
	The last seven vowels in <b>devanāgari</b>
	12
Grammar:	Verbs in the dual
	13
Vocabulary:	More verbs
	14
	The word for “where”
	14
<b>LESSON THREE</b>	<b>18</b>
Alphabet:	The remaining letters in roman script
	19
	The first ten consonants in <b>devanāgari</b>
	23
Grammar:	The plural
	24
	The grammatical terms to describe a verb
	25
	Accent
	27
Vocabulary:	More verbs
	28

<b>LESSON FOURTEEN</b>	<b>181</b>	
Alphabet:	The <b>sandhi</b> rules for final <b>ḥ</b>	182
Grammar:	Verb prefixes and the imperfect active	188
Vocabulary:	More verbs	191
<b>LESSON FIFTEEN</b>	<b>195</b>	
Alphabet:	The <b>sandhi</b> rules for final <b>m</b>	196
Grammar:	More verb prefixes	197
	The imperfect middle	199
Vocabulary:	More verbs	200
<b>LESSON SIXTEEN</b>	<b>204</b>	
Alphabet:	The <b>sandhi</b> rules for final <b>n</b>	205
Grammar:	Nouns in <b>an</b>	208
	The imperfect for <b>as</b>	210
	The <b>dvandva</b> compound	210
Vocabulary:	Nouns in <b>an</b> , more adjectives	214
<b>LESSON SEVENTEEN</b>	<b>217</b>	
Alphabet:	The <b>sandhi</b> rules for final <b>t</b>	218
Grammar:	Nouns ending in <b>r</b> , the future tense	220
Vocabulary:	Nouns in <b>r</b>	224
<b>LESSON EIGHTEEN</b>	<b>228</b>	
Alphabet:	All remaining <b>sandhi</b> rules	229
Grammar:	Nouns in <b>u</b>	232
	The <b>karmadhāraya</b> and <b>tatpuruṣa</b>	
	compound	233
	Summary of compounds	235
Vocabulary:	Nouns in <b>u</b> , more adjectives	238

# 1

## LESSON ONE

Alphabet: The vowels in roman script

The first six vowels in **devanāgari**

Grammar: How a verb is formed

The singular ending for verbs

Vocabulary: The verbs **√gam** and **√prach**

The word for “and”

How to write simple sentences

**ALPHABET:**  
**VOWELS**

1. In Sanskrit, each letter represents one and only one sound (**varṇa**). In English, the letter “a” may indicate many sounds, but not so in Sanskrit. The alphabet is systematically arranged according to the structure of the mouth.
2. There are two basic divisions to the alphabet:
  - a. Vowels (**svara**, or sounded)
  - b. Consonants (**vyañjana**, or manifesting)
3. Vowels can be either short (**hrasva**) or long (**dīrgha**). Short vowels are held for one count (**mātrā**), and long vowels are held for two counts. Some vowels are called simple (**suddha**), and some are called complex (**samyukta**).

	SHORT	LONG
Simple	a i u ṛ ṝ	ā ī ū ṝ
		LONG
Complex	e o	ai au

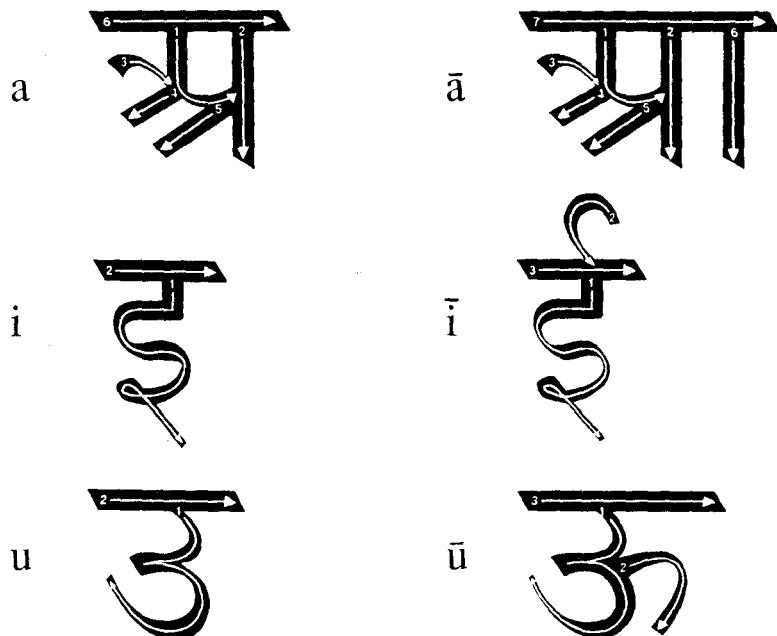
4. In Vedic Sanskrit, but rarely in Classical Sanskrit, there are also vowels held for three counts, called **pluta**, which are marked in **devanāgarī** and roman script by the short vowel followed by the numeral 3. For example: a3, or a times 3. You may also see it marked with a long vowel: ā3. **Pāṇini** (1.2.27) compares the three counts to the calling of a rooster: u ū u3.

5. Here is the pronunciation of the vowels:

<b>a</b>	like the first “a” in	America
<b>ā</b>	like the “a” in	father
<b>i</b>	like the “ea” in	heat
<b>ī</b>	like the “ee” in	beet
<b>u</b>	like the “u” in	suit
<b>ū</b>	like the “oo” in	pool
<b>r̥</b>	like the “ri” in	river (usually not rolled)
<b>ṛ̥</b>	like the “ri” in	reed
<b>l̥</b>	like the “lry” in	jewelry
<b>e</b>	like the “a” in	gate
<b>ai</b>	like the “ai” in	aisle
<b>o</b>	like the “o” in	pole
<b>au</b>	like the “ou” in	loud

6. The lines and dots are called “diacritics,” or “diacritical marks.” They are used because the Sanskrit alphabet has more letters than the English alphabet. Diacritics are combined with roman letters to represent new sounds.
7. A vowel by itself, or a consonant or group of consonants followed by a vowel, is called a syllable (**akṣara**).
-

8. Sanskrit is written in the **devanāgarī** script. The word **devanāgarī** means the “city (**nāgari**) of immortals (**deva**).” There are no capital letters.
9. The ideal way to learn the script will be to memorize approximately one letter each day, writing it 20 times or so, and putting it on a flash card (**devanāgarī** on the front and roman on the back). Continue to practice regularly with your flash cards throughout the course. Practice for small amounts of time, several times a day.
10. Here are six vowels in **devanāgarī**. The small numbers inside each letter indicate the order in drawing the various parts of the letter. In general, write left to right, top to bottom, writing the bar last. (Alternate forms for **a** and **ā** will be learned in Lesson Seven.)



**GRAMMAR:**  
**VERBS**

- Sanskrit roots are divided into ten classes (*gāṇa*) in order to form the present stem. We will study the four classes whose stems end in a. The root (*dhātu*), written with √ before it, forms a stem (*aṅga*), and the stem adds an ending (*tiñ*) to form a verb (*tiñanta*).

Root	√ <b>gam</b>	go
Stem	<b>gaccha</b>	go
Verb	<b>gacchati</b>	he, she, or it goes  _____  _
		Stem + Ending (ti)

- Verbs are in three persons (*puruṣa*): third (*prathama*, or first), second (*madhyama*, or middle), and first (*uttama*, or last). (Students in the West have learned these upside down.)

Third person	he, she, or it
Second person	you
First person	I

- The stem stays the same, but the ending changes for each person. This form is called the present indicative, because it is in the present tense, and it indicates. It is singular (*eka-vacana*).

Third person	<b>gacchati</b>	she goes, he goes ( <i>gaccha + ti</i> )
Second person	<b>gacchasi</b>	you go ( <i>gaccha + si</i> )
First person	<b>gacchāmi</b>	I go ( <i>gaccha + a + mi</i> )

**VOCABULARY**

1. Here is the vocabulary in Sanskrit and in English. Each verb appears in its root form, followed by the third person singular form. The stem can be found by removing the endings.

SANSKRIT	ENGLISH
√ <b>gam</b> (root) <b>gacchati</b> (3rd per. sing.)	he goes, she goes
<b>ca</b> (indeclinable*)	and (placed after the last word of the series, or after each word) (never first in a sentence or clause)
√ <b>prach</b> (root) <b>pr̥cchati</b> (3rd per. sing.)	he asks, she asks

\*Some words do not have endings, and so are called “indeclinable” (**avyaya**). Included as indeclinables are: prepositions, adverbs, particles, conjunctions (like **ca**), and interjections. A few nouns (like **svasti**) are also treated as indeclinables.

2. Here are some sample sentences:

<b>gacchāmi</b>	I go. (or) I am going.
<b>pr̥cchati gacchāmi ca</b>	He asks and I go.
<b>pr̥cchati ca gacchāmi ca</b>	He asks and I go.
<b>gacchasi ca pr̥cchasi ca</b>	You go and you ask. (or) You go and ask.

**EXERCISES**

1. Memorize the vowels and their order in roman script. Learn to pronounce them correctly.
2. Learn to write and recognize the first six vowels in **devanāgarī**.
3. Memorize the forms for the first, second, and third person singular verbs in the present indicative.
4. Memorize the vocabulary.
5. Translate the following sentences into English. Pronounce each sentence several times out loud, both before and after translating. Compare with the correct answers given on page 242.
  - a. pṛcchasi ca gacchati ca
  - b. gacchāmi pṛcchāmi ca
  - c. pṛcchati ca gacchati ca
  - d. gacchasi pṛcchāmi ca
  - e. pṛcchāmi gacchasi ca
  - f. gacchasi ca gacchati ca
  - g. pṛcchāmi gacchasi ca
  - h. pṛcchati ca gacchāmi ca
6. Translate the following sentences into Sanskrit:
  - a. I go and I ask.
  - b. You ask and he goes.
  - c. He asks and you go.
  - d. He goes and asks.
  - e. You ask.
  - f. I ask and you go.
  - g. I go and you go
  - h. He goes and you go.

---

# 2

## LESSON TWO

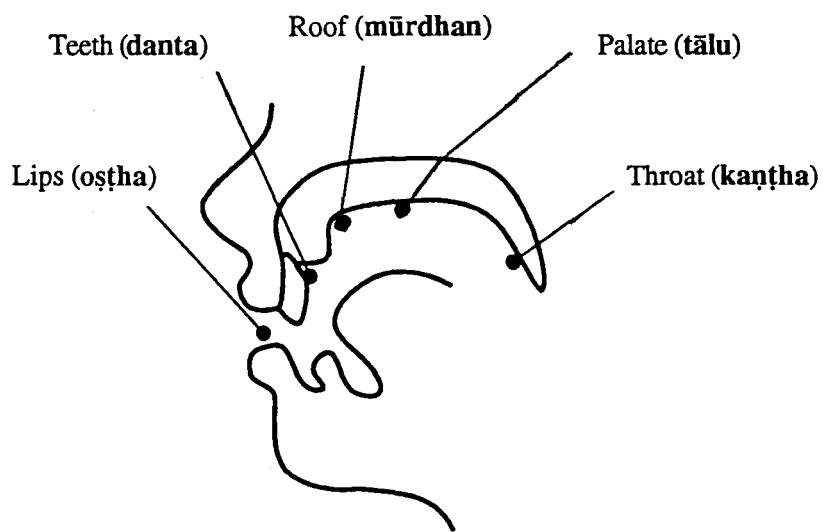
Alphabet: Most of the consonants and how they are organized  
The last seven vowels in **devanāgarī**

Grammar: Verbs in the dual

Vocabulary: More verbs  
The word for “where”

**ALPHABET:  
CONSONANTS**

- The first 25 consonants, called stops (*sparṣa*), are arranged according to five points of articulation (*sthāna*):



- Here are the five sets (*varga*), arranged according to point of articulation. For example, all the consonants in the velar row (*ka varga*), are pronounced in the throat. The labial row is pronounced at the lips. The *a* is added for the sake of pronunciation.

	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th
Velar (kaṇṭhya)	ka	kha	ga	gha	ña
Palatal (tālavya)	ca	cha	ja	jha	ña
Retroflex (mūrdhanya)	ṭa	ṭha	ḍa	ḍha	ṇa
Dental (dantya)	ta	tha	da	dha	na
Labial (oṣṭhya)	pa	pha	ba	bha	ma
	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
	Aspirated		Aspirated	Nasal	
				Voiced	

3. Each set of English letters represents one Sanskrit sound. For example, **gh** is one sound. It is the aspirated, voiced velar.
4. The sound **ka** is called **kakāra** (“ka” maker). The sound **ga** is called **gakāra** (“ga” maker), and so on. The only exception is that **ra** is not called **rakāra**, but just **ra** or **repha**, “snarl.” (In the next lesson we will learn **ra**.)
5. Each row is divided into five sounds: the first (**prathama**), the second (**dvitiya**), the third (**trtiya**), the fourth (**caturtha**), and the fifth (**pañcama**). For example, **ka**, **ca**, **ṭa**, **ta**, and **pa** are all first in their rows.
6. Some sounds are aspirated (**mahā-prāṇa**)—more breath is used in pronouncing these sounds. Some are unaspirated (**alpa-prāṇa**). Some are voiced (**ghośavat**)—the vocal chords are used in pronouncing these sounds. Some are unvoiced (**aghoṣa**). The **ñ**, **ń**, **n**, and **m** are called nasals (**anunāsika**).
7. Here is how the consonants are pronounced:

<b>k</b>	like the “k” in	skate
<b>kh</b>	like the “kh” in	bunkhouse
<b>g</b>	like the “g” in	go
<b>gh</b>	like the “gh” in	loghouse
<b>n</b>	like the “n” in	sing
<b>c</b>	like the “c” in	cello
<b>ch</b>	like the “ch” in	charm (using more breath)
<b>j</b>	like the “j” in	just
<b>jh</b>	like the “j” in	just (using more breath)
<b>ń</b>	like the “n” in	enjoyable

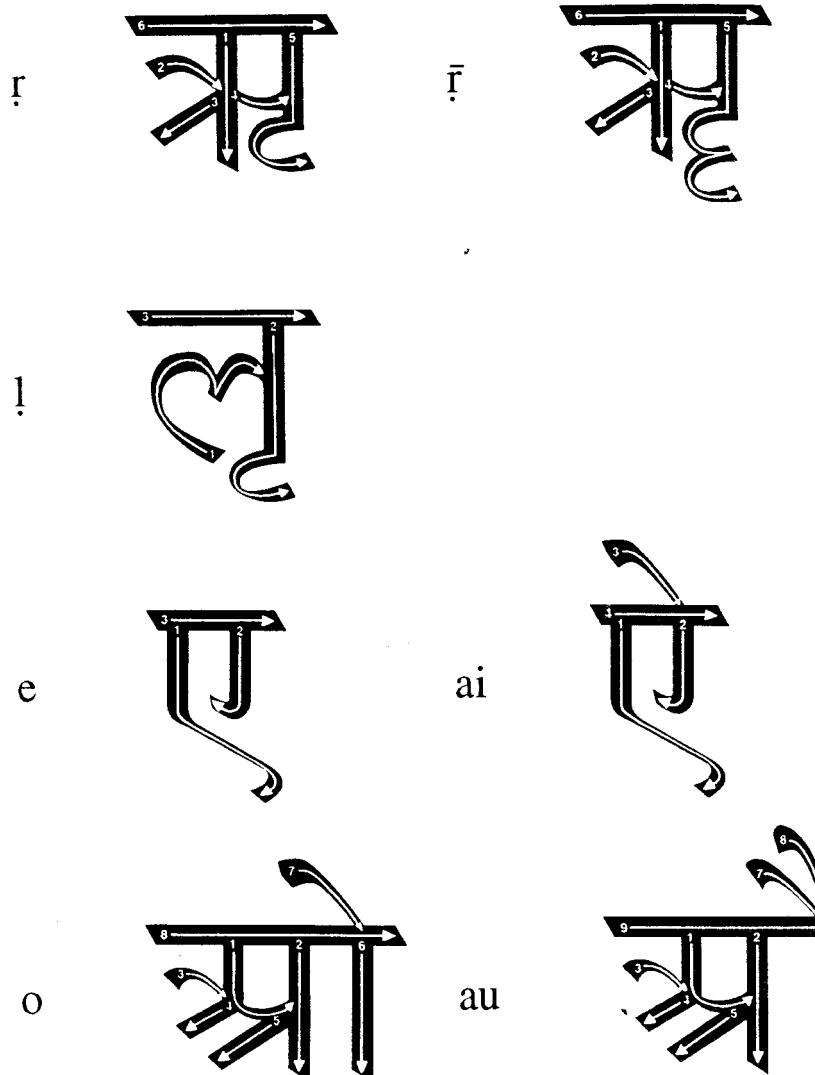
<b>t̪</b>	like the “t” in	stable (for this group the tongue is touching the hard palate, as in the diagram on page 9.)
<b>t̪h</b>	like the “t” in	table (using more breath)
<b>d̪</b>	like the “d” in	dynamic
<b>d̪h</b>	like the “dh” in	redhead (using more breath)
<b>n̪</b>	like the “n” in	gentle

In English, we normally pronounce “t” and “d” somewhere between these two groups (retroflex and dental).

<b>t</b>	like the “t” in	stable (tongue at base of teeth)
<b>th</b>	like the “t” in	table (using breath, tongue at base of teeth)
<b>d</b>	like the “d” in	dynamic (tongue at base of teeth)
<b>dh</b>	like the “dh” in	redhead (using breath, tongue at base of teeth)
<b>n</b>	like the “n” in	gentle (tongue at base of teeth)
<b>p</b>	like the “p” in	spin
<b>ph</b>	like the “ph” in	shepherd
<b>b</b>	like the “b” in	beautiful
<b>bh</b>	like the “bh” in	clubhouse
<b>m</b>	like the “m” in	mother

8. In Vedic Sanskrit, when **da** or **dha** have vowels on both sides, they may become **la** or **lha**. The example used is that when white has crimson on both sides, the white changes its color slightly. Therefore, when **da** has a vowel on both sides, it changes to **la**. For example, **agnim iḍe** is found in the **Rk Samhitā** as **agnim ilē**.

9. Here are the remaining vowels in devanāgarī:



**GRAMMAR:**  
**DUAL VERBS**

1. Unlike English, Sanskrit has dual verbs. The dual (**dvi-vacana**) is formed like this:

Third person    **gacchataḥ**        those two go  
                     (gaccha + tas)

Second person    **gacchathāḥ**        you two go  
                     (gaccha + thas)

First person      **gacchāvah**        we two go  
                     (gaccha + a + vas)

We will learn the pronunciation of **ḥ** in the next lesson. Note that the ending **tas** becomes **tāḥ** when it forms a verb. This change is because **sandhi** is applied. (See the following page for an introduction to **sandhi**.)

2. In English, interrogative words usually begin with “wh,” such as where, when, etc. In Sanskrit, interrogative words usually begin with **k**. The word for “where” is **kutra**. It is usually placed at the beginning of a sentence. The other words do not need to be rearranged to make a question out of the sentence. For example:

**kutra gacchati**  
                     Where is he going?

3. To translate **kutra gacchati** into English, first write “where” for **kutra** and then write “he goes” for **gacchati**. Literally it would then be translated as “Where he goes?” However, it is important to form correct English sentences. For “Where he goes?” you must write “Where is he going?” or “Where does he go?”

VOCABULARY	SANSKRIT	ENGLISH
	<b>kutra</b> (indeclinable)	where
	√ <b>bhū</b> (root) <b>bhavati</b> (3rd per. sing.)	he is, he becomes (you are, I am)
	√ <b>vas</b> (root) <b>vasati</b> (3rd per. sing.)	he lives
	√ <b>smṛ</b> (root) <b>smarati</b> (3rd per. sing.)	he remembers

**SANDHI**

Before doing the exercises, we will have an introduction to **sandhi** (*samdhī*), the rules for how sounds are combined. In English, we say “an apple” but “a pear.” The word “the” is often pronounced differently, depending upon the following word. For example, “the house” and “the other house.” Some sounds are modified according to their phonetic environment. In Sanskrit, many sounds make these same changes, and unlike English, all of these changes are written. The rules for these changes are called **sandhi**, which means “junction,” “putting together,” or “combination.” **Sandhi** is now an English word and appears in most English dictionaries. The Sanskrit word is *samdhī*.

The exercises in Lesson 1 are written the same even after **sandhi** rules have been applied. However, in Lesson 2 the sentences would be written differently if they were to appear in a Sanskrit text. At this point, however, you do not need to learn these rules. Just observe the sentences in parentheses, and notice that these sentences are written slightly differently with **sandhi**.

**EXERCISES**

1. Learn the five sets of consonants, their order, and their pronunciation. Learn to write the last seven vowels in **devanāgarī**.
2. Be able to identify each consonant by its classification. For example, the aspirated, voiced palatal is **jha**.
3. Learn the dual endings for verbs.
4. Learn the vocabulary.
5. Translate these sentences, using the summary sheet on page 17. Just observe the sentences in parentheses with **sandhi**. (See page 14.) Answers are given on pages 243 and 244.
  - a. **kutra vasāvah**  
(**kutra vasāvah**)
  - b. **bhavasi ca bhavāvah ca**  
(**bhavasi ca bhavāvaś ca**)
  - c. **vasāmi smarataḥ ca**  
(**vasāmi smarataś ca**)
  - d. **pṛcchathah ca smarati ca**  
(**pṛcchathaś ca smarati ca**)
  - e. **kutra gacchāvah**  
(**kutra gacchāvah**)
  - f. **kutra bhavāmi**  
(**kutra bhavāmi**)
  - g. **kutra gacchāmi**  
(**kutra gacchāmi**)

- h. **pṛcchāmi ca smarati ca**  
(*pṛcchāmi ca smarati ca*)
- i. **vasasi ca gacchāvah ca**  
(*vasasi ca gacchāvaś ca*)
- j. **kutra gacchasi**  
(*kutra gacchasi*)

6. Translate the following sentences into Sanskrit:

- a. Where are you two going?
- b. I live and those two live.
- c. We two ask and those two remember.
- d. You go and he goes.
- e. Where am I going?
- f. I am and you two are.
- g. Where are you? (Use the singular.)
- h. Where is he going?

<b>SUMMARY SHEET</b>	Third	<b>gacchati</b> (he, she goes)	<b>gacchataḥ</b> (they two go)
	Second	<b>gacchasi</b> (you go)	<b>gacchathāḥ</b> (you two go)
	First	<b>gacchāmi</b> (I go)	<b>gacchāvah</b> (we two go)

|\_\_\_\_\_| |\_\_\_\_\_|  
Singular      Dual

**VERBS**

<b>√gam</b>	<b>gacchati</b>	he goes, she goes
<b>√prach</b>	<b>pṛcchati</b>	he asks
<b>√bhū</b>	<b>bhavati</b>	he is
<b>√vas</b>	<b>vasati</b>	he lives
<b>√smṛ</b>	<b>smarati</b>	he remembers

**INDECLINABLES**

**kutra**      where

**ca**      and

# 3

## LESSON THREE

Alphabet:      The remaining letters in roman script  
                  The first ten consonants in **devanāgarī**

Grammar:      The plural  
                  The grammatical terms to describe a verb  
                  Accent

Vocabulary:    More verbs

**ALPHABET:  
THE REMAINING  
LETTERS**

1. The previous consonants are sometimes referred to as “stops,” because they stop the flow of air. They are formed by “complete contact” (*sprṣṭa*). The remaining letters are consonants, but they allow more flow of air.
2. There are four consonants, formed by “slight contact” (*iṣat-sprṣṭa*), called semi-vowels. They are voiced, but not aspirated: They are considered to be between vowels and consonants, and so are called **antahṣṭha**, or “in-between”:

**ya, ra, la, va**

3. The sibilants are formed by “half contact” (*ardha-sprṣṭa*). They are aspirated, but not voiced. They are called **ūṣman**, or “heated”:

**śa, ṣa, sa**

4. The aspirate (voiced, but sometimes classified as a sibilant) is:

**ha**

5. Here is how these sounds are pronounced:

<b>y</b>	like the “y” in	yes
<b>r</b>	like the “r” in	red
<b>l</b>	like the “l” in	law
<b>v</b>	like the “v” in	victory (but closer to a “w”)

<b>ś</b>	like the “sh” in	shine
<b>ṣ</b>	like the “c” in	efficient (similar to the <b>ś</b> )
<b>s</b>	like the “s” in	sweet
<b>h</b>	like the “h” in	hero

6. Two additional sounds are the **anusvāra** (**m̐**) and the **visarga** (**h̄**), which both follow vowels.
7. The **anusvāra** (**m̐**) causes the last portion of the vowel before it to be nasal (like the French word “bon”). The **anusvāra** changes its sound according to the following sound. It may sound like the nasal of the set to which the sound following it belongs. For example, **samkhyā** is pronounced similar to **saṅkhyā**. In the dictionary, the **anusvāra** is found in the same place as the nasal to which it refers. If the **anusvāra** comes before a semi-vowel or sibilant, it is found in the dictionary before **ka**.
8. The **visarga** (**h̄**), or **visarjanīya**, is an unvoiced breathing that occurs in many contexts instead of an **s** or **r**. In modern India it is often pronounced, at the end of a line, as an echo of the vowel before it. For example, after an **a** it would be a short **ha**. After an **i** it would be a short **hi**:

$$\begin{array}{ll} ah̄ & = ah^a \\ ih̄ & = ih^i \\ uh̄ & = uh^u \end{array}$$

The **jihvāmūliya** (**h̄**) is sometimes used in place of a **visarga** before **ka** or **kha**. The **upadhmāniya** (**h̄**) is sometimes used in place of a **visarga** before **pa** or **pha**. These letters, used more in Vedic Sanskrit, indicate a subtle difference in the breath before **ka** and **pa**, which is like breathing through the throat (**h̄**) or breathing through the lips (**h̄**).

9. We have now learned all the letters in their transliterated form (their roman letter equivalents). There are other ways of representing some letters. At times you may see:

śa	as	sha	śānti, shānti
r̥	as	ri	r̥k, rik
ñ	as	ñ	Śaṅkara, Śaṅkara
cha	as	chha	chandas, chhandas
ca	as	cha	candra, chandra

10. All the sounds can be classified according to the part of the mouth they come from:

Velar	a	ā	ka	kha	ga	gha	ñā	ha
Palatal	i	ī	e	ai	ca	cha	ja	jha
Retroflex	r̥	ṝ			ṭa	ṭha	ḍa	ḍha
Dental	l̥				ta	tha	da	dha
Labial	u	ū	o	au	pa	pha	ba	bha
					ma	ma	va	

The complex vowels are pronounced at two points of contact:

The sounds e (which can be said to be composed of a and i) and ai (composed of ā and i) are both velar and palatal. The sounds o (composed of a and u) and au (composed of ā and u) are both velar and labial. Also, the sound va is both dental and labial.

11. Here is the entire alphabet:

**VOWELS (svara)**

Simple (śuddha)	a	ā
	i	ī
	u	ū
	r̥	ṛ̥
	l̥	ṝ̥
Complex (saṃyukta)	e	ai
	o	au
Nasalization (anusvāra)		m̥
Aspiration (visarga)		h̥

**CONSONANTS (vyañjana)**

Velar (kaṇṭhya)	ka	kha	ga	gha	ṅa
Palatal (tālavya)	ca	cha	ja	jha	ñā
Retroflex (mūrdhanya)ṭa	ṭha	ḍa	ḍha	ṇa	
Dental (dantya)	ta	tha	da	dha	na
Labial (oṣṭhya)	pa	pha	ba	bha	ma
Semi-vowels (antaḥstha)	ya	ra	la	va	
Sibilants (ūṣman)	śa	ṣa	sa	ha	

13. Here are the first ten consonants in devanāgarī script. Each symbol includes the sound **a**. For example, **ka** and not just **k** is meant by the first symbol.

The Devanagari characters shown are **क**, **ख**, **ग**, **ঘ**, and **ন**. Each character has three stroke order arrows: 1 (top horizontal), 2 (inner vertical), and 3 (outer vertical). The letter **ঘ** also features a small diamond-shaped dot above the second stroke.

ka        kha        ga        gha        na

The Devanagari characters shown are **চ**, **ছ**, **জ**, **ঝ**, and **ঢ**. Each character has four stroke order arrows: 1 (top horizontal), 2 (inner vertical), 3 (outer vertical), and 4 (inner horizontal). The letters **ঝ** and **ঢ** also feature small circles at the junction of the second and third strokes.

ca        cha        ja        jha        ña

**GRAMMAR:**  
**THE PLURAL**

1. Here is the plural (*bahu-vacana*) for the verb  $\sqrt{gam}$ :

Third person	gacchanti (gaccha - a + anti)	they (all) go
Second person	gacchatha (gaccha + tha)	you (all) go
First person	gacchāmaḥ (gaccha + a + mas)	we (all) go

Notice that the third person is *gaccha* minus *a* plus *anti*.

2. Now we have the complete conjugation (or verbal paradigm) for the present indicative (*lat*):

gacchati	gacchataḥ	gacchanti
gacchasi	gacchathāḥ	gacchatha
gacchāmi	gacchāvāḥ	gacchāmaḥ

he goes	those two go	they all go
you go	you two go	you all go
I go	we both go	we all go
Singular	Dual	Plural

Students of Sanskrit in India memorize these conjugations horizontally. Students in Europe and America have learned them vertically. It would be better to follow the system of India and memorize horizontally (for both verbs and nouns).

3. Here are the standard endings:

3rd	ti	tas	anti
2nd	si	thas	tha
1st	mi	vas	mas
	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
	Singular	Dual	Plural

Note that when a word is formed, final **s** becomes **h** due to sandhi.

## GRAMMATICAL TERMS

4. Verbs can be classified in four basic ways: tense/mood, voice, person, and number. This is similar to, but slightly different from, how verbs are classified in English. Here is a simplified overview:

**Tense/Mood:** The tenses and moods are grouped together in the ten **lakāra**, or “l” sounds, because they are each abbreviated by Pāṇini with a word beginning with the letter “l.” We have learned the present indicative (abbreviated as **lat**). Other tense/moods are the perfect (**lit**), the periphrastic future (**lut**), the simple future (**lṛt**), the subjunctive (**let**), the imperative (**lot**), the imperfect (**lañ**), the optative or potential (**liñ**), the aorist (**luñ**), and the conditional (**lrñ**).

**Voice (upagraha):** We have learned the active voice (**parasmaipada**), which takes active endings. In Lesson 9 we will learn the middle voice (**ātmanepada**), which takes middle endings. Usually, when the fruit of an action comes back to the agent (**ātman**), the **ātmanepada** is used. When the fruit of an action goes to another person (**para**), the **parasmaipada** is used (although this distinction does not seem to be strictly followed in the literature). Some roots are conjugated in both voices (**ubhayapada**) and some usually in one voice. All the verbs we have learned so far are usually seen in the active voice.

Person: We have learned the three persons (*puruṣa*):

Third (prathama)	he, she, or it
Second (madhyama)	you
First (uttama)	I

Number: We have learned the three numbers (*vacana*):

Singular (eka)
Dual (dvi)
Plural (bahu)

5. Each verb may be classified according to these categories. For example, *gacchati* (he goes), is present indicative, active, third person, singular.
6. Using abbreviations, called parsing codes, we could identify *gacchati* as: pres. indic. act. 3rd per. sing.—present indicative, active, third person, singular. (This isn't as hard as it may seem, since all verbs so far are present indicative and active. All we need to determine is the person and number.)
7. Here are some examples:

<i>gacchāmi</i>	I go	pres. indic. act. 1st per. sing.
<i>bhavanti</i>	they are	pres. indic. act. 3rd per. pl.
<i>pr̥cchāvah</i>	we both ask	pres. indic. act. 1st per. dual

**ACCENT**

1. Accent consists of higher and lower tones (**svara**). There is a raised tone (**udātta**), an unraised tone (**anudātta**), and a “moving” tone (**svarita**). In the **Rk Saṃhitā** the **udātta** is unmarked, the **anudātta** is marked by a low horizontal bar, and the **svarita** is marked by a high vertical bar. For example:

अग्निमीळे पुरोहितं युजस्य देवमृत्विजम्

In classical Sanskrit texts, the accents are not marked.

2. In most Sanskrit dictionaries, a mark is placed over the **udātta** for Vedic words only. For example:

Mánu  
mádhu  
rátna

3. **Pāṇini** does not give rules for stress accent.
4. For now, an important rule for proper pronunciation is to maintain a clear distinction between the short and long vowels (discussed on pages 2 and 3).

**VOCABULARY:**  
**MORE VERBS**

SANSKRIT

ENGLISH

na

not (placed before the verb)

√vad (root) vadati (3rd per. sing.) he says, he speaks

√sthā (root) tiṣṭhati (3rd per. sing.) he stands

All vocabulary is given in the order of the Sanskrit alphabet.

An additional rule you'll need to know to do these exercises is that if a member in a series has more than one word (such as na gacchati), ca usually comes after the first word. For example:

gacchāmi na ca gacchati

I go and she does not go.

You may also see ca at the end of a clause (less often). For example:

gacchāmi na gacchati ca

I go and she does not go.

**EXERCISES**

1. Learn the pronunciation and order of the semi-vowels, sibilants, anusvāra, and visarga. Learn the first ten consonants in devanāgarī.
2. Write, in correct order, the entire alphabet (in transliteration, or roman script).
3. Conjugate each verb we have learned, and learn the nine endings.
4. Be able to give the parsing code for each form we have learned.

5. Translate the following sentences into English, using the summary sheet on page 30. Underneath each sentence is the sentence with **sandhi**. Just observe the sentence with the **sandhi**. (Answers are on p. 245.)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a. vadati na ca vadāmi<br>(vadati na ca vadāmi)      | e. bhavathaḥ ca vasathaḥ ca<br>(bhavathaś ca vasathaś ca)       |
| b. vadathaḥ smarataḥ ca<br>(vadathaḥ smarataś ca)    | f. kutra bhavasi<br>(kutra bhavasi)                             |
| c. na gacchanti<br>(na gacchanti)                    | g. tiṣṭhanti gacchanti ca<br>(tiṣṭhanti gacchanti ca)           |
| d. tiṣṭhāmaḥ gacchāmaḥ ca<br>(tiṣṭhāmo gacchāmaś ca) | h. na ca pṛcchati na ca vadati<br>(na ca pṛcchati na ca vadati) |

6. Translate these sentences into Sanskrit. Unless “two” is used, it will be understood that the plural form is intended.

- |                            |                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| a. Where are they going?   | e. Where do those two live? |
| b. We do not speak.        | f. We are not going.        |
| c. He asks and they speak. | g. I ask and they remember. |
| d. Where are we standing?  | h. Where are we?            |

**SUMMARY SHEET**

Third	<b>gacchati</b> (he, she goes)	<b>gacchataḥ</b> (they two go)	<b>gacchanti</b> (they all go)
Second	<b>gacchasi</b> (you go)	<b>gacchathāḥ</b> (you two go)	<b>gacchatha</b> (you all go)
First	<b>gacchāmi</b> (I go)	<b>gacchāvah</b> (we two go)	<b>gacchāmāḥ</b> (we all go)
	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
	Singular	Dual	Plural

**VERBS**

√ <b>gam</b>	<b>gacchati</b>	he goes
√ <b>prach</b>	<b>pṛcchati</b>	he asks
√ <b>bhū</b>	<b>bhavati</b>	he is
√ <b>vad</b>	<b>vadati</b>	he speaks, he says
√ <b>vas</b>	<b>vasati</b>	he lives
√ <b>sthā</b>	<b>tisṭhati</b>	he stands
√ <b>smṛ</b>	<b>smarati</b>	he remembers

**INDECLINABLES**

<b>kutra</b>	where
<b>ca</b>	and
<b>na</b>	not

# 4

## LESSON FOUR

Alphabet: Ten more consonants in devanāgarī

Grammar: The nominative case  
The accusative case

Vocabulary: Nouns that end in short a

## ALPHABET

1. Here are ten more consonants to learn:

The first five characters shown are ত, ঠ, দ, ঠ, and ণ. Each character has stroke order arrows indicating the direction of writing: 1 for the main vertical stroke, 2 for the top horizontal stroke, and 3 for the bottom horizontal stroke.

তা      ঠা      দা      ঠা      ণা

The next five characters shown are ত, থ, দ, ধ, and ন. Each character has stroke order arrows indicating the direction of writing: 1 for the main vertical stroke, 2 for the top horizontal stroke, and 3 for the bottom horizontal stroke.

তা      থা      দা      ধা      না

2. There are two additional consonants, লা and লহা. (See p. 11.)

The লা is written as:

The লহা is written as:

**GRAMMAR:**  
**NOUNS**

1. Sanskrit nouns are formed in a similar way as verbs—the root (**dhātu**) forms a stem (**prātipadika**), and endings (**sup**) are added to form a noun (**subanta**). Nouns are in various cases (**vibhakti**, division), depending upon their role in the sentence.
2. We will learn two cases. The nominative (**prathamā**) is used for naming the subject, as in “Rāma goes.” The nominative case is also used for a predicate nominative identified with the subject, as in “Rāma is the king.” In India, words are normally cited independently in the nominative, or “naming” case.

The accusative (**dvitiyā**) is the direct object. The accusative is also the object of motion, as in “He goes to the city.”

3. For example, in the sentence, “The man goes to the horse,” the word “man” would be in the nominative and the word “horse” would be in the accusative:

The man goes to the horse.  
 (nominative) (accusative)

4. Here is the formation of masculine nouns whose stems end in **a**:

Stem: **nara** (masculine) man

Nominative	<b>narah</b>	<b>narau</b>	<b>narāḥ</b>
Accusative	<b>naram</b> _____	<b>narau</b> _____	<b>narān</b> _____

Singular                      Dual                      Plural  
 (eka-vacana)    (dvi-vacana)    (bahu-vacana)

Notice that **narāḥ** is formed by **nara + s**. The **s** changes to **ḥ** because of sandhi.

5. The verb and subject must agree in number in both English and Sanskrit. For example, if the subject is singular, then the verb must also be singular:

The man goes to the horse. (Subject and verb are singular.)

The men go to the horse. (Subject and verb are plural.)

6. The direct object need not agree with either the subject or verb. We are learning the rules for the agent construction (**kartari prayoga**), which is like an active construction. Here the agent of action (**kartṛ**) is in the nominative, and the object of action (**karman**) is in the accusative.
7. A noun in apposition, such as “Rāma, the boy,” is put in the same case as the noun it follows. For example, in the sentence “She speaks to Rāma, the boy,” both “Rāma” and “boy” are accusative.
8. The normal word order is:

subject	direct object	verb
naraḥ	aśvam	gacchati (without sandhi)
(naro	'śvam	gacchati) (with sandhi)
the man	to the horse	goes

Because **naraḥ** ends in **ḥ**, we know that it is the man who is doing the going and not the horse. While English relies on the order of the words, Sanskrit relies more on the word endings for meaning.

9. Articles, such as “the” or “a,” must be put in the English translation as needed.

VOCABULARY	SANSKRIT	ENGLISH
	aśvah (masculine)	horse
	gajah (masculine)	elephant
	narah (masculine)	man
	putrah (masculine)	son
	mṛgah (masculine)	deer
	rāmah (masculine)	Rāma
	vā (indeclinable)	or (used like ca) (never first in sentence or clause)

Nouns will be cited in the nominative case because traditionally that case is used for citing words independently.

Nouns, as well as verbs, may be connected with **ca** and **vā**. When two nominatives are connected with **vā**, the verb agrees with the nominative closest to it, as in English. For example:

aśvah gajah vā gacchanti (without sandhi)

(aśvo gajā vā gacchanti) (with sandhi)

The horse or the elephants go.

“He goes” is gacchati. “The man, he goes” is **narah gacchati** (with sandhi, naro gacchati). However, when there is a subject, the “he” is dropped. Therefore, **narah gacchati** (**naro gacchati**) would be translated as “The man goes.” Always write English sentences using the rules of correct English.

**EXERCISES**

1. Continue to learn the consonants in **devanāgarī**.
2. Memorize the singular, dual, and plural forms for the masculine nouns ending with a short **a** (like **nara**) in the nominative and accusative. These should be learned horizontally.
3. Learn the vocabulary and continue reviewing all vocabulary from past lessons.
4. Translate the following sentences into English, using the summary sheet. Translate the verb first, then the nominative, and then the accusative, if any. Continue to observe the **sandhi**.
  - a. **narāḥ mṛgām smaranti**  
(**narā mṛgām smarantī**)
  - b. **rāmaḥ aśvau gacchati**  
(**rāmo 'śvau gacchati**)
  - c. **kutra gajāḥ vasanti**  
(**kutra gajā vasanti**)
  - d. **narau rāmam vadataḥ**  
(**narau rāmaṁ vadataḥ**)
  - e. **putraḥ smarati pṛcchati vā**  
(**putraḥ smarati pṛcchati vā**)
  - f. **rāmaḥ mṛgām gacchati**  
(**rāmo mṛgām gacchati**)

g. **aśvau na vadataḥ**  
(*aśvau na vadataḥ*)

h. **rāmaḥ putram vadati**  
(*rāmaḥ putram vadati*)

5. Translate the following sentences into Sanskrit:

- a. The men speak to the deer. (one deer)
- b. Rāma speaks to the horses.
- c. The son goes to the horse and stands.
- d. Elephants do not remember.
- e. Where are the horses standing?
- f. Where is the elephant?
- g. Rāma speaks and the son remembers.
- h. They stand or they go.
- i. Where does Rāma stand?
- j. Rāma or the son goes.
- k. Rāma and the son go.

6. Translate the following sentences into English:

- a. **narau putram vadataḥ**  
(*narau putram vadataḥ*)
- b. **kutra aśvāḥ ca gajāḥ ca gacchanti**  
(*kutrāśvāś ca gajāś ca gacchanti*)
- c. **aśvah mṛgah vā gacchatī**  
(*aśvo mṛgo vā gacchatī*)
- d. **rāmaḥ putrau vadati**  
(*rāmah putrau vadati*)
- e. **mṛgah aśvah gajah ca gacchanti**  
(*mṛgo 'śvo gajaś ca gacchanti*)
- f. **putrāḥ mṛgān na smaranti**  
(*putrā mṛgān na smaranti*)
- g. **kutra narau vasataḥ**  
(*kutra narau vasataḥ*)
- h. **rāmam prechāmi**  
(*rāmam pṛechāmi*)

i. **narau putrān na vadataḥ**  
(**narau putrān na vadataḥ**)

j. **kutra mṛgāḥ bhavanti**  
(**kutra mṛgā bhavanti**)

7. Translate the following sentences into Sanskrit:

- a. Where is Rāma going?
- b. Rāma is going to the horse.
- c. The son does not speak to the horses.
- d. The two elephants remember the man.
- e. Where do the two deer live?
- f. You go to the horse.
- g. Where are we standing?
- h. The son goes to the horses and the elephants.
- i. You are all speaking to the elephant.
- j. The elephant does not remember.

## SUMMARY SHEET

## VERBS

Third	gacchati (he, she goes)	gacchataḥ (they two go)	gacchanti (they all go)
Second	gacchasi (you go)	gacchathaḥ (you two go)	gacchatha (you all go)
First	gacchāmi (I go)	gacchāvah (we two go)	gacchāmah (we all go)
	Singular	Dual	Plural

√gam	gacchati	he goes
√prach	prechati	he asks
√bhū	bhavati	he is
√vad	vadati	he speaks, he says
√vas	vasati	he lives
√sthā	tiṣṭhati	he stands
√smṛ	smarati	he remembers

## NOUNS

aśvah horse  
gajah elephant

narah man

putrah son

mrgah deer

rāmah Rāma

## INDECLINABLES

kutra where

ca and

na not

vā or

Nominative (subject)	narah	narau	narāḥ
Accusative (object)	naram	narau	narān

Singular      Dual      Plural

# 5

## LESSON FIVE

Alphabet: The rest of the alphabet in **devanāgari**

Grammar: The instrumental and dative cases

Vocabulary: More nouns that end in short a

**ALPHABET**

1. Here are the last five stops:

ਪ ਫ ਕ ਭ ਮ

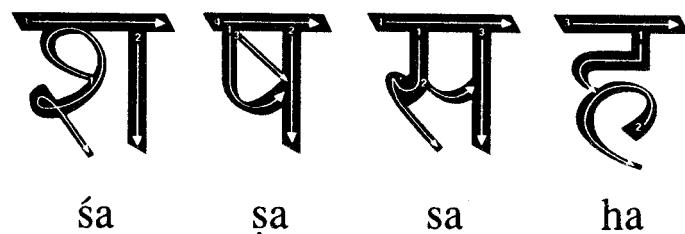
pa      pha      ba      bha      ma

2. Here are the semi-vowels:

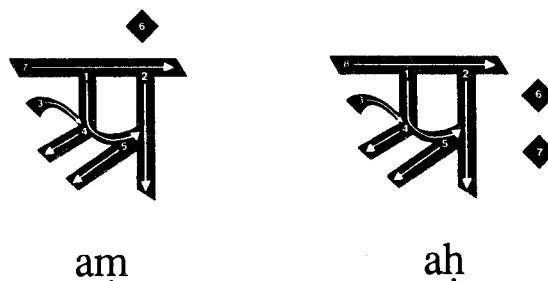
ਯ ਰ ਲ ਵ

ya      ra      la      va

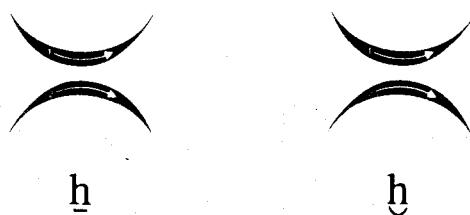
3. Here are the sibilants and aspirate:



4. Here is the **anusvāra** and **visarga** following a:



5. Here are the **jihvāmūliya** (ḥ) and **upadhmāniya** (ḥ). They are usually written the same way. If followed by **ka** or **kha**, it is a **jihvāmūliya**. If followed by **pa** or **pha**, it is an **upadhmāniya**:



The **upadhmāniya** (ḥ) may appear as ḫ

6. Here is the entire alphabet in devanāgarī script:

Vowels	अ a	आ ā			
	इ i	ई ī			
	उ u	ऊ ū			
	ऋ r	ॠ ṛ			
	ए e	ऐ ai			
	ओ o	औ au			
	ऋं am (ṁ)	ऋः ah (ḥ)			
Velar	क ka	ख kha	ग ga	घ gha	ঙ űna
Palatal	च ca	ছ cha	জ ja	ঝ jha	ঢ űna
Retroflex	ট ṭa	ঠ ṭha	ଡ ḍa	ঢ ḍha	ণ űna
Dental	ত ta	থ tha	দ da	ধ dha	ন na
Labial	প pa	ফ pha	ব ba	ভ bha	ম ma
Semi-vowels	য ya	ৰ ra	ল la	ৰ va	
Sibilants	শ ſa	ষ ſa	স sa	হ ha	

**GRAMMAR:**  
**INSTRUMENTAL**  
**AND DATIVE**

1. We will now learn two new cases: the instrumental (*tr̥tiyā*) and the dative (*caturthī*).
2. The instrumental is used for accompaniment. For example:

**gajena saha rāmāḥ gacchati** (without sandhi)  
 (**gajena saha rāmo gacchati**) (with sandhi)  
 Rāma goes with the elephant.  
 (instrumental)

The word **saha**, “together,” is sometimes used after the instrumental to indicate accompaniment.

3. The instrumental is also used to express instrumentality, or “by means of.” (Although this usage is derived from the first, it is used more frequently.) For example:

I write with a pen.  
 (instrumental)

4. The dative is used for the indirect object. It shows “purpose.” For example:

**rāmāḥ putrāya aśvam gacchati** (without sandhi)  
 (**rāmāḥ putrāyāśvam gacchati**) (with sandhi)  
 Rāma goes to the horse for the son.  
 (dative)

**rāmāḥ putrāya pustakam paṭhati** (without sandhi)  
 (**rāmāḥ putrāyā pustakam paṭhati**) (with sandhi)  
 Rāma reads the book to the son.  
 (dative)

5. Here is how they are formed:

Stem: **nara** (masculine) man

Instrumental	<b>nareṇa*</b>	<b>narābhyām</b>	<b>naraiḥ</b>
Dative	<b>narāya</b>	<b>narābhyām</b>	<b>narebhyah</b>
	_____	_____	_____
Singular		Dual	Plural

\*“with the elephant” is **gajena** (See below.)

6. We will learn the following **sandhi** rule in more detail in Lesson 11. For now, when a word contains an **r** or **ṛ**, it often changes the following **n** to **ṇ**. For example: **nareṇa**, **putreṇa**, **mṛgena**, **rāmena**. But **aśvena**, **gajena**.
7. The word order is not rigid in Sanskrit. Usually the instrumental goes near the word most closely associated with it, and the dative goes before the verb. (More will be said about word order later.)
8. The verbs **vadati** (he says) and **pr̥cchati** (he asks) often take a “double accusative”: the object talked about and the person addressed. Usually the person addressed is placed closer to the verb. The context will give you the correct meaning. For example:

**rāmaḥ mṛgam putram vadati** (without **sandhi**)  
**(rāmo mṛgam putram vadati)** (with **sandhi**)  
 Rāma speaks to the son about the deer.

VOCABULARY	SANSKRIT	ENGLISH
	<b>tatra</b> (indeclinable)	there
	<b>nṛpah</b> (mas.)	king
	<b>bālah</b> (mas.)	boy
	<b>vīrah</b> (mas.)	hero
	<b>saha</b> (indeclinable)	with, together (sometimes used after the instrumental as a marker of accompaniment)

Remember that word order is less rigid in Sanskrit than in English. Even more than English, words can be placed in several different orders and still be correct.

**EXERCISES**

1. Learn the alphabet in **devanāgari**.
2. Learn the forms for the instrumental and dative. By now you have learned four cases.
3. Learn the vocabulary and keep up with all past vocabulary.
4. Translate the following sentences. (Remember that more than one word order will still be correct in Sanskrit as well as English.)
  - a. **kutra vīrāḥ tiṣṭhanti**  
(*kutra vīrāḥ tiṣṭhanti*)
  - b. **bālau gajena saha tatra bhavataḥ**  
(*bālau gajena saha tatra bhavataḥ*)
  - c. **nṛpāḥ aśvam gacchati**  
(*nṛpo 'śvam gacchati*)
  - d. **aśvena saha vīraḥ nṛpān gacchati**  
(*aśvena saha vīro nṛpān gacchati*)
  - e. **mṛgeṇa saha rāmaḥ vasati**  
(*mṛgeṇa saha rāmo vasati*)
  - f. **gajaiḥ saha bālāḥ gacchanti**  
(*gajaiḥ saha bālā gacchanti*)
  - g. **narāḥ putram vadanti**  
(*narāḥ putram vadanti*)

h. *vīrāḥ mṛgān rāmam pṛechanti* (same as 5b. below)  
(*vīrā mṛgān rāmam pṛechanti*)

i. *tatra bālah nṛpāya gacchati*  
(*tatra bālo nṛpāya gacchati*)

5. Translate the following sentences into Sanskrit:

a. The boys go to the horses.

b. The son asks the king about the deer. (double accusative)

c. The king remembers the man.

d. The hero lives with the son.

e. The boy asks the king and the king remembers.

f. There are no elephants with the son.

g. Where does Rāma live?

h. The king or the hero speaks to the boy.

i. The hero goes for the boy.

j. The elephants are there with the horses.

k. I remember the king.

l. You are going there with the boy.

6. Translate the following sentences into English:

- a. aśvaiḥ saha vīraḥ gacchati  
(aśvaiḥ saha vīro gacchati)
- b. tatra nṛpāya narāḥ gacchanti  
(tatra nṛpāya narā gacchanti)
- c. vīrau tiṣṭhataḥ vadataḥ ca  
(vīrau tiṣṭhato vadatas ca)
- d. mṛgāḥ tatra vasanti  
(mṛgās tatra vasanti)
- e. kutra bālābhyaṁ saha nṛpaḥ gacchati  
(kutra bālābhyaṁ saha nṛpo gacchati)
- f. rāmaḥ aśvam putram pṛcchati  
(rāmo 'śvam putram pṛcchati)
- g. tatra gajāḥ na tiṣṭhanti  
(tatra gajā na tiṣṭhanti)
- h. vīraḥ nṛpam bālam vadati  
(vīro nṛpam bālam vadati)
- i. mṛgaiḥ aśvaiḥ ca saha gajāḥ vasati  
(mṛgair aśvaiś ca saha gajo vasati)
- j. kutra tiṣṭhāmaḥ  
(kutra tiṣṭhāmah)

7. Translate the following sentences into Sanskrit:

- a. The king lives there with the two boys.
- b. Where are you going with the elephants?
- c. The man goes there for the horse.
- d. The boy does not remember the king.
- e. I am speaking to the king about the two elephants.
- f. The king goes to the horse for the son.
- g. Where are we standing?
- h. The man asks the boy about the horse.
- i. Rāma goes there for the man.
- j. Where are all the deer?

## SUMMARY SHEET      VERBS

Third	<b>gacchati</b> (he, she goes)	<b>gacchataḥ</b> (they two go)	<b>gacchanti</b> (they all go)
Second	<b>gacchasi</b> (you go)	<b>gacchathahāḥ</b> (you two go)	<b>gacchatha</b> (you all go)
First	<b>gacchāmi</b> (I go)	<b>gacchāvah</b> (we two go)	<b>gacchāmaḥ</b> (we all go)
	Singular	Dual	Plural

<b>√gam</b>	<b>gacchati</b>	he goes
<b>√prach</b>	<b>pṛcchati</b>	he asks
<b>√bhū</b>	<b>bhavati</b>	he is
<b>√vad</b>	<b>vadati</b>	he speaks, he says
<b>√vas</b>	<b>vasati</b>	he lives
<b>√sthā</b>	<b>tiṣṭhati</b>	he stands
<b>√smṛ</b>	<b>smarati</b>	he remembers

## NOUNS

		Nominative (subject)	narah	narau	narāḥ
aśvah	horse				
gajah	elephant	Accusative (object)	naram	narau	narān
narah	man	Instrumental (with)	nareṇa*	narābhyaṁ	naraiḥ
nṛpah	king				
putrah	son	Dative (for)		narāya	narābhyaṁ
bālah	boy			Singular	Dual
					Plural
mrgah	deer			*gajena, bālena (See page 46.)	
rāmah	Rāma				
vīrah	hero				

## INDECLINABLES

kutra	where
ca	and
tatra	there
na	not
vā	or
saha	with, together (used after instrumental)

# 6

## LESSON SIX

Alphabet: How vowels are formed when they follow consonants

Grammar: The ablative and the genitive  
The use of *iti*

Vocabulary: More nouns in **a**

**ALPHABET:**  
**VOWELS AFTER**  
**CONSONANTS**

1. Words are formed by putting letters together. The vowel characters learned so far are used only when they are the first letter of a word. For example, eka (one) is written:

एक eka

2. A consonant without a vowel following it is written with a short stroke (virāma) beneath it. For example:

क ka प pa

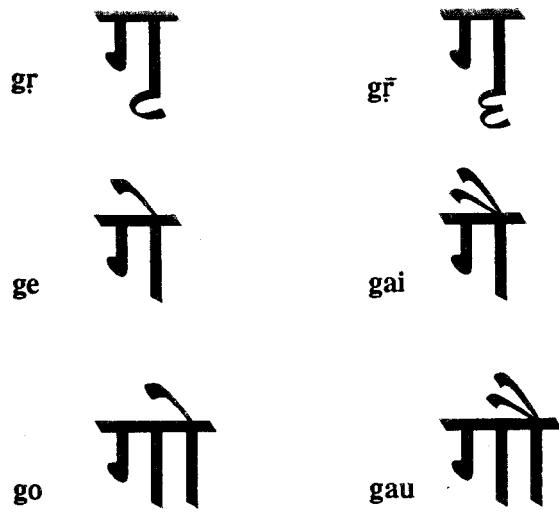
क् k प् p

3. When a vowel follows a consonant, the vowel is written in contracted form. The a is replaced by other vowels. Here are the vowel forms:

ga ग gā गा

gi गि gī गी

gu गु gū गू



4. Note that the sign for the **i** is written before the consonant, even though the **i** is sounded after the consonant. When written by hand, the curved line on top should touch the vertical line of the consonant. For example:

गि

Often, due to typesetting, the **i** will not touch at all. For example:

गि

5. These vowel signs may follow all consonants, including the semi-vowels, sibilants, and aspirate. For example:

च	चा	चि	ची	चु	चू	चृ	चॄ
ca	cā	ci	cī	cu	cū	cṛ	cṝ
चे	चै	चो	चौ				
ce	cai	co	cau				
ज	जा	जि	जी	जु	जू	जृ	जॄ
ja	jā	ji	jī	ju	jū	jṛ	jṝ
जे	जै	जो	जौ				
je	jai	jo	jau				

6. Sometimes these signs are put in different places. For example:

ru is written: रु

rū is written: रू

hṛ is written: हृ

We will learn more of these forms in the next lesson.

7. Here are more examples of how words are formed by putting letters together:

गज	वीर	वसति
gaja	vīra	vasati

## **GRAMMAR: ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE**

1. Now we will learn the ablative (*pañcamī*) and genitive (*śaṣṭhī*) cases (*vibhakti*).
  2. The ablative is used for origin or source. It usually means “from.” It is also used for comparison. For example:

**gajat āgacchati**  
**(gajād āgacchati)**  
He comes from the elephant.  
(ablative)

3. The genitive is used for possession. For example:

4. The genitive is always used in relation to the noun which follows it.  
For example:

rāmasya putraḥ the son of Rāma (or Rāma's son)  
(rāmasya putrah)

**amṛtasya putrāḥ** sons of immortality  
**(amrtasya putrāḥ)**

5. The genitive is sometimes used as a substitute for other cases, such as the dative, instrumental, ablative, and locative.

6. Here is the formation of the ablative and genitive:

Stem: **nara** (masculine) man

Ablative	<b>narāt</b>	<b>narābhyaṁ</b>	<b>narebhyaḥ</b>
Genitive	<b>narasya</b>	<b>narayoh</b>	<b>narānām*</b>
	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
	Singular	Dual	Plural

\*gajānām, bālānām (See page 46.)

ITI

7. Now we will learn the use of **iti**. This important particle is used at the end of a quotation. For example:

aśvah gacchati iti rāmaḥ vadati  
 (aśvo gacchatīti rāmo vadati)  
 “The horse goes,” says Rāma.

Notice that **iti** is a convenient point to break the sentence down into smaller, more manageable parts.

8. When translating from English to Sanskrit, indirect quotations must first be turned into direct quotations before **iti** can be used. For example:

He says that he is going. (indirect quotation)  
 “I am going,” he says. (direct quotation)  
**gacchāmi** iti vadati  
 (gacchāmīti vadati)

Notice that the change from an indirect quotation to a direct quotation changes the clause from “he is going” to “I am going.”

VOCABULARY	SANSKRIT	ENGLISH
	<b>atra</b> (indeclinable)	here
	<b>ā + √gam</b> (root) <b>āgacchati</b> *	he comes
	<b>iti</b> (indeclinable)	indicates the end of a quotation
	<b>grāmaḥ</b> (mas.)	village

\*Note that **ā** is a verb prefix. It changes the meaning of **gacchati** from “he goes” to “he comes.”

**EXERCISES**

1. Learn to recognize and write the **devanāgarī** for vowels that follow consonants.

2. Learn the forms for the ablative and genitive.

3. Write the following words in **devanāgarī**:

- |                  |                    |                  |
|------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| a. <b>iti</b>    | g. <b>bhavāvah</b> | m. <b>r̥ṣi</b>   |
| b. <b>nara</b>   | h. <b>vadasi</b>   | n. <b>devatā</b> |
| c. <b>rāma</b>   | i. <b>nṛpaḥ</b>    | o. <b>guṇa</b>   |
| d. <b>gaja</b>   | j. <b>na</b>       | p. <b>jaya</b>   |
| e. <b>vīra</b>   | k. <b>vā</b>       | q. <b>guru</b>   |
| f. <b>vasati</b> | l. <b>ca</b>       | r. <b>deva</b>   |

4. Translate the following sentences into English, using the summary sheet. Remember to read each sentence out loud several times.

a. **bālasya gajah grāmam gacchati**  
**(bālasya gajo grāmam gacchati)**

b. **rāmasya putrah aśvam gacchati**  
**(rāmasya putro 'śvam gacchati)**

c. **atra aśvah bhavati iti nṛpaḥ vadati**  
**(atrāśvo bhavatīti nṛpo vadati)**

d. **grāmāt putrah āgacchati**  
**(grāmāt putra āgacchati)**

- e. **kutra gajāḥ tiṣṭhanti iti nṛpāḥ pṛcchati**  
(**kutra gajāḥ tiṣṭhantīti nṛpāḥ pṛcchati**)
- f. **bālāḥ nṛpasya grāmam gacchati**  
(**bālo nṛpasya grāmaṇi gacchati**)
- g. **atra vīrāḥ vasanti iti narāḥ vadanti**  
(**atra vīrā vasantīti narā vadanti**)
- h. **kutra gacchasi iti rāmaḥ pṛcchati**  
(**kutra gacchasīti rāmaḥ pṛcchati**)

5. Translate the following sentences into Sanskrit:

- a. “I live here,” the son says.
- b. The horses and elephants are coming from the village.
- c. “Do you remember the men?” the king asks the boy.
- d. Rāma says that he is going to the village.
- e. “I am going to the village for the boy,” says Rāma.
- f. Where does the hero go?
- g. “The hero goes to the village,” says the king.
- h. The son of the king lives here.

- i. The king's sons come from the village.
- j. The man speaks to Rāma about the elephants.
6. Translate the following sentences into English:
- a. **narau grāmāt āgacchataḥ**  
(*narau grāmād āgacchataḥ*)
- b. **atra bhavāmi iti bālāḥ nṛpam vadati**  
(*atra bhavāmīti bālo nṛpam vadati*)
- c. **kutra vasasi iti vīraḥ putram pṛcchati**  
(*kutra vasasīti vīraḥ putram pṛcchati*)
- d. **rāmeṇa saha atra vasāmi iti putraḥ vadati**  
(*rāmeṇa sahātra vasāmīti putro vadati*)
- e. **narasya putrāḥ tatra tiṣṭhanti**  
(*narasya putrās tatra tiṣṭhanti*)
- f. **atra vīrasya gajaḥ bhavati**  
(*atra vīrasya gajo bhavati*)
- g. **rāmam smarasī iti bālāḥ naram pṛcchanti**  
(*rāmaṇ smarasīti bālā naram pṛcchanti*)
- h. **kutra grāmaḥ bhavati iti narāḥ putram pṛcchati**  
(*kutra grāmo bhavatīti narāḥ putram pṛcchati*)
- i. **grāmaḥ tatra bhavati iti putraḥ naram vadati**  
(*grāmas tatra bhavatīti putro naram vadati*)

j. **gajāya grāmam gacchāmi iti naraḥ vadati**  
(**gajāya grāmam gacchāmīti naro vadati**)

7. Translate the following sentences into Sanskrit:

- a. “Where are you going?” the king asks the boy.
- b. “I am going to the horse,” the boy says.
- c. The king of the villages speaks to the men.
- d. The two boys are coming from the horse and the elephant.
- e. The boy lives with Rāma.
- f. “Here are the sons of Rāma,” says the hero.
- g. The king says that the boys are standing there.
- h. “I am going to the village,” says the son of the hero.
- i. The two horses are coming here together with the two deer.
- j. The king’s two horses are there.

<b>SUMMARY SHEET</b>	Third	<b>gacchati</b> (he, she goes)	<b>gacchataḥ</b> (they two go)	<b>gacchanti</b> (they all go)
	Second	<b>gacchasi</b> (you go)	<b>gacchathah</b> (you two go)	<b>gacchatha</b> (you all go)
	First	<b>gacchāmi</b> (I go)	<b>gacchāvah</b> (we two go)	<b>gacchāmaḥ</b> (we all go)
		[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
		Singular	Dual	Plural

**VERBS**

<b>ā + √gam</b>	<b>āgacchati</b>	he comes
<b>√gam</b>	<b>gacchati</b>	he goes
<b>√prach</b>	<b>pṛcchati</b>	he asks
<b>√bhū</b>	<b>bhavati</b>	he is
<b>√vad</b>	<b>vadati</b>	he speaks, he says
<b>√vas</b>	<b>vasati</b>	he lives
<b>√sthā</b>	<b>tiṣṭhati</b>	he stands
<b>√smṛ</b>	<b>smarati</b>	he remembers

NOUNS		Nom. (subject)	narah	narau	narāḥ
aśvah	horse	Acc. (object)	naram	narau	narān
gajah	elephant	Inst. (with)	nareṇa*	narābhyaṁ	naraīḥ
narah	man	Dat. (for)	narāya	narābhyaṁ	narebhyaḥ
nṛpah	king	Abl. (from)	narāt	narābhyaṁ	narebhyaḥ
putrah	son	Gen. (of, 's)	narasya	narayoh	narāṇām*
bālah	boy				Singular
mṛgah	deer				Dual
rāmah	Rāma				Plural
vīraḥ	hero		*gajena, gajānām (See page 46.)		

## INDECLINABLES

atra	here
iti	end of quote
kutra	where
ca	and
tatra	there
na	not
vā	or
saha	with, together

# 7

## LESSON SEVEN

Alphabet:      Conjunct consonants

Grammar:      The locative and vocative

Vocabulary:    More nouns in a



**ALPHABET:**  
**CONJUNCT**  
**CONSONANTS**

- We will now learn how to write two or more consonants without a vowel coming between them. To write tva, remove the vertical line from the t. For example:

tava तव sm tva त्व

- Here are examples of other clusters of consonants that are written side by side:

tma त्म sya ष्य

sya स्य tya त्य

bhya भ्य nta न्त

nti न्ति şta ष्टि

- Some clusters are written on top of each other. For example:

dva द्व dda द्द

nga ङ्ग ddho द्धो

4. Consonant conjuncts are read left to right and top to bottom. They will be learned most easily by close observation to their formation as we continue with the exercises.
  
5. When the semi-vowel **r** comes immediately before another consonant, the **r** takes the form of a small hook above the consonant. For example:

rpa पा र mya म्य

ryā र्या rgo र्गो

Notice that the **r** is placed as far to the right as possible.

6. When **r** immediately follows a consonant, the **r** takes the form of a small slanted stroke, written near the bottom of the vertical line (**danda**, meaning “stick”), if there is a vertical line. For example:

pra प्र bra ब्र

sra स्रा gra ग्रा

mra म्रा dra द्रा

7. Some forms are completely different than the two letters that make them up. These must be learned:

tra त्र jña ज्ञ

ddhya द्ध्य sva श् (or) श्व

dya द्य kta क्त् (or) क्त

tta त्त् kṣa क्ष् (or) क्ष

hma ह्म् kra क्र् (or) क्र

hṇa ह्ण् hva ह्व

The ' represents a missing a. It is written in devanāgarī as ऽ

For example: वेदोऽहम् vedo 'ham

8. A vertical line (**danda**) is used as a period at the end of a sentence. It is also used to mark the halfway part of a verse. Two vertical lines mark the end of a paragraph or the end of a verse. For example:

रामो गच्छति ।

9. There are other ways of forming certain letters, which you should be able to recognize:

a अ or अ

ā आ or आ

r ऋ or ऋ

ṛ ऋू or ऋू

jha झ or झ

ṇa ण or ण

## **GRAMMAR: LOCATIVE AND VOCATIVE**

1. Now we will learn the locative (**saptami**) and vocative (**sambodhana**—“awakening,” “arousing”).
  2. The locative case is used to express location. For example:

<b>grāme vasati</b>	<b>gaje tiṣṭhati</b> (same with sandhi)
He lives <u>in the village.</u>	He stands <u>on the elephant.</u>

3. The vocative is used for address. The vocative often, but not always, begins a sentence. For example:

rāma atra āgacchasi  
(rāma atrāgacchasi)  
O Rāma, you are coming here.  
(vocative)

Indian grammarians do not consider the vocative a true case (*vibhakti*) like the seven other cases, but a modification of the nominative, or naming case.

4. Here is the formation of the locative and vocative:

**Stem: nara** (masculine) man

Locative	<b>nare</b>	<b>narayoh</b>	<b>nareşu</b>
Vocative	<b>nara</b>	<b>narau</b>	<b>narāh</b>
	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
	Singular	Dual	Plural

5. Like verbs, there is a parsing code, or way of classifying nouns.  
They are classified according to:

Gender ( <i>liṅga</i> ):	Masculine ( <i>pum-liṅga</i> )	(mas.)
	Feminine ( <i>stri-liṅga</i> )	(fem.)
	Neuter ( <i>napuṁsaka-liṅga</i> )	(n.)
Case ( <i>vibhakti</i> ):	Nominative ( <i>prathamā</i> )	(nom.)
	Accusative ( <i>dvitiyā</i> )	(acc.)
	Instrumental ( <i>trtiyā</i> )	(inst.)
	Dative ( <i>caturthī</i> )	(dat.)
	Ablative ( <i>pañcamī</i> )	(abl.)
	Genitive ( <i>ṣaṣṭhī</i> )	(gen.)
	Locative ( <i>saptamī</i> )	(loc.)
	Vocative ( <i>śambodhana</i> )	(voc.)
Number ( <i>vacana</i> ):	Singular ( <i>eka-vacana</i> )	(sing.)
	Dual ( <i>dvi-vacana</i> )	(dual)
	Plural ( <i>bahu-vacana</i> )	(pl.)

6. The word **naraḥ** would be classified as masculine, nominative, singular. Its parsing code would be mas. nom. sing.

The word **narān** would be classified as masculine, accusative, plural. Its parsing code would be mas. acc. pl.

7. Here is the entire short **a** masculine declension:

Stem: **nara** (masculine) man

Nominative (subject)	<b>नरः</b> narah	<b>नरौ</b> narau	<b>नराः</b> narāḥ
Accusative (object)	<b>नरम्</b> naram	<b>नरौ</b> narau	<b>नरान्</b> narān
Instrumental (with)	<b>नरेणा</b> nareṇā*	<b>नराभ्याम्</b> narābhyaṁ	<b>नरैः</b> naraiḥ
Dative (for)	<b>नराय</b> narāya	<b>नराभ्याम्</b> narābhyaṁ	<b>नरेभ्यः</b> narebhyaḥ
Ablative (from)	<b>नरात्</b> narāt	<b>नराभ्याम्</b> narābhyaṁ	<b>नरेभ्यः</b> narebhyaḥ
Genitive (of, 's)	<b>नरस्य</b> narasya	<b>नरयोः</b> narayoh	<b>नराणाम्</b> narāṇām*
Locative (in, on)	<b>नरे</b> nare	<b>नरयोः</b> narayoh	<b>नरेषु</b> nareṣu
Vocative (O)	<b>नर</b> nara	<b>नरौ</b> narau	<b>नराः</b> narāḥ
	Singular	Dual	Plural

\*gajena, gajāṇām (See p. 46.)

VOCABULARY	SANSKRIT	ENGLISH
	<b>आचार्यः:</b> ācāryah (mas.)	teacher
	<b>चन्द्रः:</b> candraḥ (mas.)	moon
	<b>चिन्त्</b> √cint (root) cintayati	he thinks
	<b>पश्</b> √paś (root) paśyati	he sees (√dṛś is also considered to be the root.)
	<b>विना</b> vinā (indeclinable)	without (used like saha)
	<b>शिष्यः:</b> śiṣyah (mas.)	student
	<b>सूर्यः:</b> sūryah (mas.)	sun

**EXERCISES**

1. Learn the examples given for consonant conjuncts. Put these words into roman letters (transliterate them):

a. पुराणे      e. गच्छति      i. अश्वः

b. गन्धर्वः      f. चन्द्रः      j. पुत्रस्य

c. छन्दः      g. ज्योतिषः      k. शिष्यः

d. व्याकरणे      h. कल्पः      l. तिष्ठन्ति

2. Learn the forms for the locative and vocative.

3. Parse the following words and give their meaning:

a. narāḥ      f. mṛgenā

b. hastau      g. gajaiḥ

c. bālānām      h. vīrān

d. nṛpāt      i. grāmeṣu

e. rāmāya      j. ācāryāya

4. Translate the following sentences into English. (Use the summary sheet.) Cover the **devanāgarī** with a sheet of paper, write it yourself, and then compare:

a. शिष्यः चन्द्रम् सूर्यम् च पश्यति ।

śiṣyaḥ candram sūryam ca paśyati  
(śiṣyaś candram sūryam ca paśyati)

b. राम गजाः ग्रामे तिष्ठन्ति ।

rāma gajāḥ grāme tiṣṭhanti  
(rāma gajāḥ grāme tiṣṭhanti)

c. वीरः ग्रामे वसति इति आचार्यः

शिष्यम् वदति ।

vīraḥ grāme vasati iti ācāryah śiṣyam vadati  
(vīro grāme vasatīty ācāryah śiṣyam vadati)

d. कुत्र चन्द्रः भवति इति पुत्रः

पृच्छति ।

kutra candraḥ bhavati iti putraḥ pṛečhati  
(kutra candro bhavatīti putraḥ pṛečhati)

e. तत्र गजे बालौ तिष्ठतः ।

tatra gaje bālau tiṣṭhataḥ  
(tatra gaje bālau tiṣṭhataḥ)

f. पुत्र कुत्र चन्द्रः भवति इति वीरः

बालम् पृच्छति ।

putra kutra candraḥ bhavati iti vīraḥ bālam pṛcchati  
(putra kutra candro bhavatīti vīro bālam pṛcchati)

g. आचार्यस्य शिष्यः तिष्ठति वदति च ।

ācāryasya śiṣyāḥ tiṣṭhati vadati ca  
(ācāryasya śiṣyas tiṣṭhati vadati ca)

h. रामेणा विना वीराः ग्रामात् आगच्छन्ति ।

rāmeṇa vinā vīrāḥ grāmāt āgacchanti  
(rāmeṇa vinā vīrā grāmād āgacchanti)

i. ग्रामे वसामि इति वीरस्य बालः चिन्तयति ।

grāme vasāmi iti vīrasya bālaḥ cintayati  
(grāme vasāmīti vīrasya bālaś cintayati)

5. Translate the following sentences into Sanskrit:

- a. The king tells the hero that the boys are going to the village.
- b. Without the king, the boys come.
- c. In the hand of the hero is the son.
- d. “Where am I?” thinks the boy.
- e. He asks the son of the hero where the men are.
- f. The teacher tells the student that the sun is not the moon.
- g. The king lives in the village.
- h. There are the elephants of the king.

6. Translate the following sentences into English:

a. रामेण विना बालः ग्रामम् गच्छति ।

rāmeṇa vinā bālah grāmam gacchati  
(rāmeṇa vinā bālo grāmam gacchati)

---

b. कुत्र नृपस्य गजाः भवन्ति ।

kutra nṛpasya gajāḥ bhavanti  
(kutra nṛpasya gajā bhavanti)

c. अत्र भवामि इति बालः नरम् वदति ।

atra bhavāmi iti bālah naram vadati  
(atra bhavāmīti bālo naram vadati)

d. सूर्येण विना चन्द्रम् न पश्यसि ।

sūryeṇa vinā candraṁ na paśyasi  
(sūryeṇa vinā candraṁ na paśyasi)

e. आचार्यः शिष्यान् वदति ।

ācāryah śiṣyān vadati  
(ācāryah śiṣyān vadati)

f. चन्द्रम् पश्यामि इति बालः चिन्तयति ।

candraṁ paśyāmi iti bālah cintayati  
(candraṁ paśyāmīti bālaś cintayati)

g. अत्र ग्रामाणाम् नृपः आगच्छति ।

atra grāmāṇām nṛpah āgacchati  
(atra grāmāṇām nṛpa āgacchati)

h. नृपः वीरस्य अश्वम् पश्यति ।

nṛpaḥ vīrasya aśvam paśyati  
(nṛpo vīrasyāśvam paśyati)

i. कुत्र सूर्यः चन्द्रः च भवतः इति बालः  
पृच्छति ।

kutra sūryaḥ candraḥ ca bhavataḥ iti bālaḥ pṛcchati  
(kutra sūryaś candraś ca bhavata iti bālaḥ pṛcchati)

j. शिष्याः नरम् न स्मरन्ति ।

śiṣyāḥ naram na smaranti  
(śiṣyā naram na smaranti)

7. Translate the following sentences into Sanskrit, writing first in roman script and then in **devanāgarī**:

a. “Where are you going?” the boy asks the king’s son.

b. The two deer are in the village.

c. The teacher speaks to the hero’s son.

- d. The king sees the sun and the moon.
- e. Without the sun we do not see the moon.
- f. The hero is on the elephant of the king.
- g. “We live in the villages,” the boys say.
- h. Rāma goes from the horses to the elephants.
- i. “Where are we going?” the boy asks the king.
- j. The teacher lives in the village with the students.

8. Transliterate the following:

- |                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. ऋषि         | 13. चित्तवृत्ति |
| 2. आसन         | 14. अविद्या     |
| 3. अहंकार      | 15. अव्यक्त     |
| 4. गुण         | 16. धारणा       |
| 5. ज्ञान       | 17. आत्मन्      |
| 6. कुरुक्षेत्र | 18. आनन्द       |
| 7. कर्म        | 19. अष्टाङ्गयोग |
| 8. ध्यान       | 20. तत्त्वमसि   |
| 9. दर्शन       | 21. नामरूप      |
| 10. दुःख       | 22. उपनिषद्     |
| 11. वेद        | 23. नित्य       |
| 12. चित्त      | 24. धर्म        |

**SUMMARY SHEET**

Third	<b>gacchati</b>	<b>gacchataḥ</b>	<b>gacchanti</b>
	(he, she goes)	(they two go)	(they all go)
Second	<b>gacchasi</b>	<b>gacchathāḥ</b>	<b>gacchatha</b>
	(you go)	(you two go)	(you all go)
First	<b>gacchāmi</b>	<b>gacchāvah</b>	<b>gacchāmāḥ</b>
	(I go)	(we two go)	(we all go)
	_____	_____	_____
	Singular	Dual	Plural

**VERBS**

<b>ā + √gam</b>	<b>āgacchati</b>	he comes
<b>√gam</b>	<b>gacchati</b>	he goes
<b>√cint</b>	<b>cintayati</b>	he thinks
<b>√paś (√dṛś)</b>	<b>paśyati</b>	he sees
<b>√prach</b>	<b>pṛcchati</b>	he asks
<b>√bhū</b>	<b>bhavati</b>	he is
<b>√vad</b>	<b>vadati</b>	he speaks, he says
<b>√vas</b>	<b>vasati</b>	he lives
<b>√sthā</b>	<b>tiṣṭhati</b>	he stands
<b>√smṛ</b>	<b>smarati</b>	he remembers

## NOUNS

		Nom. (subject)	<b>narah</b>	<b>narau</b>	<b>narāḥ</b>
aśvah	horse				
ācāryah	teacher	Acc. (object)	<b>naram</b>	<b>narau</b>	<b>narān</b>
gajah	elephant	Inst. (with)	<b>nareṇa*</b>	<b>narābhyaṁ</b>	<b>naraiḥ</b>
grāmah	village				
candraḥ	moon	Dat. (for)	<b>narāya</b>	<b>narābhyaṁ</b>	<b>narebhyaḥ</b>
narah	man	Abl. (from)	<b>narāt</b>	<b>narābhyaṁ</b>	<b>narebhyaḥ</b>
nṛpah	king		<b>narasya</b>	<b>narayoh</b>	<b>narāñām*</b>
putrah	son	Gen. (of, 's)			
bālah	boy	Loc. (in, on)	<b>nare</b>	<b>narayoh</b>	<b>nareṣu</b>
mrgah	deer				
rāmaḥ	Rāma	Voc. (O)	<b>nara</b>	<b>narau</b>	<b>narāḥ</b>
vīraḥ	hero		Singular	Dual	Plural
śisyah	student		*gajena, gajāñām (See page 46.)		
sūryah	sun				
hastah	hand				

## INDECLINABLES

atra	here
iti	end of quote
kutra	where
ca	and
tatra	there
na	not
vā	or
vinā	without (used like saha)
saha	with

# 8

## LESSON EIGHT

Alphabet: The **sandhi** rules for combining vowels

Grammar: Neuter nouns in short **a**

Vocabulary: Neuter nouns

**ALPHABET:****VOWEL SANDHI**

1. The word “**sandhi**” means “combination” or “junction point.” The rules of **sandhi** insure that sounds will combine in a pleasing, euphonic way. Pāṇini (1.4.109) also refers to these junction points as **samhitā**, or “togetherness.” There are two types of **sandhi** rules:
  - a. External **sandhi**, or changes at the junction between words
  - b. Internal **sandhi**, or changes within a word
2. The **sandhi** rules involve sound changes so that the flow of the language is smooth. As mentioned in Lesson 2, “an apple” is smoother to pronounce than “a apple.” “The house” is pronounced differently than “the other house.” These are examples of external **sandhi**. The **sandhi** rules of Sanskrit exist because the Sanskrit tradition has been primarily an oral tradition, and because its grammatical insights were so sophisticated. (The term **sandhi** has been adopted by modern linguists to describe sound modifications between words in any language.)
3. Don't allow the **sandhi** rules to overwhelm you. There are many rules to learn, but with practice you will gradually assimilate them. We will begin our study of the external **sandhi** rules using charts, and then after we have used the rules for some time, we will memorize them. There will be three charts, because external **sandhi** can be divided into three groups:
  - a. Vowel **sandhi** (**svara-sandhi**) Lesson Eight
  - b. Final **h sandhi** (**visarga-sandhi**) Lesson Nine
  - c. Consonant **sandhi** (**hal-sandhi**) Lesson Ten

4. The chart on page 89 describes what happens if a word ends with a vowel and the next word begins with a vowel. For example, if one word ends with a short **i**, and the next word begins with an **a**, then the two combine (**sandhi**) to form **ya**:

गच्छति + अश्वम् would be written गच्छत्यश्वम्  
 gacchati + aśvam would be written gacchaty aśvam

एव + अवाशिष्यते = एवावशिष्यते  
 eva + avaśisyate = evāvaśisyate

ब्रह्म + अस्मि = ब्रह्मास्मि  
 brahma + asmi = brahmāsmi

भव + अर्जुन = भवार्जुन  
 bhava + arjuna = bhavārjuna

5. On the following page is the chart describing the **sandhi** change if the first word ends in a vowel (the vowels at the top of the chart) and the second word begins in a vowel (the vowels in the right column). If a vowel has **=** above it, then it refers to a short or a long vowel.
6. This chart need not be memorized. It should be used in the exercises, and the rules will be memorized later, once the patterns of change are more clear.

## VOWEL SANDHI

## FINAL VOWELS

INITIAL  
VOWELS

ă	ĩ	ũ	r̄	e	ai	au	
ā	ya	va	ra	e	ā a	āva	a
ā	yā	vā	rā	a ā	ā ā	āvā	ā
e	ĩ	vi	r̄i	a i	ā i	āvi	i
e	ĩ	vĩ	r̄i	a ī	ā ī	āvĩ	ī
o	yu	ū	ru	a u	ā u	āva	u
o	yū	ū	rū	a ū	ā ū	āvū	ū
ar	yṛ	vṛ	r̄	a ṛ	ā ṛ	āvṛ	r̄
ai	ye	ve	re	a e	ā e	āve	e
ai	yai	vai	rai	a ai	ā ai	āvai	ai
au	yo	vo	ro	a o	ā o	āvo	o
au	yau	vau	rau	a au	ā au	āvau	au

7. Here are some examples:

$$\mathbf{i} + \bar{\mathbf{u}} = \mathbf{y}\bar{\mathbf{u}}$$

$$\mathbf{r} + \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{ri}$$

$$\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{yu}$$

$$\text{गच्छति} + \text{इति} = \text{गच्छतीति}$$

gacchati + iti = gacchatīti

Additional examples are given on pages 167–170.

8. Remember that the apostrophe ( ' ) represents the missing letter **a**. It is called **avagraha**, meaning “separation.” It is written in **devanāgarī** as:

᳚

$$\text{ग्रामे} + \text{अत्र} = \text{ग्रामेऽत्र}$$

grāme + atra = grāme 'tra

9. Once the **sandhi** rules have been applied, there is no further application of **sandhi** rules. The **sandhi** rules are only applied once.

10. In this text, words are always separated in transliteration (roman script), unless two vowels have formed one long vowel, such as **i + i = ī**. In **devanāgarī** script, words involving vowel **sandhi** are joined except when there is a space (hiatus) between the vowels in the chart. Until you learn more **sandhi** rules, all other words should be kept separated. For example:

गच्छति + इति = गच्छतीति  
 gacchati + iti = gacchatīti

गच्छति + अश्वम् = गच्छत्यश्वम्  
 gacchati + aśvam = gacchaty aśvam

11. In vowel **sandhi**, often a vowel will be replaced by the semi-vowel that corresponds to it. For example, **i** will be replaced by **y**. According to Pāṇini, the change from the corresponding semi-vowel to the vowel is called **samprasāraṇa** (“spreading out,” “extension”) because the semi-vowel “spreads out” to form the vowel:

Palatal	i	ī	y
Retroflex	r	ṝ	r
Dental	l		l
Labial	u	ū	v
Vowels	_____		
	Vowels      Semi-vowels		

12. Some vowels (**pragrhya**) are not subject to **sandhi**. They are:

- a. The vowels **i**, **u**, and **e** when they are dual endings.
- b. The final vowel of an interjection (usually a vocative).  
 For example, **rāma āgacchanti** (Rāma, they come.) needs no **sandhi**.

13. The rules for this lesson are written out in Lesson 13. We will memorize them at that time.

**GRAMMAR:****NEUTER NOUNS**

1. All the nouns that we have studied so far have been masculine.

Now we will study the neuter nouns that end in short **a**.

2. Here is the formation of the neuter short **a** nouns:

Stem: **phala** (neuter) fruit

Nominative	<b>फलम्</b> phalam	<b>फले</b> phale	<b>फलानि</b> phalāni
Accusative	<b>फलम्</b> phalam	<b>फले</b> phale	<b>फलानि</b> phalāni
Instrumental	<b>फलेन</b> phalena	<b>फलाभ्याम्</b> phalābhyaṁ	<b>फलैः</b> phalaiḥ
Dative	<b>फलाय</b> phalāya	<b>फलाभ्याम्</b> phalābhyaṁ	<b>फलेभ्यः</b> phalebhyaḥ
Ablative	<b>फलात्</b> phalāt	<b>फलाभ्याम्</b> phalābhyaṁ	<b>फलेभ्यः</b> phalebhyaḥ
Genitive	<b>फलस्य</b> phalasya	<b>फलयोः</b> phalayoh	<b>फलानाम्</b> phalānām
Locative	<b>फले</b> phale	<b>फलयोः</b> phalayoh	<b>फलेषु</b> phaleṣu
Vocative	<b>फल</b> phala	<b>फले</b> phale	<b>फलानि</b> phalāni
	Singular	Dual	Plural

VOCABULARY	SANSKRIT	ENGLISH
अमृतम्	amṛtam (n.)	immortality, an immortal
कथम्	katham (ind.)	how (used like <b>kutra</b> )
ज्ञानम्	jñānam (n.)	knowledge
पठ्	√paṭh (root) paṭhati	he reads
पुस्तकम्	pustakam (n.)	book
फलम्	phalam (n.)	fruit
वनम्	vanam (n.)	forest
शास्त्रम्	śāstram (n.)	scripture
सत्यम्	satyam (n.)	truth
सूक्तम्	sūktam (n.)	hymn

Notice that neuter nouns are also given in their nominative singular form. For example, **amṛta** (stem form) is listed as **amṛtam** (nominative form).

Notice that the neuter nouns decline like the masculine nouns, except in the nominative, accusative, and vocative.

**EXERCISES**

1. We had learned that **r** or **r̥** changes the following **n** to **ṇ**. This change will not occur if a **t** comes between, because the **t** changes the position of the tongue. Therefore: **amṛtāni**, **amṛtena**, **amṛtānām**. But: **śāstrāṇi**, **śāstrena**, **śāstrānām**. This **sandhi** rule will be studied in more detail in Lesson 11.

2. Put the following words together, using correct **sandhi** rules, and then write the final form in **devanāgarī**:

- |                        |                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| a. <b>putreṇa atra</b> | f. <b>devau āgacchataḥ</b> |
| b. <b>saha ācāryaḥ</b> | g. <b>nare atra</b>        |
| c. <b>tatra iti</b>    | h. <b>vane iti</b>         |
| d. <b>iti atra</b>     | i. <b>phalāni iti</b>      |
| e. <b>iti ācāryaḥ</b>  | j. <b>smarati atra</b>     |

3. Write in roman script and take out the **sandhi**:

- |                      |               |
|----------------------|---------------|
| a. गच्छतीति          | f. नृपस्याशः  |
| b. गजावागच्छतः       | g. अश्वेऽत्र  |
| c. पृच्छत्यागच्छति च | h. कुत्राशः   |
| d. गच्छामीति         | i. कुत्रेति   |
| e. हस्त इति          | j. गच्छत्यत्र |

4. In the following exercises, remember that the subject and the predicate nominative are put in the nominative case, since they both refer to the same subject. (See page 33.) For example:

**rāmaḥ putraḥ bhavati**  
**(rāmaḥ putro bhavati)**  
 Rāma is the son.

In this text, the predicate nominative is usually placed after the subject, although other word orders are equally common. (See 5b, c; 6a, f, g.)

5. In the following sentences, cover up the roman script and transliterate each sentence (write in roman script). Then cover the **devanāgarī** and write in **devanāgarī**. Then take out any **sandhi**. Only the **sandhi** rules learned so far have been applied—that is, only when one word ends in a vowel and the next word begins in a vowel. Finally, translate into English:

a. रामः ग्रामात् वनम् गच्छति ।

**rāmaḥ grāmāt vanam gacchati**  
**(rāmo grāmād vanam gacchati)**

b. अमृतम् ज्ञानस्य फलम् भवति ।

**amṛtam jñānasya phalam bhavati**  
**(amṛtam jñānasya phalaṁ bhavati)**

c. ज्ञानम् सत्यम् भवतीति बालाः शास्त्रे  
पठन्ति ।

jñānam satyam bhavatīti bālāḥ śāstre paṭhanti  
(jñānam satyam bhavatīti bālāḥ śāstre paṭhanti)

d. अमृतस्य पुत्राः भवथेत्याचार्यः शिष्यान्  
वदति ।

amṛtasya putrāḥ bhavathety ācāryah śiṣyān vadati  
(amṛtasya putrā bhavathety ācāryah śiṣyān vadati)

e. कथम् आचार्यः सूक्तानि स्मरन्ति ।

katham ācāryāḥ sūktāni smaranti  
(katham ācāryāḥ sūktāni smaranti)

f. शास्त्रेषु सत्यम् पश्यामीति रामः वदति ।

śāstreṣu satyam paśyāmīti rāmaḥ vadati  
(śātreṣu satyam paśyāmīti rāmo vadati)

g. कुत्र सूक्तानाम् ज्ञानम् भवतीति वीरः पुत्रम्  
पृच्छति ।

kutra sūktānām jñānam bhavatīti vīraḥ putram  
pṛecchati  
(kutra sūktānām jñānam bhavatīti vīraḥ putram  
pṛecchati)

h. नृपः बालाय पुस्तकम् पठति ।

nṛpaḥ bālāya pustakam paṭhati  
(nṛpo bālāya pustakam paṭhati)

6. Translate the following sentences into Sanskrit. First write them without **sandhi**, then with (vowel) **sandhi**, and finally in **devanāgarī**.
- a. The elephant is not the king of the forest.
  - b. How do you see the moon?
  - c. Rāma thinks that he sees the deer.
  - d. The fruit is in the hands of the boy.
  - e. How does the king live without Rāma?
  - f. Rāma is the king.

- g. The king is Rāma.
- h. The hero lives in the village of the immortals.
7. Translate the following sentences into English. First write in roman script, then take out the **sandhi**, and finally write in English:
- a. कथम् सूर्येण विना नराः नृपम् पश्यन्ति ।  
 (कथं सूर्येण विना नरा नृपं पश्यन्ति ।)
- b. शिष्यानाम् आचार्यः पुस्तकम् पठति ।  
 (शिष्यानामाचार्यः पुस्तकं पठति ।)
- c. अत्र वने फलानि भवन्तीति बालः वीरम् वदति ।  
 (अत्र वने फलानि भवन्तीति बालो वीरं वदति ।)
- d. मृगः वने वसति गजः च ग्रामे वसति ।  
 (मृगो वने वसति गजश्च ग्रामे वसति ।)  
 (When a phrase or clause is joined by **ca**, it usually takes the second position. See p. 28.)
- e. ज्ञानम् पुस्तकेन भवतीत्याचार्यः वदति ।  
 (ज्ञानं पुस्तकेन भवतीत्याचार्यो वदति ।)

- f. पुस्तकेन विना शिष्यः ज्ञानम् स्मरति ।  
 (पुस्तकेन विना शिष्यो ज्ञानं स्मरति ।)
- g. राम कुत्र मृगेण सह गच्छसीति पुत्रः पृच्छति ।  
 (राम कुत्र मृगेण सह गच्छसीति पुत्रः पृच्छति ।)
- h. नरः बालाय पुस्तकम् पठति ।  
 (नरो बालाय पुस्तकं पठति ।)

8. Translate the following sentences into Sanskrit. Translate, put in the vowel **sandhi**, and write in **devanāgarī**:

- a. Where do you read the knowledge of immortality?
- b. How does Rāma go to the forest without the horses?
- c. “The hymns are in the book,” the teacher tells the students.
- d. Rāma sees the truth and speaks the truth.
- e. “I see the sun and the moon,” says the son of the king.
- f. Without knowledge, there are no teachers or students.
- g. The hero speaks to the boys about immortality.
- h. The horses, elephants, and boys come from the village.

9. Transliterate the following:

- |             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| 1. पुराण    | 13. रामराज्य    |
| 2. राम      | 14. रामायण      |
| 3. पुरुष    | 15. शिष्य       |
| 4. प्रकृति  | 16. स्थितप्रज्ञ |
| 5. प्रज्ञा  | 17. भगवन्नीता   |
| 6. सीता     | 18. समाधि       |
| 7. सुखम्    | 19. योग         |
| 8. संयम     | 20. बुद्ध       |
| 9. संसार    | 21. महाभारत     |
| 10. संस्कार | 22. प्रज्ञापराध |
| 11. संस्कृत | 23. वेदान्त     |
| 12. सत्यम्  | 24. वेदलीला     |

**SUMMARY SHEET****VERBS**

Third	<b>gacchati</b>	<b>gacchataḥ</b>	<b>gacchanti</b>
	(he, she goes)	(they two go)	(they all go)
Second	<b>gacchasi</b>	<b>gacchathāḥ</b>	<b>gacchatha</b>
	(you go)	(you two go)	(you all go)
First	<b>gacchāmi</b>	<b>gacchāvah</b>	<b>gacchāmāḥ</b>
	(I go)	(we two go)	(we all go)
	_____	_____	_____
	Singular	Dual	Plural

<b>ā + √gam</b>	<b>āgacchati</b>	he comes
<b>√gam</b>	<b>gacchati</b>	he goes
<b>√cint</b>	<b>cintayati</b>	he thinks
<b>√paṭh</b>	<b>paṭhati</b>	he reads
<b>√paś (√dṛś)</b>	<b>paśyati</b>	he sees
<b>√prach</b>	<b>prechati</b>	he asks
<b>√bhū</b>	<b>bhavati</b>	he is
<b>√vad</b>	<b>vadati</b>	he speaks, he says
<b>√vas</b>	<b>vasati</b>	he lives
<b>√sthā</b>	<b>tiṣṭhati</b>	he stands
<b>√smṛ</b>	<b>smarati</b>	he remembers

## MASCULINE NOUNS

Nom. (subject)	<b>narah</b>	<b>narau</b>	<b>narāḥ</b>
Acc. (object)	<b>naram</b>	<b>narau</b>	<b>narān</b>
Inst. (with)	<b>nareṇa*</b>	<b>narābhyaṁ</b>	<b>naraiḥ</b>
Dat. (for)	<b>narāya</b>	<b>narābhyaṁ</b>	<b>narebhyaḥ</b>
Abl. (from)	<b>narāt</b>	<b>narābhyaṁ</b>	<b>narebhyaḥ</b>
Gen. (of, 's)	<b>narasya</b>	<b>narayoḥ</b>	<b>narāṇām*</b>
Loc. (in, on)	<b>nare</b>	<b>narayoḥ</b>	<b>naresu</b>
Voc. (O)	<b>nara</b>	<b>narau</b>	<b>narāḥ</b>

Singular      Dual      Plural

\*gajena, gajāṇām (See page 46.)

## MASCULINE NOUNS

aśvah	horse	rāmaḥ	Rāma
ācāryah	teacher	vīraḥ	hero
gajah	elephant	śiṣyah	student
grāmah	village	sūryah	sun
candraḥ	moon	hastah	hand
narah	man		
nṛpaḥ	king		
putrah	son		
bālah	boy		
mrgah	deer		

## NEUTER NOUNS

Nom. (subject)	<b>phalam</b>	<b>phale</b>	<b>phalāni*</b>
Acc. (object)	<b>phalam</b>	<b>phale</b>	<b>phalāni*</b>
Inst. (with)	<b>phalena*</b>	<b>phalābhyaṁ</b>	<b>phalaiḥ</b>
Dat. (for)	<b>phalāya</b>	<b>phalābhyaṁ</b>	<b>phalebhyaḥ</b>
Abl. (from)	<b>phalāt</b>	<b>phalābhyaṁ</b>	<b>phalebhyaḥ</b>
Gen. (of, 's)	<b>phalasya</b>	<b>phalayoh</b>	<b>phalānām*</b>
Loc. (in, on)	<b>phale</b>	<b>phalayoh</b>	<b>phaleṣu</b>
Voc. (O)	<b>phala</b>	<b>phale</b>	<b>phalāni*</b>

Singular      Dual      Plural

**\*śāstrāṇī, śāstreṇā, śāstrāṇām**

## NEUTER NOUNS

(given in nominative form)

**amṛtam**      immortality**jñānam**      knowledge**pustakam**      book**phalam**      fruit**vanam**      forest**śāstram**      scripture**satyam**      truth**sūktam**      hymn

## INDECLINABLES

**atra**      here**iti**      end of quote**katham**      how (used like **kutra**)**kutra**      where**ca**      and**tatra**      there**na**      not**vā**      or**vinā**      without**saha**      with

**THE MONKEY AND  
THE CROCODILE**

Translate the following, using the vocabulary on the next page. Words not given you should already know.

1. तत्र गङ्गायाम् कुम्भीरः भवति ।  
(तत्र गङ्गायां कुम्भीरो भवति ।)
2. वानरः तटे वसति ।  
(वानरस्तटे वसति ।)
3. वानरः फलानि कुम्भीराय निक्षिपति ।  
(वानरः फलानि कुम्भीराय निक्षिपति ।)
4. कुम्भीरः फलानि खादति ।  
(कुम्भीरः फलानि खादति ।)
5. भार्या वानरस्य हृदयम् इच्छति ।  
(भार्या वानरस्य हृदयमिच्छति ।)

6. हृदयम् वृक्षे भवतीति वानरः वदति ।  
 (हृदयं वृक्षे भवतीति वानरो वदति ।)
7. कश्चित् हृदयम् चोरयतीति वानरः वदति ।  
 (कश्चिद्धृदयं चोरयतीति वानरो वदति ।)
8. एवम् कुम्भीरः वानरः च मित्रे तिष्ठतः ।  
 (एवं कुम्भीरो वानरश्च मित्रे तिष्ठतः ।)

**VOCABULARY  
(IN ORDER OF  
APPEARANCE)**

1. **gaṅgā** (fem. noun) Ganges. This follows the feminine declension for long ā. The locative is **gaṅgāyām**, “in the Ganges.”  
**kumbhirah** (mas. noun) crocodile
2. **vānarah** (mas. noun) monkey  
**taṭah** (mas. noun) bank (of the river)
3. **nikṣipati** (3rd per. sing. verb) he throws down
4. **khādati** (3rd per. sing. verb) he eats
5. **bhāryā** (fem. noun) wife. This, again, follows the feminine declension for long ā. The stem, as well as the nominative, is **bhāryā**.

**hṛdayam** (neuter noun) heart. The **r** is written next to the **h**.  
(See Lesson 6, page 57.)  
**icchatī** (3rd per. sing. verb) she wants (to eat)

6. **vṛkṣah** (mas. noun) tree
7. **kah** (mas. pronoun) who  
**cit** (ind.) (makes **kah** indefinite)  
**kaścit** someone  
**corayatī** (3rd per. sing. verb) he steals
8. **evam** (ind.) therefore  
**mitram** (neuter noun) friend (Here it is used in the nom. dual.)  
**tiṣṭhatī** (3rd per. sing. verb) he remains, or stands as (Here used in the dual.)  
  
(The story will become more clear when it is studied in detail in Lesson 11.)

# 9

## LESSON NINE

Aphabet: The **sandhi** rules for final **ḥ**

Grammar: The middle voice and “have”

Vocabulary: Verbs in the middle voice

**ALPHABET:  
SANDHI RULES  
FOR FINAL h**

1. The following chart describes the changes that take place when the first word ends in **h** (which was originally **s**). There are three categories: **ah**, **āh**, and **h** preceded by any other vowel.

FINAL LETTERS OF FIRST WORD

Any vowel r	Any vowel h (except ah and āh)	āh	ah	INITIAL LETTER OF SECOND WORD
<b>The h or r becomes</b>				
r		ā		a <sup>(2)</sup>
r		ā		o
r		ā		o
r		ā		o
r		ā		o
r		ā		o
r		ā		y/v
r <sup>(1)</sup>		ā		r
r		ā		l
r		ā		h
h		āh		ah
ś		āś		āś
ś		āś		āś
s		āś		as
h		āh		āh
h		āh		āh
h		āh		āh
h		āh		āh
<b>vowels (a)</b>				
<b>g/gh</b>				
<b>j/jh</b>				
<b>d/dh</b>				
d/dh (b)				
<b>b/bh</b>				
<b>nasals (n/m)</b>				
<b>y/v</b>				
<b>r</b>				
<b>l</b>				
<b>h</b>				
<b>k/kh</b>				
<b>c/ch</b>				
<b>t/tħ</b>				
<b>t/th</b>				
<b>p/ph</b> (c)				
<b>ś</b>				
<b>ś/s</b>				
<b>end of line</b>				

(1) The **h** disappears, and if **i** or **u** precedes, it becomes **ī** or **ū**.

The **r** disappears, and if **a**, **i**, or **u** precedes, it becomes **ā**, **ī**, or **ū**.

(2) Except that **ah + a = o** . For example:

रामः + अत्र = रामोऽत्र

rāmah + atra = rāmo 'tra

2. If the first word ends in **aḥ**, then use the third column. If the first word ends in **āḥ**, then use the middle column. If the first word ends in any other vowel before the **ḥ** or any vowel before the **r** (including **ar** or **ār**), then use the first column.

3. Here are some examples:

<u>Without sandhi</u>	<u>With sandhi</u>
रामः गच्छति rāmaḥ gacchati	रामो गच्छति rāmo gacchati
वीराḥ गच्छन्ति vīraḥ gacchanti	वीरा गच्छन्ति vīrā gacchanti
रामः पश्यति rāmaḥ paśyati	रामः पश्यति rāmaḥ paśyati
वीराḥ पश्यन्ति vīraḥ paśyanti	वीराḥ पश्यन्ति vīrāḥ paśyanti

Additional examples are given on pages 183–187.

4. Final **s** should be treated as **ḥ**. For example, **rāmas** follows the same rules as **rāmaḥ**. Either would become **rāmo** before **gacchati**.
5. After these **sandhi** rules have been applied, if the first word ends in a vowel (including **ḥ**), then there is a break between words in **devanāgarī**. For now, words that do not follow the **sandhi** rules presented in Lessons 8 and 9 should be kept separate.

In this text, when writing in roman script, words are usually separated, unless the **sandhi** change is a result of two vowels joining together, such as **bhavārjuna**. For example:

Without sandhi

रामः चिन्तयति  
rāmaḥ cintayati

रामः तिष्ठति  
rāmaḥ tiṣṭhati

गच्छति इति  
gacchati iti

भव अर्जुन  
bhava arjuna

With sandhi

रामश्चिन्तयति  
rāmaś cintayati

रामस्तिष्ठति  
rāmas tiṣṭhati

गच्छतीति  
gacchatīti

भवार्जुन  
bhavārjuna

6. Notice that the chart is divided into three groups on the right side:  
 (a), (b), and (c). These three groups are determined by the first letter of the second word. The groups are:

- (a) Vowels
- (b) Voiced consonants
- (c) Unvoiced consonants (The end of the line is considered to be unvoiced.)

7. The following chart (described in more detail in Lesson 14) puts the sandhi changes into these three groups. It gives the same information as the first chart, but in a more conceptual form, so that later on it will be easier to memorize. Each group represents the first letter of the second word:

a	ā	
i	ī	
u	ū	(a)
r	ī	Vowels
l		
e	ai	
o	au	

---

ḥ	ka	kha		ga	gha	ñā
ś	ca	cha		ja	jha	ñā
ṣ	ṭa	ṭha		ḍa	ḍha	ñā
s	ta	tha		da	dha	na
ḥ	pa	pha		ba	bha	ma
				ya	ra	la
ḥ	śa	ṣa	sa		ha	va
ḥ	end of line					

(c) Unvoiced consonant

(b) Voiced consonant

- (a) If the second word begins in a vowel:

ah becomes a (except ah + a = o')

āh becomes ā

vowel h becomes r

- (b) If the first letter of the second word is a voiced consonant:

ah becomes o

āh becomes ā

vowel h becomes r (except before a word beginning in r)

- (c) If the first letter of the second word is an unvoiced consonant,

the h changes to the letter in the far left column.

**GRAMMAR:**  
**MIDDLE VERBS**

- Now we will learn the middle endings (**ātmanepada**). For the middle voice, the fruit of action is said to go to the agent (**ātman**). For the active voice, the fruit of action goes to someone else (**para**). Many verbs usually take active endings, many usually take middle endings and some verbs take both endings.
- Here is the formation of the middle verb  $\sqrt{bhāṣ}$  (to speak):

Third	<b>bhāṣate</b>	<b>bhāṣete</b>	<b>bhāṣante</b>
Second	<b>bhāṣase</b>	<b>bhāṣethe</b>	<b>bhāṣadhve</b>
First	<b>bhāṣe</b>	<b>bhāṣāvahe</b>	<b>bhāṣāmahe</b>
	[_____]	[_____]	[_____]
Singular	Dual		Plural

Note that the present middle endings are listed on p. 316.

**“HAVE”**

- Although most of the verbs we have learned (before  $\sqrt{bhāṣ}$ ) are usually seen with active endings, they occasionally take middle endings also (in situations where the fruit of action goes more to the agent). One verb,  $\sqrt{cint}$ , regularly takes both active and middle endings, and so is classified as **ubhayapada**. (See p. 25.) Verbs that regularly take both endings will be listed like this: **cintayati -te**.
- There is no verb for “have” in Sanskrit. “Have” is formed with the genitive and  $\sqrt{bhū}$ . For example:

**वीरस्य पुत्रो भवति ।**  
**vīrasya putro bhavati**  
 Of the hero a son is. (becomes)  
 The hero has a son.

VOCABULARY	SANSKRIT	ENGLISH
एव	eva (ind.)	only, ever
गृहम्	gṛham (n.)	house
जलम्	jalam (n.)	water
जि	√ji (active) jayati	he conquers
दुःखम्	duḥkham* (n.)	suffering
भाष्	√bhāṣ (middle) bhāṣate	he speaks
मन्	√man (middle) manyate	he thinks
लभ्	√labh (middle) labhate	he obtains
सुखम्	sukham (n.)	happiness
सेव्	√sev (middle) sevate	he serves

\*When the **h** occurs in the middle of a word, it is pronounced as a breath of air.

**EXERCISES**

1. Put in the correct **sandhi** for the following phrases:

- |                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| a. रामः गच्छति     | e. रामः इति       |
| b. वालाः आगच्छन्ति | f. देवाः स्मरन्ति |
| c. वीरौ आगच्छतः    | g. पुत्रः पश्यति  |
| d. शिष्यः अत्र     | h. अश्वः वदति     |

2. Take out the **sandhi** in the following phrases:

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| a. रामो गच्छति      | e. अश्वा आगच्छन्ति |
| b. कुत्रागच्छसि     | f. रामः पुत्रश्च   |
| c. सूर्यश्चन्द्रश्च | g. गजैः सह         |
| d. गजैर्वारः        | h. फलयोर्जलम्      |

3. Translate the following sentences into English. Take out the **sandhi** (for vowels and final **ḥ**), and then translate:

- a. वीरस्य वालो भवति ।  
 vīrasya bālo bhavati  
 (वीरस्य वालो भवति ।)

b. सुखम् ज्ञानस्य फलम् भवति ।

sukham jñānasya phalam bhavati

(सुखं ज्ञानस्य फलं भवति ।)

c. शिष्या गृहात् जलम् आचार्याय लभन्ते ।

śiṣyā gr̥hāt jalam ācāryāya labhante

(शिष्या गृहाज्जलमाचार्याय लभन्ते ।)

d. रामस्तत्र जलाय गच्छतीति वीरो वदति ।

rāmas tatra jalāya gacchatīti vīro vadati

(रामस्तत्र जलाय गच्छतीति वीरो वदति ।)

e. शिष्य आचार्यम् सेवते ।

śiṣyā ācāryam sevate

(शिष्य आचार्यं सेवते ।)

f. शिष्या ज्ञानम् आचार्यात् लभन्ते ।

śiṣyā jñānam ācāryāt labhante

(शिष्या ज्ञानमाचार्याल्लभन्ते ।)

g. राम कथम् दुःखम् जयसि ।

rāma katham duḥkham jayasi

(राम कथं दुःखं जयसि ।)

h. पुत्रो गृहात् नृपस्याश्वेषु गच्छति ।

putro gr̥hāt nṛpasyāśveṣu gacchati

(पुत्रो गृहात् नृपस्याश्वेषु गच्छति ।)

i. अमृतम् सुखस्य फलम् भवतीति चिन्तयते ।

amṛtam sukhasya phalam bhavatīti cintayate

(अमृतं सुखस्य फलं भवतीति चिन्तयते ।)

j. आचार्यो ज्ञानस्य पुस्तकम् शिष्याय पठति ।

ācāryo jñānasya pustakam śiṣyāya paṭhati

(आचार्यो ज्ञानस्य पुस्तकं शिष्याय पठति ।)

4. Translate the following sentences into Sanskrit. First write in roman, then *devanāgarī*, and then write again with the (vowel and final *h*) *sandhi*:

a. The water is in Rāma's hands.

b. The boy reads the book.

- c. The hero stands ever in the house of the king.
- d. The boys obtain the fruits from the forest.
- e. “You conquer suffering with knowledge,” the teacher says.
- f. From the fruit the boy obtains water. (Use singular for “fruit.”)
- g. “I see truth in the sun and the moon,” says Rāma.
- h. Without knowledge there is suffering.
- i. “I do not come from the village,” the king’s son says.
- j. The hero and the boy live in the forest.

**SUMMARY SHEET**

Third	<b>gacchati</b> (he, she goes)	<b>gacchataḥ</b> (they two go)	<b>gacchanti</b> (they all go)
Second	<b>gacchasi</b> (you go)	<b>gacchathāḥ</b> (you two go)	<b>gacchatha</b> (you all go)
First	<b>gacchāmi</b> (I go)	<b>gacchāvah</b> (we two go)	<b>gacchāmaḥ</b> (we all go)
	Singular	Dual	Plural

**VERBS PRIMARILY TAKING ACTIVE ENDINGS (parasmaipada**

<b>ā + √gam</b>	<b>āgacchati</b>	he comes
<b>√gam</b>	<b>gacchati</b>	he goes
<b>√ji</b>	<b>jayati</b>	he conquers
<b>√paṭh</b>	<b>paṭhati</b>	he reads
<b>√paś (√dṛś)</b>	<b>paśyati</b>	he sees
<b>√prach</b>	<b>prēchati</b>	he asks
<b>√bhū</b>	<b>bhavati</b>	he is
<b>√vad</b>	<b>vadati</b>	he speaks, he says
<b>√vas</b>	<b>vasati</b>	he lives
<b>√sthā</b>	<b>tiṣṭhati</b>	he stands
<b>√smṛ</b>	<b>smarati</b>	he remembers

Third	<b>bhāṣate</b>	<b>bhāṣete</b>	<b>bhāṣante</b>
	(he speaks)	(they two speak)	(they all speak)
Second	<b>bhāṣase</b>	<b>bhāṣethē</b>	<b>bhāṣadhve</b>
	(you speak)	(you two speak)	(you all speak)
First	<b>bhāṣe</b>	<b>bhāṣāvahē</b>	<b>bhāṣāmahe</b>
	(I speak)	(we two speak)	(we all speak)
		_____	_____
		Singular	Dual
			Plural

VERBS PRIMARILY TAKING MIDDLE ENDINGS (*ātmanepada*)

✓**bhāṣ**      **bhāṣate**      he speaks

✓**man**      **manyate**      he thinks

✓**labh**      **labhate**      he obtains

✓**sev**      **sevate**      he serves

VERB REGULARLY TAKING BOTH ENDINGS (*ubhayapada*)

✓**cint**      **cintayati -te**      he thinks

## MASCULINE NOUNS

Nom. (subject)	<b>narah</b>	<b>narau</b>	<b>narāḥ</b>
Acc. (object)	<b>naram</b>	<b>narau</b>	<b>narān</b>
Inst. (with)	<b>nareṇa*</b>	<b>narābhyaṁ</b>	<b>nariḥ</b>
Dat. (for)	<b>narāya</b>	<b>narābhyaṁ</b>	<b>narebhyaḥ</b>
Abl. (from)	<b>narāt</b>	<b>narābhyaṁ</b>	<b>narebhyaḥ</b>
Gen. (of, 's)	<b>narasya</b>	<b>narayoh</b>	<b>narāṇām*</b>
Loc. (in, on)	<b>nare</b>	<b>narayoh</b>	<b>nareṣu</b>
Voc. (O)	<b>nara</b>	<b>narau</b>	<b>narāḥ</b>

Singular      Dual      Plural

\*gajena, gajānām (See page 46.)

<b>aśvah</b>	horse	<b>vīrah</b>	hero
<b>ācāryah</b>	teacher	<b>śisyah</b>	student
<b>gajah</b>	elephant	<b>sūryah</b>	sun
<b>grāmah</b>	village	<b>hastah</b>	hand
<b>candraḥ</b>	moon		
<b>narah</b>	man		
<b>nṛpah</b>	king		
<b>putrah</b>	son		
<b>bālah</b>	boy		
<b>mṛgah</b>	deer		
<b>rāmaḥ</b>	Rāma		

## NEUTER NOUNS

Nom. (subject)	<b>phalam</b>	<b>phale</b>	<b>phalāni*</b>
Acc. (object)	<b>phalam</b>	<b>phale</b>	<b>phalāni*</b>
Inst. (with)	<b>phalena*</b>	<b>phalābhyaṁ</b>	<b>phalaiḥ</b>
Dat. (for)	<b>phalāya</b>	<b>phalābhyaṁ</b>	<b>phalebhyaḥ</b>
Abl. (from)	<b>phalāt</b>	<b>phalābhyaṁ</b>	<b>phalebhyaḥ</b>
Gen. (of, 's)	<b>phalasya</b>	<b>phalayoh</b>	<b>phalānām*</b>
Loc. (in, on)	<b>phale</b>	<b>phalayoh</b>	<b>phaleṣu</b>
Voc. (O)	<b>phala</b>	<b>phale</b>	<b>phalāni*</b>

Singular      Dual      Plural

*\*śāstrāni, śāstreṇa, śāstrānām*

<b>amṛtam</b>	immortality	<b>satyam</b>	truth
<b>gr̥ham</b>	house	<b>sukham</b>	happiness
<b>jalam</b>	water	<b>sūktam</b>	hymn
<b>jñānam</b>	knowledge		
<b>duḥkham</b>	suffering		
<b>pustakam</b>	book		
<b>phalam</b>	fruit		
<b>vanam</b>	forest		
<b>śāstram</b>	scripture		

## INDECLINABLES

<b>atra</b>	here
<b>iti</b>	end of quote
<b>eva</b>	only, ever
<b>katham</b>	how (used like <b>kutra</b> )
<b>kutra</b>	where
<b>ca</b>	and
<b>tatra</b>	there
<b>na</b>	not
<b>vā</b>	or
<b>vinā</b>	without
<b>saha</b>	with

## RĀMĀYANA

Translate the following, using the vocabulary given afterward:

1. अयोध्यायाम् दशरथो नाम नृपो वसति ।  
(अयोध्यायां दशरथो नाम नृपो वसति ।)
2. दशरथस्य चत्वारः पुत्रा भवन्ति ।  
(दशरथस्य चत्वारः पुत्रा भवन्ति ।)
3. पुत्रा रामो भरतो लक्ष्मणः शत्रुघ्नो भवन्ति ।  
(पुत्रा रामो भरतो लक्ष्मणः शत्रुघ्नो भवन्ति ।)
4. रामः सुन्दरः शान्तो वीरश्च भवति ।  
(रामः सुन्दरः शान्तो वीरश्च भवति ।)
5. नृपो रामे स्त्रिद्वयति ।  
(नृपो रामे स्त्रिद्वयति ।)
6. रामो मिथिलाम् लक्ष्मणेन सह गच्छति ।  
(रामो मिथिलां लक्ष्मणेन सह गच्छति ।)

7. तत्र रामः सीताम् पश्यति ।  
 (तत्र रामः सीतां पश्यति ।)

8. सीतायाम् स्निहामीति रामो वदति ॥  
 (सीतायां स्निहामीति रामो वदति ॥)

## VOCABULARY

1. **ayodhyā** (fem.) the city of Ayodhyā (The locative is **ayodhyāyām**, “in Ayodhyā.”)  
**daśarathah** (mas. noun) Daśaratha, the king of Ayodhyā  
**nāma** (ind.) by name
2. **catvārah** (nom.) four (used as an adjective)
3. **bharataḥ, lakṣmaṇaḥ, śatruघnaḥ** names of Rāma’s brothers
4. **sundara** (adjective) beautiful  
**śānta** (adjective) peaceful  
**vīra** strong (here an adjective—strong like a hero)
5. **snihyati** (3rd per. sing. verb) he loves (used with locative)
6. **mithilā** (fem.) city of Mithilā (The accusative is **mithilām**.)
7. **sītā** (fem.) Sītā (The accusative is **sītām**.)
8. The locative of **sītā** is **sītāyām**.

# 10

## LESSON TEN

Alphabet: The remaining **sandhi** rules

Grammar: Pronouns and adjectives  
The verb √**as**

Vocabulary: Adjectives and particles

**ALPHABET:  
REMAINING  
SANDHI RULES**

1. Here is the chart for the **sandhi** rules for final **t**, **n**, and **m**:

FINAL LETTER OF FIRST WORD:				INITIAL LETTER OF SECOND WORD:
t	n	m	vowels	
d	n <sup>1</sup>	m̤	g/gh	
j	ñ	m̤	j/jh	
ɖ	n̤	m̤	d/dh	
d̤	n̤	m̤	d/dh	
d̤	n̤	m̤	b/bh	
n	n̤	m̤	nasals (n/m)	
d	n̤	m̤	y/v	
d	n̤	m̤	r	
l̤	ml̤	m̤	l̤	
d(dh) <sup>3</sup>	n̤	m̤	h	
<hr/>				
t	n̤	m̤	k/kh	
c	ṁś	m̤	c/ch	
ṭ	ṁś	m̤	ṭ/ṭh	
t̤	ṁś	m̤	t/th	
t̤	n̤	m̤	p/ph	
c(ch) <sup>4</sup>	ñ(ch) <sup>2</sup>	m̤	ś	
t̤	n̤	m̤	ʂ/s	
t̤	n̤	m̤	end of line	

1. If the vowel before **n** is short, **n** becomes **nn**.
2. The following **ś** may become **ch**.
3. The following **h** becomes **dh**.
4. The following **ś** becomes **ch**.

Examples for this chart can be found on:

- p. 196 (for final **m**)
- pps. 205–207 (for final **n**)
- pps. 218 and 219 (for final **t**)

2. Many of the changes on this chart occur because the last letter of the first word is “getting ready” to say the first letter of the next word. This rule, which often involves a change of voicing, is called “regressive assimilation.” The prior sound is assimilated.
3. There are a few additional rules, which are used less often. They are discussed in Lesson 18.
4. There are no **sandhi** changes if the first word ends in a vowel (excluding **ḥ** and **m̐**) and the second word begins with a consonant.
5. At one time the manuscripts didn't have any breaks between words, sentences, or paragraphs in the written script. Fortunately, modern editions have introduced some spaces between words. Words are separated in **devanāgarī** as much as possible without changing how they are written and without adding a **virāma**.
6. Here are the cases that result in a break between words. After the **sandhi** has been applied, there is a break in the **devanāgarī** between words when the first word ends in a vowel, which includes **ḥ** or **m̐**. For example:

रामः गच्छति = रामो गच्छति (vowel)

रामः पृच्छति = रामः पृच्छति (ḥ)

रामम् गच्छामि = रामं गच्छामि (m̐)

rāmaḥ gacchati = rāmo gacchati (vowel)

rāmaḥ pṛechati = rāmaḥ pṛechati (ḥ)

rāmam gacchāmi = rāmam̐ gacchāmi (m̐)

7. If the first word ends in a vowel and the second word begins in a vowel and together they form a new vowel (**bhava** + **arjuna** = **bhavārjuna**), then there can be no break in **devanāgarī** or roman script. (See point 10 on page 90.)

**GRAMMAR:**  
**PRONOUNS**

1. Pronouns (**sarva-nāman**) decline exactly the same way that nouns decline. This table does not give, however, the endings, but the entire first person pronoun (I, we two, we, etc.):

Stems: **mad** (singular) I; **asmad** (plural) we. Both are any gender.

Nom.	अहम् aham	आवाम् āvām	वयम् vayam
I, we			
Acc. me, us	माम् मा mām (mā)	आवाम् नौ āvām (nau)	अस्मान् नः asmān (nah)
Inst. with me, us	मया mayā	आवाभ्याम् āvābhyaṁ	अस्माभिः asmābhiḥ
Dat. for me, us	मह्यम् मे mahyam (me)	आवाभ्याम् नौ āvābhyaṁ (nau)	अस्मभ्यम् नः asmabhyam (nah)
Abl. from me, us	मत् mat	आवाभ्याम् āvābhyaṁ	अस्मत् asmat
Gen. my, our	मम मे mama (me)	आवयोः नौ āvayoh (nau)	अस्माकम् नः asmākam (nah)
Loc. on me, us	मयि mayi	आवयोः āvayoh	अस्मासु asmāsu
	Singular	Dual	Plural

2. The Sanskrit words in parentheses are sometimes used. For example, **mā** is sometimes used instead of **mām** (except beginning a sentence).

3. Here is the second person pronoun (you):

Stems: **tvad** (singular) you; **yuṣmad** (plural) you. Both are any gender.

Nom.	<b>त्वम्</b> you	<b>युवाम्</b> yuvām	<b>यूयम्</b> yūyam
Acc.	<b>त्वाम् त्वा</b> you	<b>युवाम् वाम्</b> yuvām (vām)	<b>युष्मान् वः</b> yuṣmān (vah)
Inst.	<b>त्वया</b> with you	<b>युवाभ्याम्</b> yuvābhyaṁ	<b>युष्माभिः</b> yuṣmābhīḥ
Dat.	<b>तुभ्यम् ते</b> for you	<b>युवाभ्याम् वाम्</b> yuvābhyaṁ (vām)	<b>युष्मभ्यम् वः</b> yuṣmabhyam (vah)
Abl.	<b>त्वत्</b> from you	<b>युवाभ्याम्</b> yuvābhyaṁ	<b>युष्मत्</b> yuṣmat
Gen.	<b>तव ते</b> your	<b>युवयोः वाम्</b> yuvayoh (vām)	<b>युष्माकम् वः</b> yuṣmākam (vah)
• Loc.	<b>त्वयि</b> on you	<b>युवयोः</b> yuvayoh	<b>युष्मासु</b> yuṣmāsu
	Singular	Dual	Plural

## ADJECTIVES

4. Adjectives (**viśeṣaṇa**) are considered nominals (**subanta**), or noun forms. They are declined like nouns. They are usually placed before the noun that they modify and agree with it in number, case, and gender. For example, the adjective for “beautiful” is **sundara**:

सुन्दरो गजो गच्छति ।

sundaro gajo gacchati (with sandhi)

The beautiful elephant goes.

If a genitive is also modifying a noun, the genitive goes closest to the noun. For example:

सुन्दरो नृपस्य गजो गच्छति ।

sundaro nṛpasya gajo gacchati (with sandhi)

The beautiful elephant of the king goes.

सुन्दरस्य नृपस्य गजो गच्छति ।

sundarasya nṛpasya gajo gacchati (with sandhi)

The elephant of the beautiful king goes.

#### $\sqrt{AS}$

5. One of the most common roots in Sanskrit is  $\sqrt{as}$ , which means “to be.” We have had another root,  $\sqrt{bhū}$ , which also means “to be,” but  $\sqrt{as}$  is more common. It is used to mean “there is” and as a copula. For example:

There is the horse.

अश्वोऽस्ति

aśvo 'sti

Rāma is the king.

रामो नृपोऽस्ति

rāmo nṛpo 'sti

6. Here is the present indicative (*lat*) for *√as*. These are not the endings, but the entire verb:

Third	<b>आस्ति</b> asti	<b>स्तः</b> stah	<b>सन्ति</b> santi
Second	<b>आसि</b> asi	<b>स्थः</b> sthah	<b>स्थ</b> stha
First	<b>आस्मि</b> asmi <hr/> Singular	<b>स्वः</b> svah <hr/> Dual	<b>स्मः</b> smah <hr/> Plural

Note how closely this is related to the endings for the active verbs. Note also that the singular forms begin with **a**, and the dual and plural begin with **s**.

7. This verb is often understood. That is, the verb is meant, but is not written in the sentence. For example:

**रामो नृपोऽस्ति ।** or **नृपो रामः ।**  
**rāmo nṛpo 'sti**                                   **nṛpo rāmaḥ**  
Rāma is the king.   Rāma is the king.

Notice that when the verb is understood, the predicate nominative (king) is sometimes placed before the subject (Rāma).

8. Often this verb begins the sentence. For example:

**आस्ति नृपो दशरथो ग्रामे ।**  
**asti nṛpo daśaratho grāme**  
There is a king, Daśaratha, in the village.

VOCABULARY	SANSKRIT	ENGLISH
<b>अतीव</b>	atīva (ind.)	very
<b>अपि</b>	api (ind.)	also, too (placed after the word it is associated with)
<b>अस्</b>	√as (root) asti (3rd per. sing.)	he, she, or it is
<b>अस्मद्</b>	asmad (plural pro.)	we
<b>अहो</b>	aho (ind.)	aha! hey!
<b>एवम्</b>	evam (ind.)	thus, in this way
<b>कुपित</b>	kupita (adj.)	angry
<b>त्वद्</b>	tvad (sing. pro.)	you
<b>धार्मिक</b>	dhārmika (adj.)	virtuous
<b>नाम</b>	nāma (ind.)	by name (placed after the word it is associated with)
<b>पुनर्</b>	punar (ind.)	again
<b>भीत</b>	bhīta (adj.)	afraid
<b>मद्</b>	mad (sing. pro.)	I
<b>युष्मद्</b>	yuṣmad (plural pro.)	you
<b>सुन्दर</b>	sundara (adj.)	beautiful

**EXERCISES**

1. Put in the correct **sandhi**, write in **devanāgarī**, and translate:

- a. mama putraḥ gacchati
- b. tava gajah̄ mat tvām gacchati
- c. mama hastau pustakeṣu stah̄
- d. aham nṛpaḥ asmi
- e. vayam aśve tiṣṭhāmaḥ
- f. tvam mama pustakam paṭhasi
- g. rāmaḥ tava nṛpaḥ asti
- h. yūyam gr̄he stha
- i. asmākam nṛpaḥ kūpitah̄ asti
- j. tvayā saha aham gacchāmi
- k. dhārmikah̄ nṛpaḥ bhītaḥ asti
- l. sundarah̄ tvam

2. Take out the **sandhi** and translate the following:

- a. नृपस्य पुत्रोऽस्ति ।

- b. अहो रामः पुनर्वदति ।
- c. अहमतीव भीतो भवामि ।
- d. आचार्या अपि पुस्तकानि पठन्ति ।
- e. अस्ति नृपो रामो नाम वने ।
- f. कथं तव गृहं गच्छामीति शिष्यः पृच्छति ।
- g. वीरो मम ग्रामं जयति ।
- h. पुत्रः सुन्दरात्कलाञ्जलं लभते ।
- i. सुखेन विना दुःखमस्ति ।
- j. सुन्दरो गज इति पुत्रो मन्यते ।

3. Translate the following sentences, writing them first without **sandhi** (in **devanāgarī**) and then with **sandhi** (in **devanāgarī**):
- a. The student is not afraid of the teacher. (Use ablative for teacher.)
  - b. You obtain knowledge from the scriptures.
  - c. “The boy is there,” says the hero to the teacher.
  - d. I ask the teacher about the deer.
  - e. “Where are you going?” the boy asks.
  - f. Again the hero comes to my house.
  - g. Your teacher speaks the truth.
  - h. Our horses are standing in the village.
  - i. There is a king, Rāma by name, in our village.
  - j. How do I obtain the king's horses from you?

**SUMMARY SHEET**

Third	<b>gacchati</b>	<b>gacchataḥ</b>	<b>gacchanti</b>
	(he, she goes)	(they two go)	(they all go)
Second	<b>gacchasi</b>	<b>gacchathah</b>	<b>gacchatha</b>
	(you go)	(you two go)	(you all go)
First	<b>gacchāmi</b>	<b>gacchāvah</b>	<b>gacchāmah</b>
	(I go)	(we two go)	(we all go)
	[_____]	[_____]	[_____]
	Singular	Dual	Plural

**VERBS PRIMARILY TAKING ACTIVE ENDINGS (parasmaipada)**

ā + √gam	āgacchati	he comes
√gam	gacchati	he goes
√ji	jayati	he conquers
√paṭh	paṭhati	he reads
√paś (√dṛś)	paśyati	he sees
√prach	pṛcchati	he asks
√bhū	bhavati	he is
√vad	vadati	he speaks, he says
√vas	vasati	he lives
√sthā	tiṣṭhati	he stands
√smṛ	smarati	he remembers

Third	<b>bhāṣate</b> (he speaks)	<b>bhāṣete</b> (they two speak)	<b>bhāṣante</b> (they all speak)
Second	<b>bhāṣase</b> (you speak)	<b>bhāṣethē</b> (you two speak)	<b>bhāṣadhve</b> (you all speak)
First	<b>bhāṣe</b> (I speak)	<b>bhāṣāvahē</b> (we two speak)	<b>bhāṣāmahe</b> (we all speak)

|————|————|————|  
Singular      Dual      Plural

VERBS PRIMARILY TAKING MIDDLE ENDINGS (*ātmanepada*)

✓**bhāṣ**      **bhāṣate**      he speaks

✓**man**      **manyatē**      he thinks

✓**labh**      **labhate**      he obtains

✓**sev**      **sevate**      he serves

VERB REGULARLY TAKING BOTH ENDINGS (*ubhayapada*)

✓**cint**      **cintayati -te**      he thinks

THE VERB ✓**as**

Third	<b>asti</b>	<b>stah̄</b>	<b>santi</b>
Second	<b>asi</b>	<b>sthah̄</b>	<b>stha</b>
First	<b>asmī</b>  ————	<b>svah̄</b>  ————	<b>smaḥ</b>  ————

Singular      Dual      Plural

Charts for pronouns are listed on pages 307-311.

## MASCULINE NOUNS

Nom. (subject)	<b>narah</b>	<b>narau</b>	<b>narāḥ</b>
Acc. (object)	<b>naram</b>	<b>narau</b>	<b>narān</b>
Inst. (with)	<b>nareṇa*</b>	<b>narābhyaṁ</b>	<b>naraiḥ</b>
Dat. (for)	<b>narāya</b>	<b>narābhyaṁ</b>	<b>narebhyaḥ</b>
Abl. (from)	<b>narāt</b>	<b>narābhyaṁ</b>	<b>narebhyaḥ</b>
Gen. (of, 's)	<b>narasya</b>	<b>narayoh</b>	<b>narāṇām*</b>
Loc. (in, on)	<b>nare</b>	<b>narayoh</b>	<b>nareṣu</b>
Voc. (O)	<b>nara</b>	<b>narau</b>	<b>narāḥ</b>

Singular      Dual      Plural

\*gajena, gajānām (See page 46.)

<b>aśvah</b>	horse	<b>vīrah</b>	hero
<b>ācāryah</b>	teacher	<b>śisyah</b>	student
<b>gajah</b>	elephant	<b>sūryah</b>	sun
<b>grāmah</b>	village	<b>hastah</b>	hand
<b>candrah</b>	moon		
<b>narah</b>	man		
<b>nṛpah</b>	king		
<b>putrah</b>	son		
<b>bālah</b>	boy		
<b>mṛgah</b>	deer		
<b>rāmah</b>	Rāma		

## NEUTER NOUNS

Nom. (subject)	<b>phalam</b>	<b>phale</b>	<b>phalāni*</b>
Acc. (object)	<b>phalam</b>	<b>phale</b>	<b>phalāni*</b>
Inst. (with)	<b>phalena*</b>	<b>phalābhyaṁ</b>	<b>phalaiḥ</b>
Dat. (for)	<b>phalāya</b>	<b>phalābhyaṁ</b>	<b>phalebhyah</b>
Abl. (from)	<b>phalāt</b>	<b>phalābhyaṁ</b>	<b>phalebhyah</b>
Gen. (of, 's)	<b>phalasya</b>	<b>phalayoh</b>	<b>phalānām*</b>
Loc. (in, on)	<b>phale</b>	<b>phalayoh</b>	<b>phaleṣu</b>
Voc. (O)	<b>phala</b>	<b>phale</b>	<b>phalāni*</b>

Singular      Dual      Plural

\*śāstrāṇī, śāstreṇā, śāstrāṇām

<b>amṛtam</b>	immortality	<b>satyam</b>	truth
<b>gr̥ham</b>	house	<b>sukham</b>	happiness
<b>jalam</b>	water	<b>sūktam</b>	hymn
<b>jñānam</b>	knowledge		
<b>duḥkham</b>	suffering		
<b>pustakam</b>	book		
<b>phalam</b>	fruit		
<b>vanam</b>	forest		
<b>śāstram</b>	scripture		

## ADJECTIVES

<b>kupita</b>	angry
<b>dhārmika</b>	virtuous
<b>bhīta</b>	afraid
<b>sundara</b>	beautiful

## INDECLINABLES

<b>atīva</b>	very
<b>atra</b>	here
<b>api</b>	also, too (placed after the word it is associated with)
<b>aho</b>	aha! hey!
<b>iti</b>	end of quote
<b>eva</b>	only, ever
<b>evam</b>	thus, in this way
<b>katham</b>	how
<b>kutra</b>	where
<b>ca</b>	and
<b>tatra</b>	there
<b>na</b>	not
<b>nāma</b>	by name (placed after the word it is associated with)
<b>punar</b>	again
<b>vā</b>	or
<b>vinā</b>	without
<b>saha</b>	with

## LESSON ELEVEN

11

Alphabet: Internal sandhi rules

Grammar: Feminine nouns in *ā* and third person pronouns

Vocabulary: Feminine nouns

**ALPHABET:  
INTERNAL  
SANDHI**

1. We will learn only two internal **sandhi** rules at this time. These need not be memorized, but are mainly for recognition.
2. The first rule is that **s** changes to **ʂ** if immediately preceded by any vowel but **a** or **ā**, or preceded by **k** or **r**. The rule does not apply if the **s** is final or followed by an **r**. It applies even if an **anusvāra** (**m̐**) or **visarga** (**h̐**) comes between the vowel, **k**, or **r**—and the **s**. This rule is clearer in chart form:

any vowel	in spite of	changes <b>s</b>	unless final
(but <b>a</b> or <b>ā</b> ),	intervening	to <b>ʂ</b>	or followed
<b>k</b> , or <b>r</b>	<b>m̐</b> or <b>h̐</b>		immediately
			by <b>r</b>

3. If the sound following the **s** is **t**, **ʈh**, or **n**, it is also retroflexed. For example:

**sthā** becomes **tiṣṭhati**

4. The second rule is that **n** changes to **ɳ** if preceded anywhere in the same word by **r**, **ṛ**, **ṝ**, or **ʂ**. Certain sounds may interrupt the process. Study this chart:

<b>r</b>	unless <b>c</b> , <b>ch</b> , <b>j</b> , <b>jh</b> , <b>ñ</b> ,	changes <b>n</b>	if followed by
<b>ṛ</b>	<b>ʈ</b> , <b>ʈh</b> , <b>d</b> , <b>ɖh</b> , <b>ɳ</b> ,	to <b>ɳ</b>	vowels, <b>m</b> , <b>y</b> ,
<b>ṝ</b>	<b>t</b> , <b>th</b> , <b>d</b> , <b>ɖh</b> ,		<b>v</b> , or <b>n</b>
or <b>ʂ</b>	<b>l</b> , <b>ś</b> , <b>s</b> interferes		

5. Retroflex sounds, such as **r**, **r̥**, **ṛ**, and **s̥**, leave the tongue in a retroflexed position. Unless certain sounds interfere, such as retroflex sounds of the releasing type, like **t̥**, or sounds from the row above or below, then **n** becomes retroflexed. (The **ka varga** and **pa varga** don't seem to move the tongue enough to change out of the retroflex position.) For example:

**rāmeṇa** (The **r** changes the **n** to **ɳ**.)  
**putreṇa** (The **r** changes the **n** to **ɳ**.)  
**putrāṇām** (The **r** changes the **n** to **ɳ**.)

6. In this chart, the sounds which could interfere are in bold. They are all the consonants in three rows except for **ya**:

ka	kha	ga	gha	ña	ha	
<b>ca</b>	<b>cha</b>	<b>ja</b>	<b>jha</b>	<b>ñā</b>	<b>ya</b>	<b>śa</b>
<b>ṭa</b>	<b>ṭha</b>	<b>ḍa</b>	<b>ḍha</b>	<b>ɳa</b>	<b>ra</b>	<b>ʂa</b>
<b>ta</b>	<b>tha</b>	<b>da</b>	<b>dha</b>	<b>na</b>	<b>la</b>	<b>sa</b>
pa	pha	ba	bha	ma	va	

7. If another **n** immediately follows the **n**, they both become **ɳɳ**.

**GRAMMAR:**  
**FEMININE**  
**NOUNS IN Ā**

- There are standard endings to nouns, and it will help to compare all future declensions with the standard endings. Some declensions follow these endings more closely than other declensions. The standard endings are the same for all genders, except the neuter nominative and neuter accusative, which are **m**, **ī**, and **i**.

	mas/fem n	mas/fem n	mas/fem n
Nom.	s	m	au ī as i
Acc.	am	m	au ī as i
Inst.	ā		bhyām bhis
Dat.	e		bhyām bhyas
Abl.	as		bhyām bhyas
Gen.	as	os	ām
Loc.	i	os	su
	Singular	Dual	Plural

These endings are generally applied to most stems using **sandhi** rules. For example, the masculine nominative plural standard ending is **as**. When **as** is added to **nara**, the word for “men” becomes **narās** (**narāḥ** with **sandhi**). These standard endings are listed by **Pāṇini** in a **sūtra** (4.1.2) that begins with **su** and ends with **p**. **Pāṇini** therefore calls the nominal endings **sup**.

- On the following page is the declension for feminine nouns ending with **ā** in their stem form:

Stem: **senā** (feminine) army

Nom.	सेना senā	सेने sene	सेनाः senāḥ
Acc.	सेनाम् senām	सेने sene	सेनाः senāḥ
Inst.	सेनया senayā	सेनाभ्याम् senābhyaṁ	सेनाभिः senābhiḥ
Dat.	सेनायै senāyai	सेनाभ्याम् senābhyaṁ	सेनाभ्यः senābhyaḥ
Abl.	सेनायाः senāyāḥ	सेनाभ्याम् senābhyaṁ	सेनाभ्यः senābhyaḥ
Gen.	सेनायाः senāyāḥ	सेनयोः senayoh	सेनानाम् senānām
Loc.	सेनायाम् senāyām	सेनयोः senayoh	सेनासु senāsu
Voc.	सेने sene	सेने sene	सेनाः senāḥ
	Singular	Dual	Plural

3. Feminine nouns must have feminine adjectives. Masculine and neuter adjectives normally are declined like **nara** and **phala**. If the noun is feminine, the adjective is declined like ā or ī stems. (The feminine stem ending in ī will be studied in Lesson 13.) The dictionary will indicate how the feminine adjective is formed. For example:

**kupita** mf(ā)n      **bhīta** mf(ā)n  
**dhārmika** mf(ī)n      **sundara** mf(ī)n

If the dictionary entry is marked (mf), the word is an adjective, and the feminine adjective is usually formed with ā.

### THIRD PERSON PRONOUNS

4. While the first and second person pronoun have only one declension, the third person pronoun has three declensions—one for each gender:

Stem: **tad** (masculine) he

Nom. (he, they)	सः sah	तौ tau	ते te
Acc. (him, them)	तम् tam	तौ tau	तान् tān
Inst. (with him, them)	तेन tena	ताभ्याम् tābhyaṁ	तैः taiḥ
Dat. (for him, them)	तस्मै tasmai	ताभ्याम् tābhyaṁ	तेभ्यः tebhyaḥ
Abl. (from him, them)	तस्मात् tasmāt	ताभ्याम् tābhyaṁ	तेभ्यः tebhyaḥ
Gen. (his, their)	तस्य tasya	तयोः tayoh	तेषाम् teṣām
Loc. (on him, them)	तस्मिन् tasmin	तयोः tayoh	तेषु teṣu
	Singular	Dual	Plural

5. With **sandhi**, **sah**, the masculine nominative singular, drops the final **ḥ** before all consonants and all vowels but **a**. It usually appears as **sa**. At the end of a line, it appears as **sah**, and before **a** it appears as **so** (and the **a** is dropped). For example:

<b>स गच्छति</b>	<b>सोऽत्र</b>
<b>sa gacchati</b>	<b>so 'tra</b>
He goes.	He is here.

6. Here is the neuter third person pronoun:

Stem: **tad** (neuter) it

Nom. (it)	<b>तत्</b> tat	<b>ते</b> te	<b>तानि</b> tāni
Acc. (it—object)	<b>तत्</b> tat	<b>ते</b> te	<b>तानि</b> tāni
Inst. (with it)	<b>तेन</b> tena	<b>ताभ्याम्</b> tābhyaṁ	<b>तैः</b> taiḥ
Dat. (for it)	<b>तस्मै</b> tasmai	<b>ताभ्याम्</b> tābhyaṁ	<b>तेभ्यः</b> tebhyaḥ
Abl. (from it )	<b>तस्मात्</b> tasmāt	<b>ताभ्याम्</b> tābhyaṁ	<b>तेभ्यः</b> tebhyaḥ
Gen. (of it, its)	<b>तस्य</b> tasya	<b>तयोः</b> tayoh	<b>तेषाम्</b> teṣām
Loc. (on it )	<b>तस्मिन्</b> tasmin <small>Singular</small>	<b>तयोः</b> tayoh <small>Dual</small>	<b>तेषु</b> teṣu <small>Plural</small>

7. Notice that the nominative and accusative are the only forms in which the neuter differs from the masculine.

8. Here is the feminine third person pronoun:

Stem: **tad** (feminine) she

Nom. (she, they)	<b>सा</b> <b>sā</b>	<b>ते</b> <b>te</b>	<b>ताः</b> <b>tāḥ</b>
Acc. (her, them)	<b>ताम्</b> <b>tām</b>	<b>ते</b> <b>te</b>	<b>ताः</b> <b>tāḥ</b>
Inst. (with her, them)	<b>तया</b> <b>tayā</b>	<b>ताभ्याम्</b> <b>tābhyaṁ</b>	<b>ताभिः</b> <b>tābhīḥ</b>
Dat. (for her, them)	<b>तस्यै</b> <b>tasyai</b>	<b>ताभ्याम्</b> <b>tābhyaṁ</b>	<b>ताभ्यः</b> <b>tābhyaḥ</b>
Abl. (from her, them)	<b>तस्याः</b> <b>tasyāḥ</b>	<b>ताभ्याम्</b> <b>tābhyaṁ</b>	<b>ताभ्यः</b> <b>tābhyaḥ</b>
Gen. (her, their)	<b>तस्याः</b> <b>tasyāḥ</b>	<b>तयोः</b> <b>tayoh</b>	<b>तासाम्</b> <b>tāsām</b>
Loc. (on her, them)	<b>तस्याम्</b> <b>tasyām</b> Singular	<b>तयोः</b> <b>tayoh</b> Dual	<b>तासु</b> <b>tāsu</b> Plural

9. The third person pronoun can act as a pronoun or a demonstrative pronoun meaning “that.” For example:

**स गच्छति ।**

**sa gacchati**

He goes. (“He” is a pronoun.)

**स नरो गच्छति ।**

**sa naro gacchati**

That man goes. (“That” is a demonstrative pronoun.)

The demonstrative pronoun is usually referred to in English as a demonstrative adjective. In Sanskrit, it is called a pronoun.

10. The demonstrative pronoun goes in front of the noun it is used with and corresponds to the noun in case, gender, and number. For example:

**स बालो गच्छति ।**

**sa bālo gacchati**

That boy goes.

**बालस्तं ग्रामं गच्छति ।**

**bālas tam grāmam gacchati**

The boy goes to that village.

#### IVA

11. The word “*iva*” indicates “like” or “as if.” For example:

**नृप इव बालो वदति ।**

**nṛpa iva bālo vadati.**

The boy speaks like a king.

**VOCABULARY****SANSKRIT****ENGLISH**

<b>अविद्या</b>	<b>avidyā</b> (fem.)	ignorance
<b>इव</b>	<b>iva</b> (ind.)	as if, like (used after verbs, nouns or adjectives)
<b>कथा</b>	<b>kathā</b> (fem.)	story
<b>कन्या</b>	<b>kanyā</b> (fem.)	girl
<b>कुपिता</b>	<b>kupitā</b> (fem. adj.)	angry
<b>छाया</b>	<b>chāyā</b> (fem.)	shadow
<b>पुत्रिका</b>	<b>putrikā</b> (fem.)	daughter
<b>प्रजा</b>	<b>prajā</b> (fem.)	child, subject (of a king)
<b>बाला</b>	<b>bālā</b> (fem.)	girl
<b>भार्या</b>	<b>bhāryā</b> (fem.)	wife
<b>भीता</b>	<b>bhītā</b> (fem. adj.)	afraid
<b>माला</b>	<b>mālā</b> (fem.)	garland
<b>विद्या</b>	<b>vidyā</b> (fem.)	knowledge
<b>सीता</b>	<b>sītā</b> (fem.)	Sītā (wife of Rāma)
<b>सेना</b>	<b>senā</b> (fem.)	army

## EXERCISES

1. Write in **devanāgarī**, with correct internal and external **sandhi**, and translate. Use the vocabulary list and tables located in the back of the text.

- |                          |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| a. rāmena saha           | h. tām gacchati           |
| b. śāstrāni              | i. saḥ bālah gacchati     |
| c. phale aśve stah       | j. sā bālā gacchati       |
| d. saḥ gacchati          | k. saḥ bālah iva gacchāmi |
| e. saḥ bālah āgacchati   | l. aho rāma               |
| f. bālah mām āgacchati   | m. tasmin vane saḥ vasati |
| g. sā bālā mām āgacchati | n. sītāyāḥ mālā           |

2. Take out the **sandhi** and translate the following:

- a. सा सेना नृपं जयति ।
- b. राम इव बालो धार्मिकोऽस्ति ।
- c. तव प्रजा कथां पठति ।
- d. गजस्य छायायां प्रजास्तिष्ठन्ति । (Notice that ch becomes cch after a short vowel. See p. 230 #5.)

- e. नृपस्य पुत्रिका सीतास्ति ।
- f. स आचार्यस्य भार्या सेवते ।
- g. नृपस्य पुत्रिका ।
- h. विद्यया शिष्योऽमृतं लभते ।
- i. सा बालेव सीता गृहं गच्छति ।

3. Translate the following into Sanskrit, including **sandhi**, and then write in **devanāgarī**:

- a. There is a girl, Sītā by name, in that village.
- b. The daughter of the virtuous king is very afraid.
- c. “He tells me again,” that subject says.
- d. “Aha! I remember that story!” the girl says.
- e. With knowledge, you obtain immortality; with ignorance, you obtain suffering.
- f. Like those girls, Sītā reads books.
- g. “Where is our daughter?” the hero asks his wife.

- h. The wife of Rāma is Sītā.
- i. The hero obtains a garland and thus obtains a wife.
- j. "Without Sītā, I am as if without the sun," Rāma says.

**THE MONKEY AND THE CROCODILE** 4. Translate the following story. The vocabulary is given afterward:

- a. अस्ति गङ्गायां कुम्भीरः ।
- b. वानरस्तस्य मित्रं गङ्गायास्तटे वसति ।
- c. प्रतिदिनं वानरः पक्वानि फलानि निक्षिपति ।
- d. कुम्भीरः फलानि खादति ।
- e. वानरस्य हृदयं मिष्टमस्तीति कुम्भीरस्य भार्या वदति ।
- f. भार्या हृदयं खादितुमिच्छति ।
- g. अहो वानर मम गृहमागच्छेति कुम्भीरो वानरं वदति ।
- h. एवमस्त्विति वानरो वदति ।
- i. तस्य पृष्ठे कुम्भीरो वानरं वहति ।

- j. गङ्गाया मध्ये कुम्भीरः सत्यं वदति ।
- k. मम हृदयं वृक्षे भवतीति वानरो भाषते ।
- l. पुनर्मा तत्र नयेति वानरो भाषते ।
- m. कुम्भीरो वानरं गङ्गायास्तटं नयति ।
- n. वानरो वृक्षमुच्छलति ।
- o. वानरो वृक्षस्य बिले पश्यति ।
- p. कथिन्मम हृदयं चोरयति स्मेति वानरो वदति ।
- q. एवं कुम्भीरो वानरश्च मित्रे तिष्ठतः ।

**VOCABULARY**

- a. **gaṅgā** (fem., ā declension) Ganges  
**kumbhīraḥ** (mas.) crocodile
- b. **mitram** (n.) friend  
**vānarah** (mas.) monkey. Appears first as an appositional (his friend, a monkey)  
**taṭah** (mas.) bank (of the river)
- c. **pratidinam** (ind.) everyday  
**pakva mf(ā)n** (adj.) ripe  
**nikṣipati** (3rd per. sing.) he throws down
- d. **khādati** (3rd per. sing.) he eats

- e. **hṛdayam** (n.) heart  
**miṣṭa** mf(ā)n (adj.) sweet  
**bhāryā** (fem., ā declension) wife
- f. **khāditum** (infinitive—treated like an accusative) to eat  
**icchati** (3rd per. sing.) he wants (**khāditum icchati** = he wants to eat)
- g. **āgaccha** (2nd per. sing. imperative)
- h. **evam astu** (ind.) O.K., so let it be
- i. **prṣṭham** (n.) back  
**vahati** (3rd per. sing.) he carries
- j. **madhyam** (n.) middle
- k. **vṛksaḥ** (mas.) tree
- l. **nayati** (3rd per. sing.) he takes, he carries. Second person imperative is **naya** (combined with **iti** is **nayeti**).
- m. **uechhalati** (3rd per. sing.) he jumps up
- o. **bilam** (n.) hole
- p. **kaḥ** (mas. pronoun) who  
**cit** (ind.) (makes **kaḥ** indefinite)  
**kaścit** someone  
**corayati** (3rd per. sing.) he steals  
**sma** (ind.) makes verb before it in past tense
- q. **tiṣṭhati** (3rd per. sing.) he remains

---

# 12

## LESSON TWELVE

Alphabet:      Numerals; cardinal and ordinal numbers

Grammar:      Nouns in **i** and the gerund

Vocabulary:      Nouns in **i**

**ALPHABET:  
NUMBERS**

1. Here are the numerals (*samkhyā*) and cardinal numbers from one to ten. Alternate forms for some numerals are given in parentheses.

	NUMERALS	CARDINAL NUMBERS	
Arabic	<i>devanāgarī</i>	English	Sanskrit
1.	१	one	एक eka
2.	२	two	द्वि dvi
3.	३	three	त्रि tri
4.	४	four	चतुर् catur
5.	५ (५)	five	पञ्च pañca
6.	६	six	षष् ṣas
7.	७	seven	सप्ता sapta
8.	८ (८)	eight	अष्टा aṣṭa
9.	९ (९)	nine	नवा nava
10.	१०	ten	दश daśa

2. The *devanāgarī* numerals combine just like Arabic numerals (since Arabic numerals were formed from Sanskrit). For example:

11      ११

12      १२

13      १३

20      २०

3. For now, we will not use the cardinal numbers (**eka**, **dvi**, etc.) as part of the sentences, since their declensions are complex. At the end of each sentence in the exercises, we will use the numerals (१, २, ३, etc.).

4. Here are the ordinal numbers:

First	<b>prathama</b>	Sixth	<b>śaṣṭha</b>
Second	<b>dvitiya</b>	Seventh	<b>saptama</b>
Third	<b>trtiya</b>	Eighth	<b>aṣṭama</b>
Fourth	<b>caturtha</b> (or <b>turiya</b> )	Ninth	<b>navama</b>
Fifth	<b>pañcama</b>	Tenth	<b>daśama</b>

5. The ordinal numbers will be used in the exercises, because their declensions are easier than the cardinal numbers. The ordinal numbers are used like adjectives, going before the noun they modify and agreeing with it in gender and case. The number will be singular.
6. The ordinal numbers follow the short **a** declension for the masculine and neuter. Here are the feminine stems. (The feminine **ī** will be learned in Lesson 13.)

First	<b>prathamā</b>	Sixth	<b>śaṣṭhī</b>
Second	<b>dvitīyā</b>	Seventh	<b>saptamī</b>
Third	<b>trtiyā</b>	Eighth	<b>aṣṭamī</b>
Fourth	<b>caturthī</b> (or <b>turiyā</b> )	Ninth	<b>navamī</b>
Fifth	<b>pañcamī</b>	Tenth	<b>daśamī</b>

Compare the **devanāgarī** numerals with other scripts:

COMPARATIVE TABLE OF NUMERALS

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
Hieratic	1	4	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	5
Gupta	-	-	2	4	9	1	5	3	7	0
Malediva	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
Lepcha	9	2	3	5	6	1	7	4	8	0
Tibetan	7	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
Nepali	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
Devanāgarī	9	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
Kashmiri	3	3	3	1	4	2	5	3	6	.
Bengali	১	২	৩	৪	৫	৬	৭	৮	৯	০
Assamese	১	২	৩	৪	৫	৬	৭	৮	৯	০
Telugu	ఏ	ఎ	ట్లు	ప్రు	ప్రు	ఎ	ఎ	ఎ	ఎ	ఎ
Tamil	ஒ	ஒ	ஒ	ஒ	ஒ	ஒ	ஒ	ஒ	ஒ	ஒ
Malabar	ஏ	ஒ	ஒ	ஒ	ஒ	ஒ	ஒ	ஒ	ஒ	.
Sinhalese	ඇ	ඇ	ඇ	ඇ	ඇ	ඇ	ඇ	ඇ	ඇ	ඇ
Burmese	၅	၂	၃	၄	၅	၆	၇	၈	၉	၀
Siamese	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥
Cambodian	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥
" (simplified)	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥
Javanese	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥	៥

7. Compare the cardinal numbers with numbers from several Romance languages:

English	Sanskrit	Italian	French	Spanish
one	eka	uno	un	uno
two	dvi	due	deux	dos
three	tri	tre	trois	tres
four	catur	quattro	quatre	cuatro
five	pañca	cinque	cinq	cinco
six	ṣaṣ	sei	six	seis
seven	sapta	sette	sept	siete
eight	aṣṭa	otto	huit	ochos
nine	nava	nove	neuf	nueve
ten	daśa	dieci	dix	diez

**GRAMMAR:**  
**NOUNS IN I**

1. Here are the masculine and feminine declensions for **i** nouns. They differ only in the accusative plural and the instrumental singular.

Stem: **agni** (masculine) fire; **kīrti** (feminine) glory

Nom.	अग्निः agnih	अग्नी agnī	अग्नयः agnayah
Acc.	अग्निम् agnim	अग्नी agnī	अग्नीन् कीर्तीः agnin / kīrtih
Inst.	अग्निना कीर्त्या agninā / kīrtyā	अग्निभ्याम् agnibhyām	अग्निभिः agnibhiḥ
Dat.	अग्नये कीर्त्यै agnaye (kīrtyai)	अग्निभ्याम् agnibhyām	अग्निभ्यः agnibhyah
Abl.	अग्ने: कीर्त्याः agneh (kīrtyāḥ)	अग्निभ्याम् agnibhyām	अग्निभ्यः agnibhyah
Gen.	अग्ने: कीर्त्याः agneh (kīrtyāḥ)	अग्न्योः agnyoḥ	अग्नीनाम् agninām
Loc.	अग्नौ कीर्त्याम् agnau (kīrtyām)	अग्न्योः agnyoḥ	अग्निषु agnisu
Voc.	अग्ने agnē	अग्नी agnī	अग्नयः agnayah
	Singular	Dual	Plural

2. The singular dative, ablative, genitive, and locative have an optional feminine form. For example, the feminine dative singular is **kīrtaye** or **kīrtayai**. The feminine instrumental singular is **kīrtyā** only.

## THE GERUND

3. Now we will study the gerund, which is a participle. A participle is formed from a verb, but does not take verb endings (*tin*). The gerund (*ktvānta*) indicates prior action. The sentence, “Rāma speaks and goes,” could be formed with a gerund. It would be: “Having spoken, Rāma goes.” “Having spoken” is the gerund.

**uditvā rāmo gacchati**  
Having spoken, Rāma goes.  
 (gerund)

4. Because the gerund continues the action, it is sometimes called a continuative or conjunctive participle.
5. The gerund is used with only one subject.
6. The gerund has the meaning of doing something first, whether the main verb is past, present, or future. A series of gerunds may be used, but they must always be followed by a main verb. Each gerund follows in time the one before it, and the main verb comes last in time, as well as position in the sentence. For example:

**gajam dṛṣṭvā jalām labdhvā rāmo gacchati**  
 Having seen the elephant, having obtained water, Rāma goes.

7. There are several alternative translations:

Seeing the elephant, obtaining water, Rāma goes.  
 After seeing the elephant and after obtaining water, Rāma goes.  
 After having seen the elephant and after having obtained water, Rāma goes.

8. Everything that goes with the gerund, such as the accusative, is usually placed immediately before it. (See the example in #6.)
9. The gerund is easy to recognize because it is not declined. It is sometimes called the absolutive, because it stays in the same form. It is usually formed from the root by adding **-tvā** to the end (called **ktvā** by Pāṇini). If there is a prefix, **-ya** is added at the end (**lyap**).
10. Here are the forms for the gerund ( $\sqrt{}$  as has no gerund):

<u>Root</u>	<u>3rd Per. Sing.</u>	<u>Gerund</u>	
$\bar{a} + \sqrt{gam}$	$\bar{a}gacchati$	$\bar{a}gamyā$	having come (also $\bar{a}gatyā$ )
$\sqrt{gam}$	$gacchati$	$gatvā$	having gone
$\sqrt{cint}$	$cintayati -te$	$cintayitvā$	having thought
$\sqrt{ji}$	$jayati$	$jitvā$	having conquered
$\sqrt{dr̥ś} (paś)$	$paśyati$	$dr̥ṣṭvā$	having seen
$\sqrt{paṭh}$	$paṭhati$	$paṭhitvā$	having read
$\sqrt{prach}$	$pr̥echati$	$pr̥ṣṭvā$	having asked
$\sqrt{bhāṣ}$	$bhāṣate$	$bhāṣitvā$	having said
$\sqrt{bhū}$	$bhavati$	$bhūtvā$	having been
$\sqrt{man}$	$manyate$	$matvā$	having thought
$\sqrt{labh}$	$labhate$	$labdhvā$	having obtained
$\sqrt{vad}$	$vadati$	$uditvā$	having said
$\sqrt{vas}$	$vasati$	$uṣitvā$	having lived
$\sqrt{sev}$	$sevate$	$sevitvā$	having served
$\sqrt{sthā}$	$tiṣṭhati$	$sthitvā$	having stood
$\sqrt{smṛ}$	$smarati$	$smṛtvā$	having remembered

VOCABULARY	SANSKRIT	ENGLISH
आग्नि:	agnih (mas.)	fire
आतिथि:	atithih (mas.)	guest
ऋषि:	r̥ṣih (mas.)	seer, sage
कवि:	kavih (mas.)	poet
कीर्ति:	kīrtih (fem.)	glory, fame
भूमि:	bhūmih (fem.)	earth
शान्ति:	śāntih (fem.)	peace
सिद्धः	siddhaḥ (mas.)	one who attains perfection
सिद्धा	siddhā (fem.)	one who attains perfection
सिद्धिः	siddhiḥ (fem.)	perfection, attainment, proof

**EXERCISES**

1. Translate the following sentences. Use the vocabulary and tables listed at the end of the text.

a. अग्निं दृश्या गृहादश्वो गच्छति ।१।

b. शिष्यो ग्रामे वसति ।२।

c. ऋषयः शास्त्राणां सूक्तानि पश्यन्ति ।३।

d. नृपो दशममतिथिं सेवते ।४।

e. ग्रामं जित्वा वीरः कीर्तिं लभते ।५।

f. सिद्धो ग्रामे वसति ।६।

g. अहो राम कुत्र गच्छसीति द्वितीयो वीरः  
पृच्छति ।७।

h. पुस्तकं पठित्वा कविस्तद्विन्तयति ।८।

i. सत्येन सह शान्तिरागच्छति ।६।

j. भूमौ वसाम इति प्रजा वदन्ति ।१०।

2. Write the following sentences in Sanskrit:

- a. After conquering the army, the hero obtains fame on earth.
- b. Like Sītā and Rāma, the student goes to the forest.
- c. After serving her third guest, Sītā speaks to Rāma.
- d. In the story, Rāma obtains fame.
- e. The hero does not conquer ignorance.
- f. The king, Rāma by name, is very virtuous.
- g. “How do you obtain perfection?” the second student asks.
- h. Having lived in the forest with his wife, the king, Rāma by name, goes to the village.
- i. Having obtained peace, perfection, and glory, the seer goes to the beautiful forest.
- j. Thus having seen his wife on the elephant, the hero goes to her.

# 13

## LESSON THIRTEEN

Alphabet: The **sandhi** rules for combining vowels

Grammar: Feminine nouns in **i**  
Relative-correlative clauses

Vocabulary: Nouns in **i**  
Relative and correlative adverbs

**ALPHABET:**  
**VOWEL SANDHI**

- The following chart shows the changes that vowels often undergo. These changes are called **guṇa** and **vṛddhi** changes:

a	a	ā	
ā	ā	ā	
i, ī	e	ai	y
u, ū	o	au	v
r̥	ar̥	ār̥	r̥
l̥	al̥	āl̥	l̥
	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
	guṇa	vṛddhi	Corresponding Semi-vowel

- This important chart will help you understand how vowels combine in both internal and external **sandhi**. Later on, it will help you understand how roots are strengthened (by **guṇa** or **vṛddhi**) to form verbs and nominals. For example:

√vid	veda	vaidya
√div	deva	daivika
√yuj	yoga	yaugika
√dhṛ	dharma	dhārmika
[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
Root	guṇa	vṛddhi

- Memorize the above chart and then memorize the **sandhi** rules for combining vowels that follow:

4. SIMILAR VOWELS

ā + ā = ā

राम + अश्वः = रामाश्वः

rāma + aśvah = rāmāśvah

$\breve{i} + \breve{i} = \bar{i}$

गच्छति + इति = गच्छतीति  
gacchatati + iti = gacchatīti

$\breve{u} + \breve{u} = \bar{u}$

गुरु + उप = गुरूप  
guru + upa = gurūpa

$\breve{r} + \breve{r} = \bar{r}$

पितृ + ऋषि = पितृषि  
pitṛ + ṛṣi = pitṛṣi

These rules apply first. Then the following rules apply.

#### 5. DISSIMILAR VOWELS

$\breve{i}$  + vowel = yvowel ("vowel" means any short or long vowel)

गच्छति + अश्वम् =

गच्छत्यश्वम्  
gacchatati + aśvam =  
gacchaty aśvam

$\breve{u}$  + vowel = vvowel

गुरु + अश्वम् = गुर्वश्वम्  
guru + aśvam = gurv aśvam

$\breve{r}$  + vowel = rvowel

पितृ + अत्र = पित्रत्र  
pitṛ + atra = pitr atra

6. e + a = e'

ग्रामे + अत्र = ग्रामेऽत्र  
grāme + atra = grāme 'tra

e + vowel = a vowel

ग्रामे + इति = ग्राम इति  
grāme + iti = grāma iti

7. ai + vowel = ā vowel

तस्मै + अत्र = तस्मा अत्र  
tasmai + atra = tasmā atra

An o seldom occurs in a final position before sandhi is applied.

au + vowel = ā vowel

गजौ + इति = गजाविति  
gajau + iti = gajāv iti

## 8. FINAL "a" FOLLOWED BY DISSIMILAR VOWELS

ā + ī = e

तत्र + इति = तत्रेति  
tatra + iti = tatreti

ā + ū = o

कठ + उपनिषद् = कठोपनिषद्  
kaṭha + upaniṣad = kaṭhopaniṣad

ā + ṛ = ar

सत्य + ऋतम् = सत्यर्तम्  
satya + ṛtam = satya rtam

ā + e, ai = ai

तत्र + एव = तत्रैव

tatra + eva = tatraiva

ā + o, au = au

अत्र + ओकः = अत्रौकः

atra + okah = atraukah

9. Some vowels (*pragrhya*) are not subject to sandhi. They are:

- a. the letters ī, ū, and e, when they serve as dual endings. For example, bāle āgacchataḥ (The two girls come.) needs no sandhi.
- b. the final vowel of an interjection (usually a vocative). For example, aho aśva (O horse!) needs no sandhi.

**GRAMMAR:**  
**NOUNS IN I**

1. Here is the declension for feminine nouns ending with **ī** in their stem form:

Stem: **nadī** (feminine) river

Nom.	नदी nadi	नद्यौ nadyau	नद्यः nadyah
Acc.	नदीम् nadīm	नद्यौ nadyau	नदीः nadīḥ
Inst.	नद्या nadyā	नदीभ्याम् nadībhyaṁ	नदीभिः nadībhīḥ
Dat.	नद्यै nadyai	नदीभ्याम् nadībhyaṁ	नदीभ्यः nadībhyaḥ
Abl.	नद्याः nadyāḥ	नदीभ्याम् nadībhyaṁ	नदीभ्यः nadībhyaḥ
Gen.	नद्याः nadyāḥ	नद्योः nadyoh	नदीनाम् nadīnām
Loc.	नद्याम् nadyām	नद्योः nadyoh	नदीषु nadīṣu
Voc.	नदि nadi <hr/> Singular	नद्यौ nadyau <hr/> Dual	नद्यः nadyah <hr/> Plural

## **RELATIVE- CORRELATIVE CLAUSES**

2. Now we will learn about relative and correlative clauses. In English, the sentence “I see where the king lives,” contains two separate clauses: “I see” and “where the king lives.” The sentence contains a subordinate, or relative clause (“where the king lives”), and an independent or correlative clause (“I see”). For example:

I see where the king lives.

|\_\_\_\_\_| \_\_\_\_\_ |  
correlative relative

3. In Sanskrit, the relative clause usually goes first and the correlative goes second. The relative clause is introduced by a relative adverb (indeclinable) and the correlative clause by a correlative adverb.

Where the king lives, there I see.

|\_\_\_\_\_ | |\_\_\_\_\_|  
relative clause correlative clause

Where the king lives, there I see.

|\_\_\_\_\_| |\_\_\_\_\_|  
relative adverb correlative adverb

**yatra nr̥po vasati tatra aham paśyāmi**

|\_\_\_\_\_ | |\_\_\_\_\_ |  
relative clause correlative clause

**yatra nr̥po vasati tatra aham paśyāmi**

|\_\_\_\_\_| |\_\_\_\_\_|  
relative adverb correlative adverb

4. Here are the relative adverbs and their correlative partners (none are declined):

<b>yataḥ</b>	since, when	<b>tataḥ</b>	therefore
<b>yatra</b>	where	<b>tatra</b>	there
<b>yathā</b>	since	<b>tathā</b>	so, therefore
<b>yadā</b>	when	<b>tadā</b>	then
<b>yadi</b>	if	<b>tadā</b>	then

5. Here are some examples:

When he goes, then I remember.

**yadā gacchati tadā smarāmi**

I go if you go. (becomes)

If you go, then I go.

**yadi gacchasi tadā gacchāmi**

You obtain fruit where the forest is. (becomes)

Where the forest is, there you obtain fruit.

**yatra vanam asti tatra phalāni labhase**

6. There is also a relative-correlative pronoun, **yad** and **tad** ("who" and "he"). This construction would be used to translate this sentence:

The man who goes is the king.

| \_\_\_\_\_ |  
relative clause

7. In Sanskrit, the relative clause contains the relative pronoun **yad**, and the correlative clause contains the correlative pronoun **tad**. Sometimes the correlative pronoun may be omitted. The pronoun **yad** follows the declension of **tad** (See p.177.):

who man goes, he is the king  
 \_\_\_\_\_ | \_\_\_\_\_  
 relative clause    correlative clause

**yo naro gacchati sa nr̥po 'sti**  
 \_\_\_\_\_ | \_\_\_\_\_  
 relative clause    correlative clause

8. Both “who” (**yo**) and “he” (**sa**) refer back to the man, who is called the antecedent. In English, the antecedent goes directly before the relative pronoun (who). In Sanskrit, the antecedent usually follows the relative pronoun (**who**) or the correlative pronoun (**he**):

who man goes, he is the king  
**yo naro gacchati sa nr̥po 'sti**  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 antecedent

or

who goes, that man is the king  
**yo gacchati sa naro nr̥po 'sti**  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 antecedent

9. The relative and correlative pronouns take the gender and number of the antecedent. The case of the antecedent depends upon its role in each clause. Study the following examples:

I see the man who is going. (becomes)

which man is going, him I see

**yo naro gacchati tam paśyāmi**

\_\_\_\_\_ |  
antecedent

\_\_\_\_\_ | | \_\_\_\_\_ |  
relative clause      correlative clause

or

who is going, that man I see

**yo gacchati tam naram paśyāmi**

\_\_\_\_\_ |  
antecedent  
\_\_\_\_\_ | | \_\_\_\_\_ |  
relative clause      correlative clause

The king sees the elephant on which I stand. (becomes)

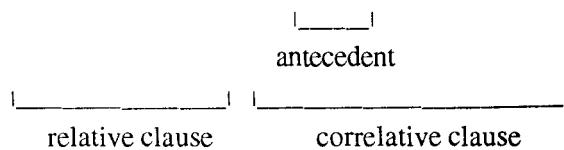
on which elephant I stand, him the king sees

**yasmin gaje tiṣṭhāmi tam nṛpaḥ paśyati**

\_\_\_\_\_ |  
antecedent  
\_\_\_\_\_ | | \_\_\_\_\_ |  
relative clause      correlative clause

or

on which I stand, that elephant the king sees  
*yasmims tiṣṭhāmi tam gajam nrpaḥ paśyati*



10. Notice that the relative pronoun (**yad**) and the correlative pronoun (**tad**) agree with each other in gender and number, but may differ in case. Like the antecedent, the relative word and the correlative word take a case (**vibhakti**) that is determined by their role in the clause. Study the following examples:

I see the man with whom Rāma goes.  
 (becomes)  
 with which man Rāma goes, him I see

**येन नरेण सह रामो गच्छति तमहं पश्यामि ।**  
*yena nareṇa saha rāmo gacchati tam aham paśyāmi*

or

with whom Rāma goes, that man I see

**येन रामो गच्छति तं नरमहं पश्यामि ।**  
*yena rāmo gacchati tam naram aham paśyāmi*

Rāma lives in the village from which I am coming.  
 (becomes)  
 from which village I am coming, in it Rāma lives

**यस्मादग्रामादागच्छामि तस्मिन्नामो वसति ।**  
 yasmād grāmād āgacchāmi tasmin rāmo vasati  
 or  
 from which I am coming in that village Rāma lives

**यस्मादागच्छामि तस्मिन्नामे रामो वसति ।**  
 yasmād āgacchāmi tasmin grāme rāmo vasati

11. The pronoun **yad** follows the same declension as **tad** (mas., n., fem.), except that the masculine nominative singular follows normal **sandhi** rules, and therefore appears as **yah**, **yo**, etc. Observe, for example, the masculine:

Stem: **yad** (masculine) who, what, which

Nom. (who)	यः	यौ	ये
Acc. (whom)	यम्	यौ	यान्
Inst. (with whom)	येन	याभ्याम्	यैः
Dat. (for whom)	यस्मै	याभ्याम्	येभ्यः
Abl. (from whom)	यस्मात्	याभ्याम्	येभ्यः
Gen. (whose)	यस्य	ययोः	येषम्
Loc. (on whom)	यस्मिन्	ययोः	येषु

**VOCABULARY****SANSKRIT****ENGLISH**

**धार्मिकी** dhārmikī (fem. adj.)      virtuous

**नदी** nadi (fem.)      river

**पत्नी** patnī (fem.)      wife

**मित्रम्** mitram (n.)      friend

**यद्** yad (pro.)      who, what, which

**वापी** vāpi (fem.)      pond

**सुन्दरी** sundari (fem. adj.)      beautiful

**SANSKRIT****ENGLISH****SANSKRIT****ENGLISH**

(relative adverbs)      (correlative adverbs)

**यतः** yataḥ      since, when      **ततः** tataḥ      therefore

**यत्र** yatra      where      **तत्र** tatra      there

**यथा** yathā      since, as      **तथा** tathā      so, therefore

**यदा** yadā      when      **तदा** tadā      then

**यदि** yadi      if      **तदा** tadā      then

**EXERCISES**

1. Translate the following:

- a. यत्र शान्तिस्तत्र सिद्धिः ।१।
- b. या मम पत्न्याः पुत्रिकास्ति सा बालात्र वसति ।२।
- c. सीता सुन्दरी नृपस्य पुत्रिकास्तीति रामो वदति ।३।
- d. यथाश्वा अत्र नागच्छन्ति तथा नरा बालाश्व तत्र  
गच्छन्ति ।४।
- e. नर्दी गत्वा मित्रे पुस्तकानि पठतः ।५।
- f. यदा सेना नृपं सेवते तदा धार्मिको नृपो जयति ।६।
- g. यदि नरः सिद्धिं लभते तदा स ऋषिर्भवते ।७।

h. यस्तस्यातिरिक्तवति तस्मै बालाय कविः कथां

पठति । ८।

i. नरो मित्रेण सह सुन्दरीं नदीं गच्छति । ६।

j. यस्मादहमागच्छामि तं ग्रामं वीरः स्मरति । १०।

2. Translate the following into Sanskrit:

- The boy obtains water from the river.
- The wife sees the fruit which is in the pond.
- Having obtained a garland, our guest goes to the village.
- He lives like a king when his wife serves him.
- Sītā, who is the wife of Rāma, obtains fame on earth.
- The virtuous king sees the boy who is coming.
- The student, having thought, asks the poet about the river.
- That beautiful wife lives without suffering.
- Ignorance is like a shadow for the man who sees.
- When the daughter of the king comes, then the subjects stand.

# 14

## LESSON FOURTEEN

Alphabet: The **sandhi** rules for final **h**

Grammar: Verb prefixes and the imperfect active

Vocabulary: More verbs

## **ALPHABET: SANDHI RULES FOR FINAL h**

Now we will memorize the **sandhi** rules for words ending in **h**. These rules were presented in charts in Lesson 9. Both charts in Lesson 9 present the same rules, but it will be easier to follow the structure of the second chart on page 111. While the first word ends in **h**, the second word may begin with any letter of the alphabet. Notice that the chart breaks the alphabet into three parts. The chart is arranged according to which section of the alphabet the second word begins. Here is one way of dividing the alphabet in order to learn these rules:

(c) Unvoiced consonants      (b) Voiced consonants

(a) If the second word begins in a vowel, there are four rules:

Second word begins in any of the following:

a	ā
i	ī
u	ū
ṛ	ṝ
l	
e	ai
	o
	au

- (1) If the first word ends in **aḥ** and the second begins in **a**, the **aḥ** changes to **o**, and **a** is deleted (marked by an apostrophe in roman script or **avagraha** in **devanāgarī**). For example:

$$aḥ + a = o'$$

रामः + अत्र = रामोऽत्र  
rāmaḥ + atra = rāmo 'tra

- (2) If the first word ends in **aḥ** and the second word begins in any vowel (except **a**), **aḥ** changes to **a:**

$$aḥ + \text{vowel} = a \text{ vowel}$$

रामः + आगच्छति = राम आगच्छति  
rāmaḥ + āgacchati = rāma āgacchati

- (3) If the first word ends in **āḥ** and the second word begins in any vowel, **āḥ** changes to **ā**:

**āḥ + vowel = ā + vowel**

**नराः + इति = नरा इति**  
**narāḥ + iti = narā iti**

- (4) If the first word ends in any other vowel before the final **ḥ**, and the second word begins in a vowel, then the **ḥ** changes to **r**. For example:

**oḥ + vowel = orvowel**

**नद्योः + अत्र = नद्योरत्र**  
**nadyoḥ + atra = nadyor atra**

- (b) If the second word begins in a voiced consonant, there are three rules:

Second word begins in :

ga	gha	ña
ja	jha	ñā
ḍa	ḍha	ṇā
da	dha	na
ba	bha	ma
ya	ra	la
		va ha

(1) If the first word ends in **aḥ**, it becomes **o**:

**aḥ + voiced consonant = o voiced consonant**

**रामः + गच्छति = रामो गच्छति**  
**rāmah + gacchati = rāmo gacchati**

(2) If the first word ends in **āḥ**, it becomes **ā**:

**āḥ + voiced consonant = ā voiced consonant**

**नराḥ + गच्छन्ति = नरा गच्छन्ति**  
**narāḥ + gacchanti = narā gacchanti**

(3) If the first word ends in any other vowel before the final **ḥ**, the **ḥ** becomes **r** (unless the second word begins with an **r**). For example:

**oḥ + voiced consonant = orvoiced consonant**

**नरयोः + गच्छति = नरयोर्गच्छति**  
**narayoh + gacchati = narayor gacchati**

A double **r** does not occur. If the second word begins in **r**, the first **r** is dropped and the preceding vowel made long, if it is short.

Note that the last two rules (2 and 3) are the similar to the rules (3 and 4) for second words beginning in a vowel.

(c) For the third group, the second word begins in an unvoiced consonant. For this group, the rules are the same when the first word ends in **aḥ**, **āḥ**, or any other vowel before the **ḥ**. There are four rules:

Second word begins in:

ka	kha	
ca	cha	
ṭa	ṭha	
ta	tha	
pa	pha	
śa	ṣa	sa      end of line

(1) If the second word begins in **ca** or **cha**, the **ḥ** (with any vowel preceding it) changes to **ś**. For example:

**aḥ + ca = aśca**

रामः + च = रामश्च  
rāmaḥ + ca = rāmaś ca

(2) If the second word begins in **ṭa** or **ṭha**, the **ḥ** changes to **ṣ**:

**aḥ + ṭ = aṣṭ**

रामः + टीका = रामषीका  
rāmaḥ + ṭīkā = rāmaṣ ṭīkā

- (3) If the second word begins in **ta** or **tha**, the **h** becomes **s**:

**aḥ + ta = asta**

**रामः + तत्र = रामस्तत्र**

**rāmaḥ + tatra = rāmas tatra**

The above three rules might best be learned visually, using the **devanāgarī** script. In each case the **h** becomes the sibilant that corresponds with the following letter, whether palatal (**ca, cha**), retroflex (**ṭa, ṭha**), or dental (**ta, tha**):

श	श्छ	ष्ट	ष्ट	स्त	स्थ
śca	ścha	ṣṭa	ṣṭha	sta	stha

- (4) All other unvoiced consonants (**ka, kha, pa, pha, śa, ḍa, and sa**) cause the **h** to stay **h**. The end of the line also causes the **h** to stay **h**. For example:

**aḥ + k = aḥ k**

**रामः + कुत्र = रामः कुत्र**

**rāmaḥ + kutra = rāmaḥ kutra**

**GRAMMAR:**  
**VERB PREFIXES**

1. Verb prefixes (*upasarga*) are placed before verbs to modify the basic meaning of the verb. They are used much like verb prefixes in English, such as “receive” and “perceive.” We have already learned one prefix, *ā*, which changes “he goes” (*gacchati*) to “he comes” (*āgacchati*).
2. Here are two additional prefixes:

<b>upa</b>	towards, near
<b>upagacchati</b>	he goes toward, he approaches
<b>prati</b>	back to, against
<b>pratigacchati</b>	he goes back to, he returns.

**THE IMPERFECT**

3. The imperfect (*lāñ*) indicates past action. It is traditionally described as action done “not of today,” (*anadyatana*), or in the past. It is formed by putting an augment (*āgama*), *a*, before the present stem. The *a* is called “maker of the past tense” (*bhūta-karaṇa*). The imperfect uses slightly different endings, called secondary endings, or the imperfect endings. For example:

<b>a + gaccha + t becomes agacchat</b>	he went
<b>a + vada + t becomes avadat</b>	he spoke
<b>[ ] [ ] [ ] [ ]</b>	
augment stem ending	imperfect

## **IMPERFECT ACTIVE VERBS**

4. Here is the formation for the imperfect:

3rd	अगच्छत् agacchat	अगच्छतम् agacchatām	अगच्छन् agacchan
2nd	अगच्छः agacchah	अगच्छतम् agacchatam	अगच्छत agacchata
1st	अगच्छम् agaccham	अगच्छाव agacchāva	अगच्छाम agacchāma

Note that the imperfect active endings are listed on p. 317.

5. Here are the endings for the present indicative that we have already learned. Notice that the imperfect has similar endings, but shorter:

3rd	गच्छति gacchati	गच्छतः gacchataḥ	गच्छन्ति gacchanti
2nd	गच्छसि gacchasi	गच्छथः gacchathah	गच्छथ gacchatha
1st	गच्छामि gacchāmi	गच्छावः gacchāvah	गच्छामः gacchāmah
	Singular	Dual	Plural

6. The imperfect puts the augment, **a**, after the prefix but before the stem. The **sandhi** rules apply here. Study these examples:

प्रति+ अ + गच्छ + त् = प्रत्यगच्छत्

prati + a + gaccha + t = pratyagacchat  
he returned

|\_\_\_\_\_| |\_\_\_\_\_| |\_\_\_\_\_| |\_\_\_\_\_| |\_\_\_\_\_|  
prefix augment stem ending imperfect

उप + अ + गच्छ + त् = उपागच्छत्

upa + a + gaccha + t = upāgacchat  
he approached

आ + अ + गच्छ - अ + अम् = आगच्छम्

ā + a + gaccha - a + am = āgaccham  
I came

7. Often a prefix may affect whether a verb takes active or middle endings. The dictionary will indicate which endings should be used.

VOCABULARY	SANSKRIT	ENGLISH
आ + नी	आनयति	
ā + √nī (active)*	ānayati	he brings
उप + गम्	उपगच्छति	
upa + √gam (active)	upagacchati	he goes toward, approaches
गुप्	गोपायति	
√gup (active)	gopāyati	he protects
नी	नयति	
√nī (ubhayapada)*	nayati -te	he leads
पा	पिबति	
√pā (active)	pibati	he drinks
प्रति + गम्	प्रतिगच्छति	
prati + √gam (active)	pratigacchati	he goes back, returns
बुध्	बोधति	
√budh (ubhayapada)	bodhati -te	he knows
हस्	हसति	
√has (active)	hasati	he laughs

The gerund forms for each of these verbs is listed in the back of the text (pages 312-314). Remember that if a verb has a prefix, it forms a gerund with **-ya** rather than **-tvā**.

\*Note that √nī and √budh are **ubhayapada**, but ā + √nī is active.

## EXERCISES

1. Memorize the **sandhi** rules that take place when the first word ends in **ḥ**.

2. Memorize the endings for the imperfect active.

3. Translate the following sentences into English:

a. यदा शिष्यो जलमानयति तदाचार्यस्तत्पिबति ।१।

b. बालो वार्षी गजाननयत् ।२।

c. यो नरो ग्राममुपगच्छति तं कविर्वदति ।३।

d. वीरः कुपितान्नपाद्रामं गोपायतीति रामोऽवदत् ।४।

e. वाप्यां गजं दृष्टिरहसदहसञ्च ।५।

f. सुन्दरीं तव पर्णीं बोधामीति कन्या वीरमवदत् ।६।

g. यस्मिन् गृहे पत्न्यवसत्तसा प्रत्यगच्छत् ।७।

h. ऋषिः शान्तिं सत्यं सिद्धिममृतं सुखं च बोधति ।८।

i. वीरः सेनाया ग्राममगोपायत् ।९।

j. सुन्दरं नृपं दृश्या बालोऽहसत् ।१०।

4. Translate the following into Sanskrit:

- a. The poet read the book as if he were drinking water.
- b. The hero asked, "How do I protect the village from the army?"
- c. How did sages live without fire?
- d. If the horses go back to the river, then the boy leads them to the forest. (Use double accusative.)
- e. When a man does not know suffering, then he approaches perfection.

- f. The king, named Rāma, brought his wife, Sītā, a garland.
- g. By means of knowledge, a man conquers ignorance.
- h. The child drank the water which came from the river.
- i. Having seen the river, the girl returned to her house.
- j. The boy led the horses from the forest to the river. (double accusative)

# 15

## LESSON FIFTEEN

Alphabet: The **sandhi** rules for final **m**

Grammar: More verb prefixes and the imperfect middle

Vocabulary: More verbs

**ALPHABET:  
SANDHI RULES  
FOR FINAL M**

1. If the first word ends in **m**, there are only two rules:

- (a) If the next word begins in a consonant, the **m** becomes **ṁ** and is pronounced (and could be written) as the nasal corresponding to the first letter of the next word. For example:

पुत्रम् + गच्छामि = पुत्रं गच्छामि

putram + gacchāmi = putraṁ gacchāmi

- (b) If the next word begins in a vowel or the **m** is at the end of a line, the **m** remains the same. The **m** remains the same because the mouth is not preparing to close at a specific point of contact as it would if the next word began with a consonant. For example:

पुत्रम् + आगच्छामि = पुत्रमागच्छामि

putram + āgacchāmi = putram āgacchāmi

**GRAMMAR:**  
**VERB PREFIXES**

1. Here are two more verb prefixes. Some prefixes hardly change the meaning of the original stem, while others change the meaning:

ud                    up, up out  
 uttiṣṭhati        he stands up  
 (The d changes to t because of sandhi.)  
 udbhavati        he is born

ava                    down, away, off  
 avagacchati        he goes down, understands

2. Here is a list of the major prefixes (given in Pāṇini 1.4.58). Prefixes can also be used in front of nouns.

**अति** ati across, beyond, surpassing, past (*atīndriya*, beyond the senses; *atyanta*, beyond the end, infinite)

**अथि** adhi above, over, on (*adhyātma*, pertaining to the Self; *adhiviśva*, above all, responsible for the universe)

**अनु** anu after, following (*anusvāra*, “after sound”)

**अप** apa away, off (*apāna*, downward breath, elimination)

**अपि** api on, close on (*apihita*, placed into)

**अभि** abhi to, against (*abhyāṅga*, rubbing against)

**अव** ava down, away, off (*avatāra*, crossing down)

**आ** ā back, return, to, fully (*ācāra*, to go toward, conduct; *ācārya*, teacher of conduct)

<b>उद्</b>	<b>ud</b>	up, up out ( <b>udāna</b> , upward breath)
<b>उप</b>	<b>upa</b>	towards, near, subordinate ( <b>upaniṣad</b> , sit down near; <b>upasarga</b> , “discharged near,” prefix)
<b>दुस्</b>	<b>dus</b>	ill, bad, difficult, hard ( <b>duṣkṛta</b> , badly done; <b>duḥkham</b> , suffering) (usually used with nouns)
<b>नि</b>	<b>ni</b>	down, into ( <b>upaniṣad</b> , sit down near)
<b>निस्</b>	<b>nis</b>	out from, forth, without, entirely ( <b>nistraiguṇya</b> , without the three <b>guṇas</b> )
<b>परा</b>	<b>parā</b>	away, forth, along, off ( <b>parāśara</b> , “crusher”)
<b>परि</b>	<b>pari</b>	around, about ( <b>parināma</b> , transformation)
<b>प्र</b>	<b>pra</b>	forward, onward, forth ( <b>prāṇa</b> , vital breath; <b>prakṛti</b> , nature)
<b>प्रति</b>	<b>prati</b>	back to, in reverse direction, every ( <b>pratyāhāra</b> , food from the reverse direction)
<b>वि</b>	<b>vi</b>	apart, away, out ( <b>vyāna</b> , moving breath, circulation)
<b>सम्</b>	<b>sam</b>	together ( <b>samāna</b> , even breath, digestion; <b>samskrta</b> , put together, perfected)
<b>सु</b>	<b>su</b>	well, very, good, right, easy ( <b>sukṛta</b> , well-done; <b>sukham</b> , happiness) (usually used with nouns)

## IMPERFECT MIDDLE

3. Here is the imperfect middle, which is also used as a past tense:

Root:  $\sqrt{bhās}$  (middle) speak

3rd	अभाषत abħāṣata	अभाषेताम् abħāṣetām	अभाषन्त abħāṣanta
2nd	अभाषथा: abħāṣathāḥ	अभाषेथाम् abħāṣethām	अभाषध्वम् abħāṣadhwam
1st	अभाषे abħāṣe	अभाषावहि abħāṣāvahi	अभाषामहि abħāṣāmahī

Note that the endings are given on page 317.

4. Compare the imperfect endings with the present indicative endings.

3rd	भाषते bhāṣate	भाषेते bhāṣete	भाषन्ते bhāṣante
2nd	भाषसे bhāṣase	भाषेथे bhāṣethē	भाषध्वे bhāṣadhve
1st	भाषे bhāṣe	भाषावहे bhāṣāvahē	भाषामहे bhāṣāmahe
	Singular	Dual	Plural

## VOCABULARY

## SANSKRIT

## ENGLISH

**अव + गम्**      अवगच्छति  
 ava + √gam (active) avagacchati

he understands

**उद् + भू**      उद्भवति  
 ud + √bhū (active) udbhavati

he is born

**उद् + स्था**      उत्तिष्ठति  
 ud + √sthā (active) uttisṭhati

he stands up

**रम्**      रमते  
 √ram (middle) ramate

he enjoys

**शुभ्**      शोभते  
 √śubh (middle) śobhate

he shines

**स्मि**      स्मयते  
 √smi (middle) smayate

he smiles

The gerund forms for each of these verbs is listed at the back of the text (pages 312–314).

**EXERCISES**

1. Memorize the **sandhi** rules that take place when the first word ends in **m**.
2. Memorize the endings for the imperfect middle.
3. Translate the following sentences into English:
  - a. कथामवगत्य कविरस्मयत ।१।
  - b. रामः सीता च नद्यां जलमरमेताम् ।२।
  - c. यदातिथिरुपागच्छति तदा बाला उत्तिष्ठन्ति ।३।
  - d. यदातिथिरुपागच्छत्तदा बाला उदतिष्ठन् ।४।
  - e. यत्र शान्तिस्तत्र सुखं ।५।
  - f. पुत्रिका नृपस्य गृह उद्भवति ।६।
  - g. विद्ययाविद्यां जित्वा सूर्य इवर्षिः शोभते ।७।

h. अहो राम कथं तस्मिन्गज उत्तिष्ठसीति बालो

अपृच्छत् ।८।

i. वने फलानि रत्वा वीरस्य पत्नी गृहं प्रत्यगच्छत् ।९।

j. यो बालस्तस्य पुत्रस्तं रामोऽस्मयत ।१०।

k. यदाचार्योऽवदत्तदा शिष्या उदतिष्ठन् ।११।

4. Translate the following sentences into Sanskrit:

- a. Since the guest enjoyed the fruit, (therefore) he returns to the house again.
- b. Having smiled, Sītā spoke to the beautiful girl.
- c. Having come from the elephant, the boy approached that village.
- d. He understands that the man has a son.
- e. After drinking the water from the fruit, the girl stands up.

- f. When the moon shines, then you see shadows in the forest.
- g. When the boy sees the elephant, then he smiles and laughs.
- h. The man and his wife enjoy that beautiful house.
- i. When his son was born, the hero smiled.
- j. The girl obtained fruit from the man who is standing.
- k. When the sun shines on the moon, then the moon shines on us.

# 16

## LESSON SIXTEEN

Alphabet: The **sandhi** rules for final **n**

Grammar: Nouns in **an**  
The imperfect for √ as  
The **dvandva** compound

Vocabulary: Nouns in **an**  
More adjectives

**ALPHABET:**  
**SANDHI RULES**  
**FOR FINAL N**

1. Now we will learn the **sandhi** rules for when the first word ends in **n**. In the majority of cases it remains unchanged. The chart below contains eight rules (a - h) in which **n** changes.
2. For each rule, those letters in the alphabet that are in bold represent the first letter of the second word, which causes the change. The letters outside the alphabet are the change the **n** undergoes. See the examples on the following pages.

preceding  
**n** becomes

preceding  
**n** becomes

	a	ā				
	i	ī				
	u	ū			nn (e)	
	r	ṛ			(if preceded by	
	l				a short vowel)	
	e	ai				
	o	au				
	ka	kha	ga	gha	ñā	
(a) mś	ca	cha	ja	jha	ñā	ñ (f)
(b) mṣ	ṭa	ṭha	ḍa	ḍha	ṇa	ṇ (g)
(c) mṣ	ta	tha	da	dha	na	
	pa	pha	ba	bha	ma	
			ya	ra	la va	ml (h)
(d) ñ (ch)	śa	ṣa	sa	ha		
			end of line			

3. Here are examples for each of these eight rules:

(a) तस्मिन् + च = तस्मिंश्च  
tasmin + ca = tasmīṁś ca

नरान् + च = नरांश्च  
narān + ca = narāṁś ca  
etc.

(b) नरान् + ट = नरांष्ट  
narān + ṭa = narāṁṣ ṭa

(c) नरान् + तत्र = नरांस्तत्र  
narān + tatra = narāṁs tatra

(d) नरान् + शोभन्ते = नराङ्गोभन्ते  
narān + śobhante = narāñ chobhante

or (rarely)  
नरान् + शोभन्ते = नराङ्शोभन्ते  
narān + śobhante = narāñ śobhante

(e) राजन् + अत्र = राजनत्र  
rājan + atra = rājann atra

नरान् + अत्र = नरानत्र  
narān + atra = narān atra

(f) नरान् + जयति = नराञ्जयति  
 narān + jayati = narāñ jayati

(g) नरान् + डा = नरारण्डा  
 narān + ḍa = narāñ ḍa

(h) नरान् + लभते = नरांल्लभते  
 narān + labhate = narāñl labhate

**GRAMMAR:**  
**NOUNS IN AN**

1. Here is the declension for nouns ending in an:

Stem: **rājan** (masculine) king; **ātman** (masculine) Self

Nom.	राजा rājā	राजानौ rājānau	राजानः rājānah
Acc.	राजानम् rājānam	राजानौ rājānau	राजः आत्मनः rājñah/ātmanah
Inst.	राजा आत्मना rājñā/ātmanā	राजभ्याम् rājabhyām	राजभिः rājabhiḥ
Dat.	राजे आत्मने rājñe/ātmane	राजभ्याम् rājabhyām	राजभ्यः rājabhyah
Abl.	राजः आत्मनः rājñah/ātmanah	राजभ्याम् rājabhyām	राजभ्यः rājabhyah
Gen.	राजः आत्मनः rājñah / ātmanah	राजोः आत्मनोः rājñoh / ātmanoh	राजाम् आत्मनाम् rājñām / ātmanām
Loc.	राजि आत्मनि rājni/ātmani	राजोः आत्मनोः rājñoh/ātmanoh	राजसु rājasu
Voc.	राजन् rājan	राजानौ rājānau	राजानः rājānah
	Singular	Dual	Plural

2. Note that the only difference between **rājan** and **ātman** is that since the tmn combination cannot occur, **ātman** always keeps the **a** before the **n**. Sometimes that **a** may be long. If so, the form is considered strong. The neuter is similar to the masculine:

Stem: **nāman** (neuter) name

Nom.	<b>नाम</b> nāma	<b>नामी नामनी</b> nāmī/nāmani	<b>नामानि</b> nāmāni
Acc.	<b>नाम</b> nāma	<b>नामी नामनी</b> nāmī/nāmani	<b>नामानि</b> nāmāni
Inst.	<b>नाम्ना</b> nāmnā	<b>नामभ्याम्</b> nāmabhyām	<b>नामभिः</b> nāmabhiḥ
Dat.	<b>नामे</b> nāmne	<b>नामभ्याम्</b> nāmabhyām	<b>नामभ्यः</b> nāmabhyah
Abl.	<b>नामः</b> nāmnaḥ	<b>नामभ्याम्</b> nāmabhyām	<b>नामभ्यः</b> nāmabhyah
Gen.	<b>नामः</b> nāmnaḥ	<b>नामोः</b> nāmnoḥ	<b>नामाम्</b> nāmnām
Loc.	<b>नाम्नि नामनि</b> nāmni/nāmani	<b>नामोः</b> nāmnoḥ	<b>नामसु</b> nāmasu
Voc.	<b>नामन् नाम</b> nāman/nāma  Singular	<b>नामी नामनी</b> nāmī/nāmani  Dual	<b>नामानि</b> nāmāni  Plural

**THE IMPERFECT  
FOR √AS**

3. Here is the imperfect for √as:

3rd	आसीत् āśit	आस्ताम् āstām	आसन् āsan
2nd	आसीः āśīḥ	आस्तम् āstam	आस्त āsta
1st	आसम् āsam	आस्व āsva	आस्म āsma

[ Singular                      Dual                      Plural ]

Remember that these are not the endings, but the entire verb.

**THE DVANDVA  
COMPOUND**

4. Now we will begin our study of compounds (*samāsa*). Sanskrit has several different types of compounds, which are members joined together to create one unit. In *devanāgarī*, compounds are written without a break. With transliteration, in this text the members of a compound are joined by a hyphen, when **sandhi** permits. For example:

एकवचन eka-vacana (singular number)

5. Nominal compounds join nouns, adjectives, or pronouns. They are usually formed by taking the base form (**nara**, **phala**, etc.) and putting them together, using **sandhi** rules. Generally only the last member is declined, and prior members have loss (**luk**) of case ending (**sup**).
6. The first type of compound that we will study is the **dvandva** compound. A **dvandva** (related to the word “dual”) is a series of

equal items that would normally be joined by “and.” For example, “Sītā and Rāma” could be written as a **dvandva** compound:

सीतारामौ  
sītā-rāmau

7. All compounds may undergo an analysis (*vigraha*), which is how the words would appear if the compound were dissolved. For example:

सीतारामौ	<i>vigraha:</i>	सीता रामश्च
sītā-rāmau		sītā rāmaś ca
“Sītā-Rāma”	<i>analysis:</i>	Sītā and Rāma

8. This **dvandva** (above) is called an *itaretara-dvandva*, because it names its members in a distributive sense. (See #13.) In it, the last member is in the dual because two persons are named.
9. If more than two persons are named, the last member is in the plural. For example:

आचार्यशिष्याः	<i>vigraha:</i>	आचार्यः शिष्याश्च
ācārya-śiṣyāḥ		ācāryaḥ śiṣyāś ca
“teacher-students”	<i>analysis:</i>	the teacher and students

10. A **dvandva** with three members is always plural. For example:

अश्वगजमृगाः	<i>vigraha:</i>	अश्वो गजो मृगाश्च
aśva-gaja-mṛgāḥ		aśvo gajo mṛgāś ca
“horse-elephant-deer”	<i>analysis:</i>	horse, elephant and deer

11. The gender is determined by the last item named. For example:

रामसीते	vigraha:	रामः सीता च
rāma-sīte		rāmaḥ sītā ca
“Rāma-Sīte”	analysis:	Rāma and Sītā

12. The first member is in its stem form even if it refers to something plural. Because of this, there is sometimes ambiguity concerning whether a member is singular, dual, or plural. For example:

आचार्यशिष्याः	could be analyzed as:
“teacher-students”	teacher and students (or)
	teachers and student (or)
	teachers and students

You must judge the correct translation by the context, and in most contexts, the first example would be what is meant: “the teacher and the students.”

13. There is an additional kind of **dvandva**, called **samāhāra**, in which the ending is always singular and neuter. The members are referred to collectively as a single unit. The meaning of the individual members is not as important as the collective sense of the whole compound. Often pairs of opposites are put in **samāhāra-dvandva** form. For example:

सुखदुःखम्	vigraha:	सुखं दुःखं च
sukha-duḥkham		sukhaṁ duḥkhaṁ ca
“happiness-suffering”	analysis:	happiness and suffering

14. Words ending in **-an** usually act in compounds like words that end in **-a**. For example, **ātman** is often reduced to **ātma**, when it is

prior to the last member of the compound. Some words, such as **rājan**, take the -a ending as a prior member and also as the last member of the compound. For example:

<b>राजरामौ</b>	
<b>rāja-rāmau</b>	The king and Rāma

<b>रामराजौ</b>	
<b>rāma-rājau</b>	Rāma and the king

## THE NEGATIVE COMPOUND

15. Another type of compound is negating, or the negative compound (**nañ**, or negative **samāsa**). A noun can be negated by placing **a** before it. For example:

<b>विद्या</b>	<b>अविद्या</b>
<b>vidyā</b>	<b>avidyā</b>
knowledge	ignorance

16. A gerund is also negated with **a**. If the gerund begins with **a**, and there is no prefix, the ending is **-tvā**. For example:

<b>अगत्वा</b>	
<b>agatvā</b>	not having gone

17. If the word begins with a vowel, then it is negated with **an**. For example:

<b>अनुदित्वा</b>	
<b>anuditvā</b>	not having spoken

**VOCABULARY****SANSKRIT****ENGLISH****आत्मा****ātmā** (mas.)Self (usually has capital "S"  
(follows the **aN** declension)**कर्म****karma** (n.)action (**aN** declension)**कृष्ण****kṛṣṇa** mf(ā)n (adj.)

black

**कृष्णः****kṛṣṇah** (mas. noun)

Kṛṣṇa

**नाम****nāma** (n.)name (**aN** declension)**प्रिय****priya** mf(ā)n (adj.)

dear, beloved

**रमणीय****ramanīya** mf(ā)n (adj.)

pleasant

**राजा****rājā** (mas.)king (**aN** declension)**शुक्ल****śukla** mf(ā)n (adj.)

white

**शोभन****śobhana** mf(ā or ī)n (adj.)

shining, bright, beautiful

**EXERCISES**

1. Memorize the **sandhi** rules for final **n**.
2. Memorize the masculine and neuter for the **an** declension.
3. Memorize the imperfect of  $\sqrt{as}$ .
4. Review the formation of **dvandva** compounds.
5. Translate the following sentences into English:
  - a. कृष्णोऽश्वमृगगजानगोपायत् ।१।
  - b. प्रियो राजा रामो ग्रामस्य बालानस्मयत ।२।
  - c. कन्या प्रजां सूर्यात्तस्याशछाययागोपायत् ।३।
  - d. य आत्मानं बोधति स कर्माणि रमते ।४।
  - e. प्रजा कृष्णस्याश्वस्य कर्माहसत् ।५।
  - f. यदा सा तस्य नामावदत्तदा बाल उदतिष्ठत् ।६।
  - g. प्रियं तस्य पुत्रमुपगत्य वीरोऽस्मयत ।७।

h. बालबाले शोभनस्य राज्ञः प्रजे स्तः ।८।

i. शुक्ला अश्वा वन आसन् ।९।

j. आसीद्राजा रामो नाम ग्रामे ।१०।

6. Translate the following sentences into Sanskrit:

- a. The black horse drinks the water from the river.
- b. He who knows the Self enjoys action and inaction.
- c. The king's name was Kṛṣṇa.
- d. The king enjoys the pleasant actions of the son.
- e. The beloved hero understood perfection and imperfection (success and failure).
- f. The boy comes from the elephant and returns to the house.
- g. That which neither comes nor goes is the Self.
- h. When the king approached, the boys and girls stood up.
- i. The man who was king came from the black forest.
- j. Knowledge of the Self is knowledge also of the sun and the moon.

# 17

## LESSON SEVENTEEN

Alphabet: The **sandhi** rules for final **t**

Grammar: Nouns ending in **r** and the future tense

Vocabulary: Nouns in **r**

**ALPHABET:  
SANDHI RULES  
FOR FINAL T**

- When the first word ends in **t**, in the majority of cases it remains the same if the following letter is unvoiced, and it changes to **d** if the following letter is voiced. Those letters which are in bold are exceptions. See the examples that follow.

**t remains t**  
except:

**t changes**  
**to d except**

			a	ā		
			i	ī		
			u	ū		
			r̥	r̥		
			l̥			
			e	ai	(before all nasals)	
			o	au		n (d)
		ka	kha	ga	gha	ña
(a) c		ca	cha	ja	jha	ñna
(b) t̥		ṭa	ṭha	ḍa	ḍha	ṇa
		ta	tha	da	dha	na
		pa	pha	ba	bha	ma
				ya	ra	la
(c) c (ch) ūsa	śa	sa	ha		va	l (g)
						d (dh) (h)
						end of line

- Here are examples for each of these eight rules:

(a) रामात् + च = रामाञ्च  
rāmāt + ca = rāmāc ca

(b) रामात् + ट = रामाङ्ग  
 rāmāt + ṭa = rāmāṭ ṭa

(c) रामात् + शास्त्रम् = रामाच्छास्त्रम्  
 rāmāt + śāstram = rāmāc chāstram

(d) रामात् + मन्यते = रामान्मन्यते  
 rāmāt + manyate = rāmān manyate

(e) रामात् + जलम् = रामाज्जलम्  
 rāmāt + jalām = rāmāj jalām

(f) रामात् + ड = रामाङ्ग  
 rāmāt + ḍa = rāmāḍ ḍa

(g) रामात् + लभते = रामाल्लभते  
 rāmāt + labhate = rāmāl labhate

(h) रामात् + हस्तः = रामाङ्गस्तः  
 rāmāt + hastāḥ = rāmāḍ dhasṭāḥ

**GRAMMAR:**  
**NOUNS IN R**

1. Here is the declension for nouns ending in **r**. These nouns are usually an agent of action or a relation, such as father or mother.

Stem: **dātr** (masculine) giver; **svasr** (feminine) sister

Nom.	दाता dātā	दातारौ dātārau	दातारः dātārah
Acc.	दातारम् dātāram	दातारौ dātārau	दातृन् स्वसृः dātṛn / svasṛḥ
Inst.	दात्रा dātrā	दातृभ्याम् dātṛbhyaṁ	दातृभिः dātṛbhīḥ
Dat.	दात्रे dātre	दातृभ्याम् dātṛbhyaṁ	दातृभ्यः dātṛbhyaḥ
Abl.	दातुः dātuḥ	दातृभ्याम् dātṛbhyaṁ	दातृभ्यः dātṛbhyaḥ
Gen.	दातुः dātuḥ	दात्रोः dātroph	दातृणाम् dātṛṇām
Loc.	दातरि dātarī	दात्रोः dātroph	दातृषु dātṛṣu
Voc.	दातर् dātar <small>Singular</small>	दातारौ dātārau <small>Dual</small>	दातारः dātārah <small>Plural</small>

2. Father, mother, and brother have a weaker form (looking at the second syllable) in the nominative and vocative (dual and plural), and the accusative (singular and dual):

Stem: **pitṛ** (mas.) father; **mātṛ** (fem.) mother; **bhrātṛ** (mas.) brother

Nom.	<b>पिता</b> pitā	<b>पितरौ</b> pitaraū	<b>पितरः</b> pitarah
Acc.	<b>पितरम्</b> pitaram	<b>पितरौ</b> pitaraū	<b>पितृन् भ्रातृन् मातृः</b> pitṛn bhrātṛn mātṛḥ
Voc.	<b>पितर्</b> pitar	<b>पितरौ</b> pitaraū	<b>पितरः</b> pitarah

[ Singular                      Dual                      Plural ]

3. In a few but frequently used **dvandva** compounds of pairs, such as “mother and father,” the first word usually ends in **ā**, the nominative singular. For example:

**मातापितरौ**  
mātā-pitaraū     mother and father

#### THE FUTURE TENSE

4. Now we will study the future tense. Sometimes the present indicative may indicate the immediate future. For example:

**गच्छामि**  
gacchāmi        I will go

5. More often, the simple future is used. The future tense (**Ir̥t̥**) is used for any future action. It is formed by adding **sya** or **iṣya** to the

strengthened root. (Remember that **s** becomes **ş** when immediately preceded by any vowel except **a** or **ā**. See internal **sandhi**, p. 142.)

6. Most roots are strengthened by adding **guṇa** changes to the vowel. (See page 167.) The standard active and middle endings are then added.
7. Here is the third person singular future for some of the verbs we have learned:

<b>upa + √gam</b>	<b>upagamışiyati</b>	he will approach
<b>√gam</b>	<b>gamişiyati</b>	he will go
<b>√gup</b>	<b>gopsyati</b>	he will protect
<b>√cint</b>	<b>cintayışiyati -te</b>	he will think
<b>√ji</b>	<b>jeşyati</b>	he will conquer
<b>√drş</b>	<b>drakşiyati</b>	he will see
<b>√nī</b>	<b>neşyati -te</b>	he will lead
<b>√paṭh</b>	<b>paṭhişiyati</b>	he will read
<b>√paś</b>	<b>drakşiyati</b>	he will see
<b>√pā</b>	<b>pāsyati</b>	he will drink

<b>√prach</b>	<b>prakṣyati</b>	he will ask
<b>√budh</b>	<b>bodhiṣyati -te</b>	he will know
<b>√bhū</b>	<b>bhaviṣyati</b>	he will be
<b>√man</b>	<b>mamṣyate</b>	he will think
<b>√ram</b>	<b>ramṣyate</b>	he will enjoy
<b>√labh</b>	<b>lapsyate</b>	he will obtain
<b>√vad</b>	<b>vadiṣyati</b>	he will speak
<b>√vas</b>	<b>vatsyati</b>	he will live
<b>√śubh</b>	<b>śobhiṣyate</b>	he will shine
<b>√sev</b>	<b>seviṣyate</b>	he will serve
<b>√sthā</b>	<b>sthāsyati</b>	he will stand
<b>√smi</b>	<b>smeṣyate</b>	he will smile
<b>√smṛ</b>	<b>smariṣyati</b>	he will remember
<b>√has</b>	<b>hasiṣyati</b>	he will laugh

**VOCABULARY:**  
**NOUNS IN R**

SANSKRIT	ENGLISH
<b>कदा</b> kada (indeclinable)	when (used like <b>kutra</b> )
<b>कर्ता</b> kartā (mas.)	maker, doer (follows the ṛ declension)
<b>कर्त्री</b> kartri (fem.)	maker, doer (follows long ī declension)
<b>कुलम्</b> kulam (n.)	family
<b>दाता</b> dātā (mas.)	giver (follows the ṛ declension)
<b>दात्री</b> dātri (fem.)	giver (ī declension)
<b>पिता</b> pitā (mas.)	father (ṛ declension)
<b>भ्राता</b> bhrātā (mas.)	brother (ṛ declension)
<b>माता</b> mātā (fem.)	mother (ṛ declension)
<b>स्वसा</b> svasā (fem.)	sister (ṛ declension)

## EXERCISES

1. Memorize the **sandhi** rules for final t.
2. Memorize the declension for nouns ending in r̥.
3. Make yourself familiar with the future third person singular forms.
4. Translate the following sentences into English:

a. मम पिता तत्र गमिष्यतीति बालस्तस्य

मातरमवदत् ।१।

b. कदा तव भ्राता जलं लप्स्यत इति पितापृच्छत् ।२।

c. पितामातरौ जलाकुलं गोप्स्यतः ।३।

d. कदा वनादागमिष्यसीति रामस्तस्य

भ्रातरमपृच्छत् ।४।

e. तस्य पितरं सेवित्वा रामो राजा भविष्यति ।५।

f. यदा तस्या भ्रातरं मन्यते तदा सा स्मयते ।६।

g. माता तस्याः प्रजायै सुखस्य दात्री भवति ।७।

h. य आत्मानं जयति स शान्तेः कर्ता ।८।

i. जलं पीत्वा तस्य मातुः पुस्तकं पठिष्यति ।९।

j. भ्रात्रा सह रामो वने वत्स्यति ।१०।

5. Translate the following sentences into Sanskrit:

a. When my sister was born, she smiled at my mother.

b. My family's name is from the name of a seer.

c. "When will I speak to the king?" her father thought.

d. Her father's wife is her mother.

- e. My father is the maker of peace in our family.
  - f. The brother and sister will obtain fruit from the forest.
  - g. The hero will protect the king from the fire in the forest.
  - h. The son of the king has no brothers.
  - i. When will the students obtain knowledge from the virtuous teacher?
  - j. "I have seen you in the pond," the king says to the beautiful son.
-

---

# 18

## LESSON EIGHTEEN

Alphabet: All remaining sandhi rules

Grammar: Nouns in **u**

The **karmadhāraya** and **tatpuruṣa** compound

Summary of compounds

Vocabulary: Nouns in **u**, more adjectives

**ALPHABET:**  
**ALL REMAINING**  
**SANDHI RULES**

1. We will now study the remaining sandhi rules, which include final **r**, **p**, **t**, **k**, **ñ**, **n̄**, and initial **ch**.
2. Here are the rules for final **r**:
  - (a) Before a word beginning with a voiced letter, the **r** remains the same. For example:

पुनर् + गच्छति = पुनर्गच्छति

punar + gacchati = punar gacchati

पुनर् + आगच्छति = पुनरागच्छति

punar + āgacchati = punar āgacchati

- (b) Before an unvoiced letter or the end of a line, **r** follows the same rules as final **s**. For example:

पुनर् + पुनर् = पुनः पुनः

punar + punar = punah punah

पुनर् + तत्र = पुनस्तत्र

punar + tatra = punas tatra

- (c) Final **r**, whether original or derived from **s**, cannot stand before another **r**. The final **r** is dropped and the vowel before it made long if it is short. For example:

पुनर् + रामः = पुना रामः

punar + rāmaḥ = punā rāmaḥ

3. Here are the rules for final p, t, and k:

- (a) Before a voiced sound these letters become voiced, and before an unvoiced sound they remain the same. For example:

ऋक् + वेद = ऋग्वेद  
ṛk + veda = ṛg veda

ऋक् + संहिता = ऋक्संहिता  
ṛk + saṃhitā = ṛk saṃhitā

- (b) Before a nasal these letters become the nasal of their row (*varga*). For example:

सुप् + नाम = सुम्राम  
sup + nāma = sumnāma

- (c) Before h these letters become voiced and the h becomes their voiced aspirated counterpart. For example:

वाक् + हसति = वाग्घसति  
vāk + hasati = vāg ghasati

4. Here is the rule for final n and ñ:

- (a) Like final n, final ñ becomes nn̄ before vowels if the n̄ is preceded by a short vowel. Also, final ñ becomes nn̄ if the ñ is preceded by a short vowel.

5. Here is the rule for initial ch:

- (a) Initial ch becomes cch if the first word ends in a short vowel. The ch also becomes cch after ā and mā. For example:

कुत्र + छाया = कुत्र छाया  
 kutra + chāyā = kutra cchāyā

6. Ambiguities can sometimes be created by **sandhi**. Two different sets of words could appear the same after **sandhi** has been applied. For example:

रामः + एव = राम एव  
 rāmaḥ + eva = rāma eva

रामे + एव = राम एव  
 rāme + eva = rāma eva

बालाः + न = बाला न  
 bālāḥ + na = bālā na

बाला + न = बाला न  
 bālā + na = bālā na

You can usually judge from the context of the sentence which words are correct.

**GRAMMAR:**  
**NOUNS IN U**

1. Here is the declension for final u:

Stem: **hetu** (masculine) cause; **dhenu** (feminine) cow

Nom.	हेतुः hetuh	हेतू hetū	हेतवः hetavah
Acc.	हेतुम् hetum	हेतू hetū	हेतून् धेनूः hetūn / dhenūḥ
Inst.	हेतुना धेन्वा hetunā / dhenvā	हेतुभ्याम् hetubhyām	हेतुभिः hetubhiḥ
Dat.	हेतवे धेन्वै hetave (dhenvai)	हेतुभ्याम् hetubhyām	हेतुभ्यः hetubhyah
Abl.	हेतोः धेन्वाः hetoh (dhenvāḥ)	हेतुभ्याम् hetubhyām	हेतुभ्यः hetubhyah
Gen.	हेतोः धेन्वाः hetoh (dhenvāḥ)	हेत्वोः hetvoh	हेतूनाम् hetūnām
Loc.	हेतौ धेन्वाम् hetau (dhenvām)	हेत्वोः hetvoh	हेतुषु hetusu
Voc.	हेतो heto	हेतू hetū	हेतवः hetavah
	Singular	Dual	Plural

The singular dative, ablative, genitive, and locative have an optional feminine form. For example, the feminine dative singular is **dhenave** or **dhenvai**. This entire declension is the same as the declension ending in i (page 160). The only differences are due to sandhi.

## COMPOUNDS

2. Now we will study another kind of compound: the **tatpuruṣa** compound. Unlike the **dvandva**, whose members are considered equal, in the **tatpuruṣa** the last member is usually principal (**pradhāna**) and the prior member is subordinate (**upasarjana**). The **tatpuruṣa** is sometimes called a “determinative compound,” because the subordinate member qualifies or determines the sense of the principal member, which could stand alone.

## KARMADHĀRAYA

3. One type of **tatpuruṣa** is the **karmadhāraya**. In a **karmadhāraya** compound, both members refer to the same object, and if separated, would be in the same case (**samānādhikarāṇa**).
4. The simplest kind of **karmadhāraya** is the adjective and noun:

**शुक्लमाला** **vigraha:** **शुक्ला माला**

**śukla-mālā**  
“white-garland” analysis: the white garland

**प्रियबालः** **vigraha:** **प्रियो बालः**

**priya-bālah**  
“the dear-boy” analysis: the dear boy

Note that even if the second member of the compound is a feminine noun (**mālā**), the adjective often takes the form of a masculine stem (**a**). (Feminine nouns keep their gender in these compounds.)

- ✓ 5. Another type of **karmadhāraya** is the noun and noun:

**राजर्षिः** **vigraha:** **राजर्षिः**

**rāja-rṣih**  
“king-seer” analysis: the king seer

**TATPURUṢA**

6. In other **tatpuruṣa** compounds (here usually referred to as **tatpuruṣa**), the members refer to different objects and would be in different cases (**vyadhikarāṇa**) if the compound were dissolved and the last member is put in the nominative. The compound is further named after the case of the first member, which would be in cases two through seven if the compound were analyzed. For example, if the first member is genitive, the compound is called a genitive **tatpuruṣa**. Here are two genitive **tatpuruṣa** compounds:

राजपुरुषः vigraha: राजः पुरुषः  
 rāja-puruṣah analysis: rājñah puruṣah  
 “king-man” the king’s man

नरपुस्तकम् vigraha: नरस्य पुस्तकम्  
 nara-pustakam analysis: narasya pustakam  
 “man-book” the man’s book

7. A compound, like a simple word, may become a member in another compound. In these cases, in India, the analysis usually begins with the smaller pieces. For example:

रामपुत्रपुस्तकम्  
 rāma-putra-pustakam  
 “Rāma-son-book”

(1) रामस्य पुत्रः

rāmasya putrah  
 the son of Rāma

## (2) रामस्य पुत्रस्य पुस्तकम्

*rāmasya putrasya pustakam*

the book of the son of Rāma

In the West, analysis of a compound begins at the right and goes to the left. In India, analysis begins with the smaller units. Rather than “taking apart” a compound, the analysis starts with smaller units and shows how the compound is “built up.”

**SUMMARY OF  
COMPOUNDS**

8. Compounds may be classified into four groups. The following is a generalized description, for background information, to which exceptions may be added later:

- (1) **dvandva.** In this compound, each member is considered principal. There are two types:

- (a) **itaretara.** The members are viewed separately. For example, *rāma-sīte*, “Rāma and Sītā.”
- (b) **samāhāra.** The members are viewed as a whole. For example, *sukha-duḥkham*, “happiness and suffering.”

- (2) **tatpuruṣa.** In this compound, the first member qualifies and is subordinate to the second member. There are several types:

- (a) **tatpuruṣa (vyadhikaraṇa-tatpuruṣa).** This name is normally used for the compound that refers to different objects. The first member would be in a different case than the second if the compound were dissolved. This compound has six types, corresponding to cases two through seven. For example, *rāja-puruṣah*, “the king's man.”

- (b) **karmadhāraya** (*samānādhikaraṇa-tatpuruṣa*). Both members refer to the same object and therefore would be in the same case if the compound were dissolved. For example, *śukla-mālā*, “the white garland.” If the first member is a number, it is called a **dvigu**. For example, **dvi-vacana**, “dual number.”
  - (c) **upapada**. The second member is an adjusted verbal root. For example, **brahma-vit**, “the knower of **brahman**.”
  - (d) **nañ**. This is a **tatpuruṣa** compound in which **na** is reduced to **a** or **an**, used to negate. For example, **avidyā**, “ignorance.” (See p. 213.)
  - (e) **prādi**. The first member is one of the twenty **upasargas** given by Pāṇini, which he listed as beginning with **pra**. (See pp. 197–199.) The entire compound is used as a nominal. For example, **anusvāra**, “after-sound.”
  - (f) **gati**. The first member is another type of prefix, called **gati**, and the entire compound is used as a nominal. For example, **antaryāmin**, “inner ruler.”
- (3) **bahuvrīhi**. In this compound, the actual principal is outside of the compound. The compound serves as an adjective, describing something else. The members may be in the same or different cases. For example, **mahā-rathah**, “having a great chariot,” means one whose chariot is great, or a “great hero.” To use an example in English, “redcoat,” meaning “having a red coat,” refers to a person whose coat is red, or a British soldier.
- (4) **avyayībhāva**. This compound usually begins with an indeclinable. The entire compound is used as an adverb. For example, **yathānāma**, “by name.”

9. These four groups of compounds may be understood from the perspective of which member is principal:

- (1) **dvandva** Both members are principal.
- (2) **tatpuruṣa** Second member is principal.
- (3) **bahuvrīhi** Neither member is principal.
- (4) **avyayībhāva** First member is principal.

10. If pronouns are used as prior members of a compound, they are put in base forms, which are used regardless of the case, gender, or number of the pronoun:

<b>mad</b>	I
<b>asmad</b>	we
<b>tvad</b>	you
<b>yuṣmad</b>	you (plural)
<b>tad</b>	he, she, it, they

For example:

**मद्-बालः**

**mad-bālaḥ**

my boy (genitive **tatpuruṣa**)

**तत्पुरुषः**

**tat-puruṣaḥ**

his man (genitive **tatpuruṣa**)

## VOCABULARY

## SANSKRIT

## ENGLISH

**अल्प** alpa mf(ā)n (adj.) little

**गुरु** guru mf(vī)n (adj.) heavy

**गुरुः** guruḥ (mas. noun) teacher

**धेनुः** dhenuḥ (fem.) cow

**पूर्ण** pūrṇa mf(ā)n (adj.) full

**बहु** bahu mf(vī or u)n (adj.) much, many

**शत्रुः** śatruḥ (mas.) enemy

**शीघ्र** śīghra mf(ā)n (adj.) swift

**हेतुः** hetuḥ (mas.) cause, motive

**EXERCISES**

1. Memorize the last of the **sandhi** rules.
2. Memorize the declension for **u**.
3. Review how to form **karmadhāraya** and **tatpuruṣa** compounds and memorize the short forms of the pronouns used in those compounds.
4. Translate the following sentences into English:
  - a. शुक्लधेनुर्वाप्यां तिष्ठति जलं च पिबति ।१।
  - b. ऋषिः शत्रुमजयत् ।२।
  - c. यदि वनं फलस्य पूर्णमस्ति तदा धेनवस्त्र  
गच्छन्ति ।३।
  - d. मन्माताल्पं पुस्तकं पठति तत्रमते च ।४।
  - e. बहुसुखस्य दाता गुरुः ।५।
  - f. अल्पबालः शुक्लसूर्य इव शोभते ।६।

- g. यदात्मानमवगच्छसि तदा त्वं बहुसुखस्य  
हेतुरसि ।७।
- h. कदा रमणीयराजा शत्रोरस्माकं कुलं गोप्स्यति ।८।
- i. शीघ्रा बाला फलेन सह वनादागच्छति ।९।
- j. गुरोः सुखस्य हेतुस्तस्य शिष्याणां सिद्धयो भवति  
।१०।
- k. विद्यायाः शत्रुरविद्या भवतीति बालोऽवदत् ।११।

5. Translate the following sentences into Sanskrit:

- a. The beautiful little cow drank water from the pond.
- b. The swift black horse stands in the little village.

- c. Having conquered the enemy, the army will enjoy peace and happiness.
- d. Ignorance is the enemy of truth.
- e. Having known the Self, he understood the cause of action and inaction.
- f. The child was born in a little house in the beautiful forest.
- g. The student will bring the beautiful garland for his teacher.
- h. The forest is full of fruit and the pond is full of water.
- i. Seeing his family, the father went to the forest for water.
- j. When will the beautiful cow come here from the swift river?
- k. Having seen the cow, the beautiful boy enjoys the water in the pond.